

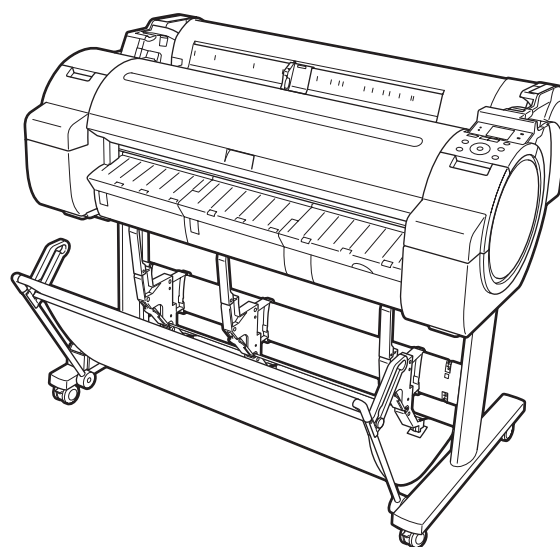
Canon

Large Format Printer

 **imagePROGRAF**

iPF750

User Manual



ENG

Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual	1
About This User Manual	1
Searching Topics	3
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing.....	5

Printer Parts 13

Printer parts	13
Front	13
Side	15
Top Cover (Inside)	16
Roll Cover (Inside).....	17
Carriage.....	17
Ink Tank Cover (Inside).....	18
Stand	19
Control Panel.....	20
Control Panel	22
Control Panel.....	22
Turning the Printer On and Off	24
Control Panel Display	26
How to View Instructions With Navigate.....	29
Printer Menu Operations	30
Menu Operations.....	32
Menu Structure	35
Menu Settings	49
Menu Settings (During Printing)	60
Status Print.....	62
Printing Interface Setting Reports	65
Checking Instructions During Printer Operations	69
Optional accessories	70
Roll Holder Set	70
Printer Specifications	71
Specifications	71
Print Area.....	75

Basic Printing Workflow 76

Printing procedure	76
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets	76
Loading and Printing on Rolls	78
Loading and Printing on Sheets	81
Printing in Windows.....	83

Printing in Mac OS X	84
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	86
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)	88
Canceling print jobs	90
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel	90
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows.....	91
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X.....	92
Pausing Printing.....	94
Pausing Printing	94

Handling Paper 95

Paper	95
Types of Paper	95
Paper Sizes	100
Handling rolls	103
Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls.....	103
Loading Rolls in the Printer	106
Changing the Type of Paper.....	110
Specifying the Paper Length	112
Printing From a Desired Starting Point.....	113
Removing the Roll from the Printer	116
Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls	118
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper	120
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	123
Feeding Roll Paper Manually	125
Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left	126
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.....	127
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls	129
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically	133
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls	134
Roll Holder Set	135
Handling sheets	136
Loading Sheets in the Printer	136
Changing the Type of Paper.....	139
Printing From a Desired Starting Point.....	141
Removing Sheets	144
Clearing a Jammed Sheet.....	145
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	148
Output Stacker	150
Using the Output Stacker	150

Working With Various Print Jobs 152

Printing Photos and Images.....	152
Printing Photos and Images	152
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)	154

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	156
Printing CAD Drawings	159
Printing CAD Drawings.....	159
Printing Line Drawings and Text.....	160
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows).....	162
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)	164
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings.....	167
Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows).....	168
HP-GL/2 Printing	170
Printing Office Documents	171
Printing Office Documents.....	171
Printing Office Documents (Windows).....	172
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X).....	174
<u>Enhanced Printing Options</u>	<u>177</u>
Adjusting Images	177
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver	177
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows).....	181
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)	184
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing	187
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows).....	190
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)	192
Choosing Paper for Printing.....	194
Choosing a Paper for Printing	194
Changing the Type of Paper.....	195
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver	197
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	197
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)	199
Printing enlargements or reductions	201
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size	201
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)	202
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)	204
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width	207
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)	208
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)	210
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.....	213
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows).....	214
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X).....	216
Printing at full size.....	219
Printing on Oversized Paper	219
Printing at Full Size (Windows)	220
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X).....	222
Borderless Printing at Actual Size	225
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)	227
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)	229

Borderless Printing	232
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size.....	232
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows).....	234
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X).....	236
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width.....	239
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows).....	241
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X).....	243
Borderless Printing at Actual Size	246
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)	248
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)	250
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes	253
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)	253
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows).....	254
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X).....	258
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes	261
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)	262
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X).....	266
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet	269
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other	269
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows).....	271
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)	273
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously.....	275
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows).....	276
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)	278
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet.....	280
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows).....	281
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X).....	283
Printing Posters in Sections	286
Printing Large Posters (Windows).....	287
Centering originals	289
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls	289
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)	290
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)	292
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets	295
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows).....	296
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)	298
Conserving roll paper.....	301
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees	301
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)	302
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X).....	304
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins	307
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)	308
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) ..	310
Checking Images Before Printing	313
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing	313
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)	315
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)	317

Other useful settings	318
Printing With Watermarks	318
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows).....	319
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation	321
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows).....	322
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)	324
Using Favorites	327
Using Favorites (Windows)	328
Using Favorites (Mac OS X).....	330
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing.....	331
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows).....	332
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X).....	333

Windows Software **336**

Printer Driver.....	336
Printer Driver Settings (Windows)	336
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)	338
Confirming Print Settings (Windows).....	340
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)	342
Using Favorites (Windows)	344
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows).....	346
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)	348
Main Sheet (Windows)	350
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows).....	353
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	354
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows).....	355
Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows)	356
Object Adjustment dialog box: Color	358
Matching Sheet (Windows)	359
Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows).....	361
Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome.....	363
Page Setup Sheet (Windows)	364
Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows).....	367
Layout Sheet (Windows)	368
Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)	370
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)	371
Favorites Sheet (Windows)	372
Utility Sheet (Windows)	374
Support Sheet (Windows)	375
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows).....	376
Device Settings Sheet (Windows)	377
Preview	378
The Features of Preview	378
Operating Environment	378
Starting Preview	379
Preview Main Window	380
Dialog Area	382
Print on the Center	384
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	385

Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees	386
Printing with Selecting the Layout	387
Enlarge/Reduce the screen display.....	389
Moving a Page	389
Using the ruler	389
Free Layout.....	390
The Features of Free Layout.....	390
Operating Environment	390
Starting Free Layout.....	391
Free Layout Main Window.....	393
Detailed Settings	394
Preferences Dialog Box.....	395
Page Options Dialog Box	397
Zoom Dialog Box.....	398
Format Dialog Box.....	399
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page.....	401
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page.....	404
Selecting an Object	407
Changing the Object Size.....	408
Moving an Object	409
Rotating an Object.....	409
Laying out Objects Automatically	410
Aligning Objects	411
Changing the Object Overlapping Order	413
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object.....	415
Folded Duplex Window	416
Prints using Folded Duplex	418
Finished Size Settings Dialog Box	419
Binding Settings Dialog Box	420
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	421
The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	421
Operating Environment	421
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	422
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	424
Hot Folder.....	425
Creating a New Hot Folder	426
Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder.....	429
Setting the Print Parameters	431
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows).....	432
Status Monitor	434
The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor	434
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.....	436
Accounting	437
Accounting Manager	437
Launching the Accounting Manager	437
Accounting Manager Main Window.....	438
Accounting Manager Basic Procedures	441
Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager.....	441

Setting the Unit Cost for Ink	442
Setting the Unit Cost for Paper	443
Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper	444
Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager	445
Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals	446
Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition	446
Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs	447
Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File	447
Showing Job Properties	448
Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data	448
Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed	448
Digital Photo Front-Access	449
Digital Photo Front-Access	449
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	450
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals	450
Device Setup Utility	452
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	452
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	452
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	453

Mac OS X Software 454

Printer Driver	454
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)	454
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)	455
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)	457
Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)	459
Using Favorites (Mac OS X)	460
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)	460
Main Pane (Mac OS X)	461
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)	464
Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)	465
View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)	466
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)	467
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)	469
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)	471
Utility Pane (Mac OS X)	473
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)	474
Support Pane (Mac OS X)	475
Preview	476
The Features of Preview	476
Operating Environment	476
Starting Preview	477
Preview Main Window	478
Paper Settings Panel	480
Easy Settings	482
Advanced Settings	484
Output Settings Panel	485

Color Settings Panel.....	487
Color Adjustment	488
Matching.....	490
Driver Matching Mode	492
ICC Matching Mode.....	493
ColorSync.....	494
Preferences Dialog Box.....	495
Zoom Dialog Box.....	495
Go to Page Dialog Box.....	495
Print with No Borders	496
Print on the Center	497
Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom	498
Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees	499
Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper.....	500
Display with All	501
Display with Actual Size	502
Moving a Page	503
Free Layout.....	504
The Features of Free Layout.....	504
Operating Environment	504
Starting Free Layout.....	505
Free Layout Main Window.....	506
Paper Settings Panel.....	508
Easy Settings	510
Advanced Settings	512
Color Settings Panel.....	513
Color Adjustment	514
Matching.....	516
Driver Matching Mode	518
ICC Matching Mode.....	519
ColorSync.....	520
Preferences Dialog Box.....	521
Page Setup Dialog Box	523
Zoom Dialog Box.....	524
Format Dialog Box.....	525
Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page.....	526
Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page.....	526
Selecting an Object	527
Changing the Object Size.....	528
Moving an Object	529
Rotating an Object.....	529
Laying out Objects Automatically	530
Aligning Objects	531
Changing the Object Overlapping Order	533
Pasting a Copied or Cut Object.....	535
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	536
The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	536
Operating Environment	536
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy	537
Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box	538

Hot Folder.....	539
Creating a New Hot Folder.....	539
Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions).....	541
Deleting a Hot Folder	543
Setting the Print Parameters	544
Paper Settings Panel.....	544
Easy Settings	546
Advanced Settings	548
Output Settings Panel	549
Color Settings Panel.....	551
Driver Matching Mode	552
ICC Matching Mode.....	553
ColorSync.....	554
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X).....	555
Printmonitor	557
The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	557
Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor	558

Network Setting 560

Network Setting	560
Network Environment.....	560
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer	563
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.....	564
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel	565
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands	567
Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings.....	568
Using RemoteUI	569
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings	570
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings	574
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings.....	575
Specifying Printer-Related Information.....	577
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually.....	578
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur	579
Initializing the Network Settings	580
Network Setting (Windows)	581
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows).....	581
Sharing the Printer in Windows	582
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings.....	584
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type.....	586
Specifying NetWare Print Services.....	588
Specifying NetWare Protocols.....	591
Configuring NetWare Network Settings.....	593
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility	594
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.....	595
Network Setting (Mac OS X).....	596
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh).....	596
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings	597
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh).....	598

Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Macintosh)	600
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)	602

Adjustments for Better Print Quality 603

Adjusting the Printhead	603
Adjusting the Printhead	603
Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)	604
Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)	606
Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.)	608
Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)	611
Adjusting the feed amount	612
Adjusting the Feed Amount	612
Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority)	613
Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)	614
Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)	616
Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed)	618
Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length)	619
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)	621

Maintenance 622

Ink Tanks	622
Ink Tanks	622
Replacing Ink Tanks	623
Checking Ink Tank Levels	628
When to Replace Ink Tanks	629
Printheads	630
Printhead	630
Checking for Nozzle Clogging	630
Cleaning the Printhead	632
Replacing the Printhead	633
Maintenance Cartridge	639
Maintenance Cartridge	639
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	639
Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity	644
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	645
Cleaning the Printer	646
Cleaning the Printer Exterior	646
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover	647
Cleaning the Printhead	650
Other Maintenance	651
Preparing to Transfer the Printer	651
Updating the Firmware	654

Troubleshooting**655**

Frequently Asked Questions	655
Frequently Asked Questions	655
Problems Regarding Paper	657
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)	657
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper	659
Clearing a Jammed Sheet	662
Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot	665
Cannot load sheets	665
Paper is not cut straight	665
Paper is not cut	665
Depression on the leading edge is left	665
The size of clear film cannot be detected	665
Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected	666
Printing does not start	667
The Data Reception Lamp on the Control Panel does not light up	667
The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent	667
Ink Filling.. is displayed	667
The display screen indicates Agitating	667
The printer stops during a print job	668
An error message is shown on the Display Screen	668
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper	668
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)	668
Problems with the printing quality	669
Printing is faint	669
Paper rubs against the Printhead	670
The edges of the paper are dirty	671
The surface of the paper is dirty	672
The back side of the paper is dirty	672
Printed colors are inaccurate	673
Banding in different colors occurs	674
Colors in printed images are uneven	675
Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs	676
The contrast becomes uneven during printing	676
The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction	677
Images are printed crooked	677
Documents are printed in monochrome	677
Line thickness is not uniform	678
Lines are misaligned	678
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper	678
Cannot print over a network	679
Cannot connect the printer to the network	679
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network	679
Cannot print over a NetWare network	680
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks	680

Installation problems	681
Removing Installed Printer Drivers	681
HP-GL/2 problems	682
With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned.....	682
Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs.....	682
Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs.....	682
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color)	682
Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during HP-GL/2 printing	682
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified	683
HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified.....	683
HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time	683
Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible.	683
The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving).....	683
Other problems	684
The printer does not go on	684
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound	685
Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared.....	686
The printer consumes a lot of ink	686
Ink Level Detection.....	687

Error Message 689

Messages regarding paper	689
MediaType Mismatch	689
The paper is too small.....	690
The paper is too small.....	691
PaperWidth Mismatch	692
Paper size not detected.....	693
Insufficient paper for job	694
This paper cannot be used.....	694
Roll printing is selected.	694
Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.....	695
The roll is empty.	695
Sheet printing is selected.	696
Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.....	696
Paper jam	697
Paper is crooked.	698
Paper not aligned with right guide.	699
Cannot detect paper.....	699
Paper cutting failed.....	700
End of paper feed.....	700
Rel lever is in wrong position.....	701
Borderless printing not possible.	701
Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.	702
Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.....	702
Messages regarding ink.....	703
Ink insufficient.....	703
No ink left.	703

Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.....	703
Unable to detect ink level correctly.....	703
Close Ink Tank Cover.....	703
Ink tank is empty.....	704
Not much ink is left.....	704
No ink tank loaded.....	704
Wrong ink tank.....	704
Do not pull out ink tank.....	704
Messages regarding printing or adjustment.....	705
Cannot adjust printhead.....	705
Cannot adjust paper feed.....	705
Check printed document.....	706
Messages regarding printheads.....	707
Cannot adjust printhead.....	707
Wrong printhead.....	707
Printhead error.....	707
No printhead.....	708
Execute printhead cleaning.....	708
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge.....	709
Insert the maintenance cartridge.....	709
Wrong maintenance cartridge.....	709
Maint. cart. The level is low.....	709
No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.....	709
Maintenance cartridge full.....	709
Maintenance cartridge problem.....	709
Messages regarding HP-GL/2.....	710
This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.....	710
GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904).....	710
GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.....	710
GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.....	710
Other Messages.....	711
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number).....	711
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number).....	711
Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number).....	711
Top cover is open.....	711
Prepare for parts replacement.....	712
Parts replacement time has passed.....	712
Unknown file.....	712
Multi-sensor error.....	712
Error in cutter position.....	712




Introduction

How to use this manual

■ ■ ■ About This User Manual

- Symbols

The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control panel buttons	Example: Press the OK button.
Control panel messages	Example: Head Cleaning is displayed.
Software interface items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click OK .
Keyboard keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part names

Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover.
--------------------	------------------------------

- Cross-reference

Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-reference in the same user manual	Example: see "Turning the Printer On and Off". (→P.24)
Cross-reference in related manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide.
Other cross-reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

How to use this manual

- Figures and software screens
 - Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
 - Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
 - Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.
- Trademarks
 - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
 - Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
 - Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
 - Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Copyright
 - © 2009 Canon Inc.
 - Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.
- May we request

Thank you for understanding the following points.

 - The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
 - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

Searching Topics

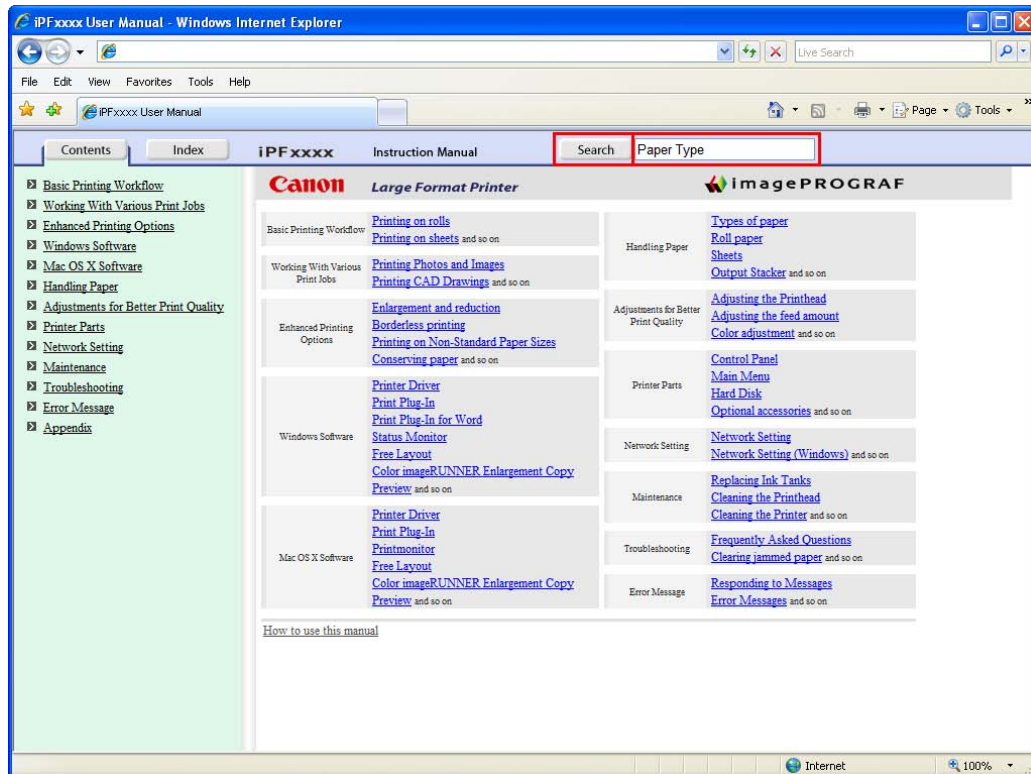
You can find information in topics of this User Manual by searching for relevant terms.

1. Enter a term and click the **Search** button.



Note

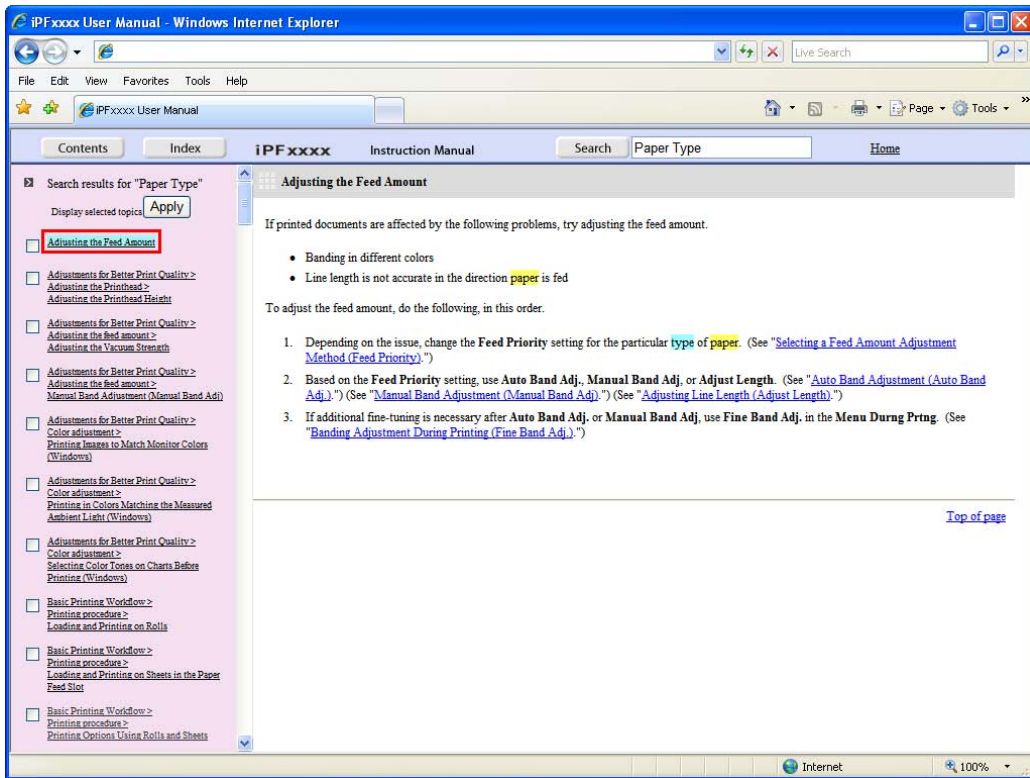
- To search for multiple terms at once, enter a space between each term.



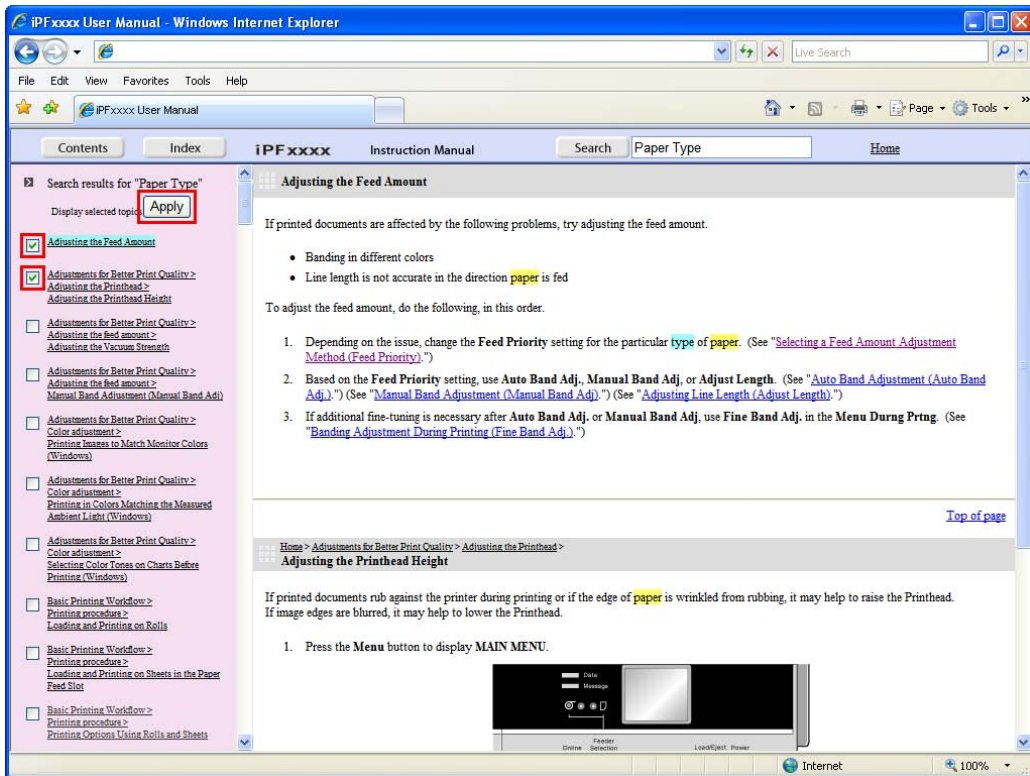
Search results are listed at left.

2. Click a topic you want to read.

The terms you searched for will be highlighted in the topic.



To review multiple topics at once, select the check box of desired topics and click the **Apply** button.



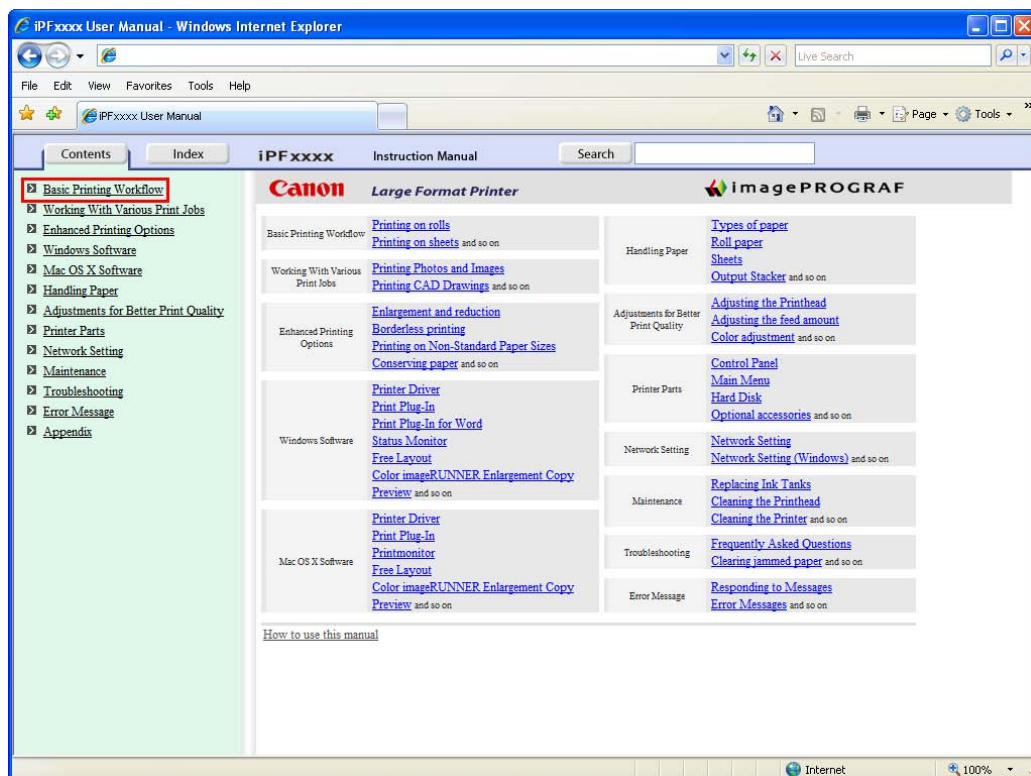
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

You can select a group of topics in the table of contents or individual topics in this manual for printing. The following procedure describes how to do this, using the information in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

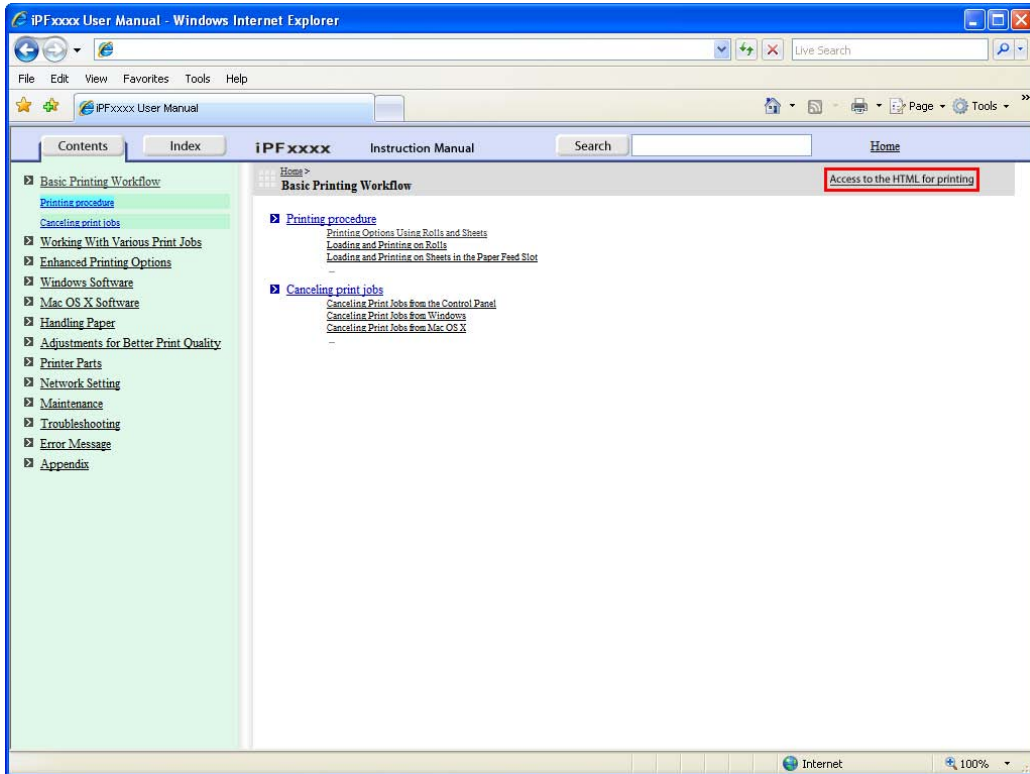
Printing a group of topics in the manual

When you access printable HTML versions of the content from section titles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

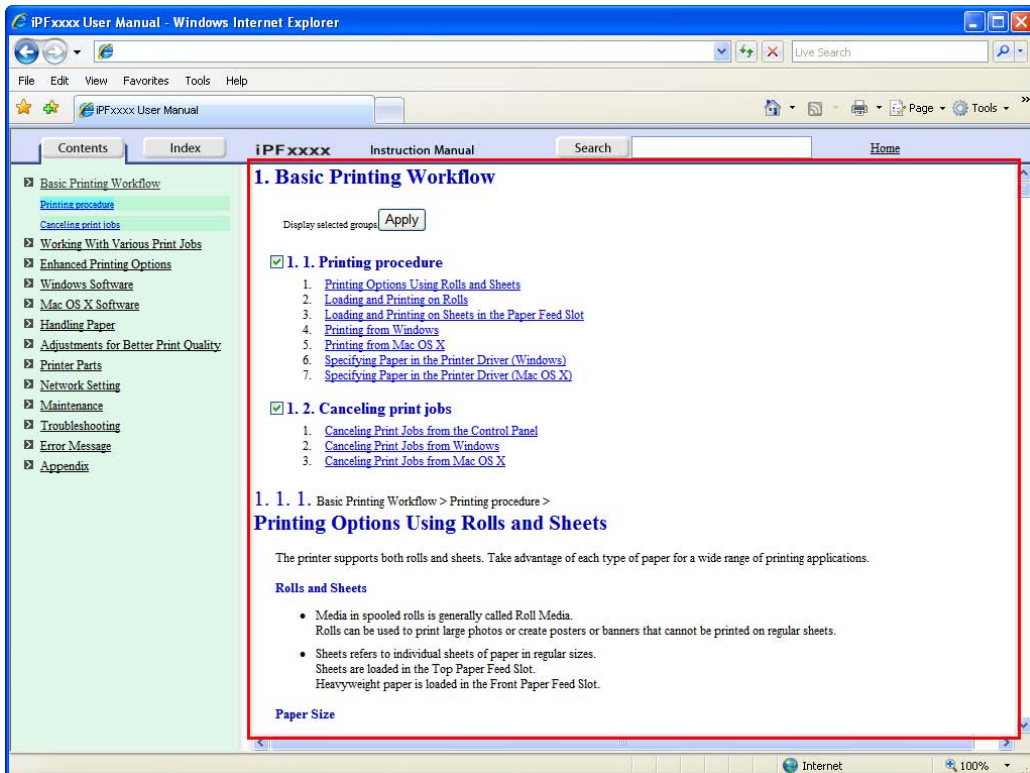
1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.



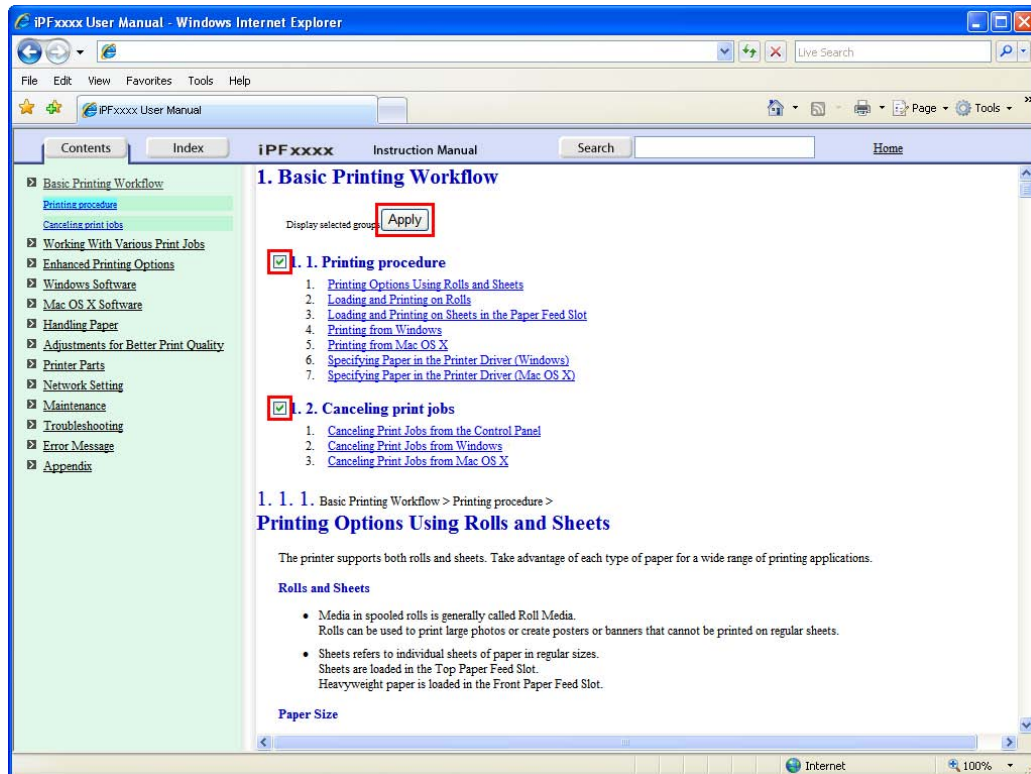
2. Click **Access to the HTML for printing** in the title area.



The topics in **Basic Printing Workflow** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



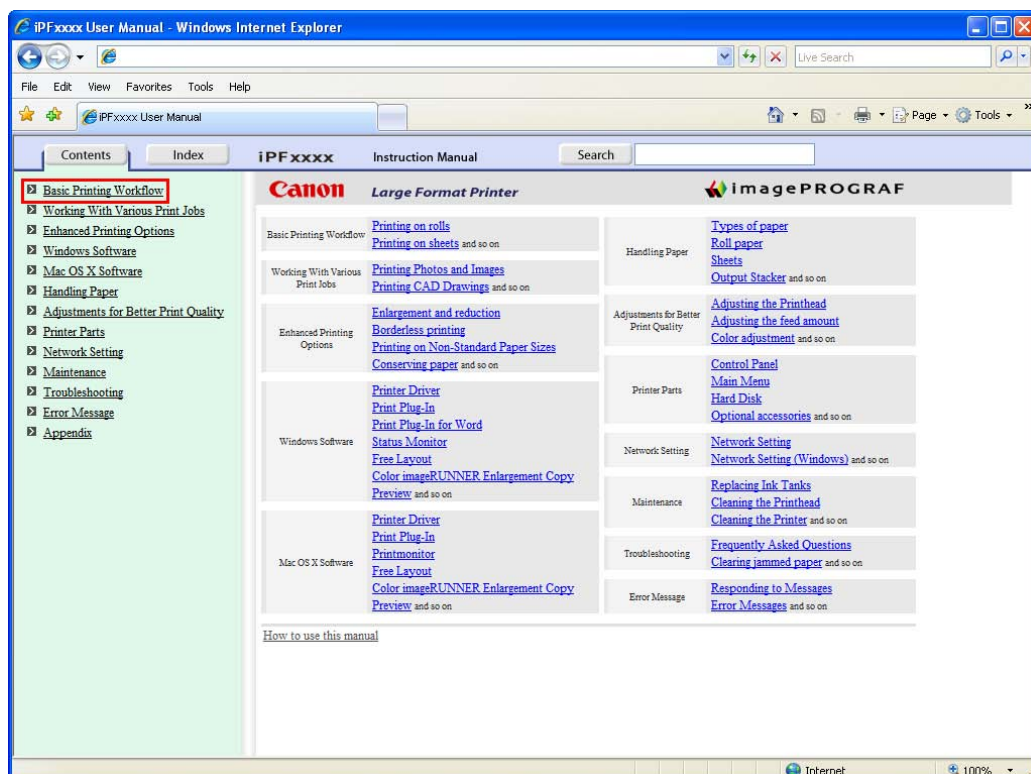
3. Clear the sections you will not print and click the **Apply** button.



Printing a group of individual topics in the manual

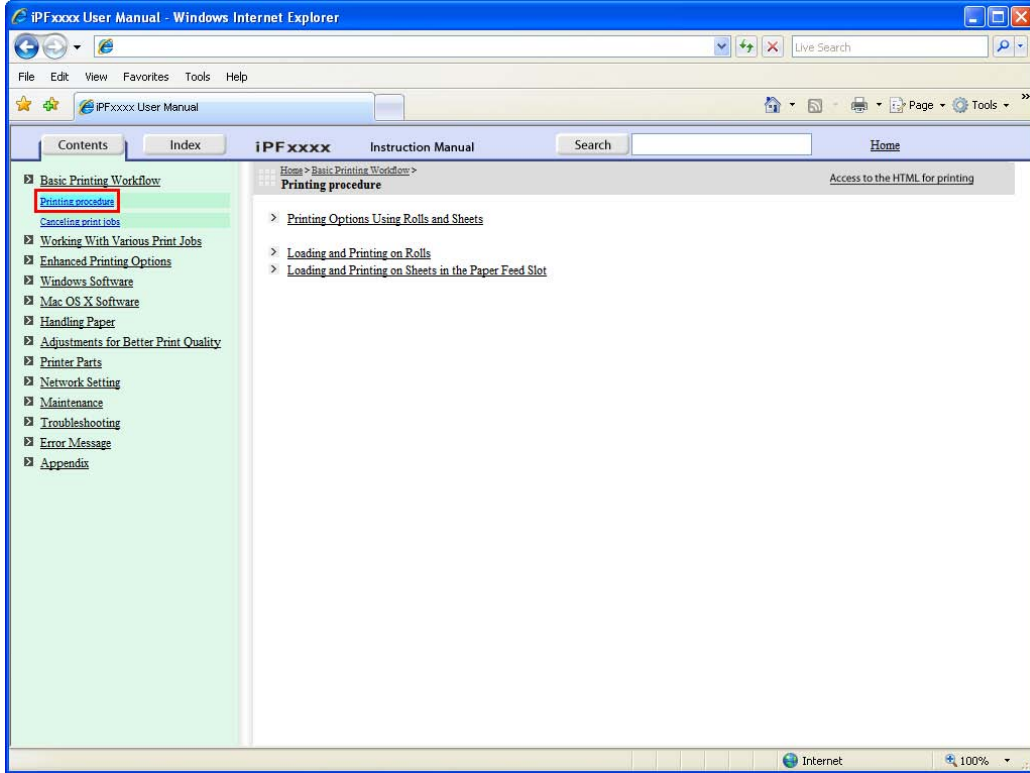
When you access printable HTML versions from subtitles in the table of contents, you can specify a group of topics to print.

1. Click a section title in the table of contents. Here, **Basic Printing Workflow** is used as an example.

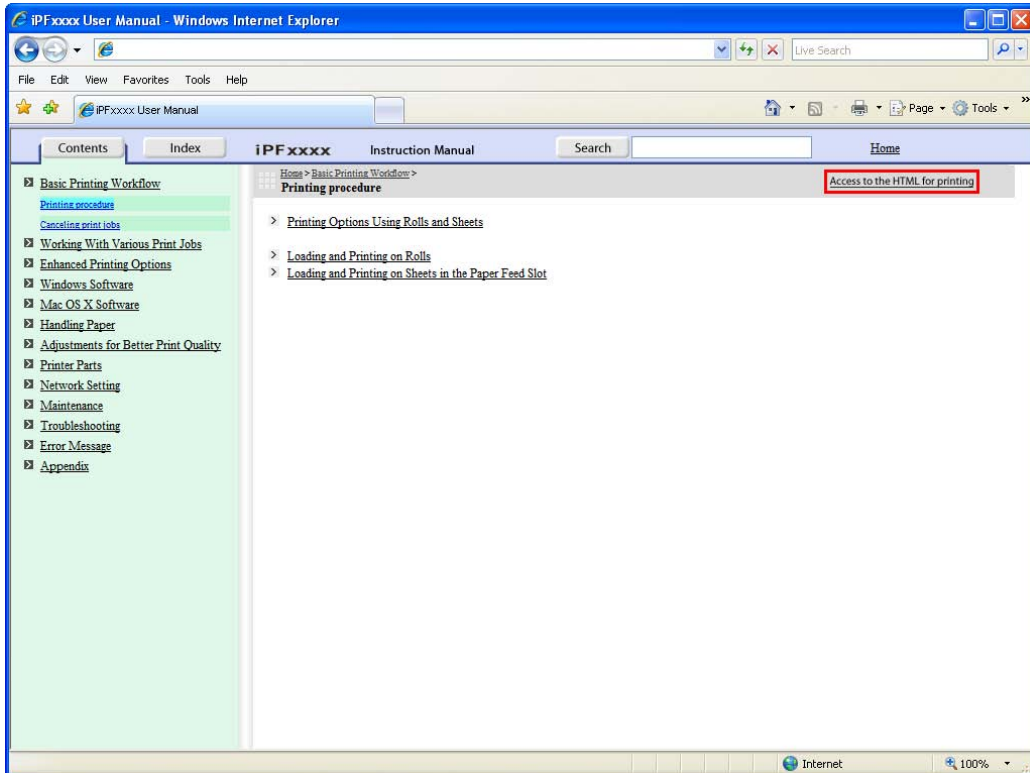


How to use this manual

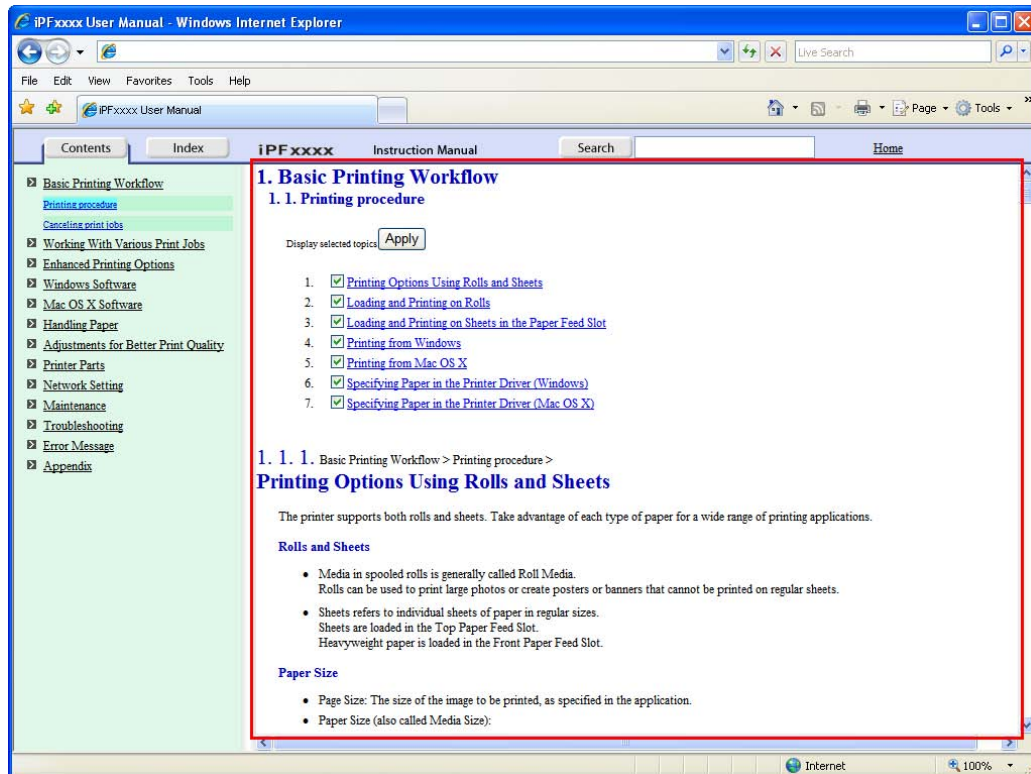
2. Under Basic Printing Workflow, click Printing Procedure.



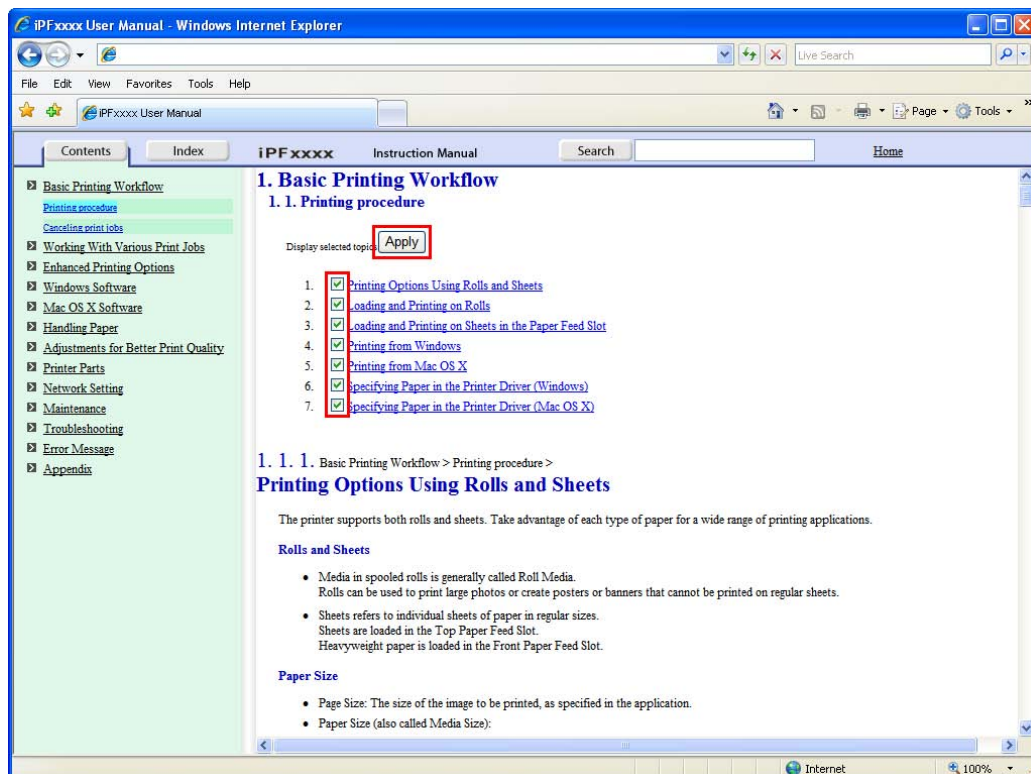
3. Click Access to the HTML for printing in the title area.



The topics in **Printing Procedure** are displayed together in HTML format, ready for printing.



4. Clear the topics you will not print and click the **Apply** button.



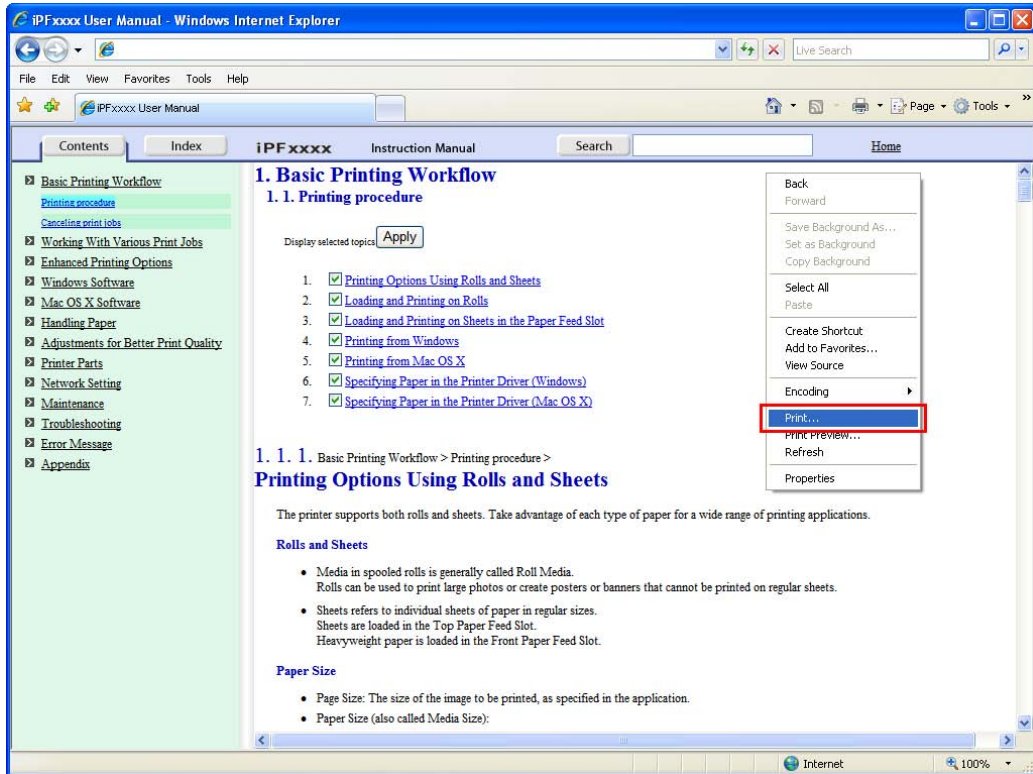
Printing selected topics

Print selected topics as follows.

1. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.

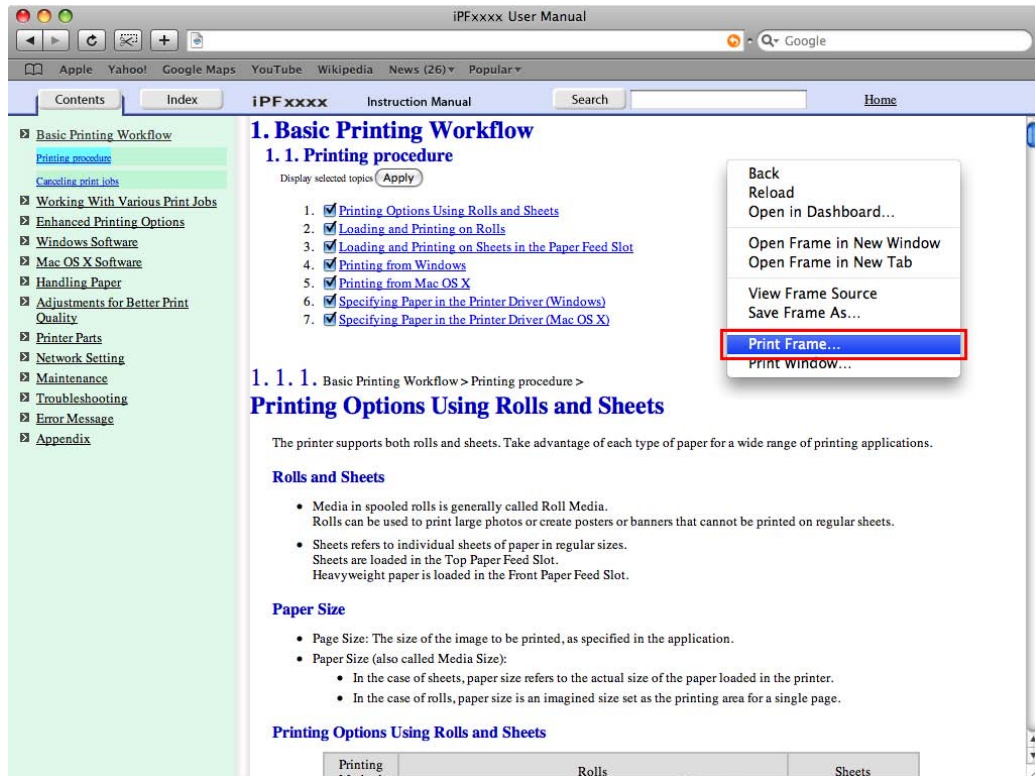
- Windows

In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link. In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.



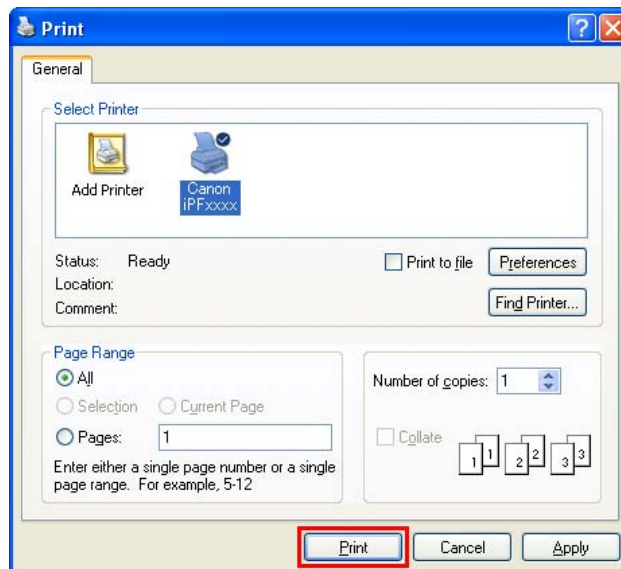
- Macintosh

On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.



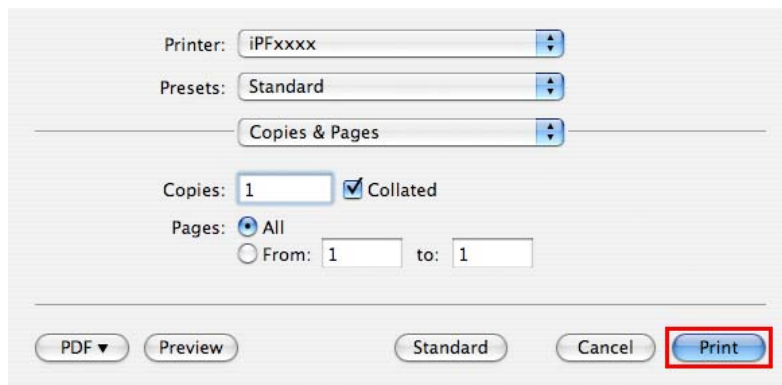
2. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).**

- Windows



How to use this manual

- Macintosh



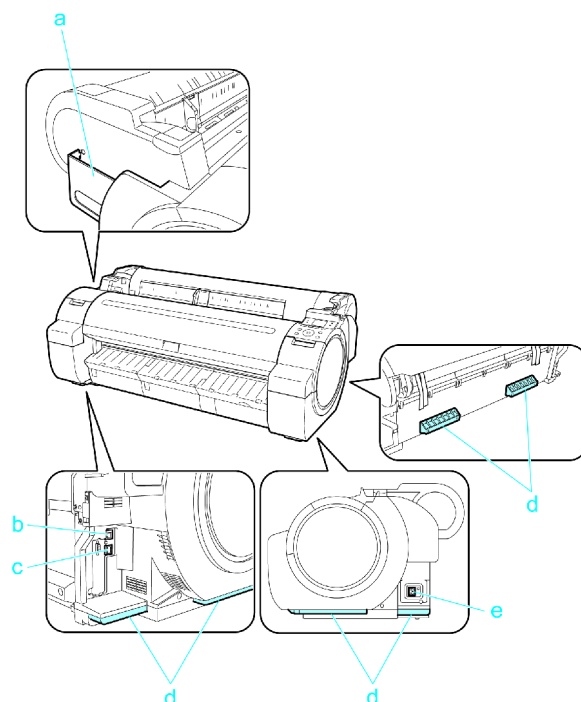
Note

- To print only individual topics that are displayed, use this method.

Printer parts

- j. Cutter Unit
A round-bladed cutter for automatic roll cutting.
- k. Cutter Rail
The Cutter Unit passes over this rail to cut paper.
- l. Output Tray
All printed documents are ejected from this slot.
- m. Ejection Guide
Guides printed documents as they are ejected.
- n. Top Cover
Open this cover to install the Printhead and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, as needed. (→P.16)
- o. Width Guide
When loading the sheets , move the guide to match the paper size.
- p. Stand
A stand that holds the printer. Equipped with casters to facilitate moving it. (→P.19)

Side



a. Manual Pocket

Store printer manuals in this pocket.

b. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port. The lamp is lit if the Ethernet cable is connected correctly and communication is possible between the computer and printer.

c. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. The printer is compatible with Hi-Speed USB connections.

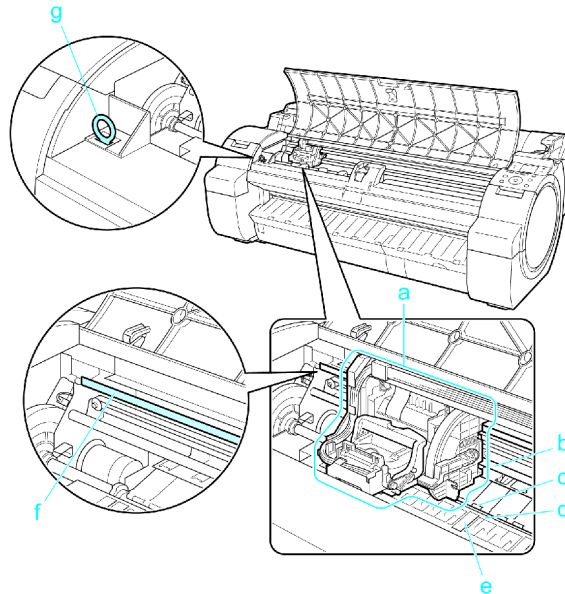
d. Carrying Handles

When carrying the printer, have three people hold it by these handles on the back at both ends.

e. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (→P.17)

b. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

c. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

d. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen to print. Vacuum holes on the platen hold paper in place.

e. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

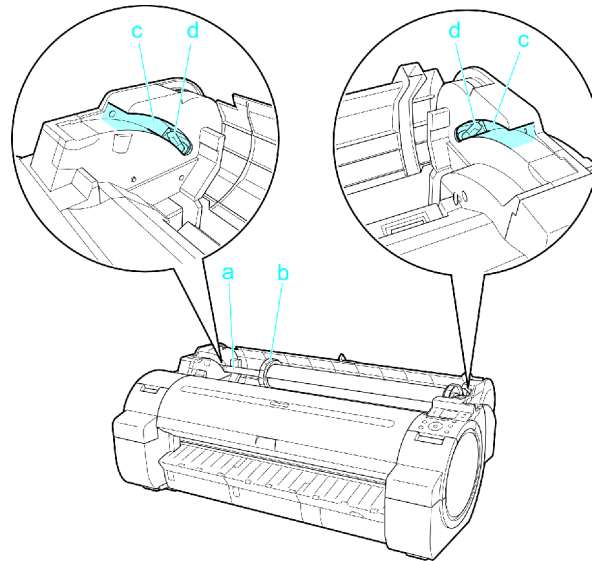
f. Linear Scale

The linear scale serves a key role in detecting the Carriage position. Be careful not to touch this part when cleaning inside the Top Cover or clearing paper jams.

g. Cleaning Brush

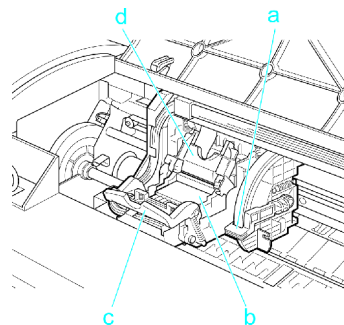
When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

Roll Cover (Inside)



- a. Roll Holder
Load the roll on this holder.
- b. Holder Stopper
Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.
- c. Roll Loading Slots
Slide the Roll Holder along these slots.
- d. Roll Holder Slot
Load the Roll Holder into this holder slot.

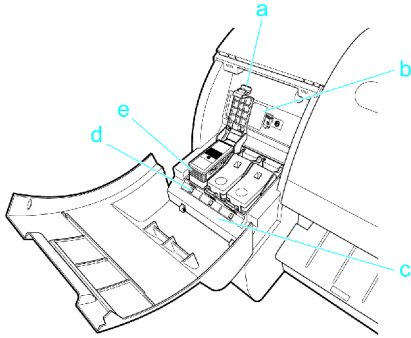
Carriage



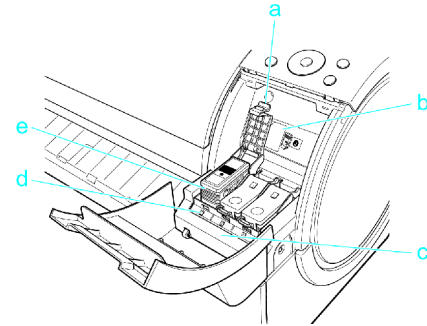
- a. Angle Adjustment Lever
Use this lever to fine-tune the printer to correct misalignment of printed lines.
- b. Printhead
The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. The carriage serves a key role in printing.
- c. Printhead Fixer Lever
Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.
- d. Printhead Fixer Cover
Holds the Printhead in place.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)

Left Side



Right Side

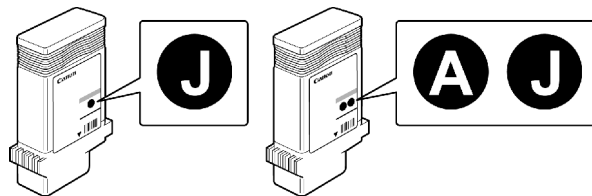


a. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and press down the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

b. Ink Set Label

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “J” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure a “J” is printed on the label. (→P.622)



c. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank that matches the color and name on this label.

d. Ink Lamp (Red)

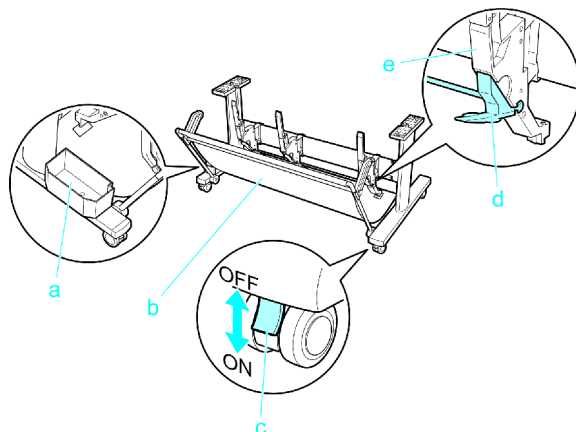
Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On
The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function has been released.
- Flashing Slowly
Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
There is no ink left.

e. Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

Stand



a. Accessory Pocket

Stores printer accessories.

b. Output Stacker

Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

c. Locking Caster

Lock to immobilize the caster.

Before moving the printer, always unlock all four casters. Moving the printer while casters are locked may scratch the casters or the floor.

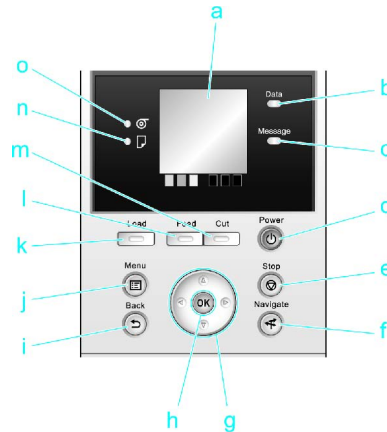
d. Adjustable Stopper

Pull out when using the output stacker in the extended position.

e. Paper Guide

Guides printed documents into the output stacker.

Control Panel



a. Display Screen

Shows printer menus, as well as the printer status and messages.

b. **Data Lamp** (green)

- Flashing
During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

c. **Message Lamp** (orange)

- On
A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
An error message is displayed.
- Off
The printer is off or is operating normally.

d. **Power** button (green)

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.24)

The **Power** button is lit when the printer is on or in Sleep mode.

e. **Stop** button

Cancels print jobs in progress and ends the ink drying period.

f. **Navigate** button


Enables you to check instructions for loading and removing paper or replacing ink tanks or printheads, as well as other operations. (→P.29)

g. Arrow buttons

- ◀ button
Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.
In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.
- ▲ button
Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.
- ▶ button
Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.
In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.
- ▼ button
Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

h. **OK** button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to display the menu of the tab shown.

Pressing this button in menu items of each tab for which  is displayed at left will move to the lower level of the menu item, enabling you to execute menu commands or set menu values.

Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

i. **Back** button

Displays the screen before the current screen.

j. **Menu** button

Displays the **Tab Selection screen**. (→P.49)

k. **Load** button

Press this button when loading or replacing paper.

(→P.106)

(→P.136)

l. **Feed** button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded enables you to reposition the paper. (→P.125)

m. **Cut** button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded cuts the paper, if you have specified **Automatic** or **Eject** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu. (→P.129)

n. **Cut Sheet lamp** (green)

Lit when sheets are selected as the paper source.

o. **Roll Media lamp** (green)

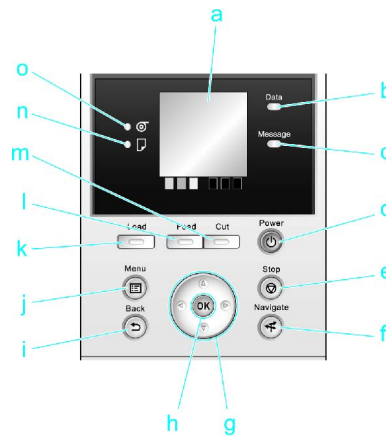
Lit when rolls are selected as the paper source.

**Note**

- To recover from Sleep mode, any button can be pressed except the **Power** button.

Control Panel

Control Panel



a. Display Screen

Shows printer menus, as well as the printer status and messages.

b. **Data Lamp** (green)

- Flashing
During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the print job is paused or the printer is updating the firmware.
- Off
There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

c. **Message Lamp** (orange)

- On
A warning message is displayed.
- Flashing
An error message is displayed.
- Off
The printer is off or is operating normally.

d. **Power** button (green)

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.24)

The **Power** button is lit when the printer is on or in Sleep mode.

e. **Stop** button

Cancels print jobs in progress and ends the ink drying period.


f. **Navigate** button

Enables you to check instructions for loading and removing paper or replacing ink tanks or printheads, as well as other operations. (→P.29)

g. Arrow buttons

- ◀ button
Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.
In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.
- ▲ button
Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.
- ▶ button
Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to move to another tab.
In menu items requiring numerical input, press this button to move to another digit.
- ▼ button
Press this button when viewing menus to display the next menu item or setting value.

h. **OK** button

Press this button on the **Tab Selection screen** to display the menu of the tab shown.
Pressing this button in menu items of each tab for which  is displayed at left will move to the lower level of the menu item, enabling you to execute menu commands or set menu values.
Also press this button if the Display Screen indicates to press the **OK** button.

i. **Back** button

Displays the screen before the current screen.

j. **Menu** button

Displays the **Tab Selection screen**. (→P.49)

k. **Load** button

Press this button when loading or replacing paper.
(→P.106)
(→P.136)

l. **Feed** button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded enables you to reposition the paper. (→P.125)

m. **Cut** button

Pressing this button when rolls are loaded cuts the paper, if you have specified **Automatic** or **Eject** in **Cutting Mode** in the Control Panel menu. (→P.129)

n. **Cut Sheet lamp** (green)

Lit when sheets are selected as the paper source.

o. **Roll Media lamp** (green)

Lit when rolls are selected as the paper source.



Note

- To recover from Sleep mode, any button can be pressed except the **Power** button.

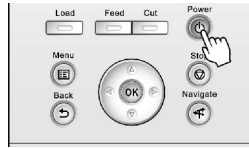
Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

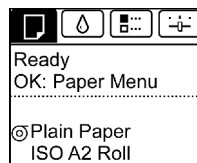
1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.

The printer will now start up.

After the Display Screen shows the Canon logo, **Starting up... Please wait.** is displayed.



2. The **Power Lamp** is lit when the printer finishes starting up, and the printer is now in **Standby**.



The printer will not go into **Standby** in the following situations. Take the appropriate action.

- The Top Cover is open
Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
see "Replacing the Printhead". (→P.633)
- An Ink Tank is not installed
see "Replacing Ink Tanks". (→P.623)
- If "ERROR" is shown on the Display Screen
(See "Error messages.")
- The **Power Lamp** and **Message Lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.
- No paper is loaded
Load paper. (→P.78) (→P.81)



Important

- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off



Important

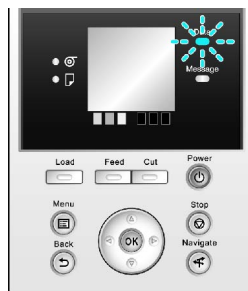
- Never disconnect the printer's power supply or unplug it during a print job. This may damage the printer.

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.

If the **Message Lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (See "Error Messages.")



If the **Data Lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.



After **Shut Down.. Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

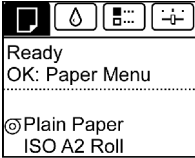
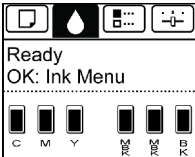
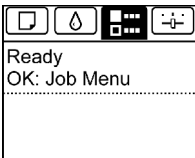
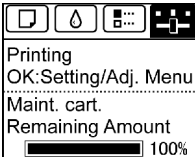
Control Panel Display

After the printer starts up, the **Tab Selection screen** is displayed.

Each of the four tabs presents status, menus, and error information related to the particular tab.

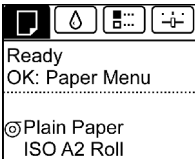
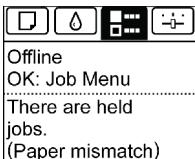

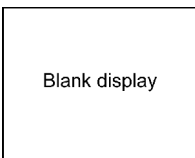
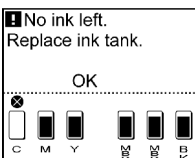
Types of tabs

The **Tab Selection screen** presents four tabs. Each tab is represented by an icon in the top row. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs.

<p>Paper tab</p> 	<p>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to paper. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Paper Menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top line displayed The paper icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed The first and second lines display the paper type and size.
<p>Ink tab</p> 	<p>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to ink. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Ink Menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top line displayed The ink icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed Here, the remaining ink level is indicated. (→P.628)
<p>Job tab</p> 	<p>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to print jobs. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Job Menu menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top line displayed The job icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names.
<p>Settings/Adj. tab</p> 	<p>A tab indicating status and showing menus related to settings and adjustment. Pressing the OK button when this tab is highlighted will display the Set./Adj. Menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top line displayed The settings/adjustment icon is highlighted. • Middle line displayed Indicates the printer status and shows menu names. • Bottom line displayed Indicates the remaining maintenance cartridge capacity.

Printer status and modes

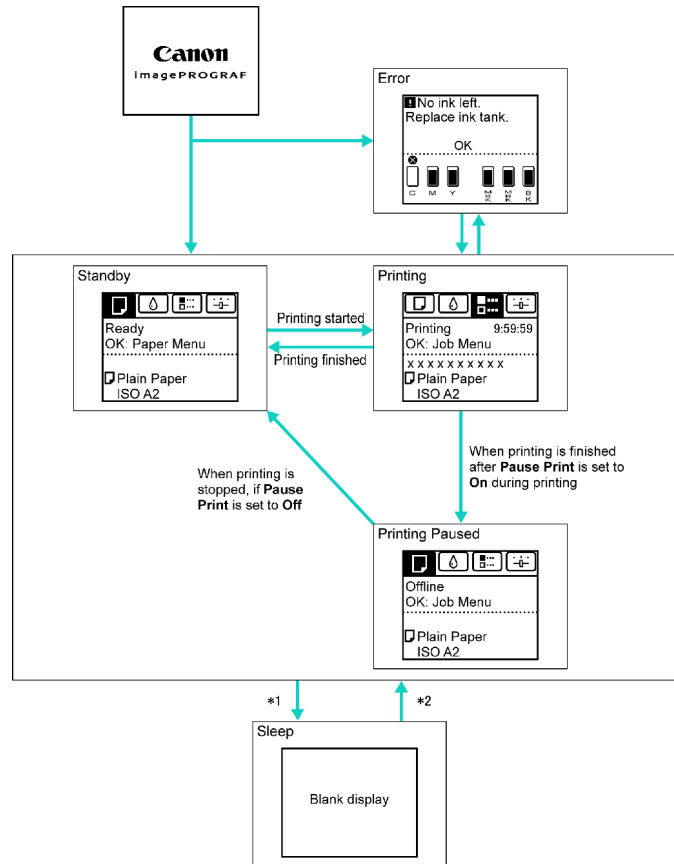
Printer status is classified according to the following five modes.

<p>Standby</p> 	<p>The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed immediately.</p>
<p>Printing Paused</p> 	<p>Printing is paused on the printer. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.</p>
<p>Printing</p> 	<p>Printing is in progress on the printer. Jobs sent from the computer are printed after the current job. The time left until printing is finished is indicated in the upper-right corner of the screen. (Values exceeding 10 hours are not shown.)</p>
<p>Sleep</p> 	<p>The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the Sleep Timer menu. (→P.49) After entering Sleep mode from Standby mode, the printer automatically recovers if print jobs are received, and the jobs are printed.</p>
<p>Error</p> 	<p>The printer requires your attention. Any jobs sent from the computer cannot be processed. The tab related to the error is displayed. For information about the display in the case of multiple errors, see “Error message mode transition”.</p>

Mode transition

- Mode display

The printer mode is indicated as follows.



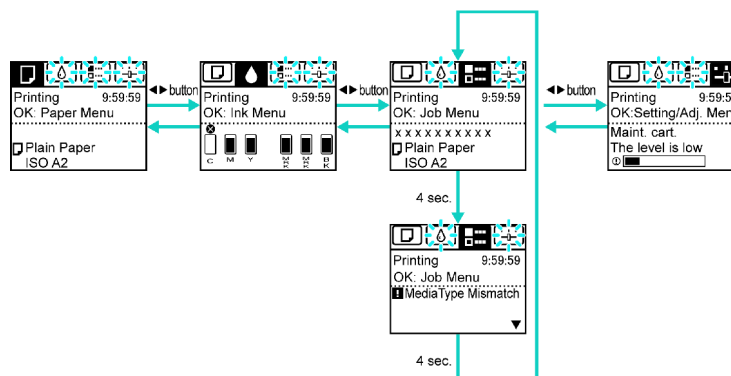
*1: The printer automatically enters **Sleep** mode when idle for a specific period (by default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed. However, it does not enter **Sleep** mode while error messages are displayed.

*2: In **Sleep** mode, any button can be pressed except the **Power** button to recover from **Sleep** mode. **Sleep** mode is also terminated if a print job is received or a command is issued from RemoteUI.

- Error display

Mode transition during error display is as follows.

If multiple errors occur, tabs related to errors other than the error currently shown flash. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to access other tabs and check those errors. If multiple errors occur that are related to the Job tab and Settings/Adj. tab, each error message is displayed for 4 seconds on each tab before another message is shown.

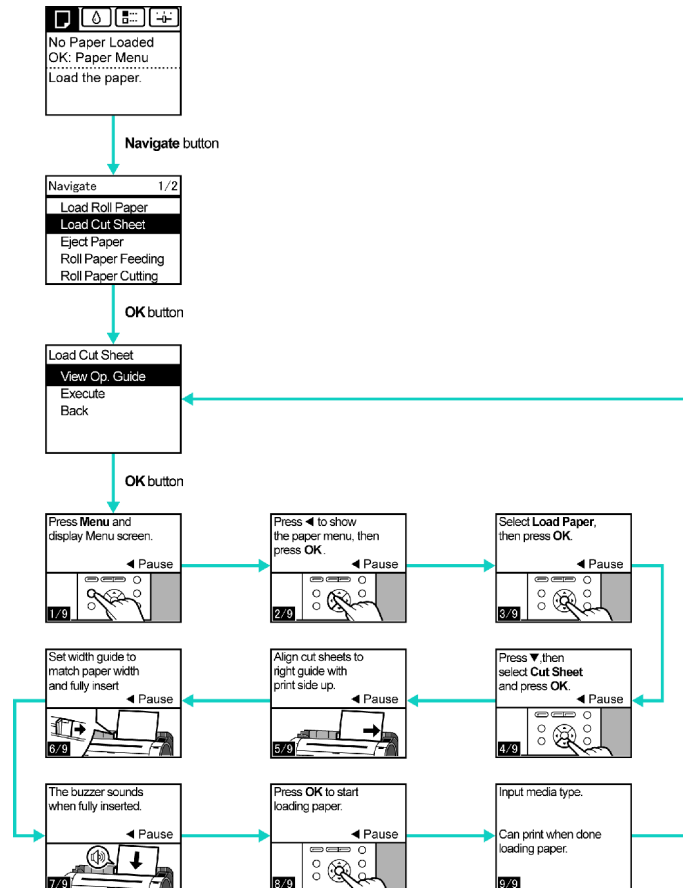


How to View Instructions With Navigate

You can refer to instructions for loading paper, replacing ink tanks, and performing other operations on the printer control panel.

1. Press the **Navigate** button.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the desired navigation menu.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **View Op. Guide**, and then press the **OK** button.
Instructions are now displayed.

Example: Loading sheets



Printer Menu Operations

The printer menu is classified into menu items available when no print job is in progress and menu items only available during printing.

- Menu operations when no print job is in progress (→P.30)
- Menu operations during printing (→P.31)

Menu operations when no print job is in progress

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, pressing **OK** will not display menus. Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu.

- **Paper Menu**
Paper menu settings
- **Ink Menu**
Ink menu operations
- **Job Menu**
Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
Menu operations for printer adjustment and maintenance
Settings related to HP-GL2 jobs

For a description of specific menu items available, see “Menu Settings”. (→P.49)

For instructions on selecting menu items, see “Menu Operations”. (→P.32)



Note

- By default, menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Menu operations during printing

To display menus during printing, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel, and then press the **OK** button. Other menus are available after printing is finished.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, pressing **OK** will not display menus. Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

The following operations are available from the menu during printing.

- **Ink Menu**
Ink menu operations
- **Job Menu**
Menu operations to manage print jobs
- **Set./Adj. Menu**
Fine-tuning paper feeding
Display of printer-related information

For a description of specific menu items available during printing, see “Menu Settings (During Printing)”.
(→P.60)

For instructions on selecting menu items during printing, see “Menu Operations”. (→P.32)

☰ Menu Operations

To view available menus organized on tabs, select a tab on the **Tab Selection screen** and press the **OK** button. For details, see “Menu Settings”. (→P.49)

- Menus (when the Ink tab is selected and the **OK** button is pressed)

☒ Ink Menu
Rep. Ink Tank
Head Cleaning A



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, pressing **OK** will not display menus. Menus can be selected after you resolve the problem.

Simply press buttons on the Control Panel to access menus on various tabs from the **Tab Selection screen** and set or execute **Menu** items.

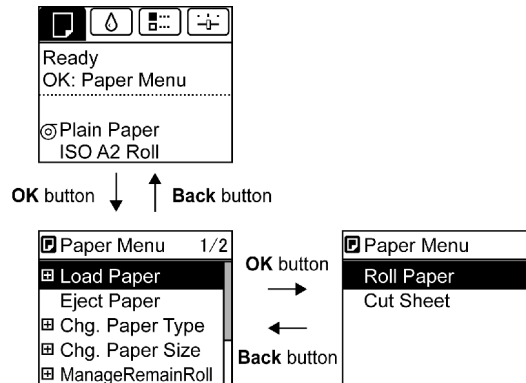
The following section describes menu operations and how they are presented in this **User Manual**.

- Accessing menus (→P.33)
- Specifying menu items (→P.34)
- Specifying numerical values (→P.34)
- Executing menu commands (→P.34)

Accessing menus

Printer menus are grouped by function.

Menus are displayed with the upper line selected. You can use the buttons on the Control Panel to access each menu.



- Press **Back** to access a higher menu in the menu list, and press **OK** to access a lower one. If not all menu items are displayed, hold down **▲** or **▼** to scroll through higher and lower menu items. Items you select are highlighted.



The scroll bar at right indicates the current position in the overall menu.

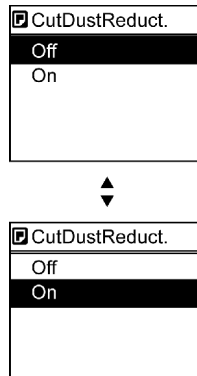
- Lower menus are available if **+** is displayed at right next to the second and subsequent rows. To access the lower menus, select the menu and press the **OK** button.



Specifying menu items

Menu items can be set as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting, and then press the **OK** button.



After two seconds, the display reverts to the upper level menu.



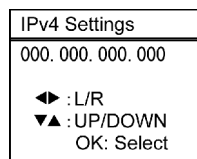
Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Specifying numerical values

Follow these steps to enter numbers. In this example, network settings items are entered.

1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.



2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.



Note

- Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If a confirmation message is displayed regarding the setting you entered, press the **OK** button. The setting is applied, and the printer is now in **Standby**.

Executing menu commands

Menu commands can be executed as follows.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the action to execute, and then press the **OK** button.
The menu command is now executed.

Menu Structure

The menu structure is organized by tabs, as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk are the defaults.

- **Paper Menu** (→P.35)
- **Ink Menu** (→P.37)
- **Job Menu** (→P.38)
- **Set./Adj. Menu** (→P.39)

For instructions on menu operations, see “Menu Operations”. (→P.32)

For details on menu items, see “Menu Settings”. (→P.49)

Paper Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level
Load Paper	Roll Paper	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1)	
	Cut Sheet	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1)	
Eject Paper			
Chg. Paper Type (*1)	Roll Paper		
	Cut Sheet		
Chg. Paper Size	Sheet Size	(The size of paper is displayed here.) (*2)	
	Roll Length (*3)		
	Roll Width (*4)		
ManageRemainRoll	Off *		
	On		
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.) (*1)	Head Height	Automatic *
			Highest
			High
			Standard
			Low
			Lowest
			Super Low
		Skew Check Lv.	High Accuracy
			Standard *
			Loose
			Off
		Cutting Mode	Automatic
			Eject
			Manual
		Cut Speed	Fast

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level
			Standard
			Slow
		Trim Edge First	Automatic
			Off
			On
		CutDustReduct.	Off
			On
		VacuumStrngth	Automatic *
			Strongest
			Strong
			Standard
			Weak
			Weakest
		Scan Wait Time	Off
			1 sec.
			3 sec.
			5 sec.
			7 sec.
			9 sec.
		Roll DryingTime	Off
			30 sec.
			1 min.
			3 min.
			5 min.
			10 min.
			30 min.
			60 min.
		NearEnd RollMrgn	3mm
			20mm
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	3mm
			20mm
		Bordless Margin	Automatic
			Fixed
		Width Detection	Off
			On *

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level
		Return Defaults	
Paper Details			
Keep Paper Type	Off *		
	On		

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95) Types of paper in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information with the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

*2: For information on the sizes of paper the printer supports, see "Paper Sizes". (→P.100)

*3: Available only if **ManageRemainRoll** is **On**.

*4: Available only if **Width Detection** is **Off**.

Ink Menu

First Level
Rep. Ink Tank
Head Cleaning A

Job Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	Document Name		
		User Name		
		Page Count		
		Job Status	OK	
			CANCELED	
		Print Start Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		Print End Time	yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm:ss	
		Print Time	xxxsec.	
		Print Size	xxxxxxxxsq.mm	
		Media Type		
		Interface	USB	
			Network	
		Ink Consumed	(The ink color is displayed here.)	xxx.xxx ml
Print Job Log				
Pause Print	Off *			
	On			

Set./Adj. Menu

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
Test Print	Nozzle Check						
	Status Print						
	Interface Print						
	GL2 Set Print						
	Paper Details						
	Print Job Log						
	Menu Map						
	Color Palette						
Adjust Printer	Head Posi. Adj.	Auto (Standard)					
		Auto (Advanced)					
		Manual (*1)					
	Head Inc. Adj.						
	Feed Priority	Adj. Priority	Automatic *				
			Print Quality				
			Print Length				
		Adj. Quality (*2)	Auto (Genuine Ppr)				
			Auto (Other Paper)				
			Manual				
		Adjust Length (*3)	Adjustment Print	A:High			
				B:Standard/Draft			
			Change Settings	A:High			

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
				B:Standard/ Draft			
	Adj. Fine Feed (*2)						
Mainte- nance	Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A					
		Head Cleaning B					
	Nozzle Check						
	Replace P.head						
	Repl. maint cart						
	Head Info	Product Name:					
		s/n:					
		Days elapsed:					
		Count [Mdot]:					
GL2 Replot							
GL2 BufferClear							
GL2 Settings	Quality Manager	Color Mode	Monoch- rome				
			Color (CAD) 1 *				
			Color (CAD) 2				
			Color (CAD) 3				
			Color (CAD) 4				
			Color (CAD) 5				
		Print Quality	Fast				
			Standard *				
			High				

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		Input Resolution	600dpi *				
			300dpi				
		Print (Economy)	Off *				
			On				
	Paper Manager	Paper Source	Automatic *				
			Roll Paper				
			Cut Sheet				
		Margin	3mm (Standard) *				
			5mm				
		Conserve Paper	Off *				
			On				
		Auto Rotate	Off *				
			On				
	Line & Pen Manager	Enable merge	Off *				
			On				
		Pen Setup	Select Palette	Software *			
				Palette A			
				Palette B			
				Factory			
			Define Palette	Palette A	(Select the pen number)	Width	(Indicates the value of Width)
						Color	0-255
						Line Attributes	No Setting
							Circle Setting

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
				Palette B	(Select the pen number)	(Indicates Width, Color, and Line Attributes)	(Specify the values of Width, Color, and Line Attributes)
				Factory	(Select the pen number)	(Indicates Width, Color, and Line Attributes)	
			Reset Palette	All Palette			
				Palette A			
				Palette B			
		Smoothing	Software *				
			Smooth				
		Thicken FineLines	Off *				
			On				
		Adjust FaintLines	Off				
			On *				
	Processing Option	Warning	Off *				
			On				
		PageSize Process1	Off *				
			On				
		PageSize Process2	Off *				
			On				
	GL2 Set Print						
Interface Setup	EOP Timer (*8)	10 sec.					
		30 sec.					
		1 min.					
		2 min.					
		5 min.					
		10 min. *					

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		30 min.					
		60 min.					
	TCP/IP (*8)	IPv4	IPv4 Mode	Automatic			
				Manual *			
			Protocol (*4)	DHCP	On		
					Off *		
				BOOTP	On		
					Off *		
				RARP	On		
					Off *		
			IPv4 Settings (*9)	IP Address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx		
				Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx		
				Default G/W	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx		
		IPv6	IPv6 Support	On			
				Off *			
			IPv6 Stateless Addrs	On *			
				Off			
			DHCPv6	On			
				Off *			
	NetWare (*8)	NetWare	On				
			Off *				
		Frame Type (*5)	Auto Detect				
			Ethernet 2				
			Ethernet 802.2 *				
			Ethernet 802.3				
			Ethernet SNAP				

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		Print Service (*5)	Bindery PServer				
			RPrinter				
			NDS PServer *				
			NPrinter				
	AppleTalk (*8)	On					
		Off *					
	Ethernet Driver (*8)	Auto Detect	On *				
			Off				
		Comm. Mode (*6)	Half Duplex *				
			Full Duplex				
		Ethernet Type (*6)	10 Base-T *				
			100 Base-TX				
			1000 Base-T				
		Spanning Tree	Not Use *				
			Use				
		MAC Address	XXXXXXXXXX XXX				
	Interface Print (*8)						
	Return Defaults (*8)						
System Setup	Sleep Timer	5 min. *					
		10 min.					
		15 min.					
		20 min.					
		30 min.					
		40 min.					
		50 min.					

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		60 min.					
		240 min.					
	Buzzer	Off					
		On *					
	Contrast Adj.	-4, -3, -2, -1, 0*, +1, +2, +3, +4					
	Date & Time (*8)	Date	yyyy/mm/dd (*7)				
			Time	hh:mm			
	Date Format (*8)	yyyy/mm/dd *					
		dd/mm/yyyy					
		mm/dd/yyyy					
	Language	English *					
		日本語					
		Français					
		Italiano					
		Deutsch					
		Español					
		Русский					
		中文 (简体字)					
		한국어					
	Time Zone (*8)	0:London (GMT)					
		+1:Paris, Rome					
		+2:Athens, Cairo					
		+3:Moscow					
		+4:Eerevan, Baku					

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		+5: Islamabad					
		+6:Dacca					
		+7:Bangkok					
		+8:Hong Kong					
		+9:Tokyo, Seoul					
		+10: Canberra					
		+11New Caledonia					
		+12: Wellington					
		-12: Eniwetok					
		-11:Midway is.					
		-10:Hawaii (AHST)					
		-9:Alaska (AKST)					
		-8:Oregon (PST)					
		-7:Arizona (MST)					
		-6:Texas (CST)					
		-5:NewYork (EST)					
		-4:Santiago					
		-3:Buenos Aires					
		-2:					
		-1:Cape Verde					
	Length Unit	meter *					
		feet/inch					
	Detect Mismatch	Pause					

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
		Warning					
		None *					
	Paper Size Basis	Roll Selection 1	ISO A3 (297mm) *				
			300mm Roll				
		Roll Selection 2	10in. (254mm) *				
			JIS B4 (257mm)				
	Keep Paper Size	Off *					
		On					
	TrimEdge Reload	Automatic					
		Off *					
		On					
	Rep.P.head Print	Off					
		On *					
	Nozzle Check	Frequency	Standard *				
			1 page				
		Warning	Off *				
			On				
	Use RemoteUI (*8)	On *					
		Off					
	Reset PaprSetngs (*8)						
Prep.Move Printer							
Admin. Menu (*8)	Change Password (*9)						
	Init.Admin. Pswd (*9)						

Control Panel

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level	Seventh Level	Eighth Level
Printer Info	Paper Info						
	Ink Info						
	Head Info						
	System Info						
	Error Log						
	Other Counter						

*1: Available after you have used **Auto(Advanced)** in **Head Posi. Adj.** once.

*2: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Quality**.

*3: Available if **Adj. Priority** is **Automatic** or **Print Length**.

*4: Not displayed if **IPv4 Mode** is **Manual**.

*5: Not displayed if **NetWare** is **Off**.

*6: Not displayed if **Auto Detect** is **On**.

*7: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.

*8: Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators, and only viewing for other users.

*9: Viewing and configuration is possible for administrators only.

Menu Settings

Menu items are as follows.

For instructions on selecting menu items, see “Menu Operations”. (→P.32)

For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Paper Menu

Setting Item		Description, Instructions	
Load Paper		Select sheets or rolls and load the paper.	
Eject Paper		Choose this item before removing loaded paper.	
Chg. Paper Type (*1)		Change the type of paper loaded. (→P.110)	
Chg. Paper Size		Change the size of paper loaded. (→P.112) (→P.100)	
ManageRemainRoll		Choose On to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose Off if you prefer not to print the barcode. (→P.126)	
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.611)
		Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese paper (washi) or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose Loose for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose Off to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is Off , note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
		Cutting Mode	Specify whether or not to cut with the standard round-bladed cutter. Choose Automatic to have the roll cut automatically after printing. If you choose Manual , the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position. Choose Eject if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry.
		Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. If you use adhesive paper, choosing Slow helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp.
		Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut.
		CutDustReduct.	If you choose On , a line will be printed at the cut position when paper cutting is selected. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. It also helps prevent adhesive from sticking to the cutter and keeps the cutter sharp if you use adhesive paper. (→P.134)

Setting Item		Description, Instructions	
Paper Details	(The type of paper is displayed here.)(*1)	VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen. (→P.621)
		Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the ink dries. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
		Roll DryingTime	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
		NearEnd RollMrgn	Specify the minimum margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose 3mm , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. It may also cause the Platen to become soiled.
		NearEnd Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose 3mm , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
		Bordless Margin	Adjust the margin during borderless printing. Choose Automatic to have the printer automatically detect the paper width and configure the margin settings for borderless printing. If margins are mistakenly created when Automatic is selected, choose Fixed . In this case, the paper width is not detected automatically, and the document is printed without borders, using the margin settings required by the printer.
		Width Detection	Specify this option to print inside boundaries or in other cases when specifying a particular starting position for printing. (→P.113) Paper width and skew are not detected if you select Off . If paper is loaded askew, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.
	Return Defaults	Choose OK to restore Paper Details to the default values.	
Paper Details		Print the paper settings as specified in Paper Details .	
Keep Paper Type		Select On when printing on a particular type of paper regularly. (→P.110)	

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the printer driver from the User Software CD-ROM or if you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (→P.623)
Head Cleaning A	Printhead cleaning options. (→P.632) Execute Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

Job Menu

Setting Item		Description, Instructions	
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)	Document Name	Indicates the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Indicates the number of pages in the job.
		Job Status	Indicates the printing results.
		Print Start Time	Indicates when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Indicates when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Indicates the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Indicates the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
		Interface	Indicates the interface used for the print job.
Ink Consumed	Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page.(*1)		
Print Job Log		Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page.(*1)	
Pause Print		Choose On to stop printing.	



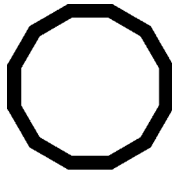
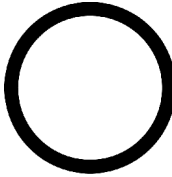
*1: Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is $\pm 15\%$. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

Set./Adj. Menu

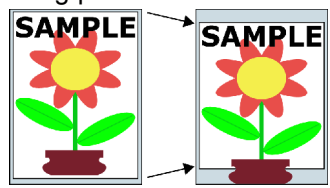
Setting Item		Description, Instructions		
Test Print	Nozzle Check		Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.	
	Status Print		Print information about the printer.	
	Interface Print		Print interface settings information.	
	GL2 Set Print		Print GL2 settings information.	
	Paper Details		Print the paper settings as specified in Paper Details .	
	Print Job Log		Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page.(*1)	
	Menu Map		Print the menu structure.	
	Color Palette		Print the GL2 color palette.	
Adjust Printer	Head Posi. Adj.	Auto(Standard)	The printer prints and reads a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.604)	
		Auto(Advanced)	The printer prints and reads a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction and spacing between nozzles and colors. (→P.604)	
		Manual	Print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.606)	
	Head Inc. Adj.		Print a test pattern for adjustment of the Printhead orientation. (→P.608)	
	Feed Priority	Adj. Priority	Automatic	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, select Automatic . Choose Print Quality for attractive printing. Choosing Print Quality also makes banding less noticeable. Choose Print Length if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that slight banding may occur in the direction of carriage scanning when Print Length is selected.
			Print Quality	
			Print Length	
	Adj. Quality	Auto(GenuinePpr)	Specify this mode with paper identified in the Paper Reference Guide. The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. (→P.614)	

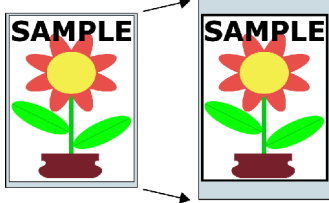
Setting Item				Description, Instructions
Adjust Printer	Feed Priority	Adj. Quality	Auto(OtherPaper)	Specify this mode with paper not in the Paper Reference Guide. The printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and consumes more ink than Auto(GenuinePpr) . (→P.614)
			Manual	Use this mode with highly transparent media or other paper for which Auto(GenuinePpr) or Auto(OtherPaper) cannot be used. Print a test pattern for adjustment of the feed amount based on the type of paper. (→P.616)
	Adjust Length	Adjustment Print	A:High	Print a test pattern for particular types of paper to compensate for paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.619)
			B: Standard/Draft	
	Change Settings	A:High	B: Standard/Draft	Displayed when you have selected Feed Priority > Adj. Priority > Print Length . Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. Enter either the adjustment results from AdjustmentPrint or the discrepancy that you measured (as a percentage). For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value.
				Displayed when you have selected Feed Priority > Adj. Priority > Automatic or Print Quality . Fine-tune the feed amount manually during printing. (→P.618)
Adj. Fine Feed			Displayed when you have selected Feed Priority > Adj. Priority > Automatic or Print Quality . Fine-tune the feed amount manually during printing. (→P.618)	
Maintenance	Head Cleaning		Clean the Printhead. (→P.632) Choose Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose Head Cleaning B if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by Head Cleaning A .	
	Nozzle Check		Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.	
	Replace P.head		When replacing the Printhead, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.633) Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.	
	Repl. maint cart		When replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, choose Yes and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.639)	
	Head Info		Indicates information about the printhead.	
GL2 Replot			Print the previous GL2 print job again.	

Setting Item			Description, Instructions	
GL2 BufferClear			Clear the print data in the replot buffer.	
GL2 Settings	Quality Manager	Color Mode	Monochrome	Print in monochrome.
			Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.
			Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
			Color (CAD) 3	Print emulating the following printers, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers: Canon iPF500, iPF600, iPF700, iPF510, iPF610, iPF710, iPF605, iPF720, iPF810, and iPF820.(*2)
			Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.(*2)
			Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet 1000, in colors resembling colors produced by this printer.(*2)
	Print Quality		Choose the print quality.	
	Input Resolution		Choose the printer input resolution, 600dpi or 300dpi .	
	Print (Economy)		Although printing quality is diminished, less ink is consumed than in regular printing. Select On to conserve ink.	
	Paper Manager	Paper Source		Choose the source of paper for HP-GL/2 printing.
		Margin		Specify the margin around paper. The margin for the trailing edge of sheets is 23 mm (0.9 in). However, if you have specified the leading margin in Paper Details , the value in Paper Details has priority.
		Conserve Paper		Conserves paper when printing.
		Auto Rotate		If the long side of an original is shorter than the roll width, the original is automatically rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper. Similarly, if the long side of an original in landscape orientation is longer than the roll width and the short side is shorter than the roll width, the original is repositioned to fit on the paper. HP RTL print jobs are not rotated. Because HP RTL images are not rotated even if the paper is rotated 90 degrees, images may be cut off or the blank paper may be ejected. In this case, set Auto Rotate to Off .
Line & Pen Manager	Enable merge		Specify whether to merge or print over colors where lines overlap. Choose Off to print the second line over the first. Choose On to merge all overlapping colors.	
	Pen Setup	Select Palette	As pen values, choose Software , Palette A , Palette B , or Factory . Choose Software to print according to software settings. Choose Palette A or Palette B to print using the value specified in Define Palette .	

Setting Item			Description, Instructions		
GL2 Settings	Line & Pen Manager	Pen Setup	Define Palette	<p>Specify the Width, Color, and Line Attributes in the palette Pen no.. Choose Factory to confirm the values when Factory is selected in Select Palette. In Line Attributes, choose No Setting or Circle Setting as the processing for the ends and junctions of lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose No Setting  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Circle Setting 	
			Reset Palette	Restore Define Palette to the default palette settings.	
		Smoothing		<p>Choose whether to print arcs as smooth curved lines or as multiple connected line segments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Software Operation is determined by the application. If nothing is specified by the application, the result is as shown in the figure.  <p>Note: By default, this is a 72-sided figure</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you choose Smooth 	
		ThickenFineLines		Select On to print fine lines more distinctly.	
		AdjustFaintLines		If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, selecting Off may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.	
		Process- ing Option	Warning		Select On to have any GL2-related warnings displayed.
			PageSizeProcess1		Normally, the area available for printing excludes a margin required by the printer, and images are positioned accordingly. Selecting On in this setting eliminates any misalignment of the printing position if the image itself includes a border.

Setting Item			Description, Instructions		
GL2 Settings	Process- ing Option	PageSizeProcess2	Selecting On will determine the paper size based on the image rendering area.		
	GL2 Set Print		Print GL2 settings information.		
Interface Setup	EOP Timer		Specify the timeout period before cancellation of print jobs that cannot be received by the printer.		
	TCP/IP	IPv4	IPv4 Mode	Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.	
			Protocol	DHCP	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
				BOOTP	
		RARP			
		IPv4 Settings	IP Address	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address.	
			Subnet Mask	Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway.	
			Default G/W		
		IPv6	IPv6 Support	Specify whether to connect via IPv6.	
			IPv6 StatelessAddrs	Specify whether a IPv6 stateless address is used.	
	DHCPv6		Specify whether DHCPv6 settings are used.		
	NetWare	NetWare		Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting .	
		Frame Type		Specify the frame type to use.	
		Print Service		Choose the print service.	
	AppleTalk			Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting .	
	Ethernet Driver	Auto Detect		Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose Register Setting . Choose On for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose Off to use settings values of Comm.Mode and Ethernet Type .	
		Comm.Mode		Choose the LAN communication method.	
Ethernet Type		Choose the LAN transfer rate.			
Spanning Tree		Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.			
MAC Address		Indicates the MAC address.			
Interface Print			Print interface settings information.		
Return Defaults			Choose OK to restore Interface Setup settings to the default values.		

Setting Item		Description, Instructions	
System Setup	Sleep Timer	Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.	
	Buzzer	Choose On for the buzzer to sound in case of errors.	
	Contrast Adj.	Adjust the Display Screen contrast level.	
	Date & Time	Date	Set the current date.
		Time	Set the current time. Available only if the Date setting is specified.
	Date Format	Specify the date format.	
	Language	Specify the language used on the Display Screen.	
	Time Zone	Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.	
	Length Unit	Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. Change the unit displayed for the remaining amount of roll paper.	
	Detect Mismatch	Specify printing behavior if the type and size of paper specified in the printer menu does not match the type and size in the printer driver. Choose Pause to have printing paused under these circumstances. Choose Warning to continue printing after notification. Choose None to continue printing without notification.	
	Paper Size Basis	Roll Selection 1	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether ISO A3 (297mm) or 300mm Roll is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.
Roll Selection 2		If roll size detection is activated, choose whether 10in. (254mm) or JIS B4 (257mm) is applied when a roll of an intermediate width is detected.	
Keep Paper Size	Choose On to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed. 		

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
System Setup	Keep Paper Size	<p>Choose Off to give priority to margin settings. The larger value is used if the margin specified in the printer driver does not match the margin in the printer menu</p> 
	TrimEdge Reload	<p>Specify whether to trim the leading edge of the currently retracted roll when the roll is advanced. Cut the edge if you are concerned about any marks left on the roll when the roll is left in the retracted position. Specify On to have rolls cut when printing begins after Sleep mode or when the power is restored. Selecting Automatic will trim the edge when the roll has been in the retracted position for two days or more.</p>
	Rep.P.head Print	<p>Choose On to have the printer automatically execute the Advanced Adj. operations after you replace the Printhead. (→P.604)</p>
	Nozzle Check	<p>In Frequency, specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose Standard to have the printer adjust the timing for checks based on the frequency of nozzle use. Choose 1 page to check once per page. Select Warning > On to display warnings if the nozzles clog during printing.</p>
	Use RemoteUI	<p>Choosing Off prohibits access from RemoteUI. Settings can only be configured from the control panel.</p>
	Reset PaprSetngs	<p>Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the default values.</p>
Prep.MovePrinter		<p>Select this option when transferring the printer to another location. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (→P.651) Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low.</p>
Admin. Menu	Change Password	<p>By setting a password, you can restrict menu display and configuration as follows. You can input between 0 and 9999999.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Viewing and configuration by administrators only <p>IPv4 Settings Change Password Init.Admin.Pswd</p>

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Admin. Menu	Change Password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Viewing and configuration by administrators, and only viewing by other users Interface Setup settings (except IPv4 Settings) Date & Time Date Format Time Zone Use RemoteUI Reset PaprSetngs
	Init.Admin.Pswd	Choose OK to restore the Admin. Menu password to the default values.
Printer Info	Paper Info	Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info	Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.
	Head Info	Indicates the model name, serial number, number of days used, and dot count of the current printhead.
	System Info	Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log	Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Other Counter	Indicates the total printing volume of the printer.

*1: Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is $\pm 15\%$. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

*2: It is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

☰ Menu Settings (During Printing)

Menu items are described in the following tables.

For instructions on selecting menu items, see “Menu Operations”. (→P.32)

For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.35)

Ink Menu

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Rep. Ink Tank	Replace the Ink Tank at this point. Follow the instructions displayed to complete the required procedure. (→P.623)
Head Cleaning A	Clean the Printhead. (→P.632) Execute Head Cleaning A if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances.

Job Menu

Setting Item		Description, Instructions	
Job Log	(Choose from information about the last three print jobs.)	Document Name	Indicates the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Indicates the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Indicates the number of pages in the job.
		Job Status	Indicates the printing results.
		Print Start Time	Indicates when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Indicates when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Indicates the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Indicates the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Indicates the type of paper in the print job.
		Interface	Indicates the interface used for the print job.
Ink Consumed	Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page.(*1)		
Print Job Log		Print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink consumed, and so on. Ink consumption indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page.(*1)	
Pause Print		Choose On to stop printing.	

*1: Indicates a rough estimate of how much ink was consumed per page. Actual ink consumption may be different. The average margin of error for estimates calculated according to Canon measurement conditions for ink costs is $\pm 15\%$. Canon does not guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. Estimates may vary depending on conditions of use. Calculation of these estimates does not include ink consumed when cleaning printheads by forceful ejection of ink.

Set./Adj. Menu

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Adj. Fine Feed		Displayed when you have selected Feed Priority > Adj. Priority > Automatic or Print Quality . Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
Printer Info	Paper Info	Indicates the current paper size, type, and related printer settings.
	Ink Info	Indicates ink levels and maintenance cartridge capacity.
	Head Info	Indicates the model name, serial number, number of days used, and dot count of the current printhead.
	System Info	Indicates the firmware version, serial number, and interface information.
	Error Log	Indicates the most recent error messages (up to five).
	Other Counter	Indicates the total printing volume of the printer.

☰ Status Print

You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.

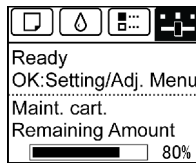
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the status of consumables.

Printing Status Print reports

1. Load paper.

If using sheets, load paper of A4/Letter size. You will need at least two sheets.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select Settings/Adj. tab
.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Status Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Checking the information in Status Print reports

The following information is included in **Status Print** reports.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model
Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	Indicates when the status print report was printed.
Paper Menu	Information on the loaded paper.
Roll Media Type	
Cut Sheet Type	
ManageRemainRoll	
Keep Paper Type	

Ink Menu		Ink-related information.
	MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)
	C, M, Y, MBK, MBK2, BK	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.

Set./Adj. Menu		System settings.
	System Setup	
	Sleep Timer	Printer system settings, as well as settings regarding warnings and errors.
	Buzzer	
	Contrast Adj.	
	Date Format	
	Language	
	Time Zone	
	Length Unit	
	Detect Mismatch	
	Paper Size Basis	
		Roll Selection 2
	Keep Paper Size	Current paper-related settings.
	TrimEdge Reload	
	Rep.P.head Print	Settings after a test pattern was printed following head replacement.
	Nozzle Check	Nozzle-check settings.
	Timing	
		Warning
	Use RemoteUI	Settings used by RemoteUI.
Printer Info		The past five error codes.
	Error Log	

HEAD LOT NUMBER		Printhead lot number.
	LOT	
PARTS STATUS		Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER xx	


Control Panel

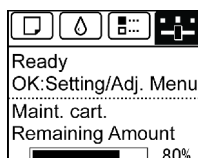
COUNTER		Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).		
	CUTTER			
	MEDIA			
			LIFE TTL	
			LIFE ROLL	
			LIFE CUTSHEET	
	MEDIA 1-7, OTHER			
			NAME	
			TTL	
			ROLL	
			CUTSHEET	
	AFTER INSTALLATION			

Printing Interface Setting Reports

You can print an **Interface Print** report indicating the current interface settings values of the printer. **Interface Print** reports indicate settings values for TCP/IP, NetWare, and other settings.

Printing Interface Print reports

1. Load the paper.
If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized, you will need at least three sheets.
2. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()



Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

Confirming Interface Print information

The following information is included in the **Interface Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Interface Print	Printer model
Firm	Firmware Version
Boot	Boot ROM Version
MIT(DBF)	MIT Database Format Version
MIT(DB)	MIT Database Version
S/N	Printer serial number
Date	The date when the interface setup print report was printed.

EOP Timer		Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.
TCP/IPv4	Frame Type	IPv4 settings values.
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address	
	Subnet Mask	
	Gateway Address	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Use Discovery	
	Scope	
	SMTP Server Address	
	Primary DNS Server Address	
	Secondary DNS Server Address	
	DNS Host Name	
DNS Domain Name		
MulticastDNS ServiceName		
SNMPv1		
SNMPv3		

TCP/IPv6	Use IPv6		IPv6 settings values.
	Use DHCPv6	Stateful Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use a stateless address	Stateless Address 1	
		Prefix Length 1	
		Stateless Address 2	
		Prefix Length 2	
		Stateless Address 3	
		Prefix Length 3	
		Stateless Address 4	
		Prefix Length 4	
		Stateless Address 5	
		Prefix Length 5	
		Stateless Address 6	
		Prefix Length 6	
	Use a link-local Address	Link-Local Address	
		Prefix Length	
	Use a manual address	IP Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Default Router Address	
		Prefix Length	
		Primary DNS Server Address	
		Secondary DNS Server Address	
	Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4	DNS Host Name	
		DNS Domain Name	
Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses			
Dynamically update the stateless address			
Dynamically update the manual address			

Control Panel

NetWare	Frame Type		NetWare settings values.
	IPX External Network Number		
	Node Number		
	Print Application		
	Bindery Pserver(*1)	File Server Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter(*1)	Print Server Name	
		Printer Number	
	NDS Pserver(*1)	Tree Name	
		Context Name	
		Print Server Name	
		Print Server Password	
		Polling Interval	
Nprinter(*1)	Print Server Name		
	Printer Number		
AppleTalk	Phase Type		AppleTalk settings values.
	Name		
	Network Number		
	Zone		
Network Interface	Physical Interface		Settings values regarding the communication path used for sending and receiving messages.
	Transmission Rate		
	MAC Address		
	Auto Detect		
	Communication		
	Ethernet Type		
	Spanning Tree		
	Use the Jumbo Frame Function		

*1: Only items configured in Print Application are printed.

Checking Instructions During Printer Operations

You can refer to instructions on the printer control panel when loading paper, replacing ink tanks, or performing other operations.

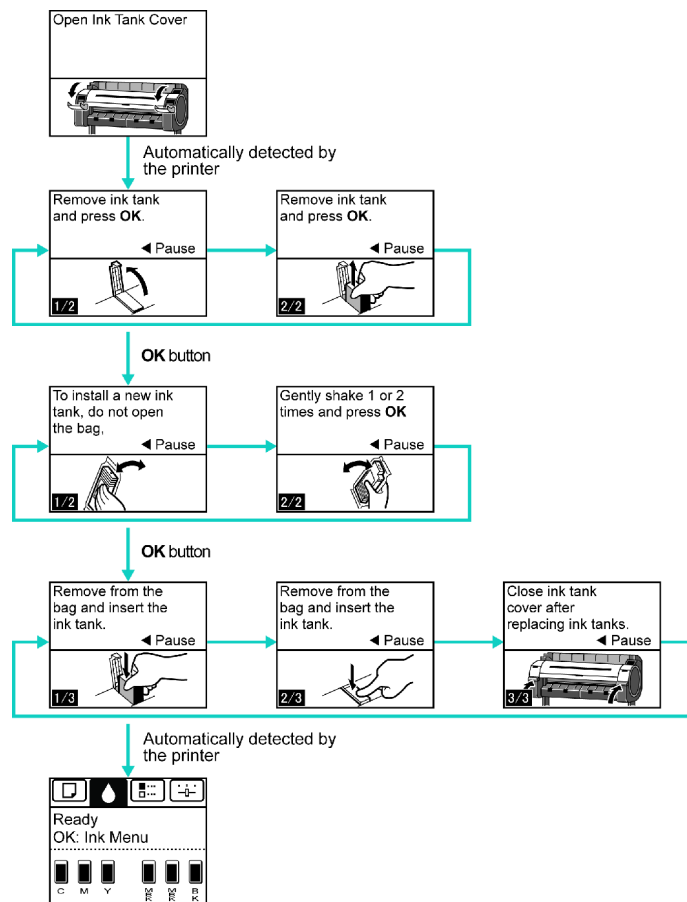
How to view instructions

Once you complete an action described in the instructions, the printer detects the action and switches to the next instruction screen.

In the case of actions the printer cannot detect, instruction screens are switched every four seconds, and the sequence of operations is shown repeatedly.

When all actions in the sequence are finished, the instruction screen for the next step is displayed.

Example: Ink tank replacement



Note

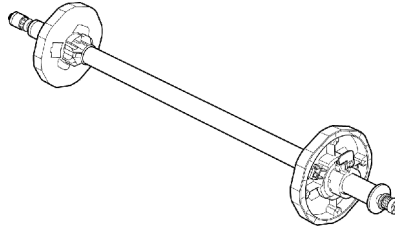
- During a continuous display of instructions, you can press the ◀ button to pause the instructions on the current screen. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to display the previous or next screens. If you do not press the ◀ or ▶ button within 30 seconds, continuous display is resumed. Press the **OK** button to display the instruction screen for the next step.

Optional accessories

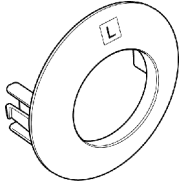
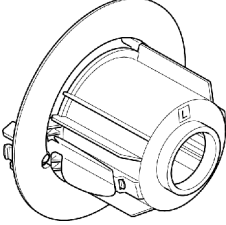
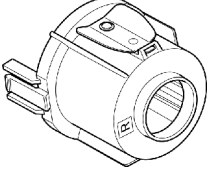
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-33 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (→P.103)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-33
 - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



- Attachments

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment	Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R 

Printer Specifications

Specifications



Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	During operation	140 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. 220-240 V: 6 W max.
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise (*2)	During operation (sound pressure level/LWAd)	Approx. 50 dB (A) (6.6 bels)
	Standby	35 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Printer and Stand (with Output Stacker open)	1,304×870×1,062 mm (51.3×34.3×41.8 in)
Weight	Printer and Stand (not including the Printhead and ink tanks)	Approx. 62.9 kg (138.7 lb)
Space for installation (W × D × H)	Printer only	1,704×1,470×1,362 mm (67.1×57.9×53.6 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, Eco Mark, GPN, RoHS, Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Calculation based on ISO 7779. Operating conditions: On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, **Media Type** > Plain Paper, **Advanced Settings** > **Print Priority** > **Line Drawing/Text**, and **Print Quality** > **Standard**.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-04
Number of nozzles	MBK: 5,120; others: 2,560 per color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

USB 2.0 (*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10Base-T, IEEE 802.3u 100Base-TX/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3ab1000Base-T/Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk, HTTP

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/ Windows 2000 or Mac OS X ver. 10.3.9 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

Ink

Ink Tank	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink, or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-102MBK
	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102BK
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102C
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-104M
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Dye ink	PFI-102Y
Capacity			130 ml (4.4 fl oz) per color (*1)

*1: The provided Starter Ink Tanks contain 90 ml (3.0 fl oz) each.

Paper (*1)

Paper width	Rolls	254.0-914.4 mm (10-36 in)
	Sheets	203.2-917.0 mm (8-36.1 in)
Length of one page	Rolls	203.2(*2)-18,000 mm (8-708.7 in)
	Sheets	279.4-1,600 mm (11-63 in)
Thickness	Rolls	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
	Sheets	0.07-0.8 mm (0.0028-0.031 in)
Paper Size	Roll width	36-in. Roll (914.4mm), ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm), 30-in. Roll (762.0mm), JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm), 24-in. Roll (609.6mm), ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm), JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm), 17-in. Roll (431.8mm), ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm), 16-in. Roll (406.4mm), 14-in. Roll (355.6mm), 300mm Roll (300.0mm), ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm), JIS B4 Roll (257.0mm), and 10-in. Roll (254.0mm)
	Sheets	ISO A0, ISO A1, ISO A2+, ISO A2, ISO A3+, ISO A3, ISO A4, ISO B1, ISO B2, ISO B3, ISO B4, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, JIS B4, 34"x44" (ANSI E), 28"x40" (ANSI F), 22"x34"(ANSI D), 17"x22"(ANSI C), 13"x19" (Super B), 11"x17" (Ledger), Legal (8.5"x14"), Letter (8.5"x11"), 36"x48" (ARCH E), 30"x42" (ARCH E1), 26"x38" (ARCH E2), 27"x39" (ARCH E3), 24"x36" (ARCH D), 18"x24" (ARCH C), 12"x18" (ARCH B), 9"x12" (ARCH A), DIN C0, DIN C1, DIN C2, DIN C3, DIN C4, 20"x24", 18"x22", 14"x17", 12"x16", 10"x12", 10"x15", US Photo 16"x20", Poster 20"x30", Poster 30"x40", 13"x22", and Poster 300x900mm
Print area	Normal size	Printable area <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rolls 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side Sheets 3 mm (0.12 in) from the top, 23 mm (0.91 in) from the bottom, and 3mm (0.12 in) from the left and right sides For information on the recommended print area, see "Print Area". (→P.75)
	Borderless printing (*3)	Printable area (rolls) 0 mm from the top, 0 from the bottom, and 0 mm from the left and right sides
Supported width for borderless printing		36-in. Roll (914.4mm), ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm), JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm), 24-in. Roll (609.6mm), ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm), JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm), 17-in. Roll (431.8mm), ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm), 14-in. Roll (355.6mm), 300mm Roll (300.0mm), ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm), JIS B4 Roll (257.0mm), and 10-in. Roll (254.0mm)

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide (→P.95)

*2: When supplying paper, use a roll approximately 1,000 mm (1,093.6 yd) or longer.

*3: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.

Output stacker capacity, in sheets

Regular position	1
Extended position (*1)	20

*1: For information on types of paper you can use with the stacker in Extended position, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

Options

Roll Holder Set	RH2-33
-----------------	--------

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.



Note

- Printable Area: The area that can be printed.
- There is no margin (that is, a margin of 0 mm) during borderless printing on rolls.
- Recommended Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.219)

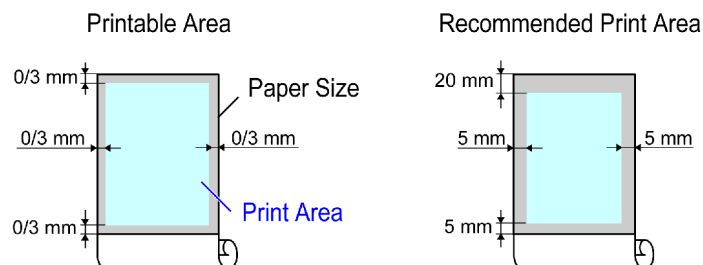
	Margins of Printable Area			Margins of Recommended Print Area		
	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
Rolls	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets



- **Printable Area**
a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on left and right sides is required.
- **Recommended Print Area**
A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 23 mm (0.91 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Rolls



- **Printable Area**
A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- **Recommended Print Area**
A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets.

This section introduces the main features of each, as well as the main printing methods available. Select rolls or sheets to suit your particular printing application.



Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- A variety of other ways to print are available besides those introduced here. Choose the printing method that suits your particular printing application, referring to "Working With Various Print Jobs" and "Enhanced Printing Options" from the table of contents.

Roll printing

Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media. Rolls are loaded on the Roll Holder, which are in turn loaded in the printer.

Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.

- Large-format printing
Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications.
(→P.253)
- Borderless printing
Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
(→P.232)
(→P.239)
(→P.225)
- Banner printing
You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.
(→P.275)
- 90-degree rotation before printing
Originals in portrait orientation are rotated 90 degrees when possible to use paper more efficiently.
(→P.301)
- Enlarged/reduced printing
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.
(→P.201)
(→P.207)
(→P.213)
- Free Layout function
Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
(→P.269)

Sheet printing

Sheets refer to individual sheets of paper.

Insert the sheet between the Platen and the Paper Retainer.

- Enlarged/reduced printing

You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing originals before printing.

(→P.201)

(→P.213)

- Free Layout function

Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.

(→P.269)

☐ Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow these steps to load and print on rolls.



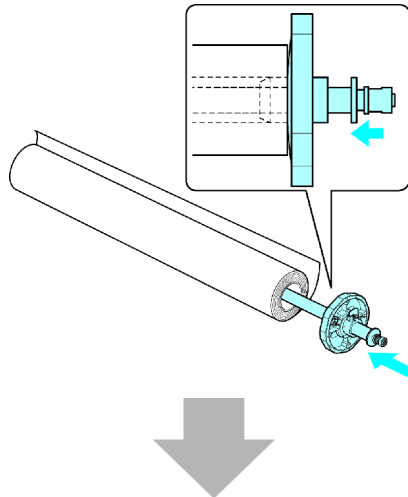
Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.100) (→P.95)
- If you prefer to wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and cut the paper manually. (→P.129)

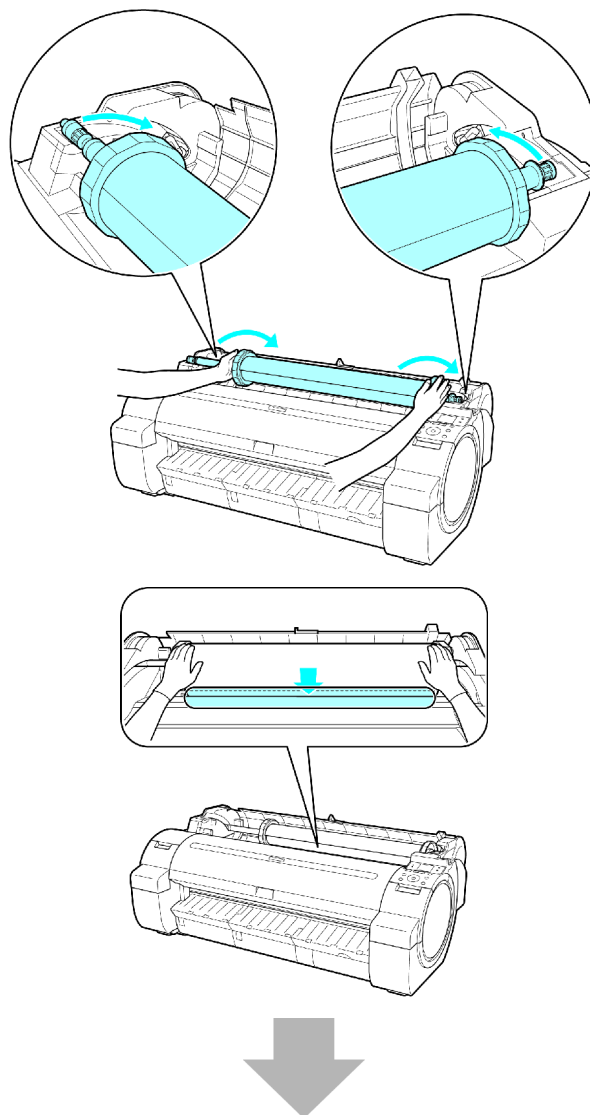
1. Turn the printer on. (→P.24)



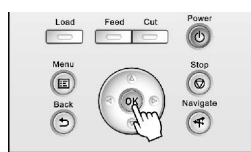
2. Load the roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.103)



3. Load the roll in the printer. (→P.106)



4. Select the type of paper. (→P.110)



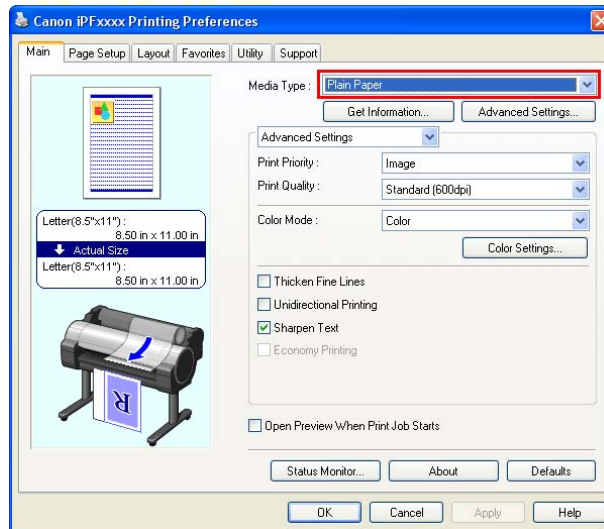
Note

- If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (→P.112)



5. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.86)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.88)



6. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows (→P.83)
- Printing in Mac OS X (→P.84)



The printer now starts printing the print job.

☐ Loading and Printing on Sheets

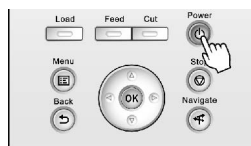
These are the basic steps for loading sheets and then printing.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets.



Note

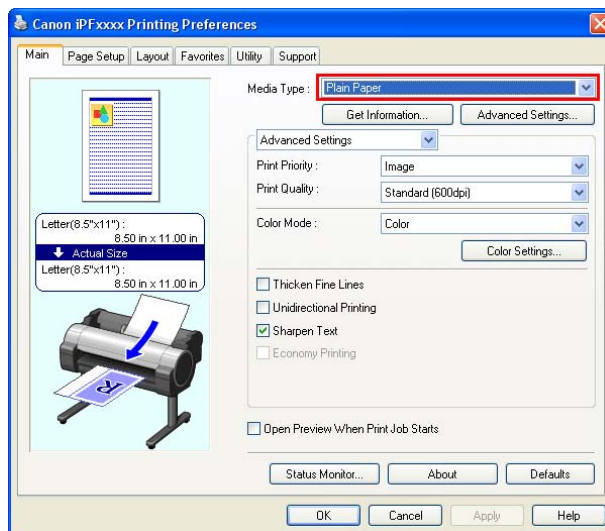
- For details on supported types and sizes of paper, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.100) (→P.95)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.24)



2. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.86)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.88)

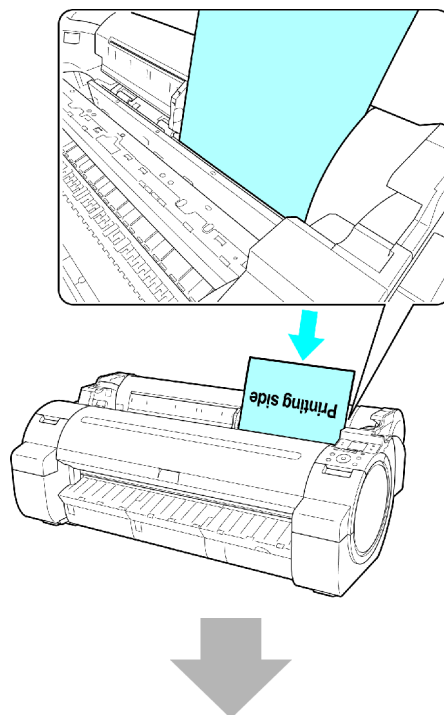


3. Send the print job.

- Printing in Windows (→P.83)
- Printing in Mac OS X (→P.84)



4. Load the sheet. (→P.136)



The printer now starts printing the print job.

Printing in Windows

Print from the application menu.



Important

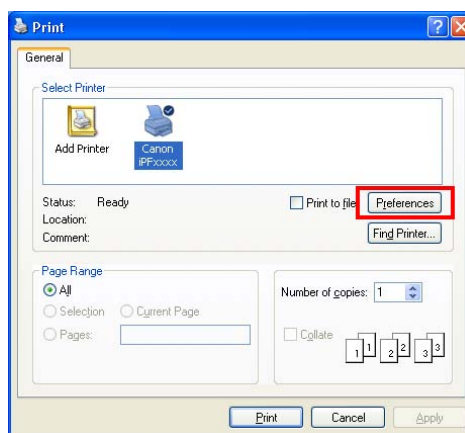
- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows.
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
 - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
 - Windows Vista
 - Windows Server 2008
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.



Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the software application. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows.

- From the application
(→P.346)
- From the operating system menu
(→P.348)

Printing in Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.



Important

- The Macintosh printer driver can be used in the following versions of Mac OS.
 - Mac OS X 10.3.9-10.5
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup.app**.

For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”.

(→P.596)



Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. In Mac OS X 10.4 and earlier, you must enable AppleTalk protocol on the printer before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)”. (→P.598)

Printing from the source application

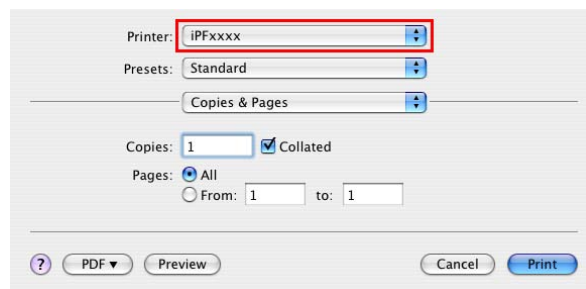
1. In the source application, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

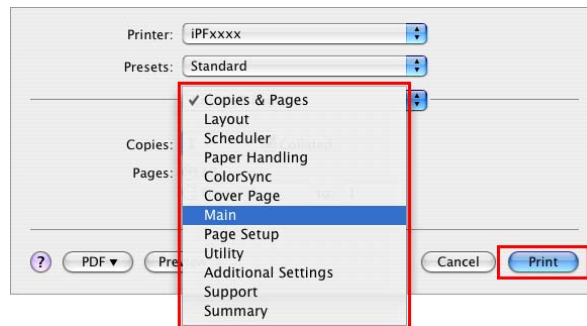
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

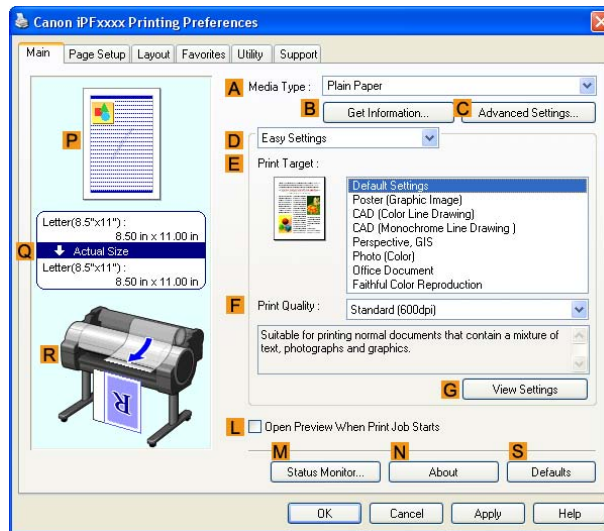
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver. If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



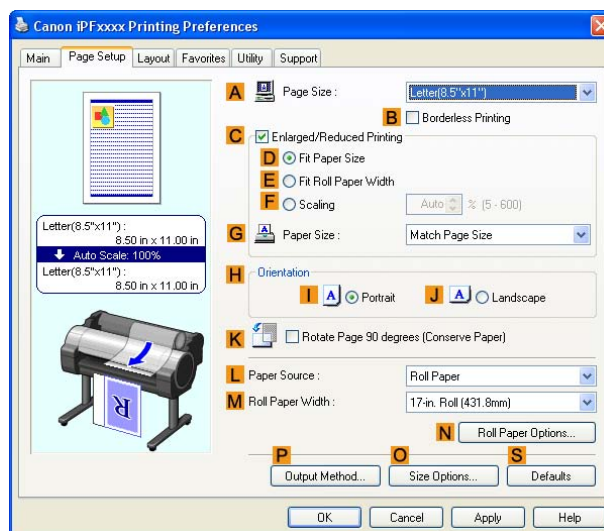
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.



Note

- Click the **B Get Information** button to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box. On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the **L Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.

**Note**

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.336)

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

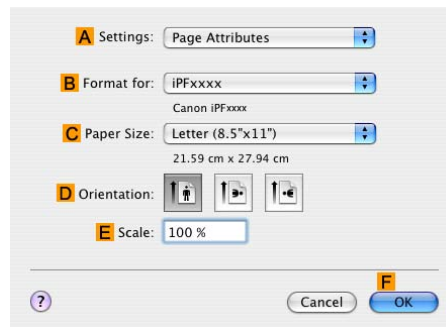
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

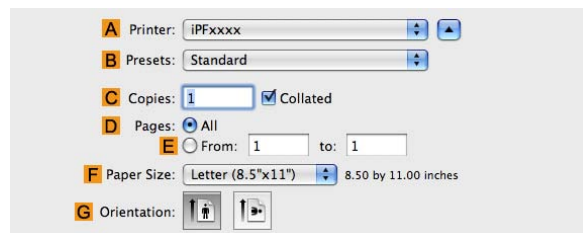


Note

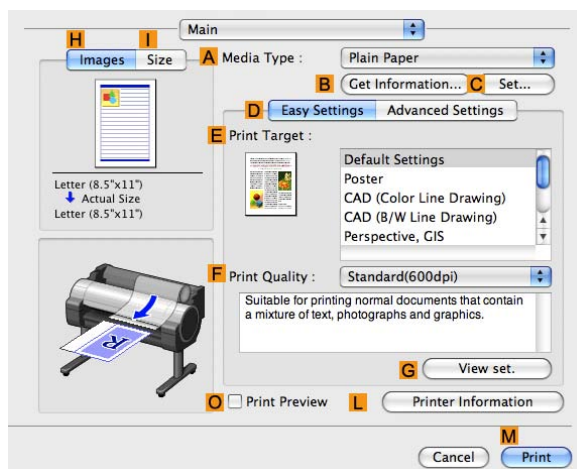
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

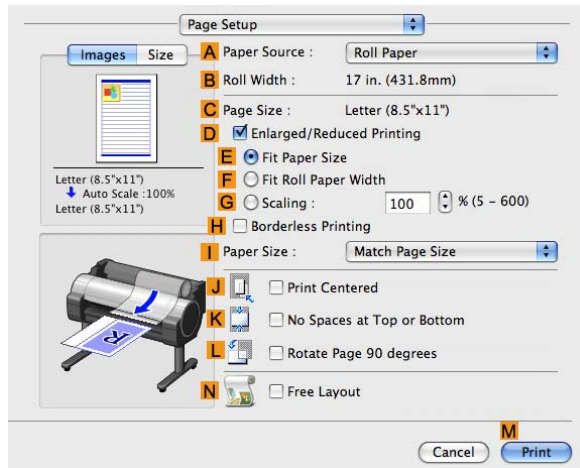


2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



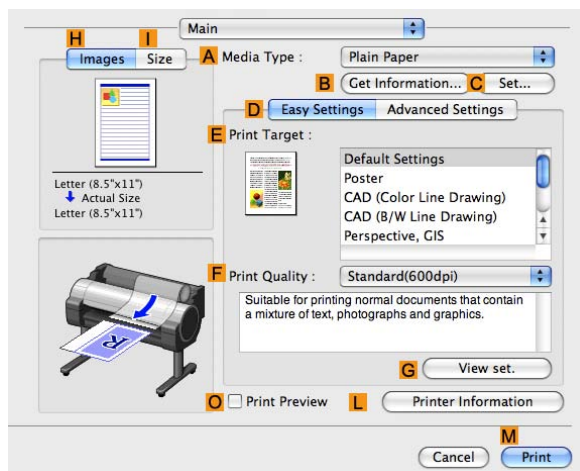
8. In the **A Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

9. If you have selected **Manual** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.454)

Canceling print jobs

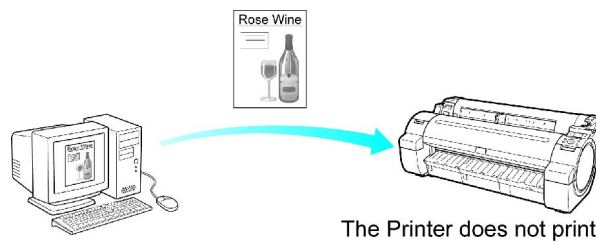
Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

To cancel printing or reception of print jobs, press the **Stop** button on the Control Panel.

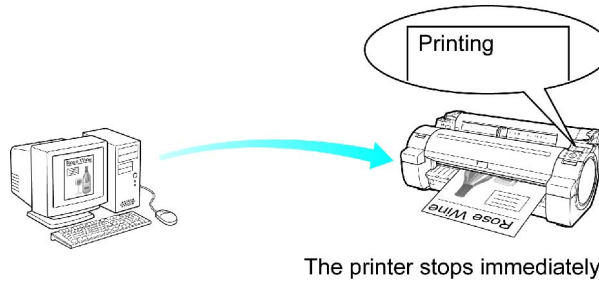


When you press the **Stop** button during printing, printer operation varies depending on the current status.

- If you press the **Stop** button before printing starts
Pressing the **Stop** button before printing starts will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job, select **Yes**.



- If you press the **Stop** button during printing
Pressing the **Stop** button during printing will display a confirmation message. To cancel the print job immediately, select **Yes**.



Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.

Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, you can cancel print jobs that have already been received by the printer or that are currently being printed.

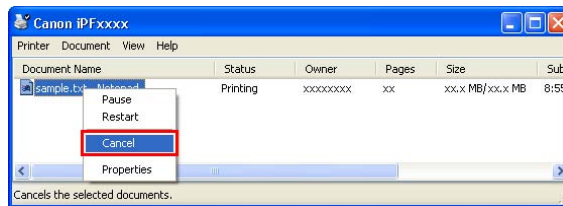
1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.



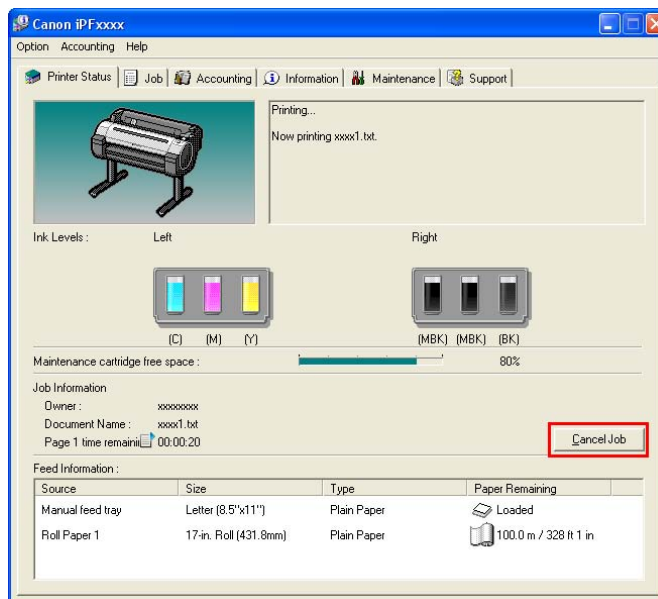
Note

- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Right-click the job to cancel and select **Cancel**.



3. If the job to cancel is not shown in the printer window (that is, if the print data has already been received by the printer), double-click the taskbar icon to display imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
4. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

In the printer window, you can cancel jobs that are being sent to the printer.

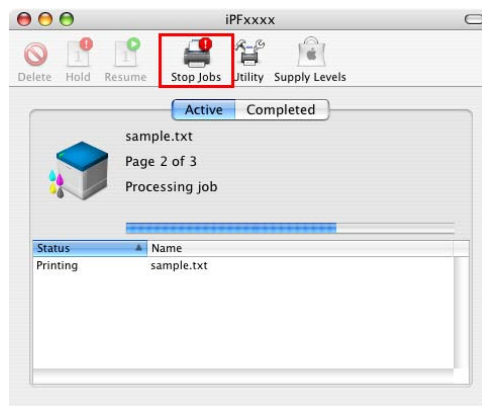
Otherwise, you can cancel jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor if they have been received by the printer or are currently being printed.



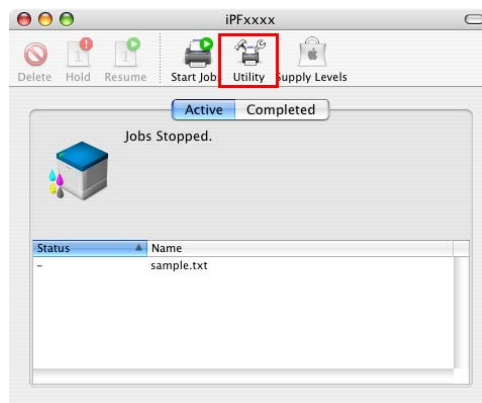
Note


- Print jobs are shown in the printer window while they are being sent from the computer. After transmission, jobs are not displayed even during printing.
- Print jobs are displayed in the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor window from the moment the printer starts receiving the print data until the moment printing is finished. They are not displayed before print data is sent to the printer, even if the computer has started preparing the print data.

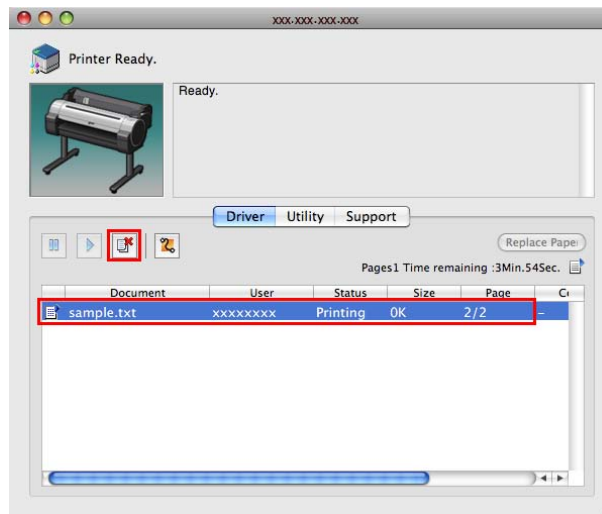
1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.



3. If there are no jobs in the printer window that can be canceled, (that is, if the print data has already been sent to the printer), click **Utility** to display imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.



4. Select the print job to cancel and click  to delete the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.

5. Exit imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.



Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs from imagePROGRAF Printmonitor. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

Pausing Printing

☰ Pausing Printing

During printing, if you set **Pause Print** in the Control Panel menu to **On**, printing is stopped at that point and the printer enters a state in which printing is paused. (→P.26)


Printing from the job queue is not possible in this state.

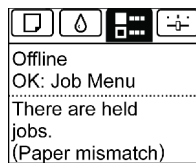
To restore normal operation after this state, set **Pause Print** to **Off**.



Note

- In the following cases, the status is cleared even if you do not set **Pause Print** to **Off**, and printing from the job queue resumes.
 - When paper is advanced
 - When you execute **Chg. Paper Type** in the **Paper Menu**

1. During printing, on the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Job tab ().



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Job Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Pause Print**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On** or **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Handling Paper

Paper

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports (such as plain paper, coated paper, glossy photo paper, proofing paper, and CAD paper), refer to the Paper Reference Guide. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types of paper and gives specifications, printer driver settings, and tips on handling paper. (See Paper Reference Guide.)

By downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website, you can make sure the paper information indicated in the Paper Reference Guide, on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver is up to date.

Accessing the Paper Reference Guide from imagePROGRAF Support Information

The Paper Reference Guide can also be accessed from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**. Follow these instructions, as appropriate for your operating system.

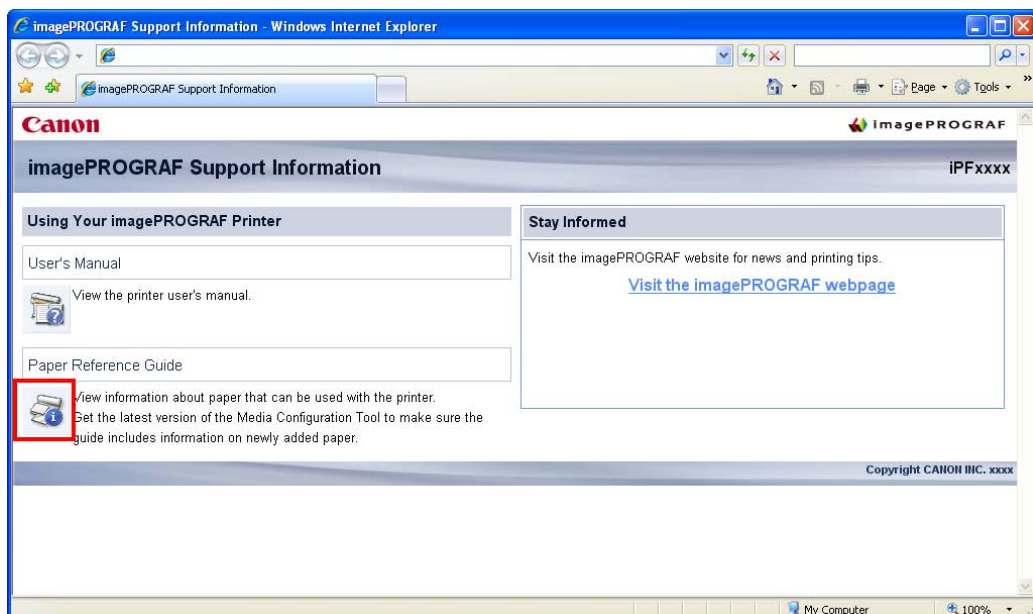
- Windows

1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)

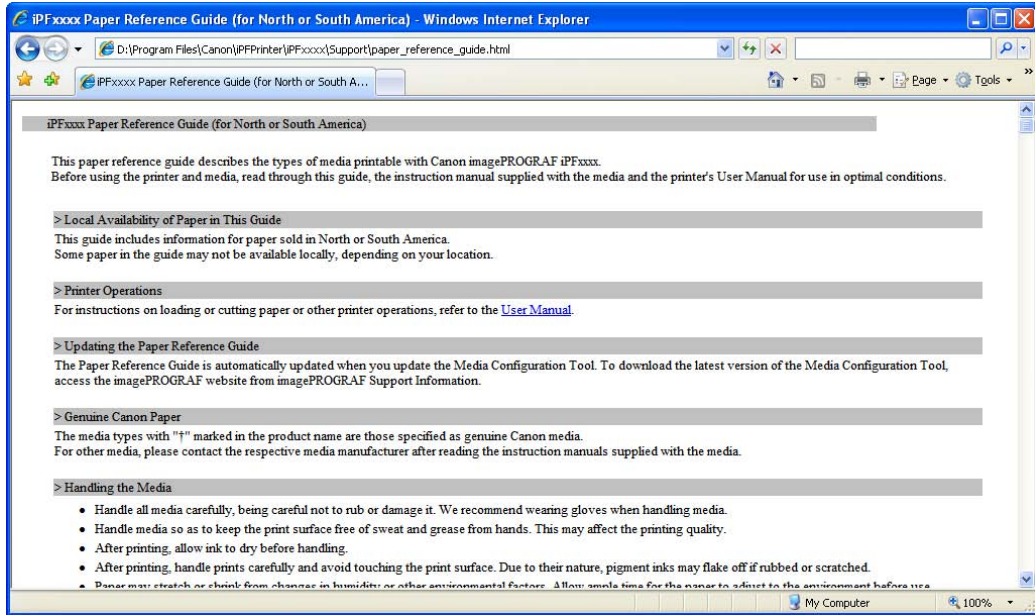


The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



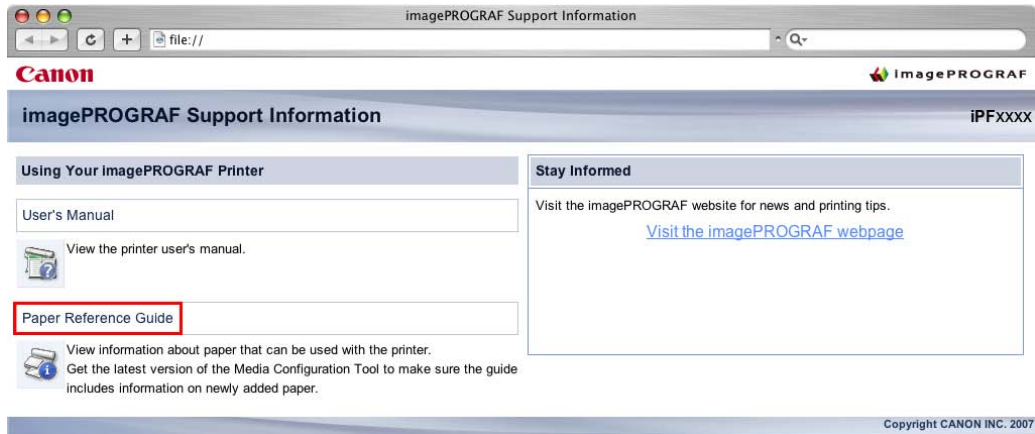
- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

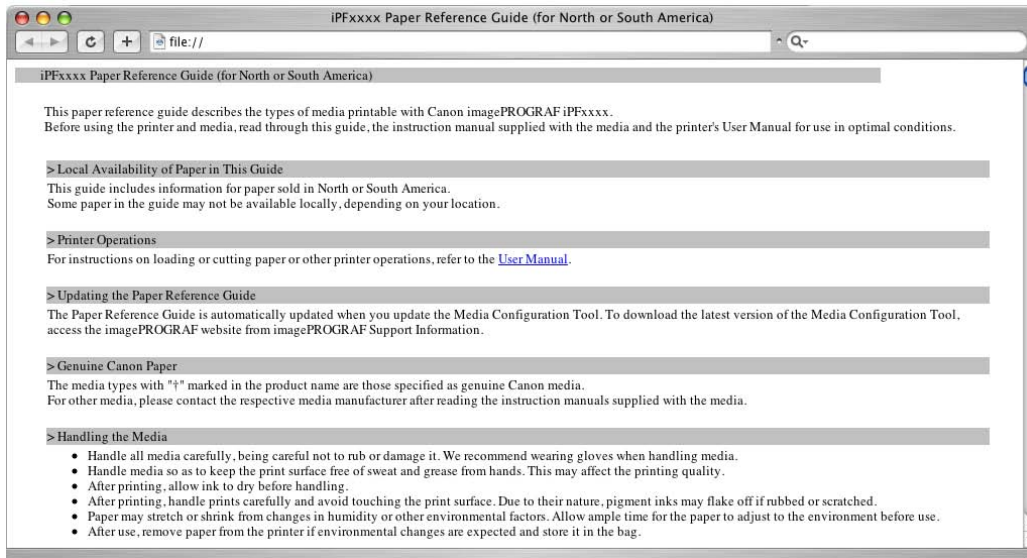


The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click the **Paper Reference Guide** button.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



Updating paper information

To update the paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer, download the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see [Media Configuration Tool \(Windows\)](#) or [Media Configuration Tool \(Macintosh\)](#). The imagePROGRAF website is accessible from **imagePROGRAF Support Information**.



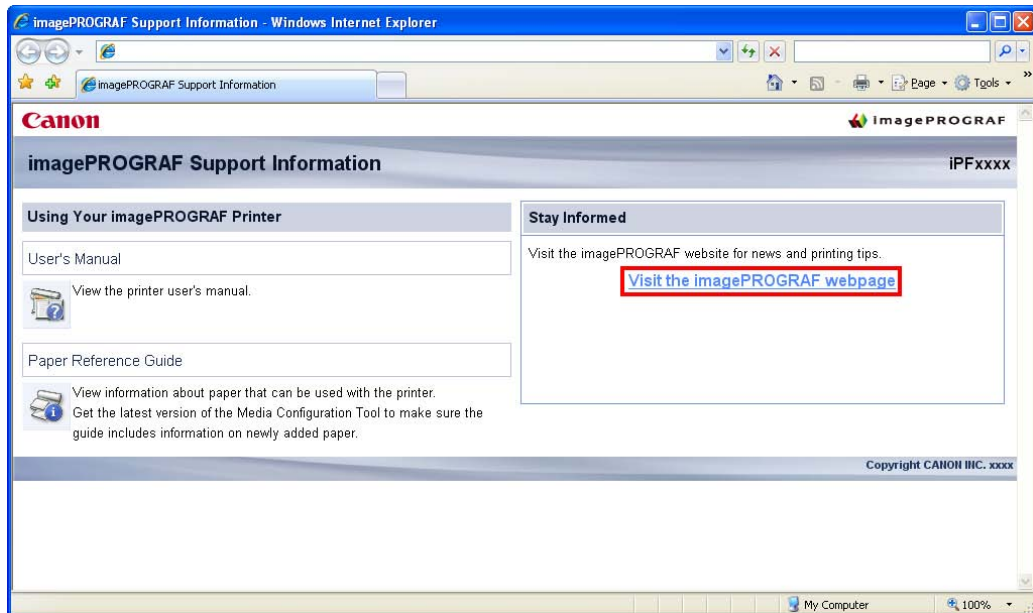
Important

- When you use the Media Configuration Tool to update information about paper, the types of paper on the printer Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software are updated.
- Windows
 1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** desktop icon. (iPFxxxx indicates the printer model.)



The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

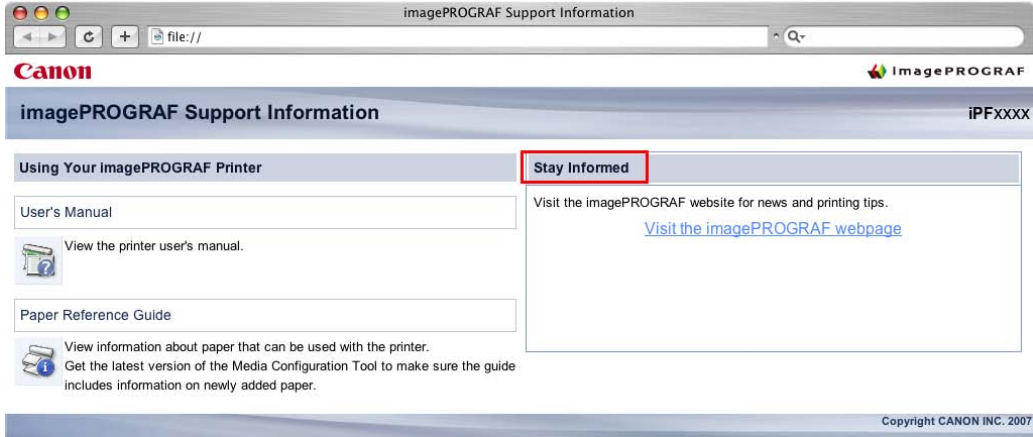
- Mac OS X

1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.



The **imagePROGRAF Support Information** window is displayed.

2. Click **Visit the imagePROGRAF webpage**.



The default browser on your computer is started and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Paper Sizes

Rolls

Rolls that meet the following conditions are supported.

- Outer diameter: Up to 150 mm (6 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll Width	Roll Paper Width Setting in Printer Driver	Borderless Printing (*1)
914.4 mm (36.00 in)	36-in. Roll (914.4mm)	Yes
841.0 mm (33.11 in)	ISO A0/A1 Roll (841.0mm)	Yes
762.0 mm (30.00 in)	30-in. Roll (762.0mm)	No
728.0 mm (28.66 in)	JIS B1/B2 Roll (728.0mm)	Yes
609.6 mm (24.00 in)	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)	Yes
594.0 mm (23.39 in)	ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0mm)	Yes
515.0 mm (20.28 in)	JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0mm)	Yes
431.8 mm (17.00 in)	17-in. Roll (431.8mm)	Yes
420.0 mm (16.54 in)	ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)	Yes
406.4 mm (16.00 in)	16-in. Roll (406.4mm)	No
355.6 mm (14.00 in)	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)	Yes
300.0 mm (11.81 in)	300mm Roll (300.0mm)	Yes
297.0 mm (11.69 in)	ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)	Yes
257.0 mm (10.12 in)	JIS B4 Roll (257.0mm)	Yes
254.0 mm (10.00 in)	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)	Yes

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

Sheets

Sheets of the following sizes are supported.

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
ISO A0	841.0 × 1189.0 mm (33.11 × 46.81 in)
ISO A1	594.0 × 841.0 mm (23.39 × 33.11 in)
ISO A2+	431.8 × 609.6 mm (17.00 × 24.00 in)
ISO A2	420.0 × 594.0 mm (16.54 × 23.39 in)
ISO A3+	329.0 × 483.0 mm (12.95 × 19.02 in)
ISO A3	297.0 × 420.0 mm (11.69 × 16.54 in)
ISO A4	210.0 × 297.0 mm (8.27 × 11.69 in)
ISO B1	707.0 × 1000.0 mm (27.83 × 39.37 in)
ISO B2	500.0 × 707.0 mm (19.69 × 27.83 in)
ISO B3	353.0 × 500.0 mm (13.90 × 19.69 in)
ISO B4	250.0 × 353.0 mm (9.84 × 13.90 in)
JIS B1	728.0 × 1030.0 mm (28.66 × 40.55 in)
JIS B2	515.0 × 728.0 mm (20.28 × 28.66 in)
JIS B3	364.0 × 515.0 mm (14.33 × 20.28 in)
JIS B4	257.0 × 364.0 mm (10.12 × 14.33 in)
34"x44"(ANSI E)	863.6 × 1117.6 mm (34.00 × 44.00 in)
28"x40"(ANSI F)	711.2 × 1016.0 mm (28.00 × 40.00 in)
22"x34"(ANSI D)	558.8 × 863.6 mm (22.00 × 34.00 in)
17"x22"(ANSI C)	431.8 × 558.8 mm (17.00 × 22.00 in)
11"x17"(Ledger)	279.4 × 431.8 mm (11.00 × 17.00 in)
13"x19"(Super B)	330.2 × 482.6 mm (13.00 × 19.00 in)
Letter(8.5"x11")	215.9 × 279.4 mm (8.50 × 11.00 in)
Legal(8.5"x14")	215.9 × 355.6 mm (8.50 × 14.00 in)
36"x48"(ARCH E)	914.4 × 1219.2 mm (36.00 × 48.00 in)
30"x42"(ARCH E1)	762.0 × 1066.8 mm (30.00 × 42.00 in)
26"x38"(ARCH E2)	660.4 × 965.2 mm (26.00 × 38.00 in)
27"x39"(ARCH E3)	685.8 × 990.6 mm (27.00 × 39.00 in)
24"x36"(ARCH D)	609.6 × 914.4 mm (24.00 × 36.00 in)
18"x24"(ARCH C)	457.2 × 609.6 mm (18.00 × 24.00 in)
12"x18"(ARCH B)	304.8 × 457.2 mm (12.00 × 18.00 in)
9"x12"(ARCH A)	228.6 × 304.8 mm (9.00 × 12.00 in)
DIN C0	917.0 × 1296.0 mm (36.10 × 51.02 in)
DIN C1	648.0 × 917.0 mm (25.51 × 36.10 in)
DIN C2	458.0 × 648.0 mm (18.03 × 25.51 in)

Paper Sizes	Dimensions
DIN C3	324.0 × 458.0 mm (12.76 × 18.03 in)
DIN C4	229.0 × 324.0 mm (9.02 × 12.76 in)
20"x24"	508.0 × 609.6 mm (20.00 × 24.00 in)
18"x22"	457.2 × 558.8 mm (18.00 × 22.00 in)
14"x17"	355.6 × 431.8 mm (14.00 × 17.00 in)
12"x16"	304.8 × 406.4 mm (12.00 × 16.00 in)
10"x12"	254.0 × 304.8 mm (10.00 × 12.00 in)
10"x15"	254.0 × 381.0 mm (10.00 × 15.00 in)
US Photo 16"x20"	406.4 × 508.0 mm (16.00 × 20.00 in)
Poster 20"x30"	508.0 × 762.0 mm (20.00 × 30.00 in)
Poster 30"x40"	762.0 × 1016.0 mm (30.00 × 40.00 in)
13"x22"	329.0 × 558.0 mm (12.95 × 21.97 in)
Poster 300x900mm	300.0 × 900.0 mm (11.81 × 35.43 in)
Custom Paper Size	203.2 x 203.2 mm (8.00 x 8.00 in) to 917.0 x 1600.0 mm (36.10 x 62.99 in)



Note

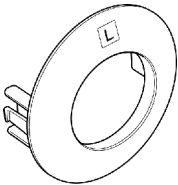
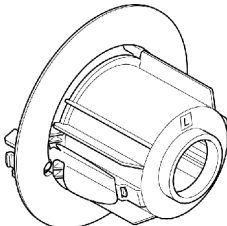
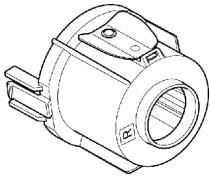
- For details on non-standard paper sizes, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes". (→P.261)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Handling rolls

Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls

When printing on rolls, attach the Roll Holder to the roll.

Rolls have a two- or three-inch paper core. Use the correct attachment for the paper core. The printer comes equipped with the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment installed.

Using Rolls with a 2-Inch Paper Core		Using Rolls with a 3-Inch Paper Core	
Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)	Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)
2-Inch Paper Core Attachment 	No Attachment Needed	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L 	3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R 



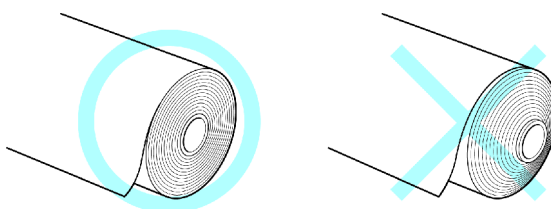
Caution

- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.



Important

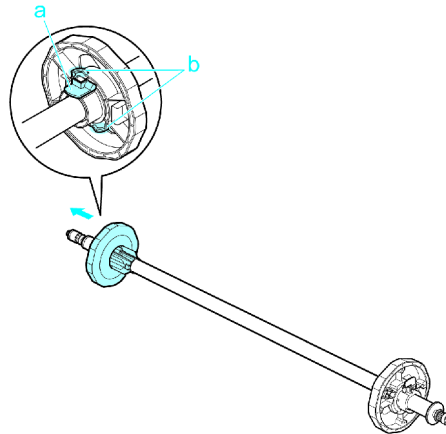
- When handling the roll, be careful not to soil the printing surface. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- Use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the edge of the roll paper if it is uneven, dirty, or has tape residue. Otherwise, it may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality. Be careful not to cut through any barcodes printed on the roll.
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll. Misalignment may cause feeding problems.



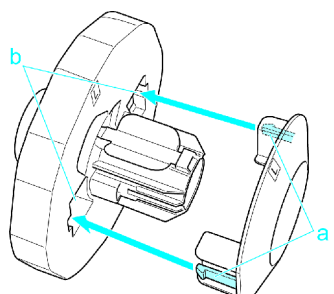
Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of rolls, see “Paper Sizes” or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.100) (→P.95)
- To view instructions as you attach the Roll Holder, press the **Navigate** button. (→P.29)

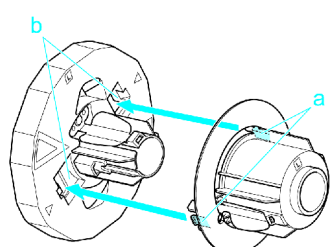
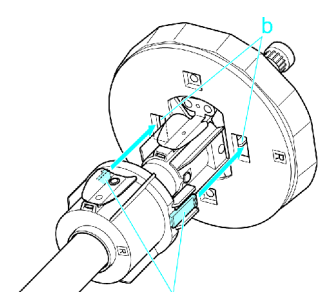
1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.



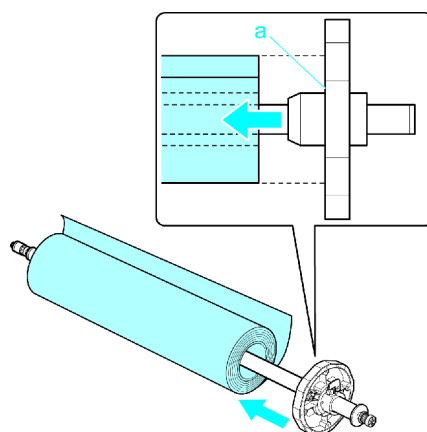
2. Insert the respective attachments for the roll paper core on the Roll Holder and Holder Stopper.
 - Using rolls with a 2-inch paper core

Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)
Align the tips (a) of the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly. 	No attachment is needed.

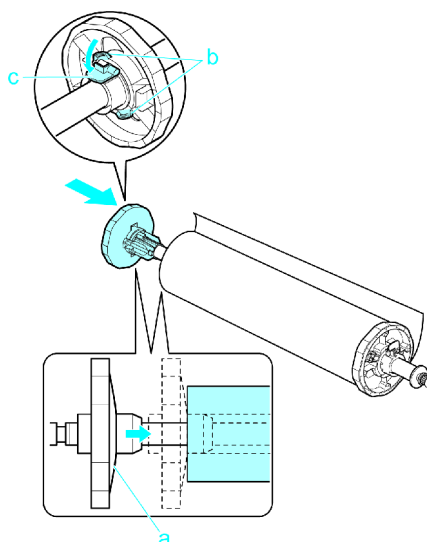
- Using rolls with a 3-inch paper core

Holder Stopper (Left Side)	Roll Holder (Right Side)
Align the tips (a) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L with the holes (b) of the Holder Stopper and insert it firmly. 	Align the tips (a) of 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R with the holes (b) of the Roll Holder and insert it firmly. 

3. With the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the Roll Holder from the right of the roll. Insert it firmly until the roll touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder, leaving no gap.



4. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown. Holding it at the position shown (b), push it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll. Lock the Holder Stopper lever (c) by pushing it down toward the shaft side.



>Loading Rolls in the Printer

Follow these steps to load rolls in the printer.



Note

- Before loading rolls, make sure the printer is clean inside the Top Cover and around the Ejection Guide. If these areas are dirty, we recommend cleaning them in advance. (→P.647)

1. Press the **Load** button.



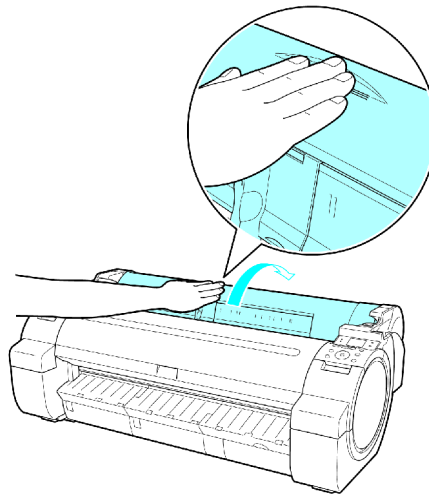
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Load Roll Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.



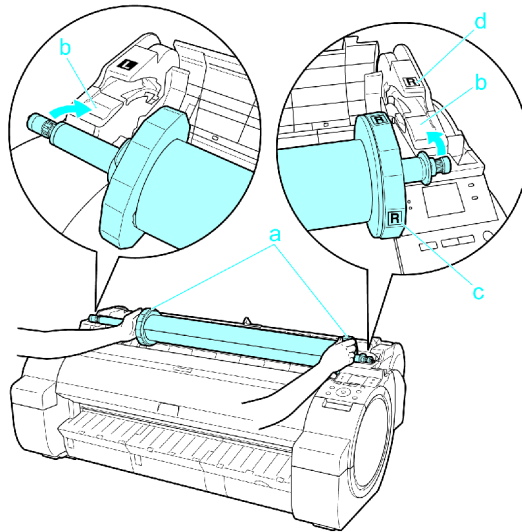
Note

- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

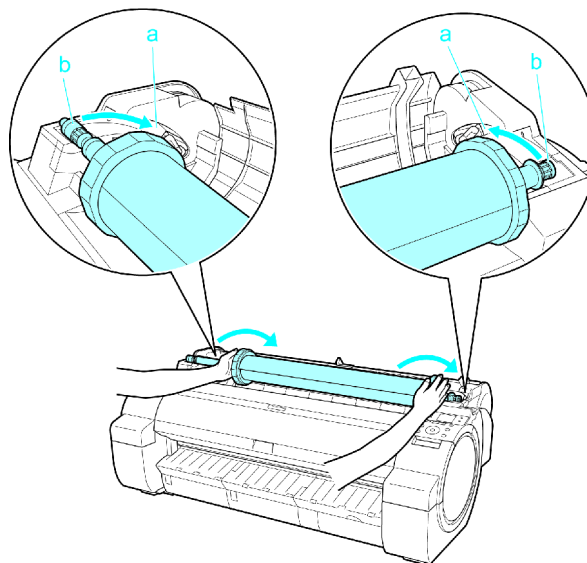
3. Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.



4. Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), rest the Roll Holder shaft on the Roll Ledge (b). At this time, position the holder so that the “R” label (c) on the Roll Holder flange is aligned with the “R” label (d) on the printer .



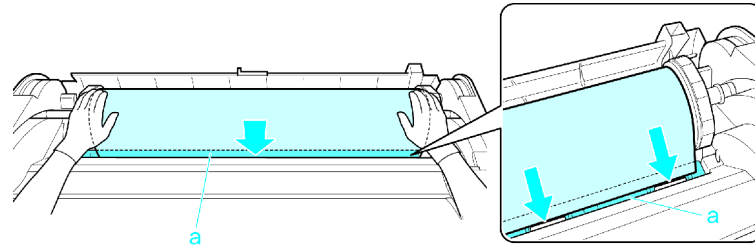
5. Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), guide the holder along the Roll Loading Slots (b) on both ends, keeping the holder level as you load it in the Roll Holder Slot.



Caution

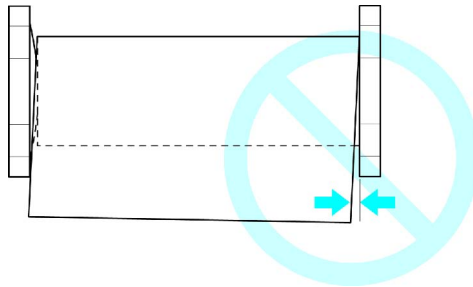
- Do not force the Roll Holder into the printer with the right and left ends reversed. This may damage the printer and Roll Holder.
- Do not release the flanges until the holder is loaded in the Roll Holder Slot.
- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the Roll Loading Slots (b) and the Roll Holder shaft (c) when loading rolls.

6. Advance the roll to insert the leading edge in the Paper Feed Slot (a) until you hear a tone.



Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you insert it in the slot. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.



7. Once paper feeding starts, you will need to do the following, based on the **ManageRemainRoll** setting and the barcode printed on rolls. (→P.126)

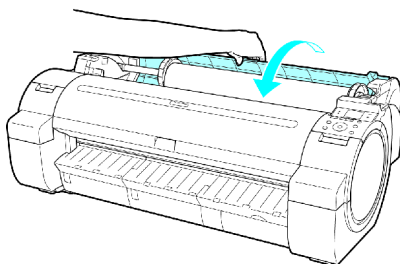
ManageRemainRoll	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
Off	Printed	A menu for selection of the type of paper is automatically shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the OK button.
	Not printed	
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.
	Not printed	A menu for selection of the paper type and length is automatically shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type and length of paper loaded, and then press the OK button.



Note

- For details on types of paper to select, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

8. Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.



Note

- Cut the edge of the roll after the paper is advanced if it is soiled or if there are cuts from scissors or the blade after removing creased edges. (→P.129)

☰ Changing the Type of Paper

Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper.

If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type > On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (→P.111)



Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount.
(→P.612)

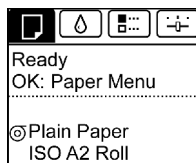
Changing the Type of Paper



Note

- After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper and press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (→P.112)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded (**Roll Paper** or **Cut Sheet**), and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



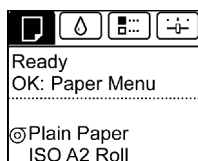
Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95) By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly

Configure this setting so that current media type settings will be automatically selected when you load the same type of paper later.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Keep Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- The specified media type setting is updated in the following situations.
 - When using sheets, if you send a print job before loading a sheet, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the print job.
 - When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** on the Control Panel and a barcode is printed on the roll, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the barcode.
- To change the media type setting, see “Changing the Type of Paper”. (→P.110)

☰ Specifying the Paper Length

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.



Note

- Specify the paper length when you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**. (→P.126)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ()



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Size**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Roll Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the length of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.

Specify the roll length as follows.

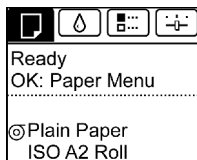
1. Press the ◀ or ▶ button to move to the next field for input.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to finish entering the value, and then press the **OK** button.

Printing From a Desired Starting Point

When printing inside boundaries or in other situations when you want to specify a particular position to start printing from, set **Width Detection** to **Off** in the printer menu for the type of paper used.

Set Width Detection to Off

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Width Detection**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Load paper in the desired position to start printing from

Follow these instructions to load paper at the desired starting position for printing when **Width Detection** is **Off**.

1. If you did not send a print job in advance, a menu for selection of the type of paper is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.

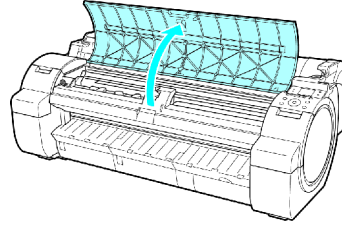


Note

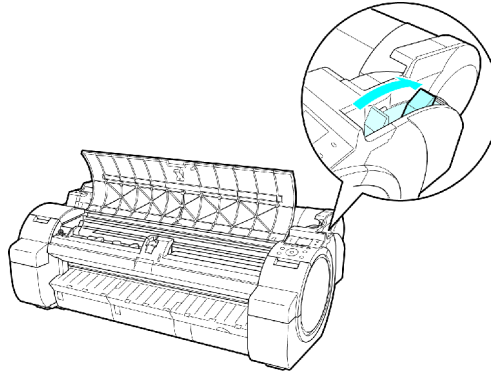
- If a print job was received before paper was advanced, the media type and size specified by the job are shown on the Display Screen. Thus, this screen is not displayed. Go to step 2.

2. **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is now shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. After a menu for selection of the paper size is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.

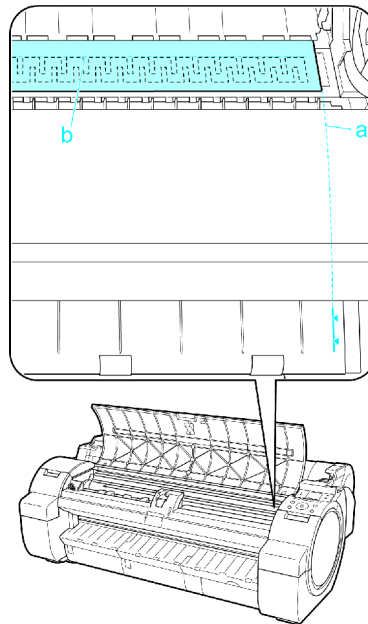
- 4.** Open the Top Cover and check the position where paper is loaded.



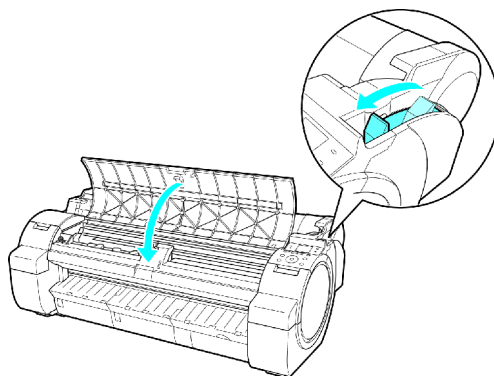
To start printing from the current position, close the Top Cover.
To reposition the paper, push the Release Lever back.



- 5.** Keeping the right edge of the paper aligned with the extended line of the Paper Alignment Line (a) to the right of the ejection guide and the leading edge aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the Platen, load the paper at the position from which to start printing.



6. Pull the Release Lever forward and close the Top Cover.



Removing the Roll from the Printer

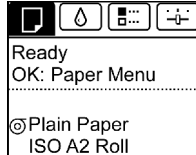
Remove rolls from the printer as follows.



Note

- If you need to cut the roll, see “Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls”. (→P.129)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ()



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.

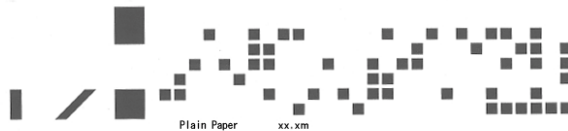
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

The roll is now rewound and ejected.

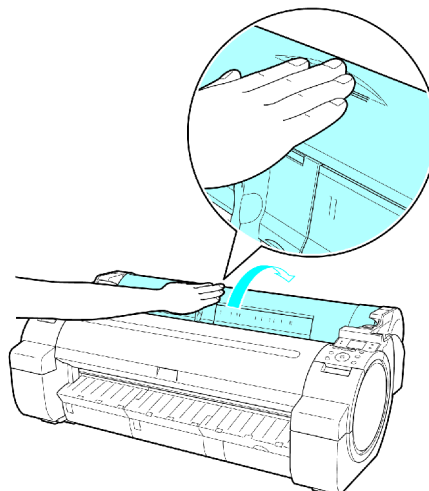


Caution

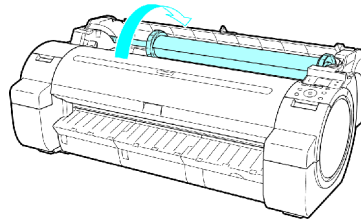
- If you have selected **ManageRemainRoll > On** in the Control Panel menu, a barcode is printed on the leading edge of the roll.
Do not remove the roll before the barcode is printed. You will be unable to keep track of the amount of roll paper left. (→P.126)



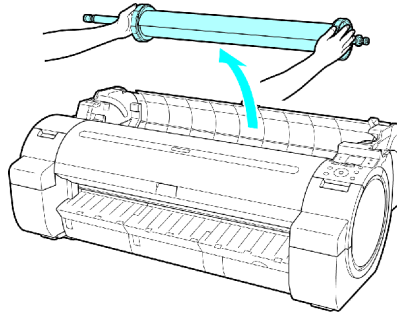
5. Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.



6. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll.



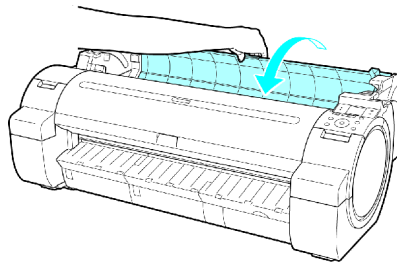
7. Holding the Roll Holder flange (a), remove the holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



Note

- For instructions on removing the Roll Holder from rolls, see “Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls”. (→P.118)

8. Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.

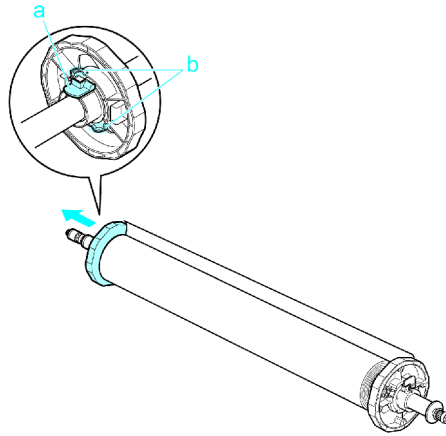


Note

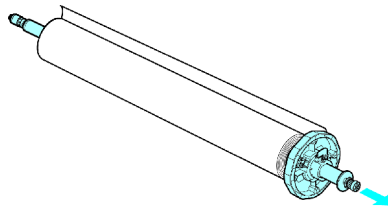
- To load new paper in the printer at this point, see “Loading Rolls in the Printer”. (→P.106)

Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls

1. Lift the Holder Stopper lever (a) from the shaft side to unlock it. Holding the Holder Stopper at the position indicated (b), remove it from the Roll Holder.

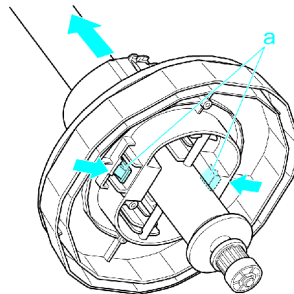


2. Remove the Roll Holder from the roll.

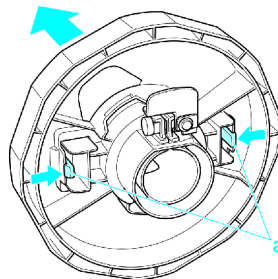


3. When removing attachments, push the tips (a) in as you remove the attachment.

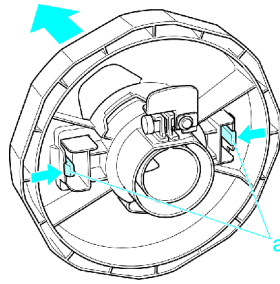
- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R (Roll Holder side)



- 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L (Holder Stopper side)



- 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment



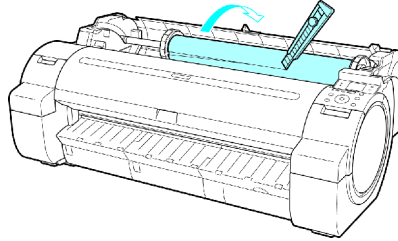
Important

- Store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

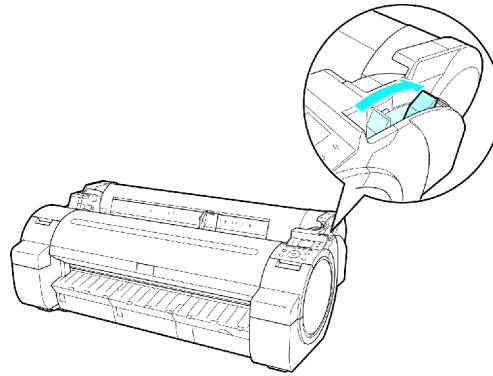
1. Open the Roll Cover. Use a commercially available cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury or damage to the printer.

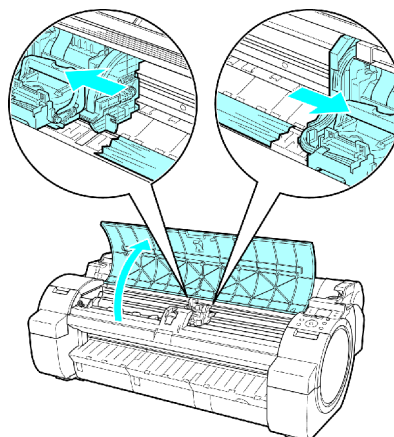
2. Push the Release Lever back.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

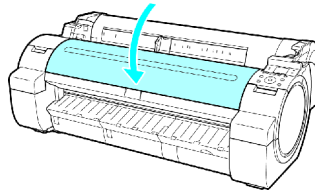
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

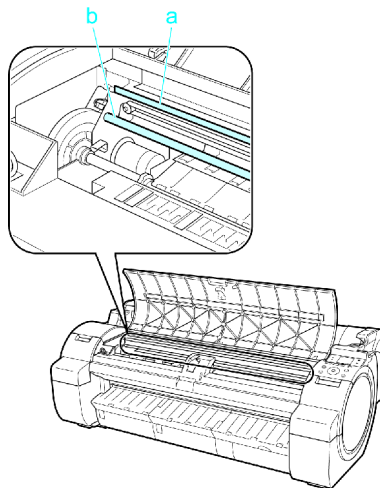
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.

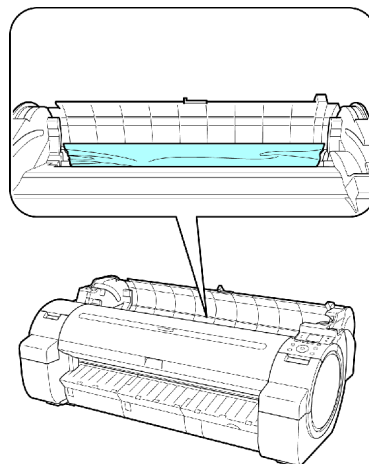


Important

- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.

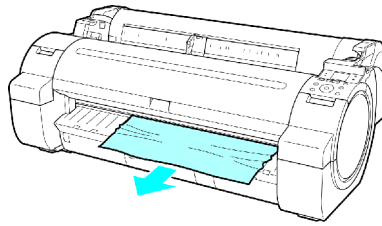


- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot
 1. Open the Roll Cover.
 2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

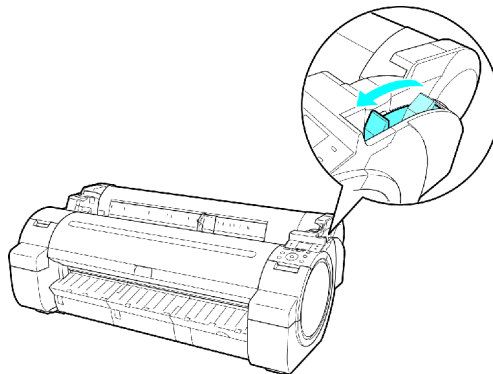


Handling rolls

- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



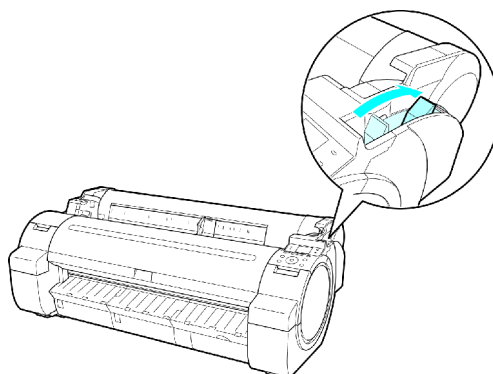
4. Pull the Release Lever forward.



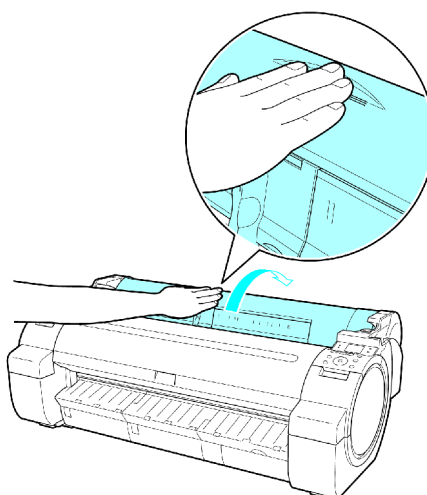
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

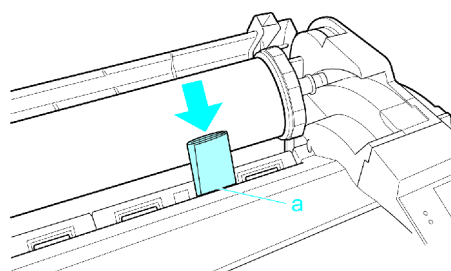
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.24)
2. Push the Release Lever back.



3. Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.

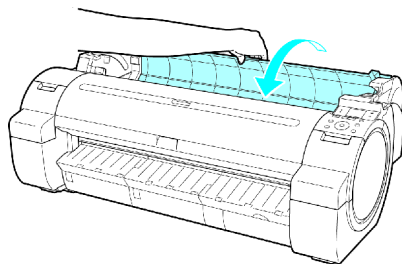


4. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Paper Feed Slot. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

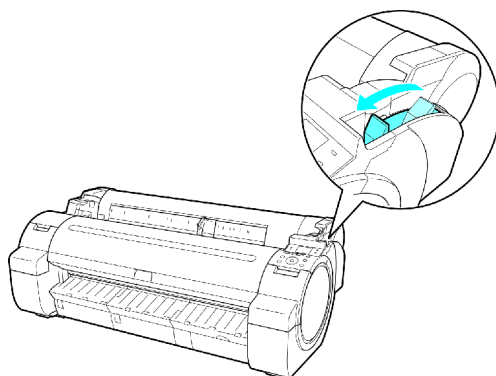


5. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
6. If any scraps remain inside the paper feed slot, repeat steps 4 and 5.

7. Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.



8. Pull the Release Lever forward.



Feeding Roll Paper Manually

After a roll has been advanced, you can press the **Feed** button to feed or retract the roll with the ▲ and ▼ buttons.



1. Press the **Feed** button.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to advance or retract the roll.
 Press ▲ to retract the roll manually.
 Press ▼ to advance the roll manually.

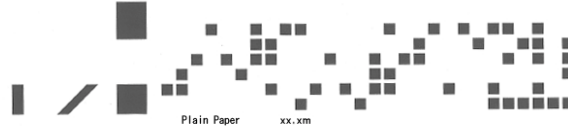


Note

- If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
 If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the roll will move until you release the button. Release the button when the Display Screen indicates **End of paper feed. Cannot feed paper more..**

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left

Setting **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel will print a barcode with text on the roll when the roll is removed that identifies the type of paper and amount left. When **ManageRemainRoll** is **On** and you load rolls with printed barcodes, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected after rolls are loaded. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.

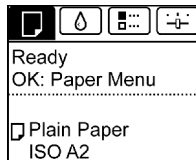


Important

- Because the **ManageRemainRoll** function is not compatible with clear film, an error message may be displayed (**The roll is empty.**) after you load clear film. For this reason, set **ManageRemainRoll** to **Off** before loading clear film.
- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On** as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

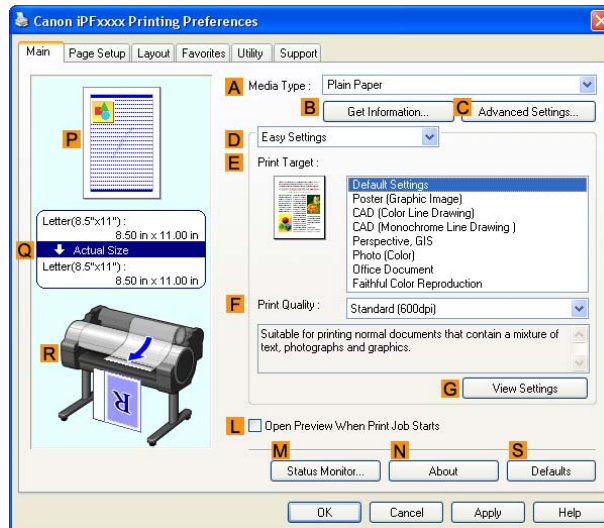
2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ManageRemainRoll**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

☐ Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

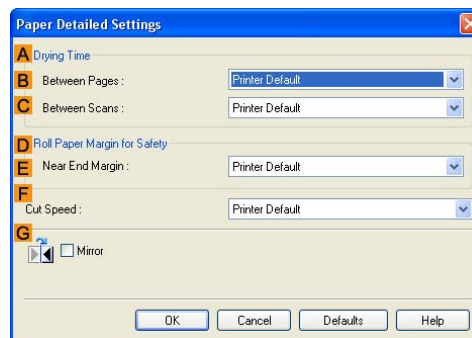
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
(→P.348)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.

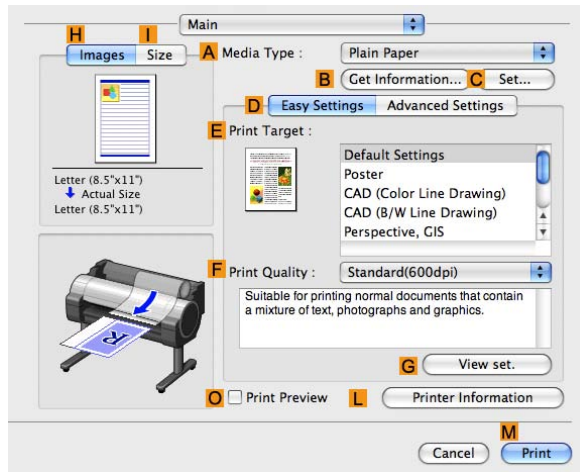


3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **B Between Pages** and **C Between Scans** in **A Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.354)



Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select the desired settings values in **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.465)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
- To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
(→P.129)

Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How rolls are cut after ejection varies depending on printer settings.

Cutting Method		Printer Setting		Driver Setting	
Automatic	The roll is automatically cut by the Cutter Unit following printer driver settings.	Media Menu > Paper Details > (Various Types of Paper) > Cutting Mode	Automatic	Auto Cut	Yes
Eject (→P.130)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll with the Cutter Unit, press the Cut button.		Eject		Yes
Manual (→P.131)	Choose this setting when using media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit. Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), select Auto Cut > Yes or select Print Cut Guideline . (→P.331)		Manual		NoYesPrint Cut Guideline
Paper Cutting (→P.132)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when Auto Cut > No is selected or Print Cut Guideline is selected in the printer driver. Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	Cut button pressed	Yes		NoPrint Cut Guideline

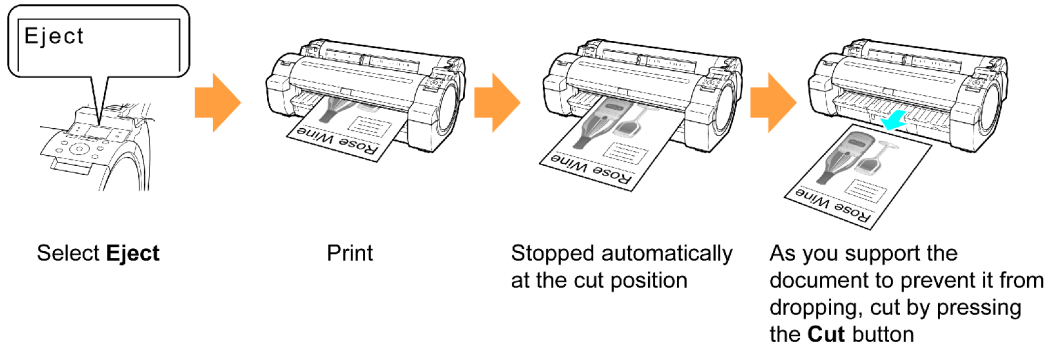


Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have selected **Auto Cut > Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.
- **Eject** is the preset selection in **Cutting Mode** for some types of paper. For this paper, we recommend keeping the preset cutting mode.

Cut rolls manually in the following cases:

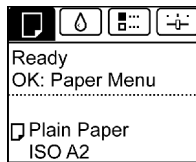
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)



Important

- When cutting wide printed documents after ejection, have two people support the documents. If the paper drops, printed documents may be damaged.
- Do not lift the paper when holding printed documents before cutting. If the paper rises, it may affect the printing quality or cause rough cut edges.

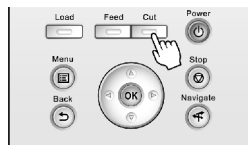
1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



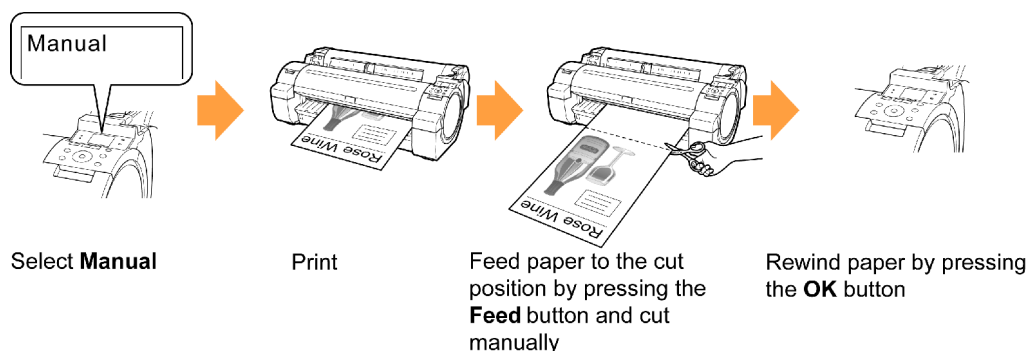
Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

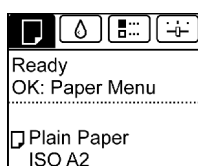
2. Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Starts printing.
When printing is finished, the printer will stop without cutting.
8. Holding the printed document to prevent it from dropping, press the **Cut** button to cut the roll.



Manual (when using media that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit)



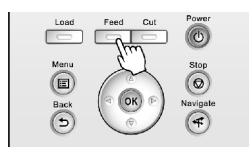
1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ()



Note

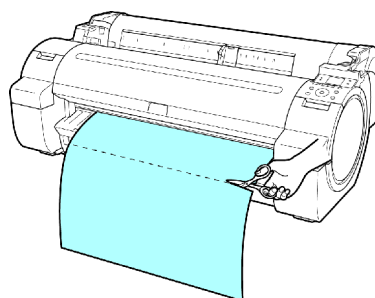
- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button. The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Cutting Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Starts printing.
The printer stops advancing the paper after printing.
8. Press the **Feed** button.

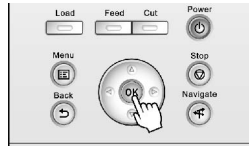


Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.

9. Cut the roll paper manually with scissors or the like.

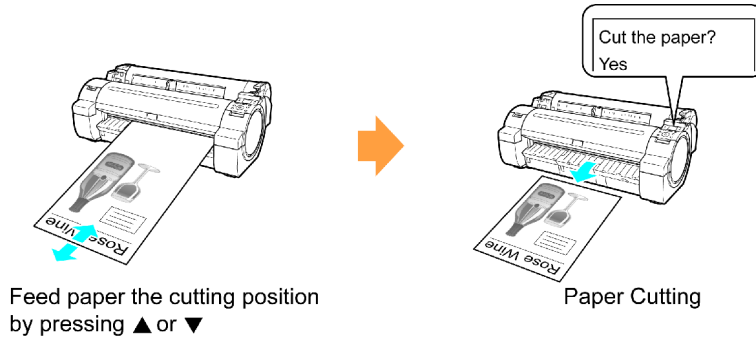


10. Press the **OK** button.



After the roll is rewind, it stops automatically.

Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



1. Press the **Feed** button.
2. Press the ▼ button to advance the roll to the position for cutting.



3. Press the **Cut** button.



4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
After the roll paper is cut, it is rewind automatically.



Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

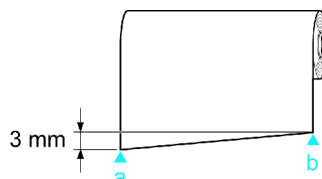
☰ Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** in the **Paper Menu** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 3 mm (0.12 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 3 mm. However, paper may sometimes be cut, depending on the state of the leading edge.

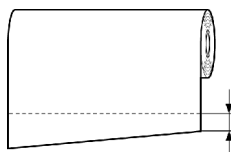


- **Off**

The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

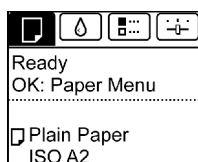
- **On**

The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut from the leading edge varies depending on the type of paper. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)



Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (☐).



Note

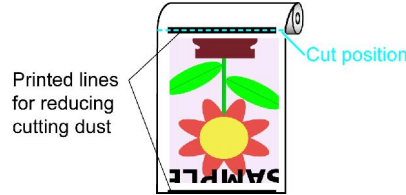
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

This setting takes effect the next time you load a roll.

☰ Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

For media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, select **CutDustReduct.** > **On** in the **Paper Menu** of the Control Panel. This option reduces debris from cutting by printing black lines at the leading and trailing edges of documents. It may help prevent Printhead damage. You can specify for **CutDustReduct.** to be activated for particular types of paper.

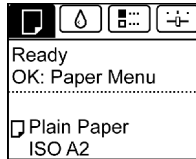


Important

- Do not set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when **CutDustReduct.** is set to **On**. To use borderless printing, select **CutDustReduct.** > **Off**.

Set **CutDustReduct.** to **On** as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

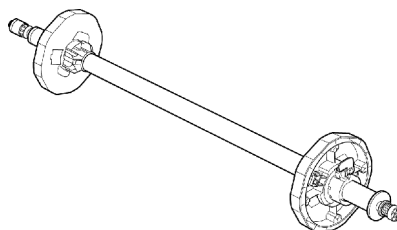
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

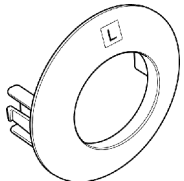
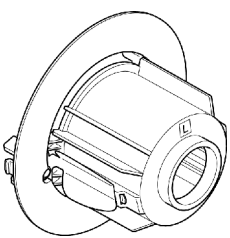
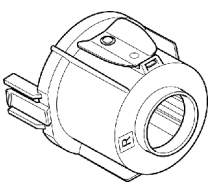
Roll Holder Set

Load a roll on the roll holder and then load the holder in the printer. The Roll Holder in the Roll Holder Set RH2-33 is for use with both 2-inch and 3-inch paper cores. Use the correct attachment for the particular paper core. (→P.103)

- Roll Holder Set RH2-33
 - Roll Holder (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores)



- Attachments

Using the 2-Inch Paper Core Attachment	Using the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment	
<p>2-Inch Paper Core Attachment</p> 	<p>3-Inch Paper Core Attachment L</p> 	<p>3-Inch Paper Core Attachment R</p> 

Handling sheets

☰ Loading Sheets in the Printer

Follow these steps to load sheets in the printer.



Important

- One sheet of paper can be loaded in the Paper Feed Slot at a time. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.
- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Roll Cover. The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.



Note

- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.

1. Select sheets as the paper source.

- If a print job was received
Sheets are automatically selected, and the media type and size specified by the print job are shown on the Display Screen. Go to the next step.
- If no print job was received
 1. Press the **Load** button.



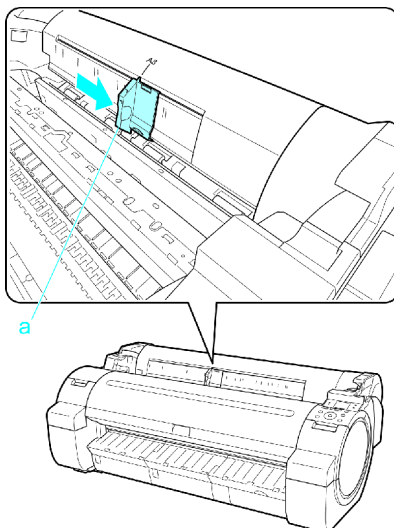
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Load Cut Sheet**, and then press the **OK** button.



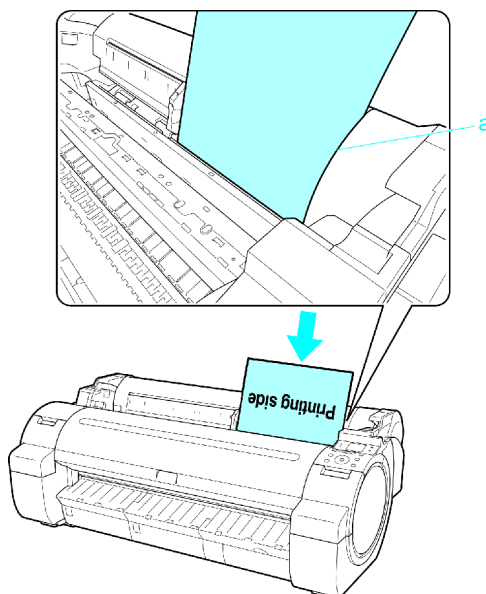
Note

- If any paper has been advanced that will not be used, a message is shown requesting you to remove it.
Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button. Remove the paper and go to the next step.

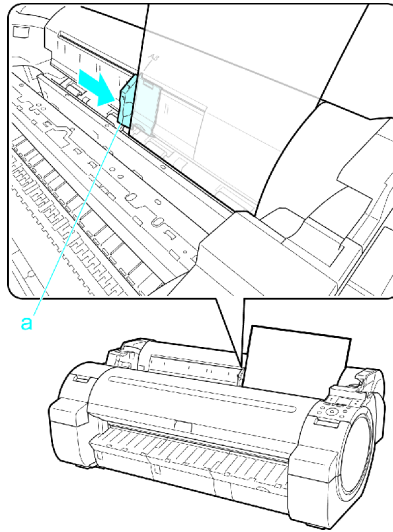
- 2.** Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.



- 3.** Load a single sheet printing-side up in the Paper Feed Slot, with the right edge aligned with the Paper Alignment Guide (a) to the right of the Roll Cover.
Insert the paper until the leading edge makes contact and you hear a tone.



4. Move the Width Guide (a) carefully to match the size of paper loaded.
Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.



5. Press the **OK** button.
 - If a print job was received
The printer now starts printing the print job.
 - If no print job was received
A menu for selection of the type of paper is automatically shown on the Display Screen.
Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
The printer now starts feeding the paper.



Note

- For details on types of paper to select, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

Changing the Type of Paper

Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper.

If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type > On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (→P.111)



Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount.
(→P.612)

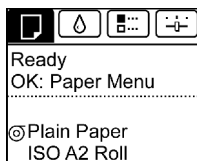
Changing the Type of Paper



Note

- After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper and press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (→P.112)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded (**Roll Paper** or **Cut Sheet**), and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



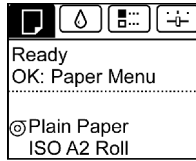
Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95) By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly

Configure this setting so that current media type settings will be automatically selected when you load the same type of paper later.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Keep Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

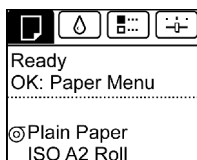
- The specified media type setting is updated in the following situations.
 - When using sheets, if you send a print job before loading a sheet, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the print job.
 - When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** on the Control Panel and a barcode is printed on the roll, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the barcode.
- To change the media type setting, see “Changing the Type of Paper”. (→P.139)

☐ Printing From a Desired Starting Point

When printing inside boundaries or in other situations when you want to specify a particular position to start printing from, set **Width Detection** to **Off** in the printer menu for the type of paper used.

Set Width Detection to Off

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (☐).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Width Detection**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

Load paper in the desired position to start printing from

Follow these instructions to load paper at the desired starting position for printing when **Width Detection** is **Off**.

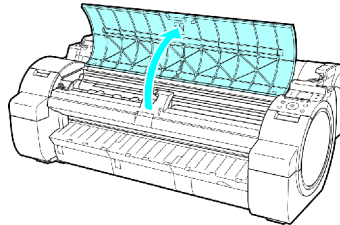
1. If you did not send a print job in advance, a menu for selection of the type of paper is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

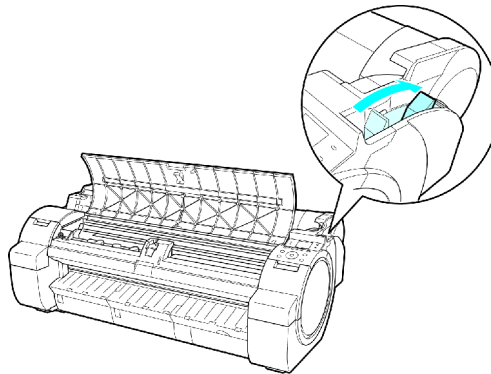
- If a print job was received before paper was advanced, the media type and size specified by the job are shown on the Display Screen. Thus, this screen is not displayed. Go to step 2.

2. **Width Detection OFF. OK to continue?** is now shown on the Display Screen. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Leave OFF**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. After a menu for selection of the paper size is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Open the Top Cover and check the position where paper is loaded.

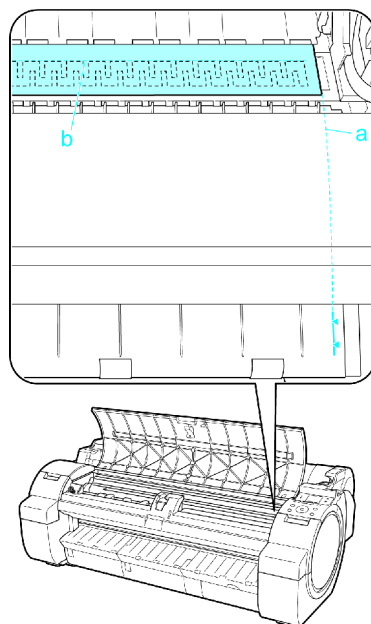


To start printing from the current position, close the Top Cover.

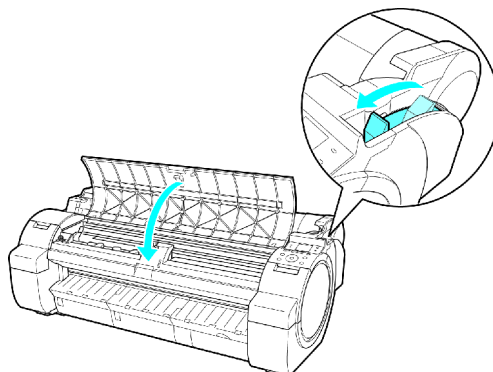
To reposition the paper, push the Release Lever back.



- 5.** Keeping the right edge of the paper aligned with the extended line of the Paper Alignment Line (a) to the right of the ejection guide and the leading edge aligned with the groove (b) at the far end of the Platen, load the paper at the position from which to start printing.



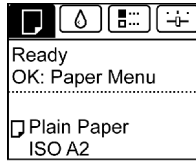
- 6.** Pull the Release Lever forward and close the Top Cover.



Removing Sheets

Remove sheets from the printer as follows.

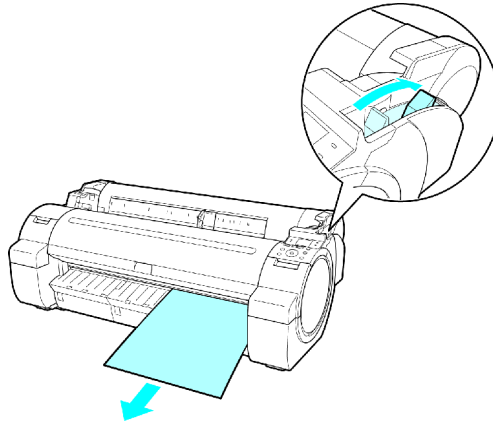
1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



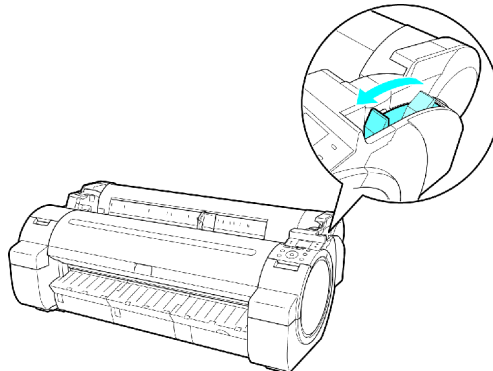
Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Eject Paper**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.
5. Holding the paper, push the Release Lever back and remove the sheet.



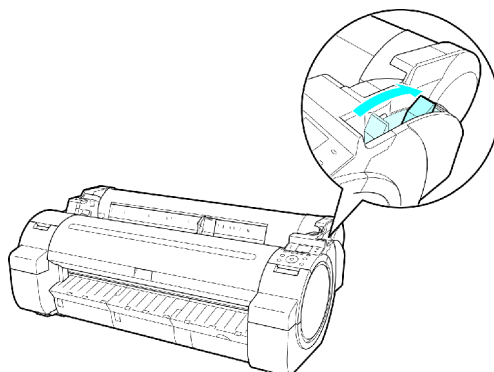
6. Pull the Release Lever forward.



Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

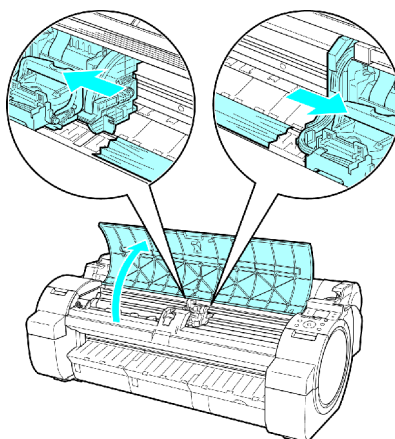
1. Push the Release Lever back.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

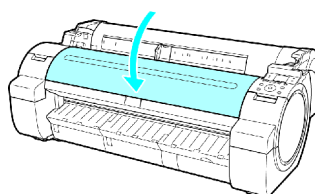
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

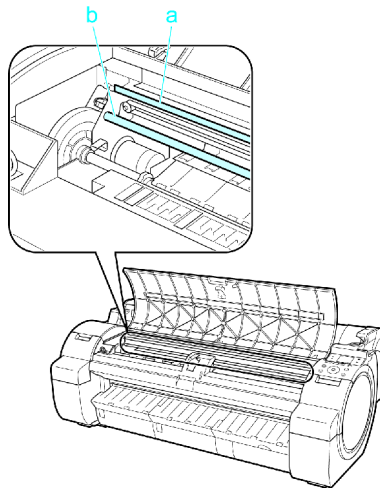
3. Close the Top Cover.



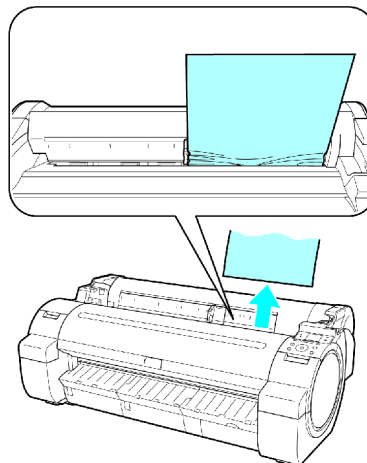


Important

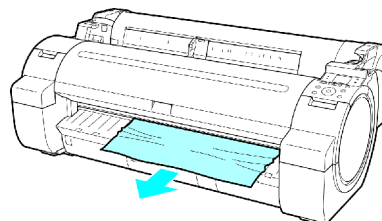
- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



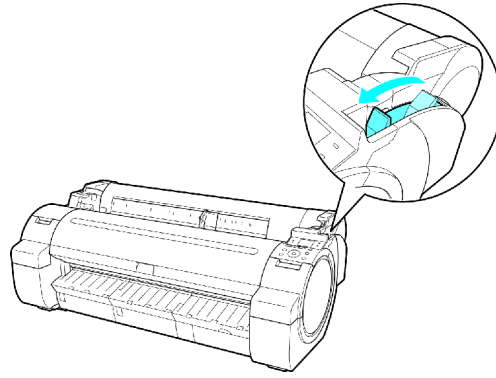
- If the paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot
Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



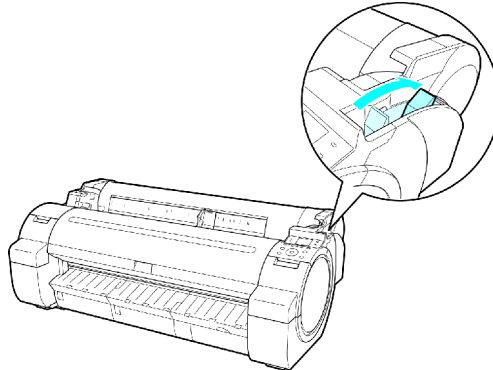
3. Pull the Release Lever forward.



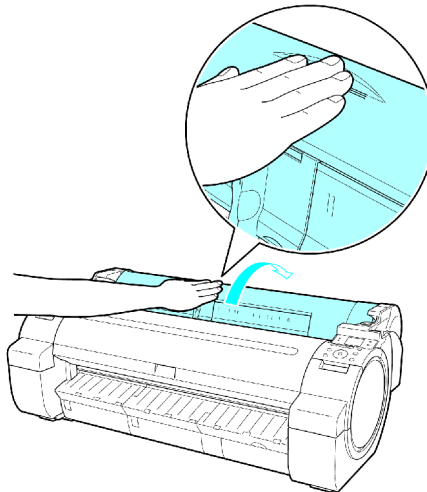
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

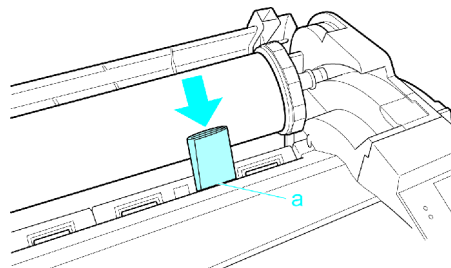
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.24)
2. Push the Release Lever back.



3. Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.

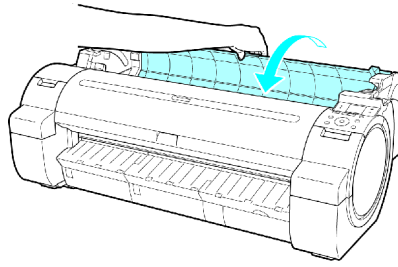


4. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Paper Feed Slot. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

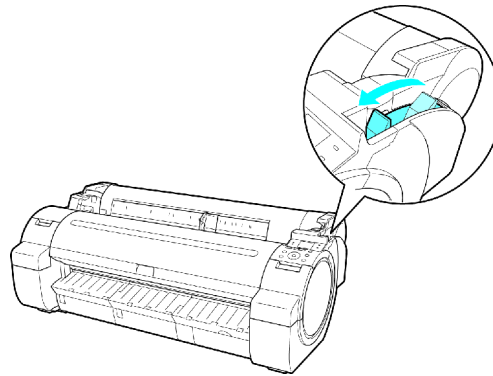


5. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
6. If any scraps remain inside the paper feed slot, repeat steps 4 and 5.

7. Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.



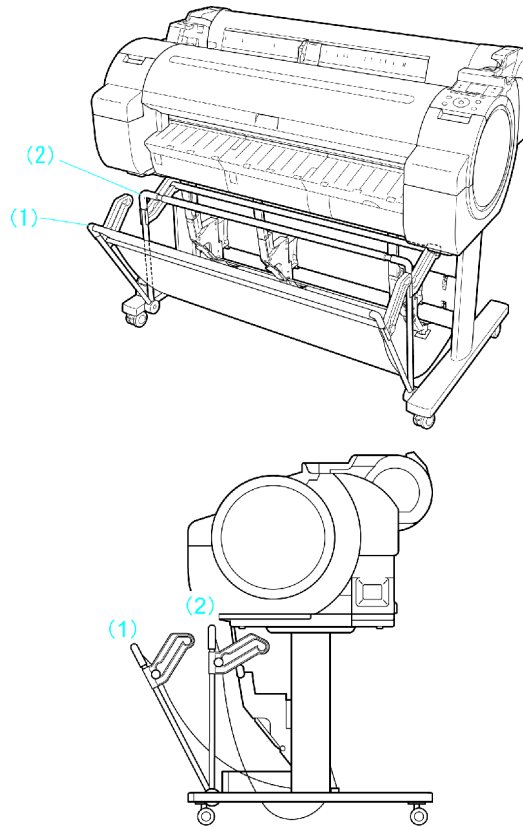
8. Pull the Release Lever forward.



Output Stacker

Using the Output Stacker

The Output Stacker can be held at two positions, as shown.



- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker
Use position (1).
- When the Output Stacker is not used, or when moving the printer
Use position (2).
When moving the printer, lift the Support Rod to the Extended position. (→P.151)



Important

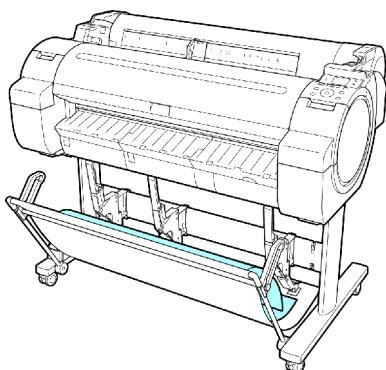
- When storing printed documents on the Output Stacker, always use it in position (1). If you do not, printed documents may not be dropped into the Output Stacker, and the printed surface may become soiled.
- When moving the printer, always lift the Support Rod to the Extended position before use in position (2). If the stacker is not used in position (2), the Basket Cloth may touch the floor and be soiled or damaged.
- The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.

Note regarding the Extended position

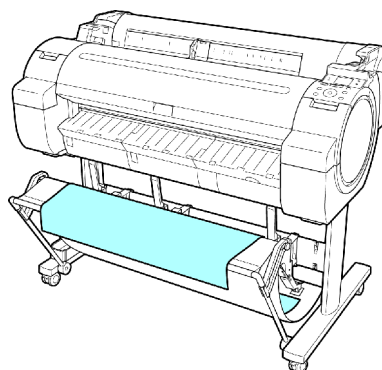
The Output Stacker can be used in the regular position and an Extended position for easy removal of printed documents.

For information on types of paper you can use with the stacker in Extended position, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

Regular position

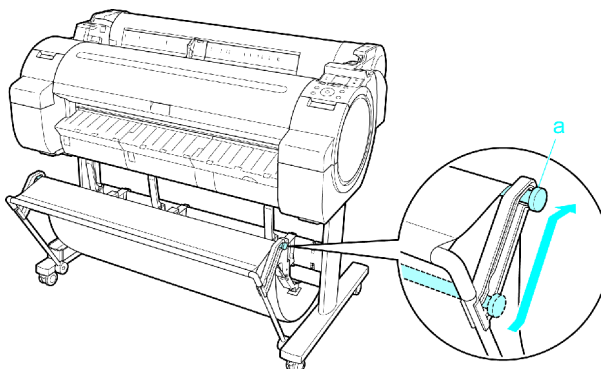


Extended position

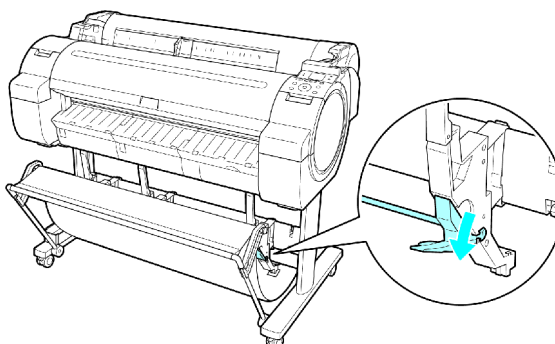


Switch the stacker to Extended position as follows.

1. Lift the Support Rod to the position shown (a) and switch the stacker to Extended position.



2. When using rolls larger than A1 or 24 inches wide, pull out the Adjustable Stopper.



Working With Various Print Jobs

Printing Photos and Images

Printing Photos and Images

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.



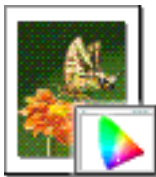
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Poster	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
	Photo (Color)	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
	Faithful Color Reproduction	Prints by minimizing color differences. Suitable for when the printing results are too vivid or when printing scanned images.



Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.187)

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality	Description
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in "Standard" or "Draft" modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in "Highest" or "High" mode.
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.

For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

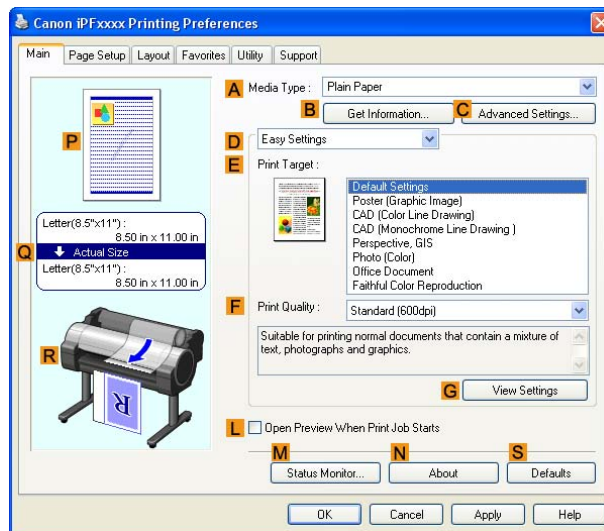
- Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.154)
- Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.156)

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Premium Glossy Paper 200
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Premium Glossy Paper 200.

In the **A Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see Media Configuration Tool.

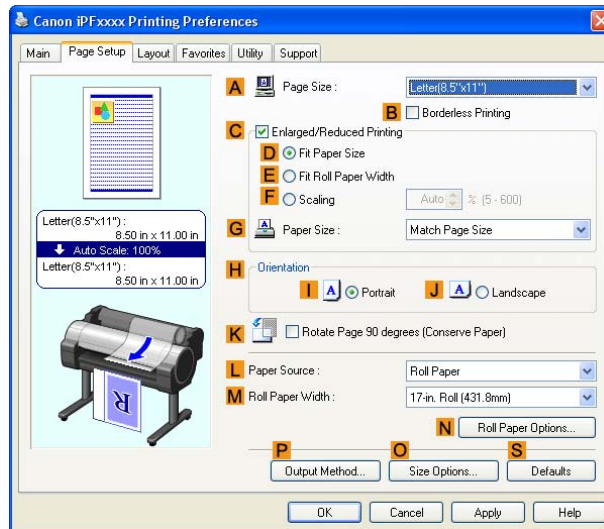
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.336)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

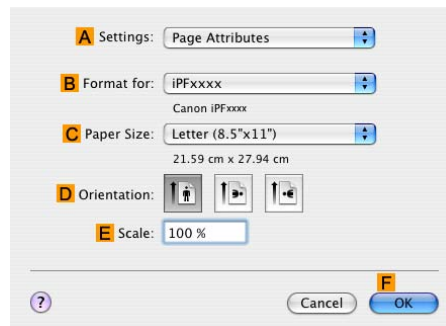
- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Premium Glossy Paper 200
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

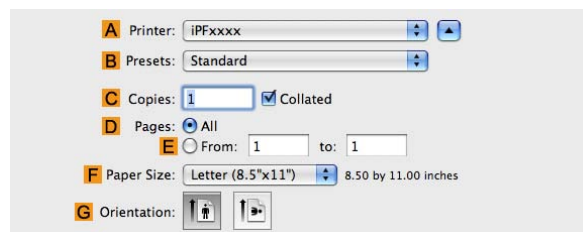


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

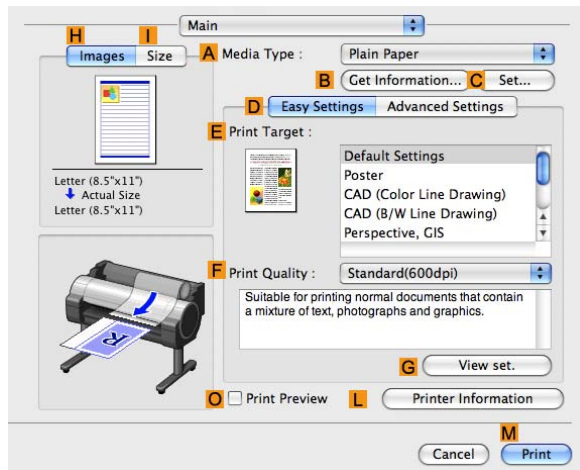


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"×12"**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Premium Glossy Paper 200.

Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.



Note

- The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For details, see Media Configuration Tool.

7. After confirming that **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Color)** in the **Print Target** list.

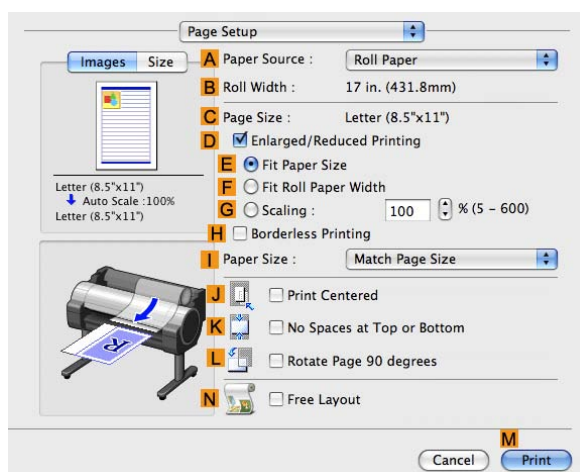


Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images”. (→P.152)
- You can check the settings values selected in the **Print Target** list by clicking **View set.**

8. Make your selection in the **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



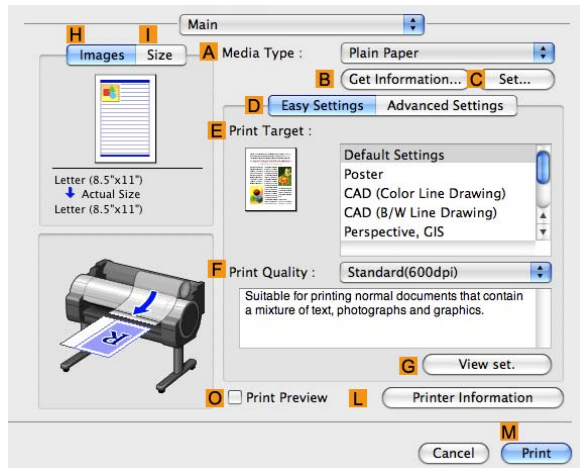
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

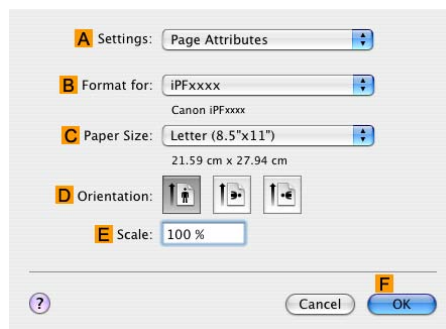


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.454)
14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Printing CAD Drawings

☐ Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.



Note

- In Windows, you can print highly precise drawings using the provided imagePROGRAF HDI Driver for AutoCAD/AutoCAD LT.
For details on the HDI driver, see the HDI Driver Guide.

For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.162)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.164)

☰ Printing Line Drawings and Text

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.




Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	CAD (Color Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print black lines in CAD drawings clearly.
	Perspective, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (**Advanced Settings**)
For details on **Advanced Settings**, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.187)

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality	Description
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in "Standard" or "Draft" modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in "Highest" or "High" mode.
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

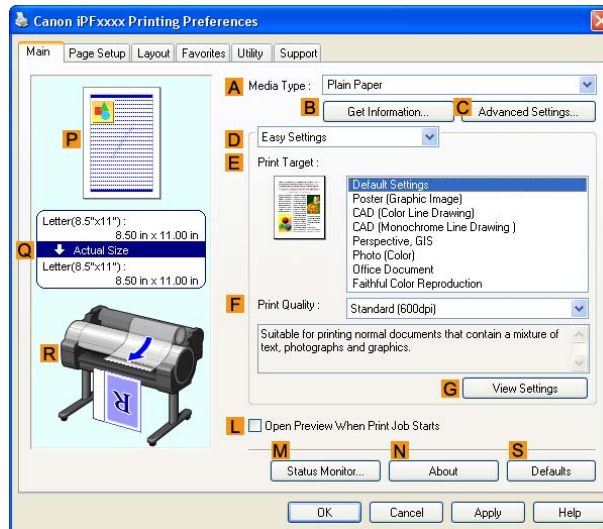
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.162)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.164)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



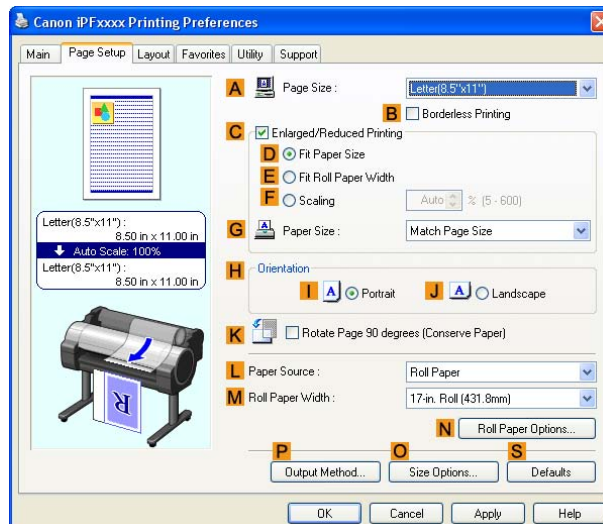
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Color Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.336)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

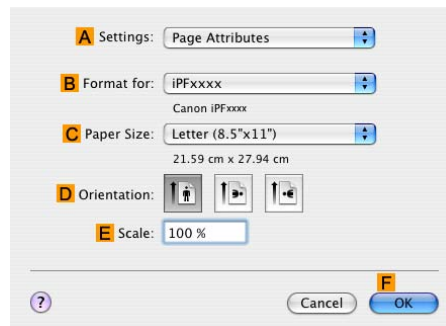
- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

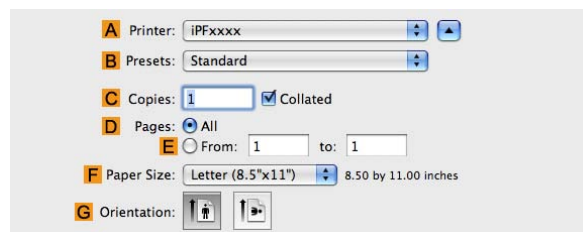


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

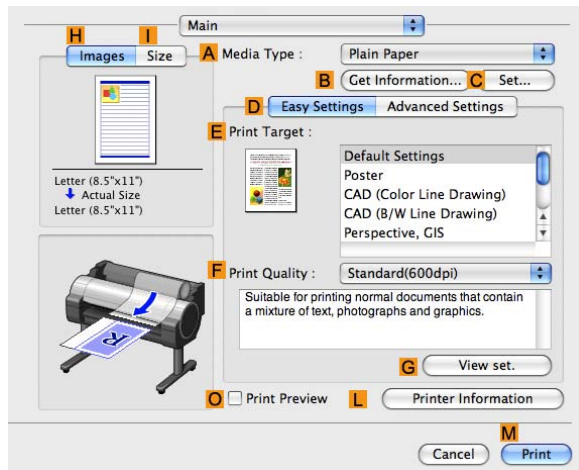


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Color Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.

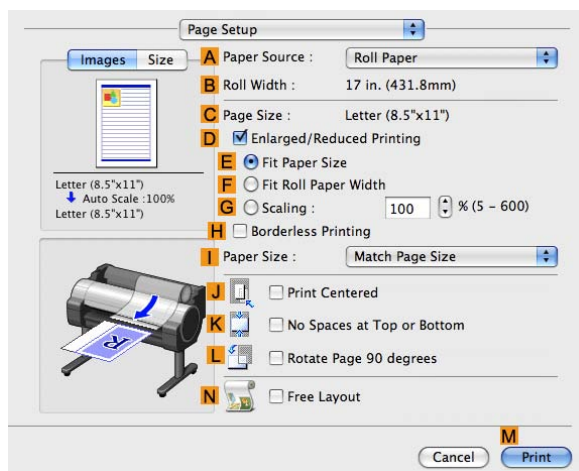


Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View set..**

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



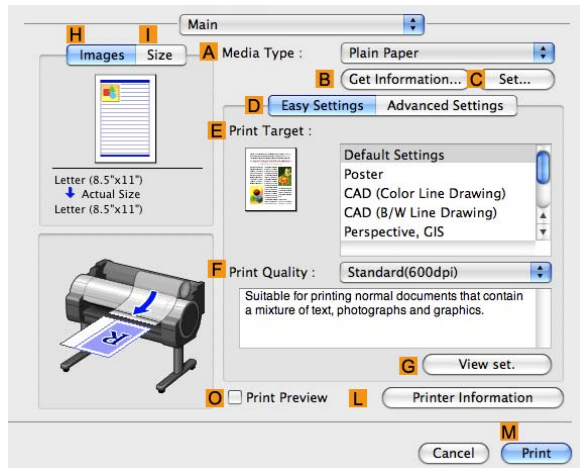
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

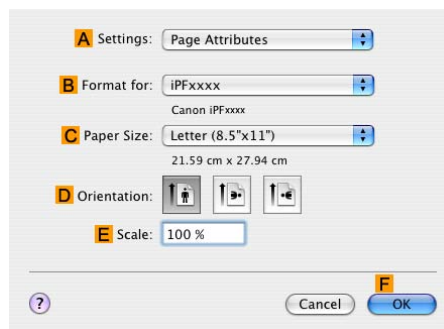


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.454)
14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings

You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.

Colors can be adjusted before printing as follows when **Color Compatibility** is selected.



Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

Color Compatibility

Color Setting Item

Color Setting	Description
Color (CAD) 1	Print in standard colors.
Color (CAD) 2	Print in brighter colors.
Color (CAD) 3	Print with approximate colors emulating Canon iPF500, iPF600, iPF700, iPF510, iPF610, iPF710, iPF605, iPF720, iPF810, iPF820.
Color (CAD) 4	Print emulating the HP Designjet 500/800, in colors resembling colors produced by these printers.
Color (CAD) 5	Print emulating the HP Designjet 1000, in colors resembling colors produced by this printer.



Important

- If you have selected **Color (CAD) 3**, **Color (CAD) 4**, or **Color (CAD) 5**, it is not possible to match the colors and image quality produced by the specified printer exactly.

For instructions on configuring **Color Compatibility**, refer to the following topics.

- Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows) (→P.168)

Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings (Windows)

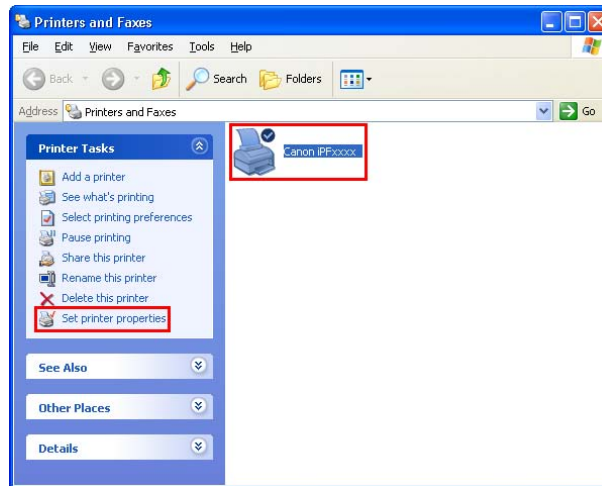
You can complete color settings when **Color (CAD)** is selected in **Color Mode**.



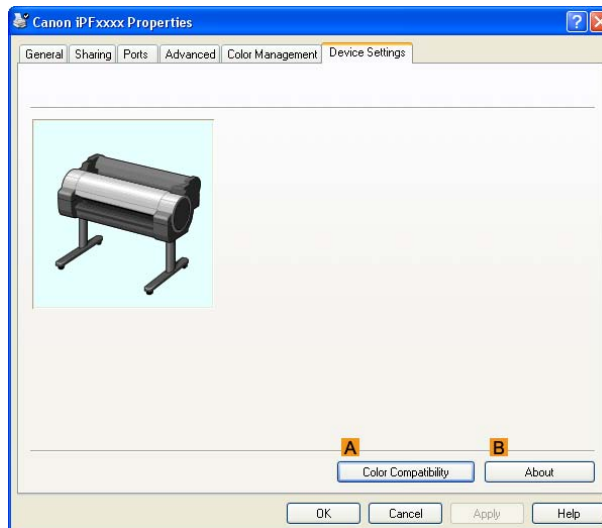
Note

- **Color (CAD)** is displayed when you select **Advanced Settings** on the **Main** sheet and set **Print Priority** to **Line Drawing/Text**.

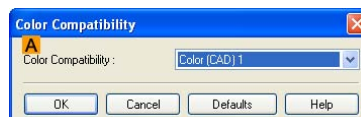
1. Click **start > Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



3. Click the **Device Settings** tab to display the **Device Settings** sheet.



4. Click **A Color Compatibility** to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box.



5. Select the desired color settings in the **▲ Color Compatibility** list.



Note

- For details on color settings, see “Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings”. (→P.167)

For printing instructions, refer to the following topic.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.190)

HP-GL/2 Printing

This printer supports the original Canon GARO printer control language as well as HP-GL/2 and HP RTL(*1) emulation.(*2) When printing from applications that support HP-GL/2 output, specify HP-GL/2 in the application's plotter output settings.



Note

- For instructions on configuring these settings, refer to the software documentation.

The printer automatically switches to the corresponding processing depending on whether a GARO, HP-GL/2, or HP RTL job is received. Configure the optional settings for HP-GL/2 emulation on the printer control panel. (→P.49)

This printer can emulate the following printers using HP-GL/2 emulation.

Emulated Printers	
Canon	iPF500, iPF600, iPF700, iPF510, iPF610, iPF710, iPF605, iPF720, iPF810 and iPF820
Hewlett-Packard	Designjet 500, Designjet 800 and Designjet 1000

*1: HP-GL/2: Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language 2; HP RTL: Hewlett-Packard Raster Transfer Language

*2: It may not be possible to print jobs with excessively large amounts of data correctly.

Printing Office Documents

☐ Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

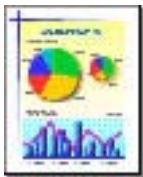
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.



Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.187)

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality	Description
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

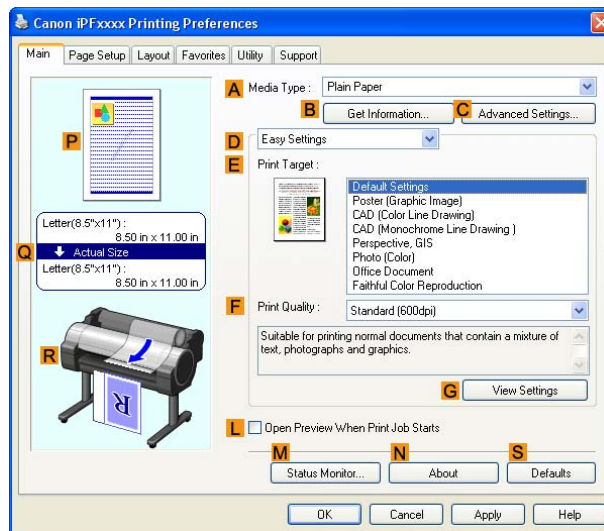
- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.172)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.174)

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



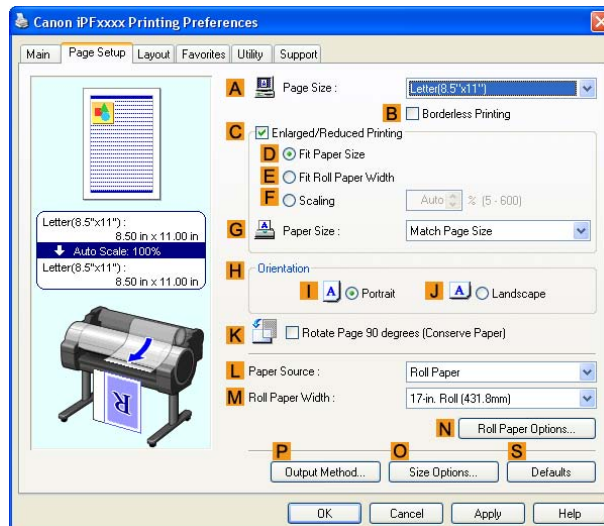
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.



Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
8. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.336)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Caution**

- Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **E Print Target** options may not be available.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

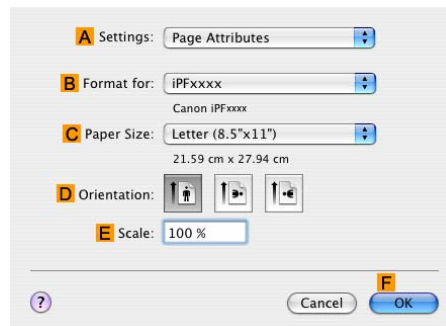
- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

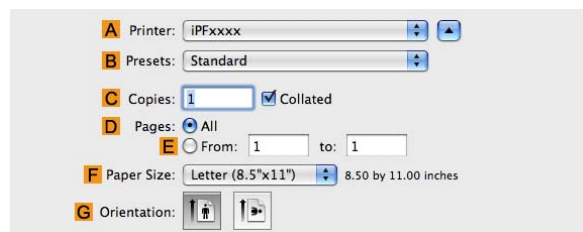


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

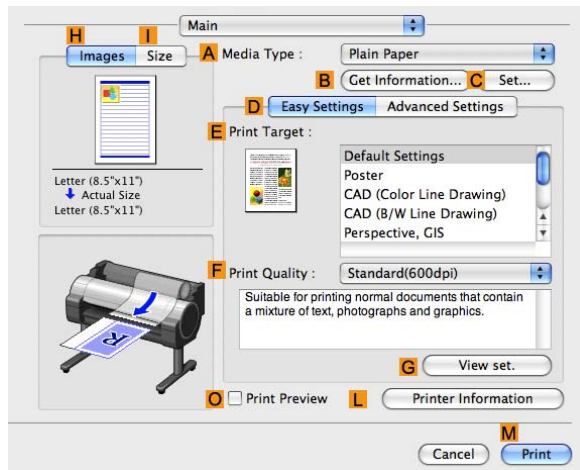


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the **E Print Target** list.

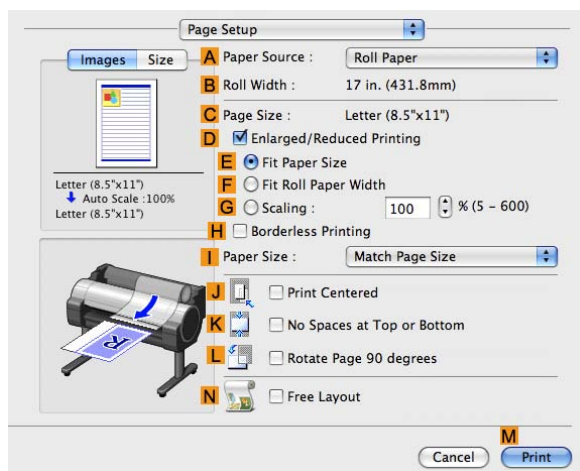


Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View set..**

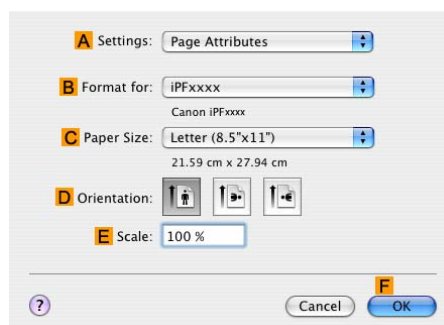
8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Manual** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.454)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Enhanced Printing Options

Adjusting Images

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.

The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.
Color (CAD)	A color mode optimized for line drawings (2D-CAD). Lines in red, yellow, and other colors are printed especially clearly.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome (BK ink)	A color mode for printing line drawings. Only Black ink is used.	You can adjust the color balance.
Monochrome Bitmap	Print in a color mode for CAD, using Color Ink, with all non-white portions printed in black.	No color adjustment is supported.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
Magenta	
Yellow	
Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.



Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.

By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Remarks
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver.	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use Driver Matching Mode .
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver.	You can select the Input Profile in the Input Profile Settings . You can select the printer profile in the Printer Profile Settings list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008.
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using Mac OS X 10.3.9-10.4.
Off (No Adjustment)	No color-matching	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Matching Method	Description	Remarks
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text.	The available options and their display order vary depending on your selected color-matching mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Prints images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Colors in data are reproduced accurately.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Colors in data are reproduced accurately. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white areas.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	



Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

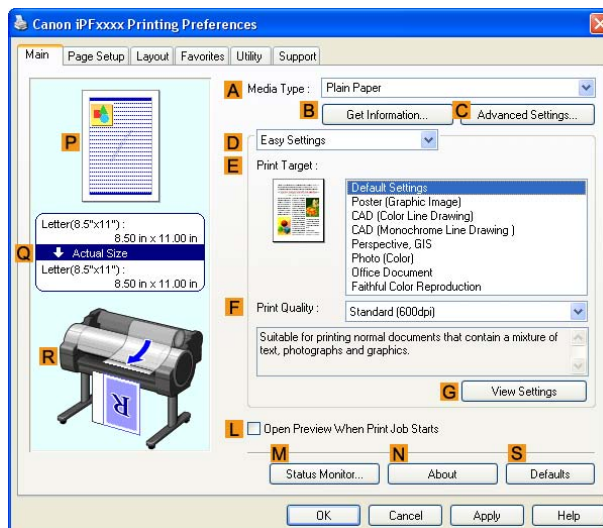
For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.181)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.184)

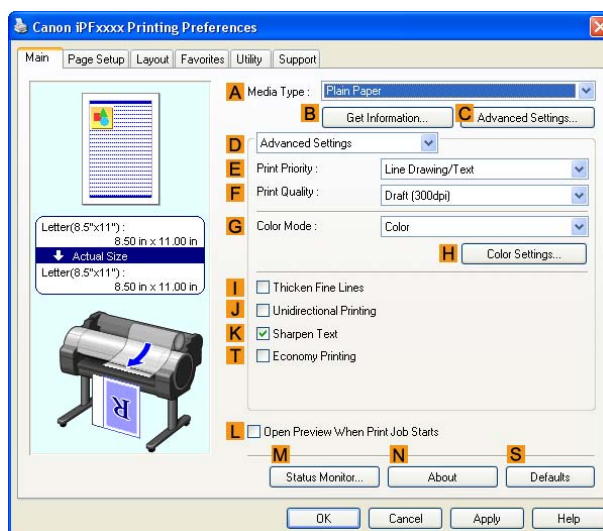
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

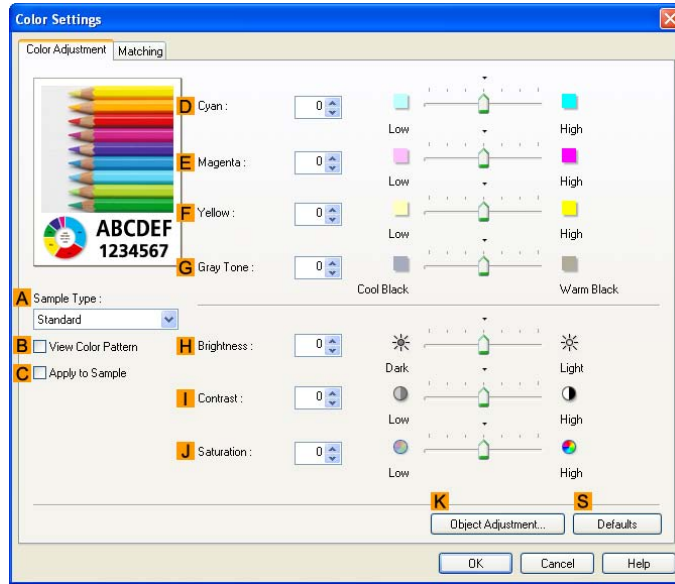


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the **G Color Mode** list.

7. Click **H Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

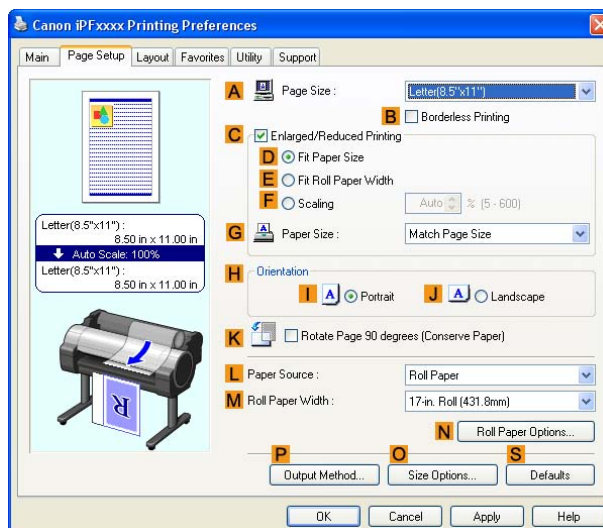


Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

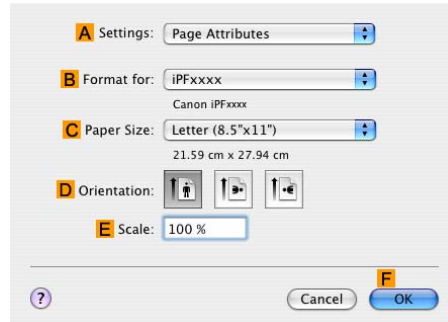
You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

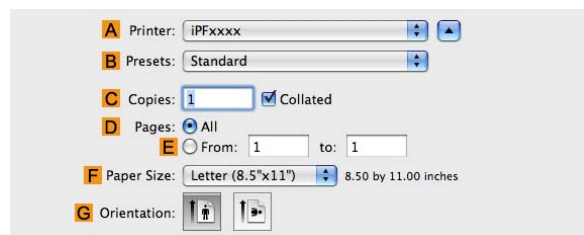


Note

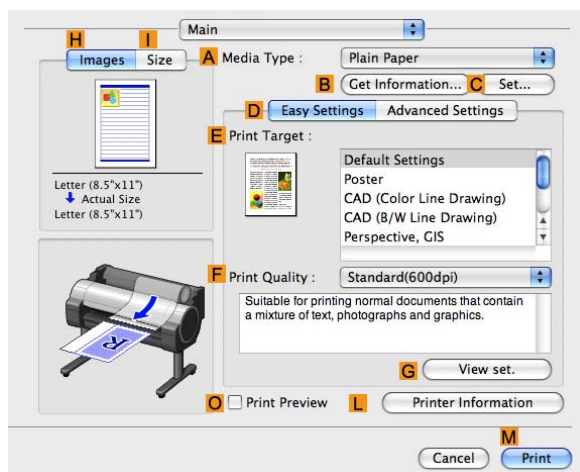
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



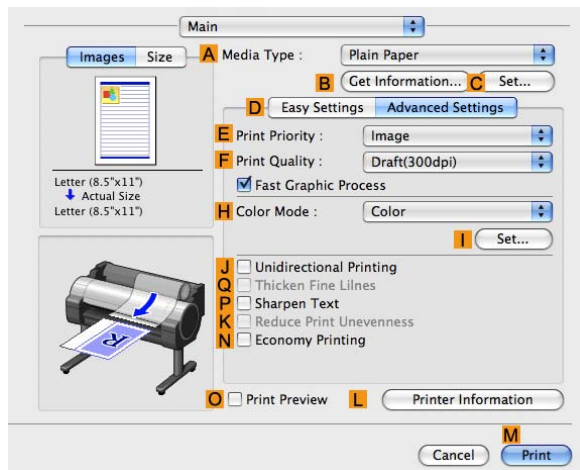
If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



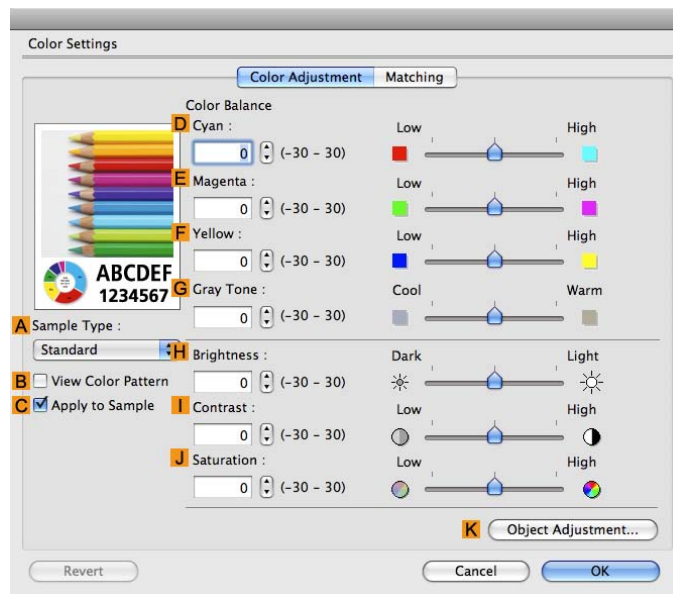
2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
7. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



8. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.
9. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



10. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
D Cyan	Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.
E Magenta	
F Yellow	
G Gray Tone	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
H Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
I Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
J Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.

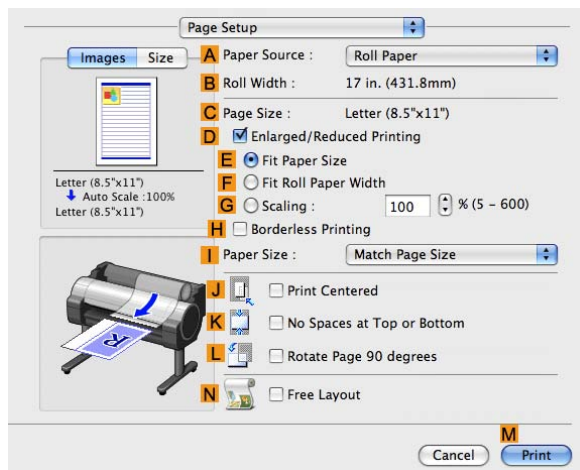


Note

- Click **Object Adjustment** to open the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, which allows you to select the color adjustment target from **Image**, **Graphics**, and **Text**.

11. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Confirm the settings of **A Paper Source** and **C Page Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

☰ Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.



Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.

For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Photos and Images (→P.152)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.160)
- Printing Office Documents (→P.171)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose "Image" instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected type of paper are listed under Print Priority.

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.

The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	Image
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in "Standard" or "Draft" modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	Image Line Drawing/Text

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in "Highest" or "High" mode.	Image Line Drawing/Text Office Document
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	Image Line Drawing/Text

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	Color Monochrome Color (CAD) Monochrome (BK ink) Monochrome Bitmap	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.177)
Color Adjustment	Cyan Magenta Yellow Gray Tone Brightness Contrast Saturation	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tones. If you choose Monochrome or Monochrome (BK ink) in Color Mode only Brightness and Contrast can be adjusted. Image , Graphics , and Text are available as Object Adjustment options. (In Windows and Mac OS X 10.5 only.)
Color-Matching Modes	Driver Matching Mode ICC Matching Mode Driver ICM Mode Host ICM Mode ColorSync (Mac OS 10.3.9-10.4) Off (Windows) No Correction (Max OS X)	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	Auto Perceptual Colorimetric Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr) (Max OS X) Saturation other	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in "Color-Matching Mode".

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.

*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.

Enhancing printing quality

Setting Item	Description
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, this takes more time than regular printing.
Thicken Fine Lines (Windows) Thicken Fine Lines (Mac OS X)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Sharpen Text	Choose this option to print intricate text more distinctly.
Reduce Print Unevenness (*1)	Choose this option to counteract uneven printing.
Economy Printing	When this mode is selected, less ink is consumed than in regular printing, but the quality is diminished. Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the Media Type and Print Quality settings, this mode may not be available.

*1: Displayed in Mac OS X.



Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

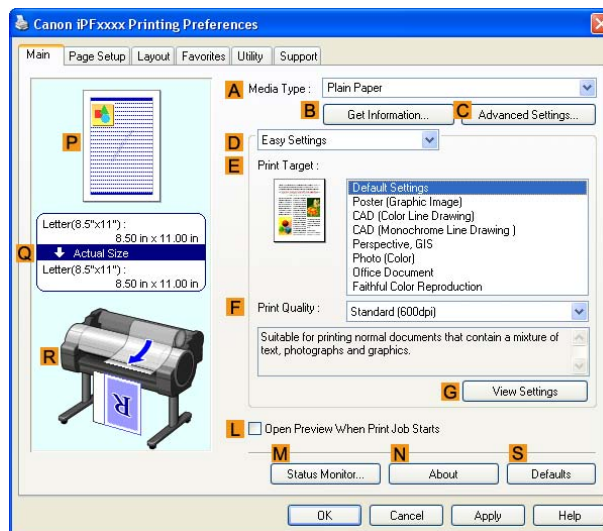
For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.190)
- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.192)

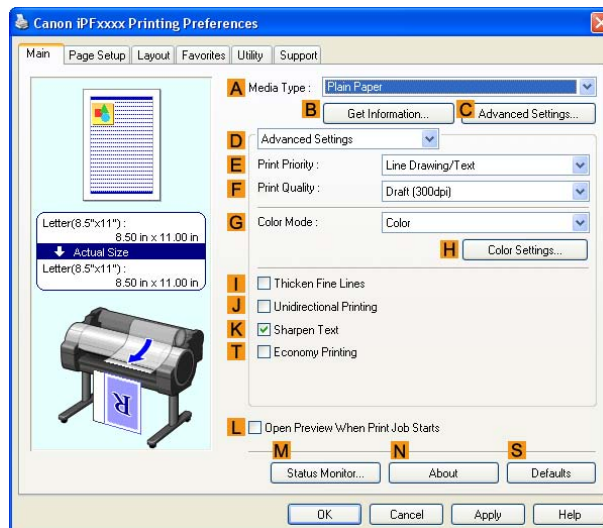
☐ Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the **E Print Priority** list.
7. Click **High (1200dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.



Note

- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **G Color Mode** list.

9. To adjust the color, click **H Color Settings**.

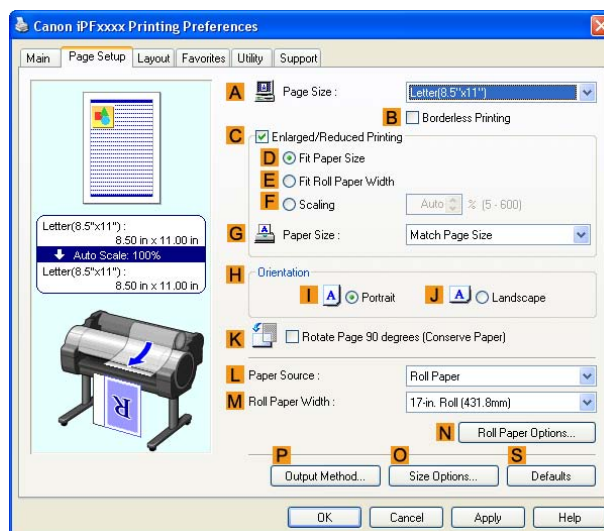


Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

10. Select the **K Sharpen Text** check box.

11. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



12. Confirm the settings of **A Page Size**, **L Paper Source**, and so on.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

☐ Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

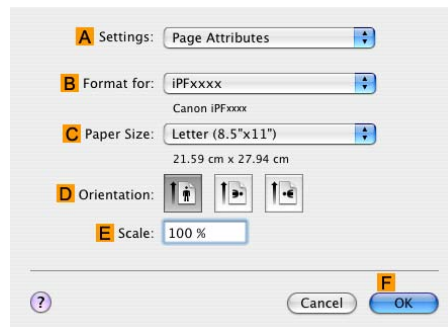
You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. As an example, this topic describes how to print CAD drawings as clearly as possible, with sharp lines and text.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

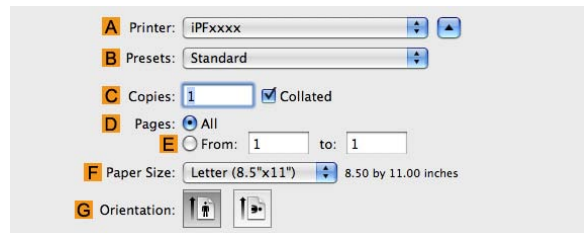


Note

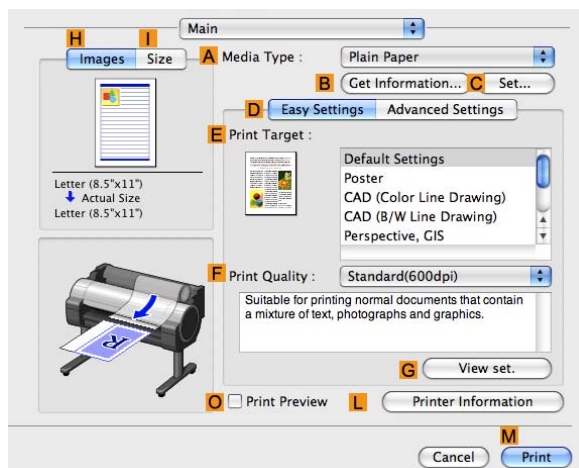
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

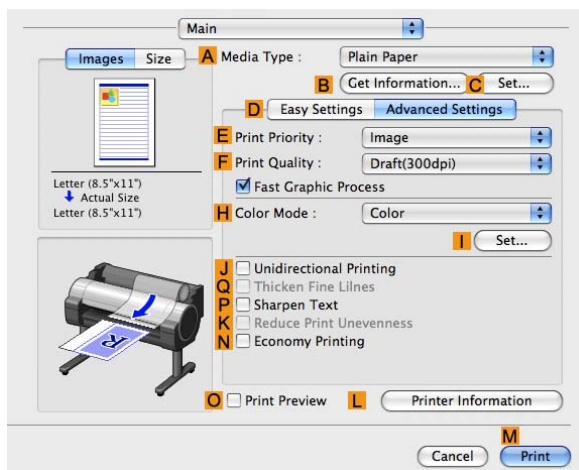


2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



8. Click **Line Drawing** in the **E Print Priority** list.

9. Click **High(1200dpi)** in the **F Print Quality** list.



Note

- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the type of paper.

10. Click **Color (CAD)** in the **H Color Mode** list.

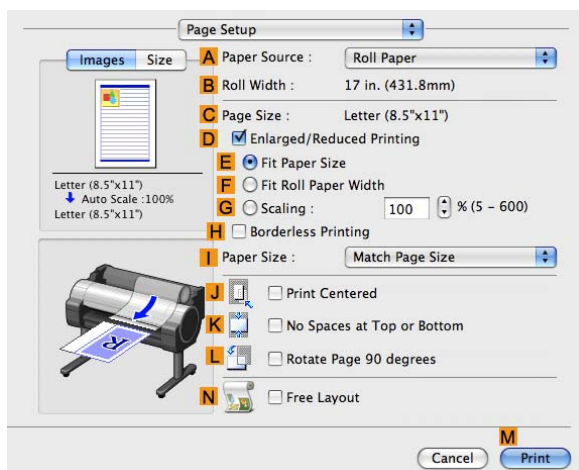
11. To adjust the color, click **I Set**.



Note

- For instructions on adjusting color, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Confirm the settings of **A Paper Source** and **C Page Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Choosing Paper for Printing

☐ Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media Type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.



Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- The types of paper indicated in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) are updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool (Macintosh).
- An error message may be displayed on the printer Control Panel if the type of paper as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded is not listed among the options for selection, try printing on Special 1, Special 2, and so on. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.

For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics.

- Changing the Type of Paper (→P.195)

Changing the Type of Paper

Follow these steps to change the type of paper specified on the printer after you have loaded paper.

If you will continue using this type of paper later, selecting **Keep Paper Type > On** will save the time and effort of configuring the media type setting when you load the paper again. The current media type settings before you select **On** will be automatically selected at that time. (→P.111)



Important

- For best printing results, the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper. Be sure to select the type of paper to use correctly before printing.
- Because the printer fine-tunes the feed amount for each type of paper, the margins and the size of printed images may vary depending on the type of paper used. If margins and the size of images are not as you expected, adjust the paper feed amount.
(→P.612)

Changing the Type of Paper



Note

- After you load a roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the type of paper on the Display Screen. Select the type of paper and press the **OK** button.
If no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have set **ManageRemainRoll** to **On**, specify the roll length after the type of paper. (→P.112)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ()



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Chg. Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded (**Roll Paper** or **Cut Sheet**), and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper loaded in the printer, and then press the **OK** button.



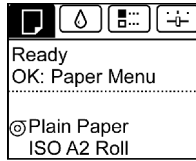
Note

- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95) By default, Plain Paper is selected.
- If you move the Release Lever, the setting automatically reverts to the previously selected paper.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly

Configure this setting so that current media type settings will be automatically selected when you load the same type of paper later.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab (.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Paper Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Keep Paper Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- The specified media type setting is updated in the following situations.
 - When using sheets, if you send a print job before loading a sheet, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the print job.
 - When you have selected **ManageRemainRoll** > **On** on the Control Panel and a barcode is printed on the roll, the media type setting is updated to match the type of paper specified by the barcode.
- To change the media type setting, see “Changing the Type of Paper”. (→P.195)

☐ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.

For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.197)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.199)

☐ Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

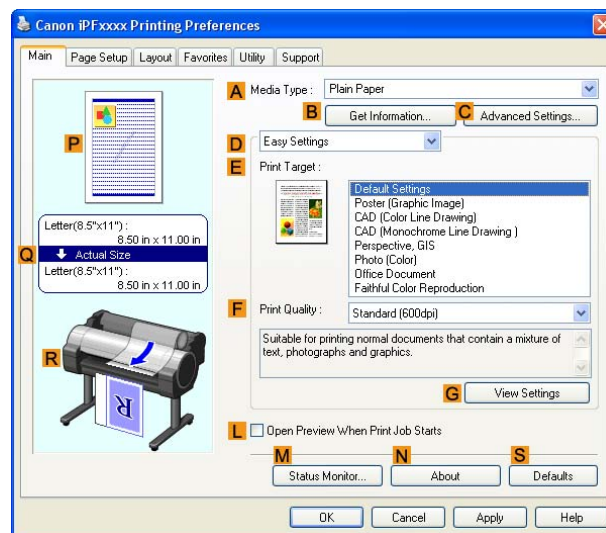
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver. If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



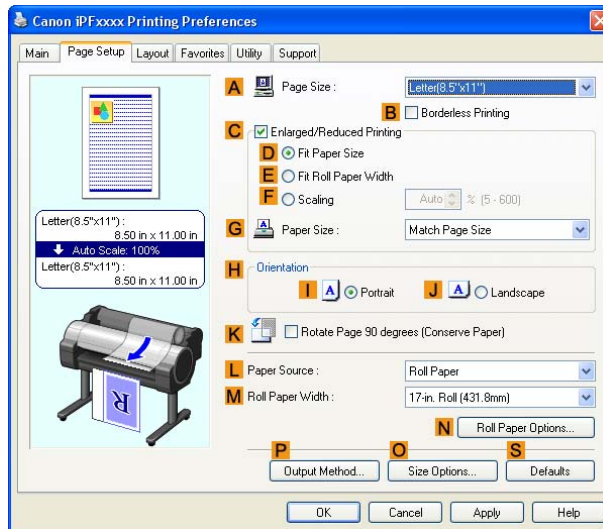
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.



Note

- Click the **B Get Information** button to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box. On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.

7. In the **L Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see "Printer Driver Settings (Windows)". (→P.336)

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

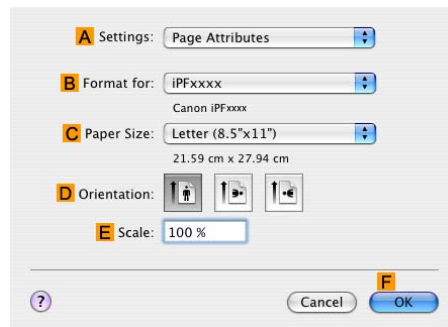
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

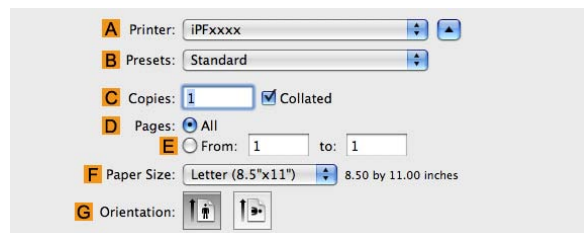


Note

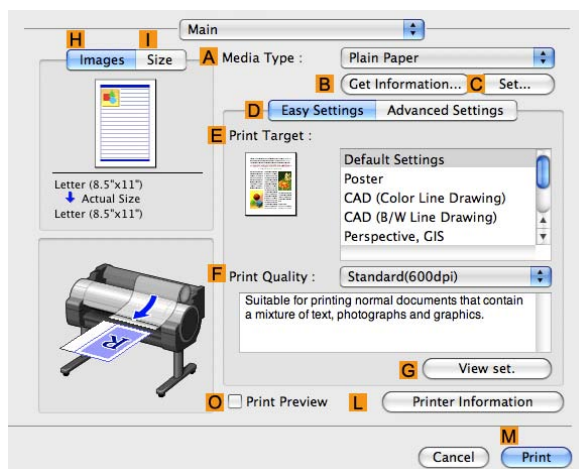
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

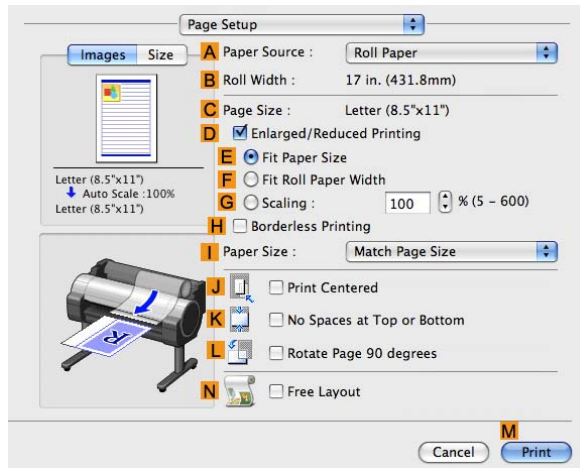


2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



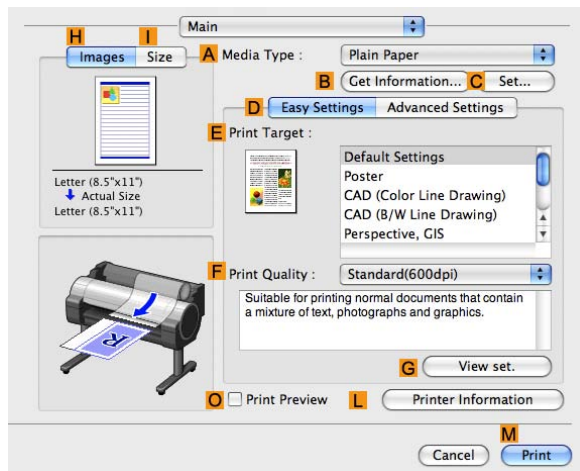
8. In the **A Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

9. If you have selected **Manual** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.454)

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

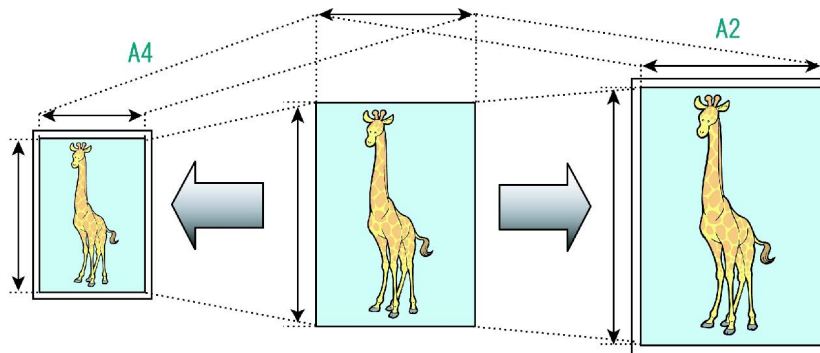
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.202)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.204)



Note

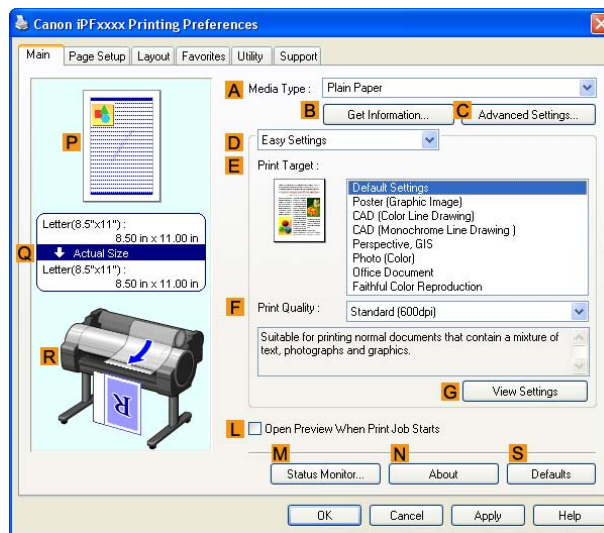
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

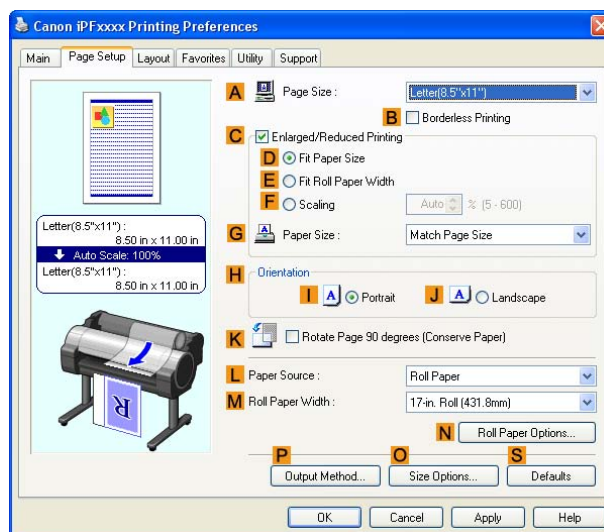
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Select the **D Fit Paper Size** check box.
12. Click **ISO A3** in the **G Paper Size** list.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

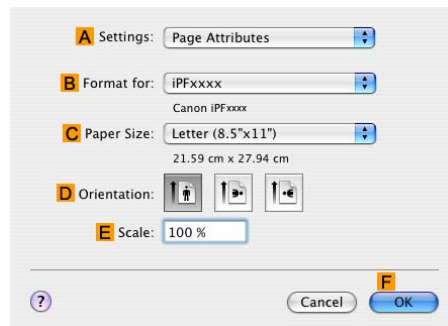
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

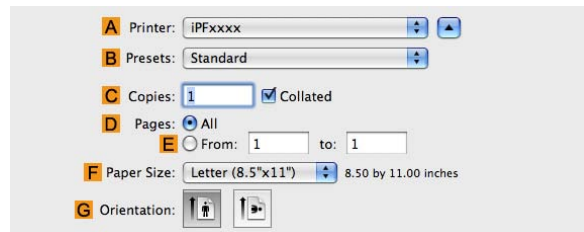


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

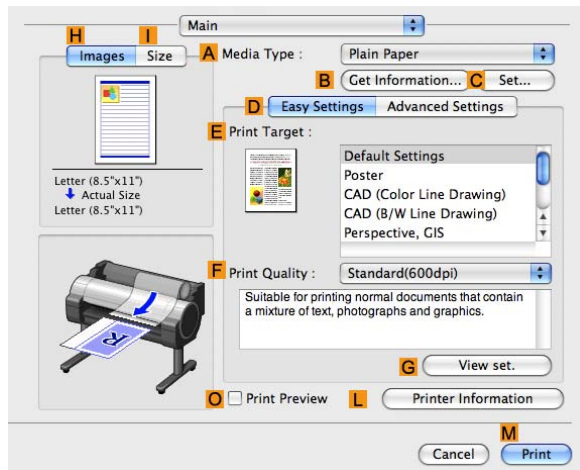


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

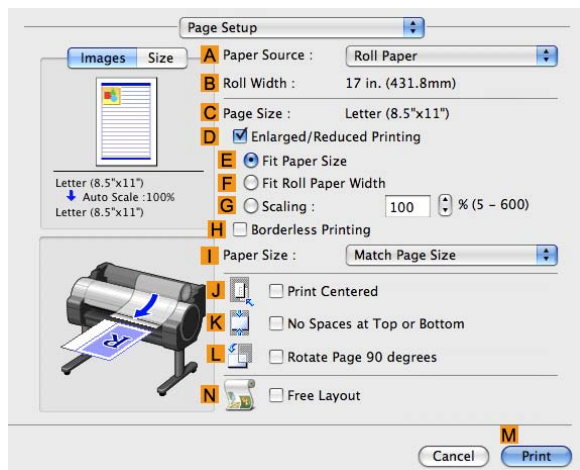


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



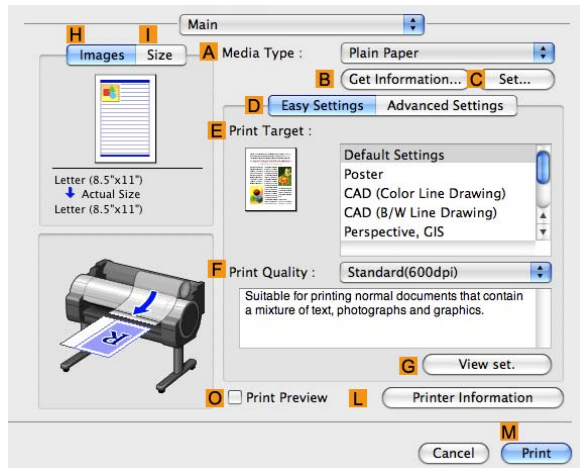
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

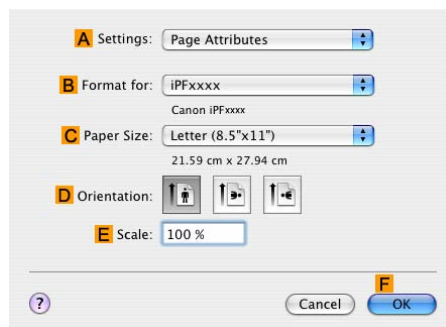


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure **E Fit Paper Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A3** in the **I Paper Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

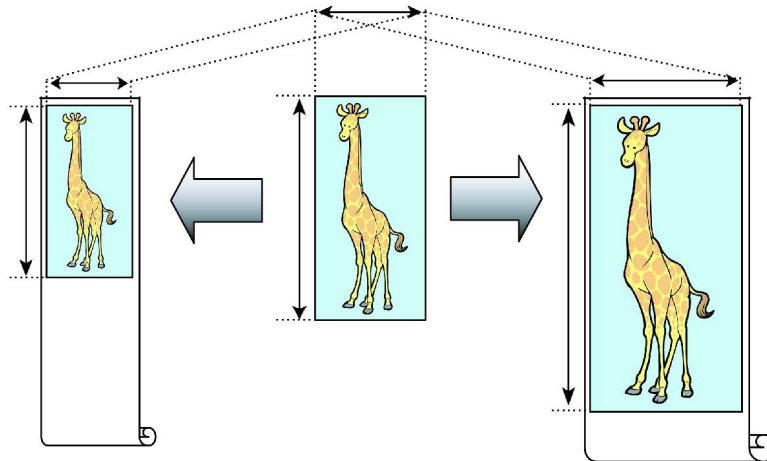
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.208)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.210)



Note

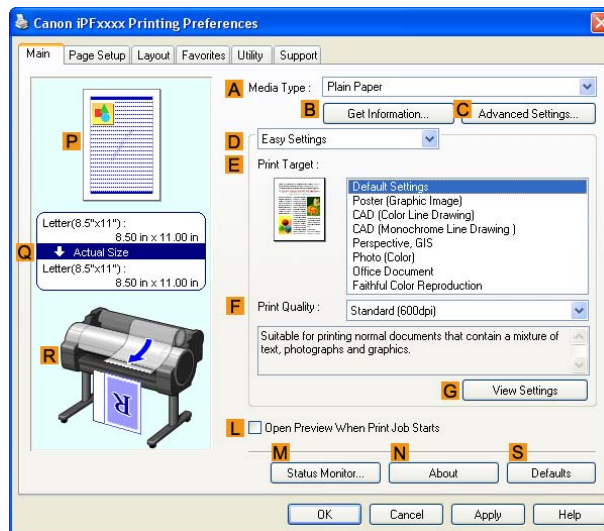
- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

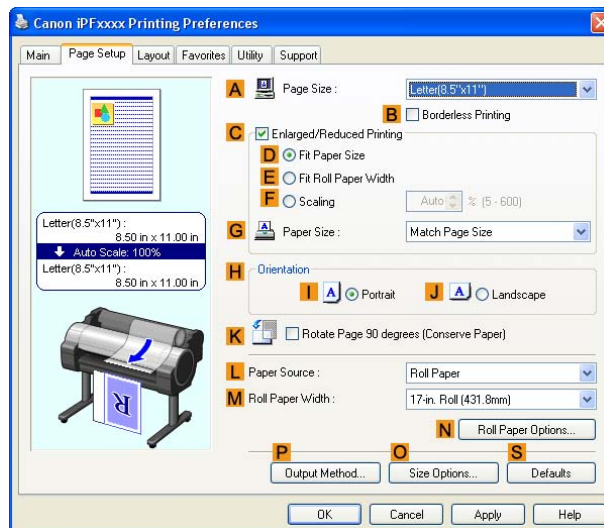
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



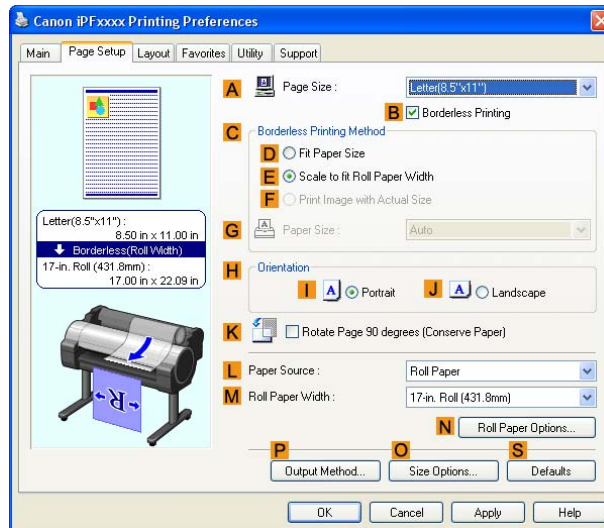
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.



Note

- If the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

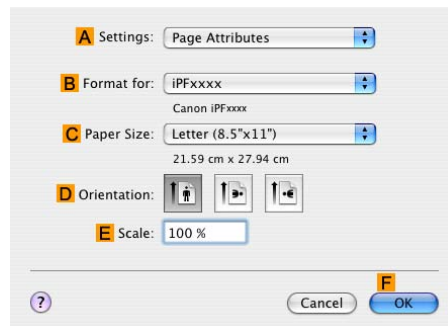
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

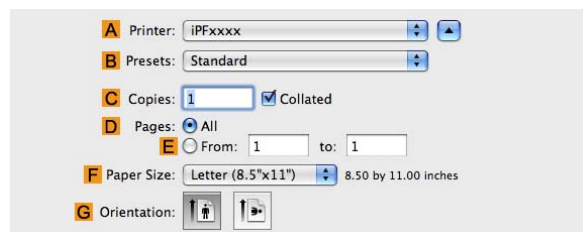


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

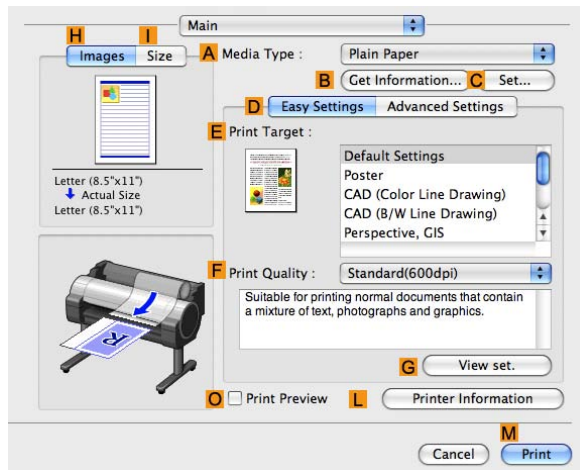


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

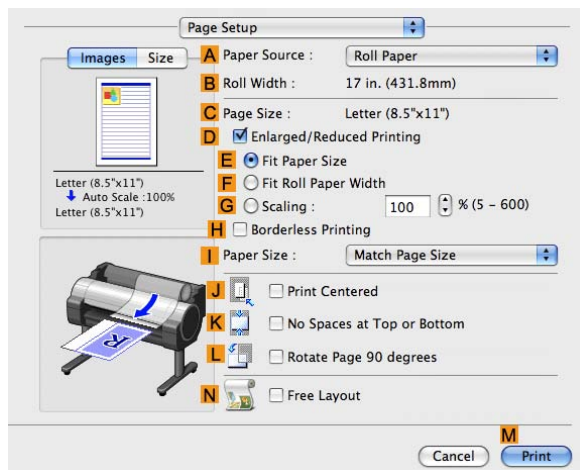


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

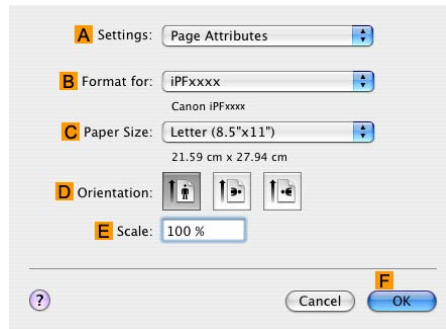
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.

12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box—in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

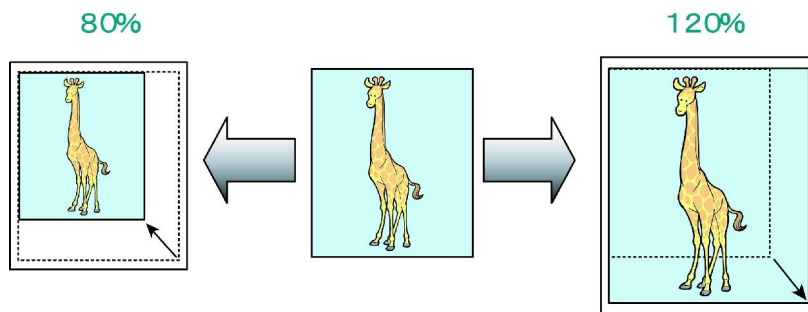
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.214)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.216)



Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

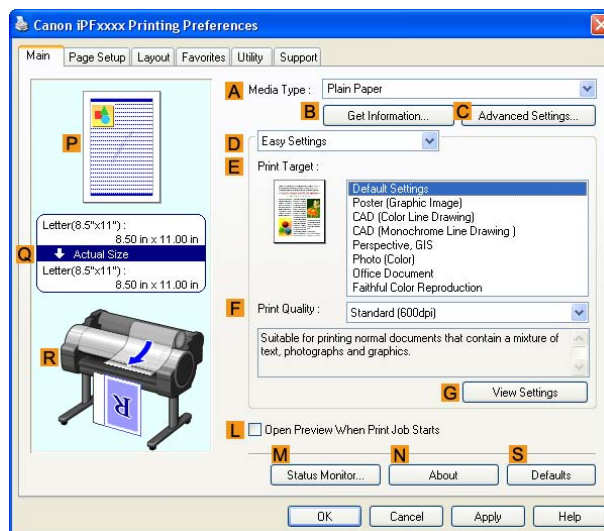
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])



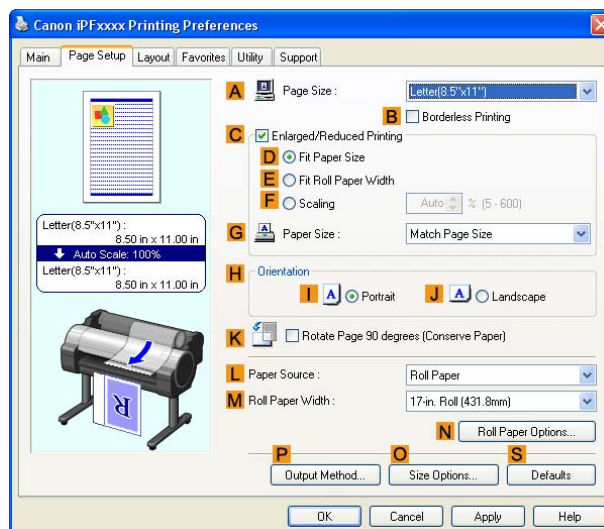
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.

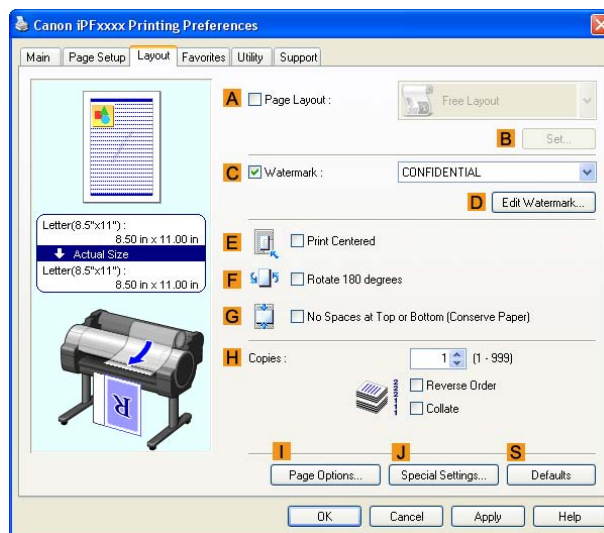


7. Click **R** Roll Paper in the **L** Paper Source list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M** Roll Paper Width list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the **A** Page Size list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
10. Select the **C** Enlarged/Reduced Printing check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the **G** Paper Size list.
12. Click **F** Scaling and enter "120".



Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portions off the bottom and right edges of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting **E** Print Centered on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

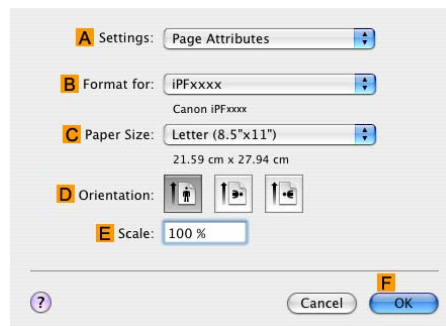
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

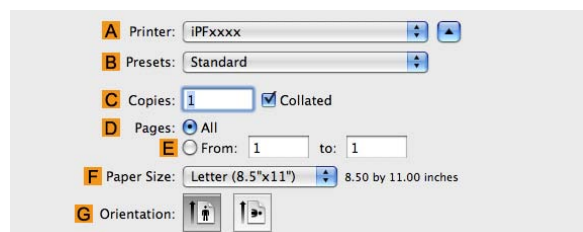


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

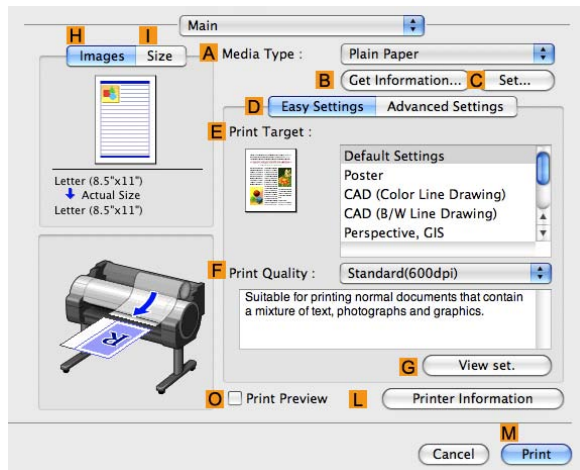


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

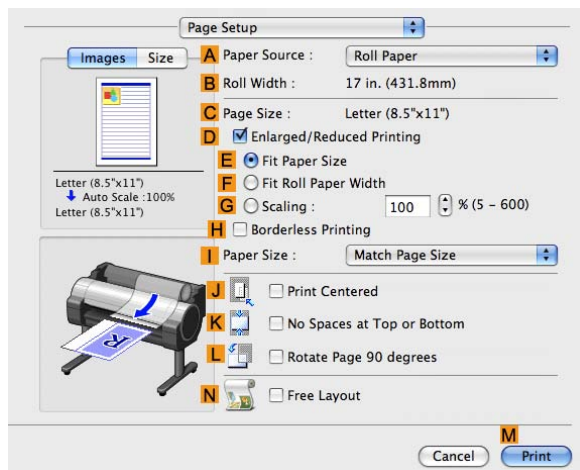


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



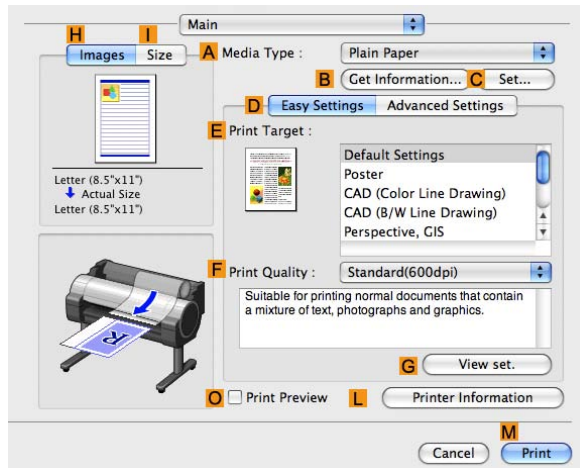
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

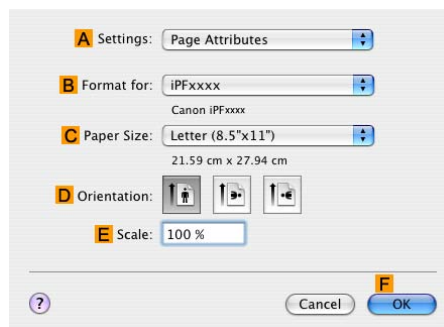


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click **G Scaling** and enter "120".



Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the **J Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.457)

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.75) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.

For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

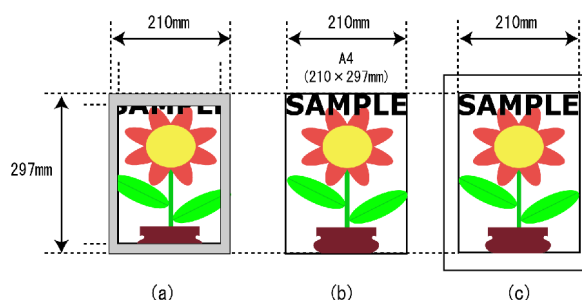


Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



- (a) Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
- (b) Page Size
- (c) Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)



Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size—a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
 - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
 - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size



Note

- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.100)
- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Manual** as **Paper Source**.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Paper Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size”. (→P.261)

Printing at full size

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

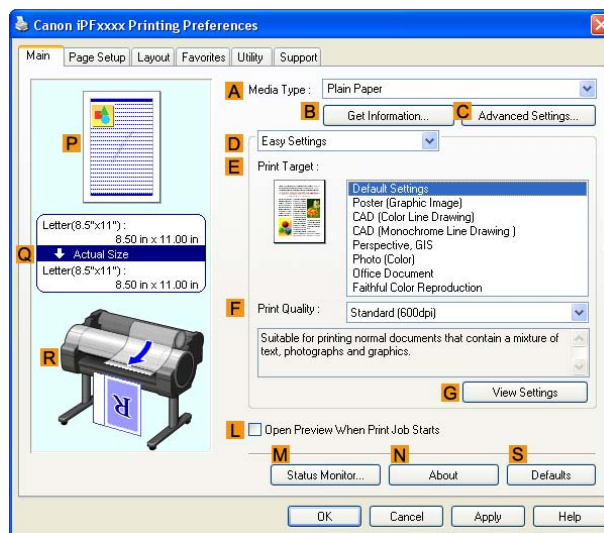
- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.220)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.222)

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

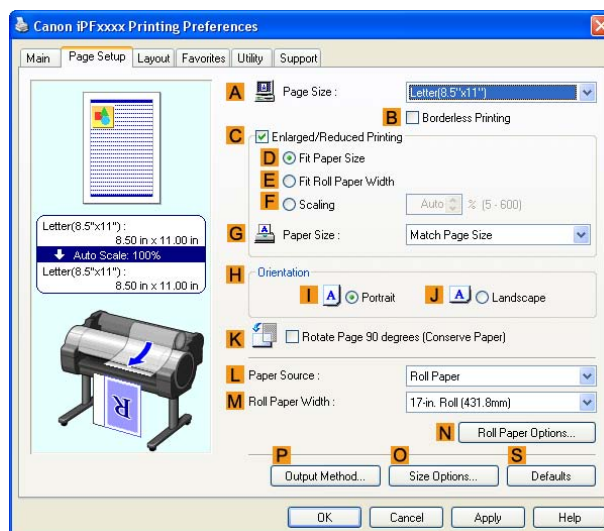
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the **A Page Size** list.
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

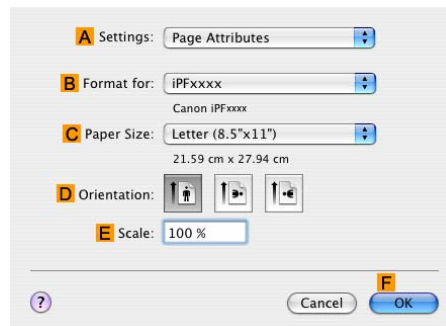
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

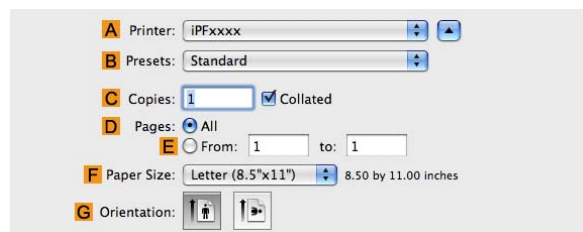


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

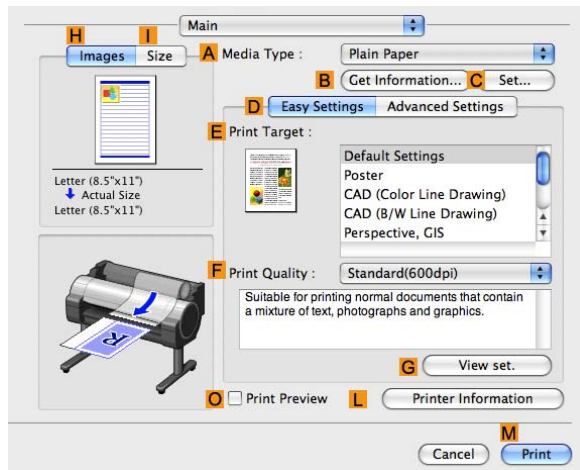


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In **F Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

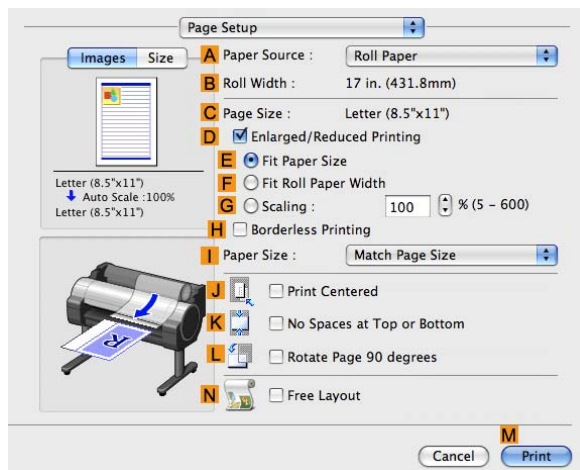


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



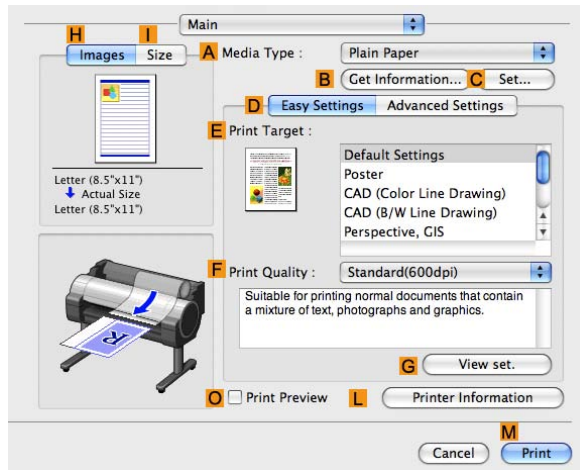
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

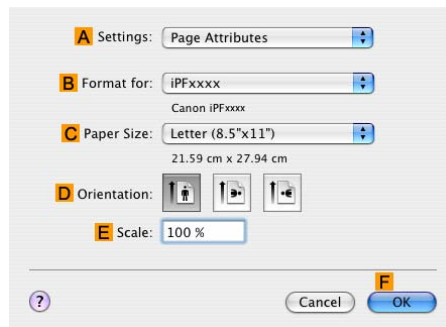


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

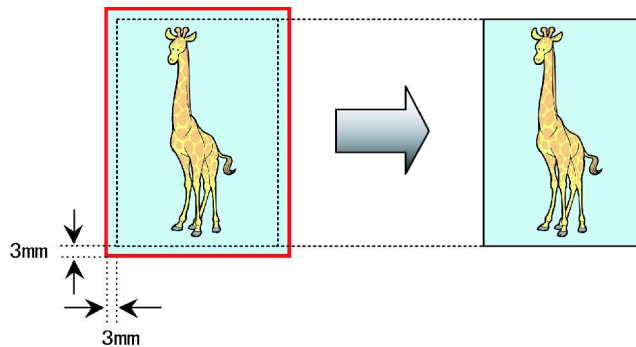
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- [Borderless Printing at Actual Size \(Windows\) \(→P.227\)](#)
- [Borderless Printing at Actual Size \(Mac OS X\) \(→P.229\)](#)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

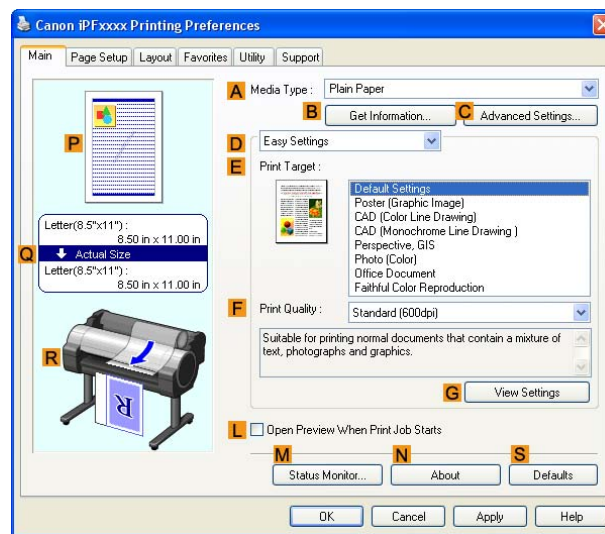
1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)



Note

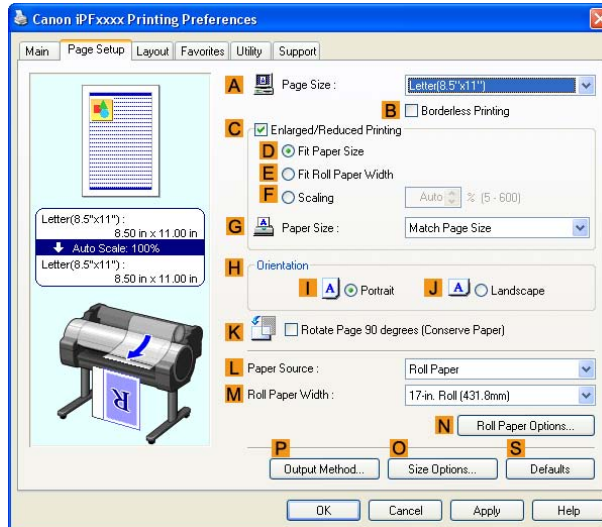
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

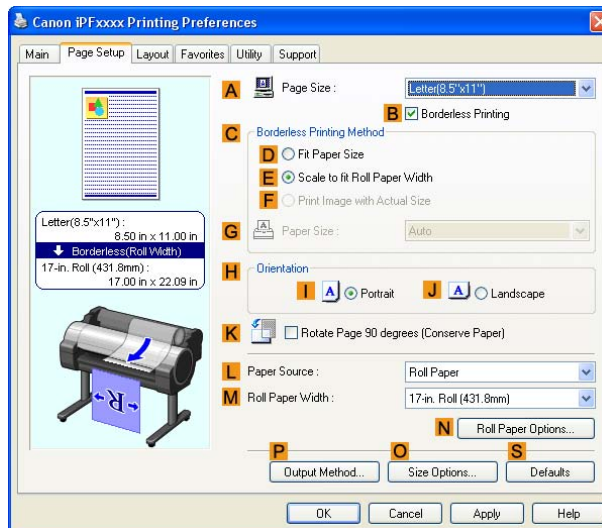
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

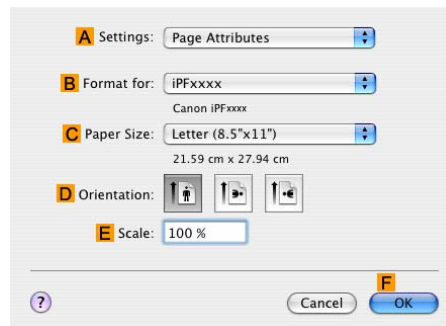
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

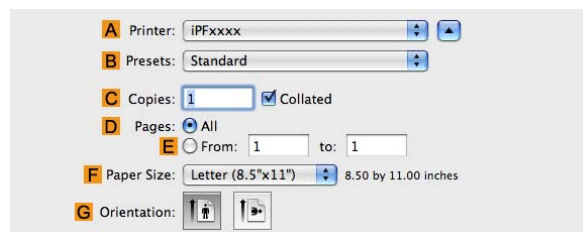


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

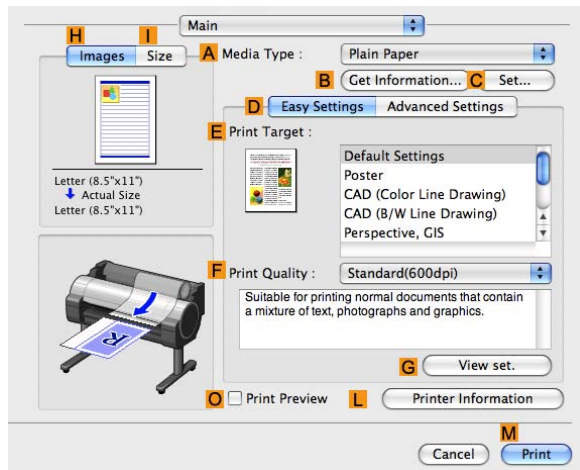


Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless”.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

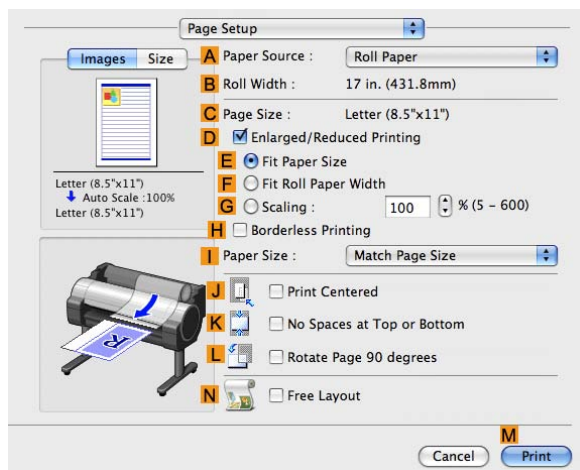


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

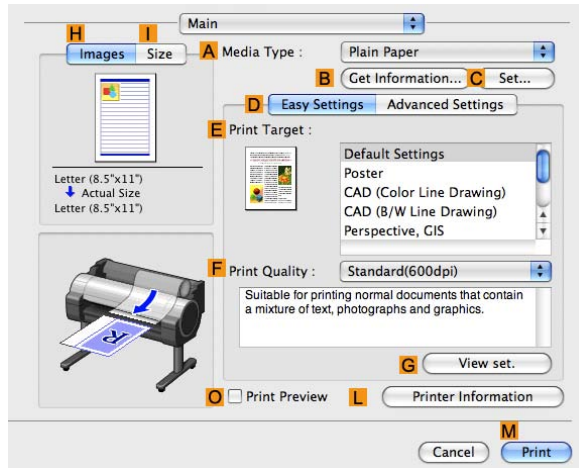
11. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

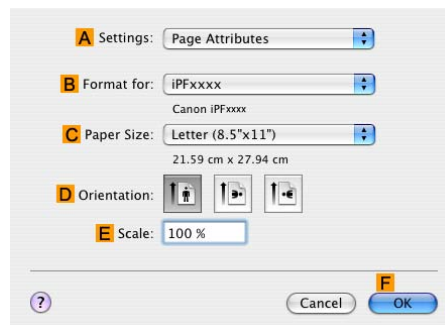


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.457)

Borderless Printing

≡ Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

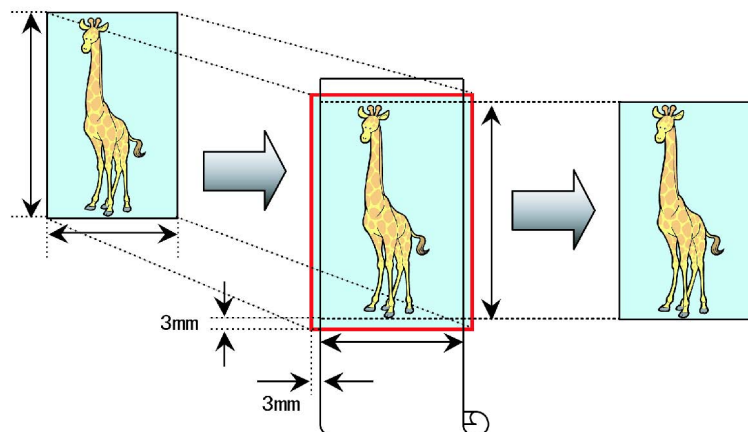
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Fit Paper Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.234)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.236)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.



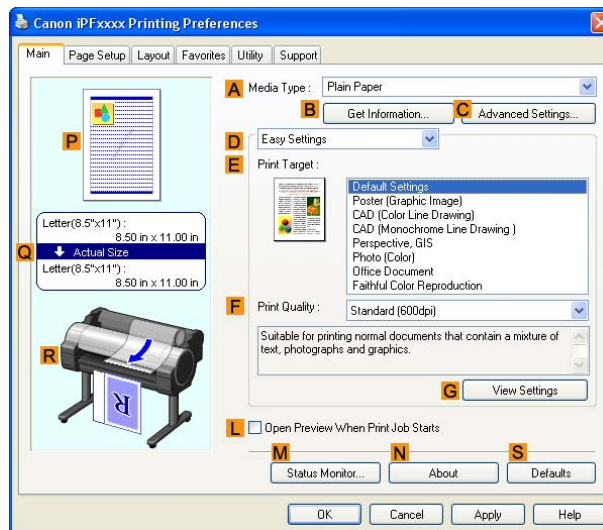
Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)

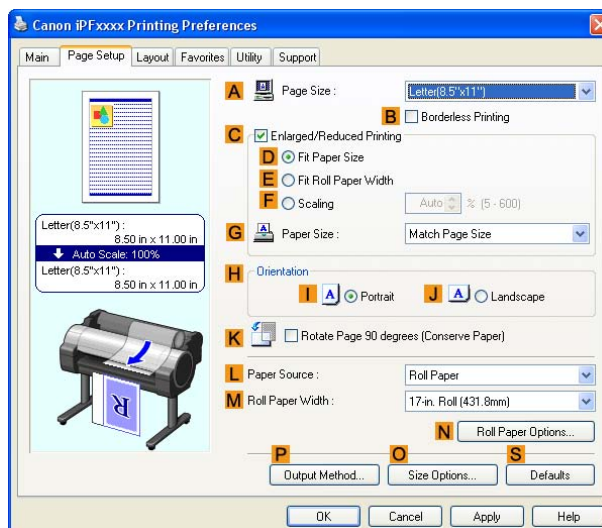
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

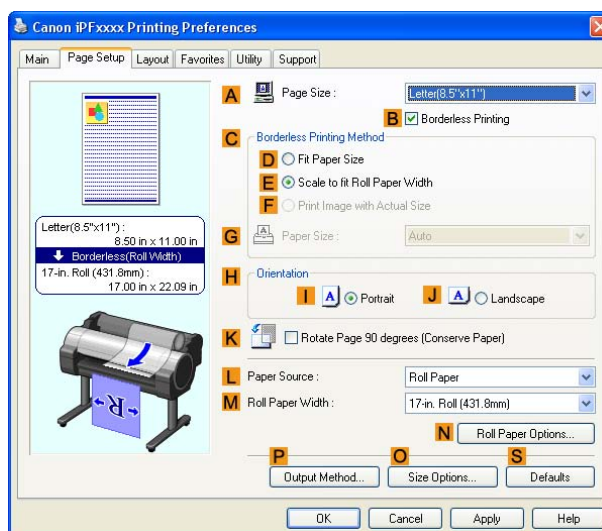
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list—in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **D Fit Paper Size**.

14. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Paper Size** list.

15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

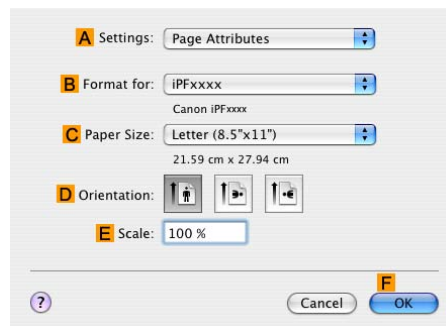
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

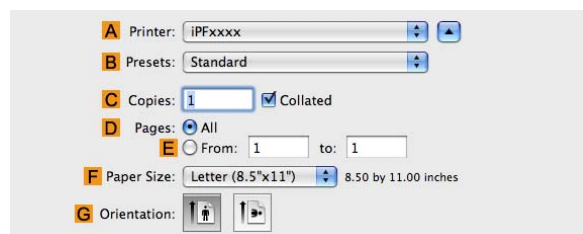


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"×12"**.

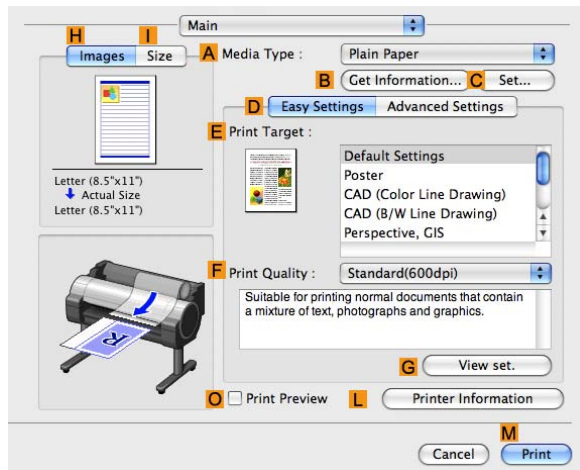


Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

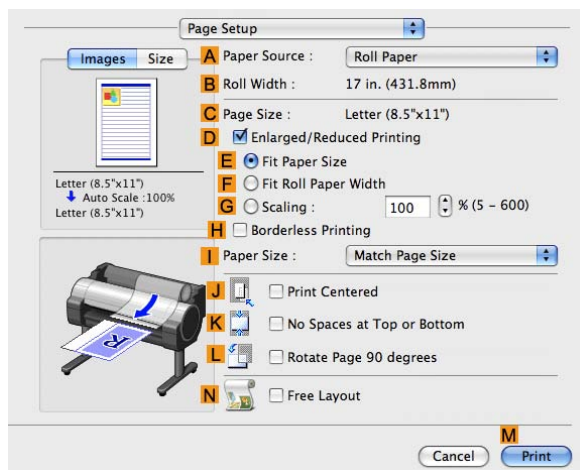


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



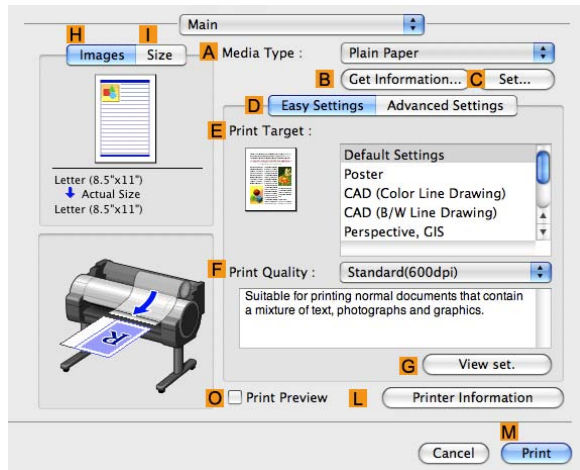
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

- Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

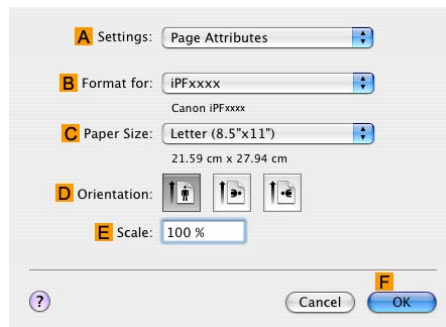


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



- Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



- On the **Page Setup** pane, select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
- Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.
- Click **E Fit Paper Size** under **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
- In **I Paper Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
- Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.457)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

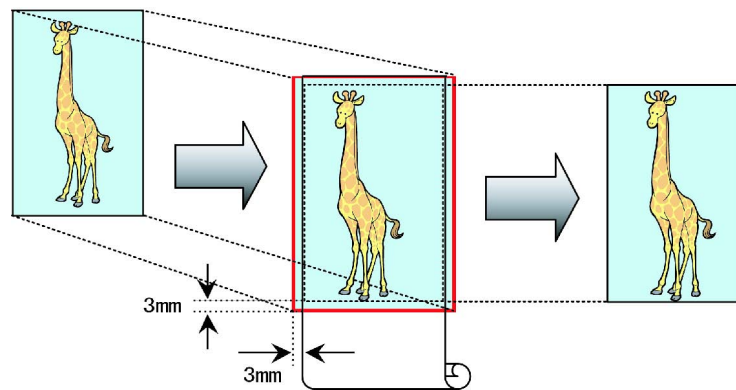
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.241)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.243)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.



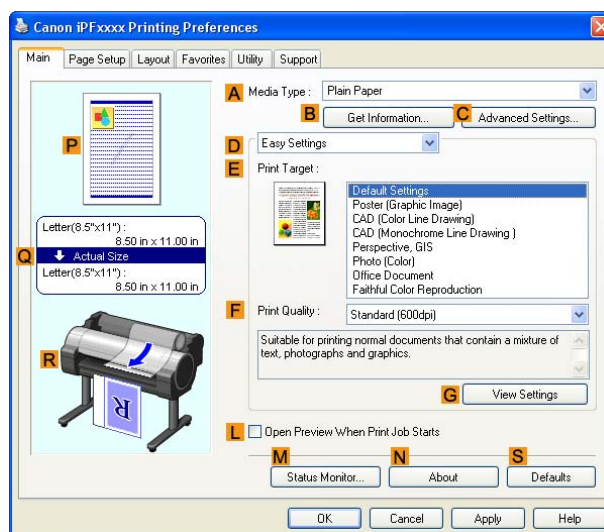
Note

- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)

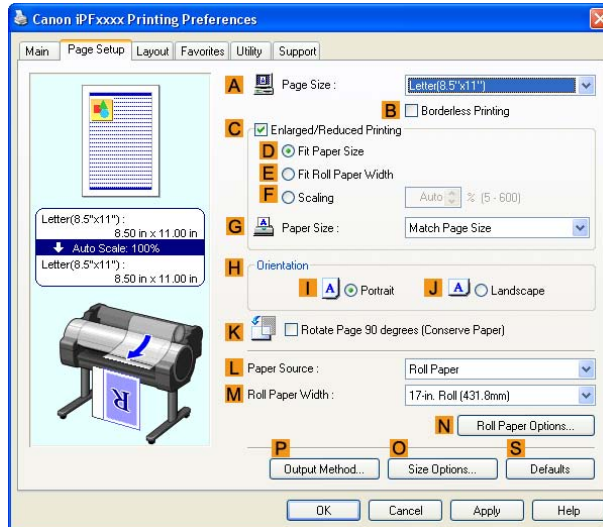
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

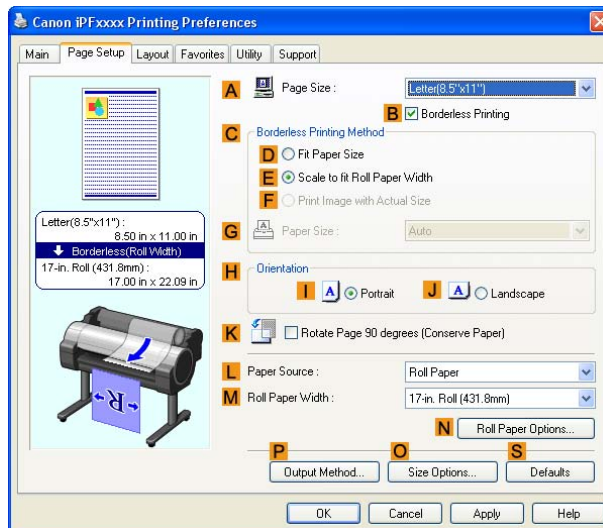
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.

9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, make sure **E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

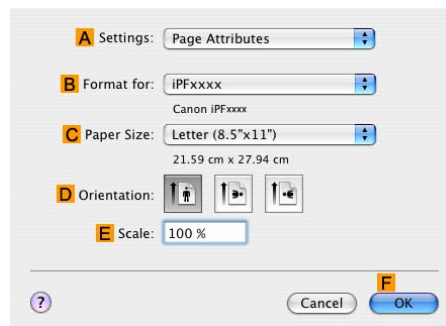
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

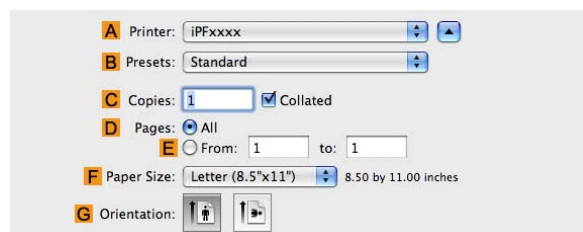


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

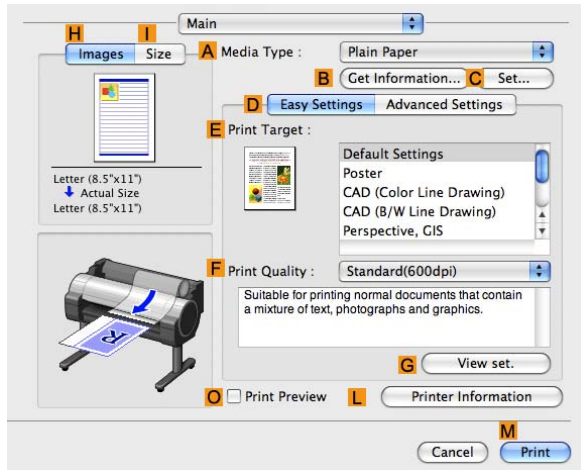


Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

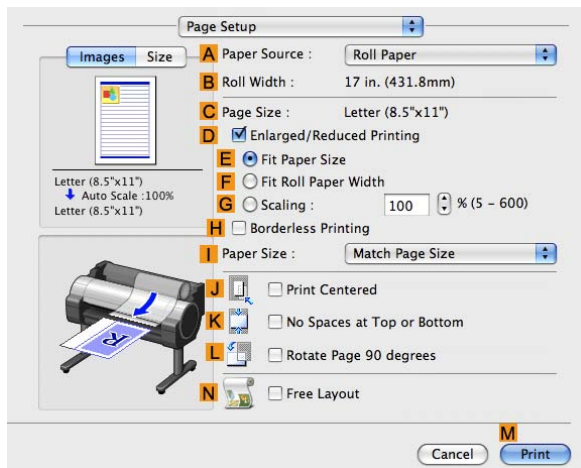


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



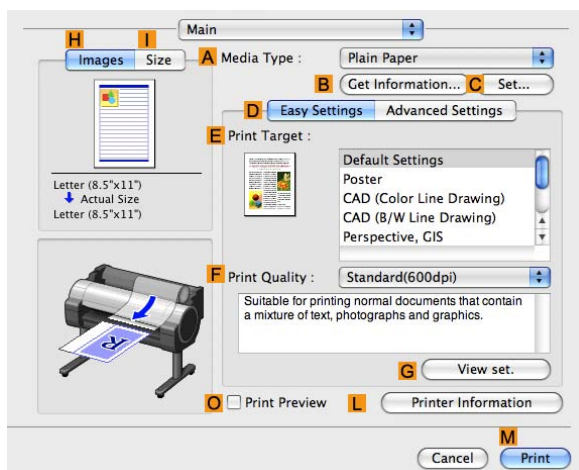
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

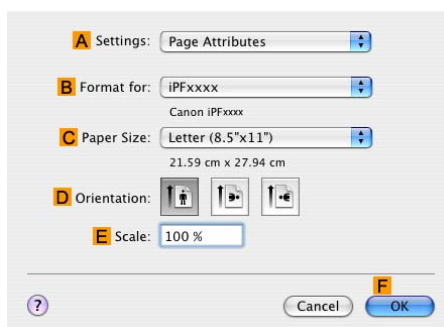


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Select the **H Borderless Printing** check box.

This ensures that **F Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.



Important

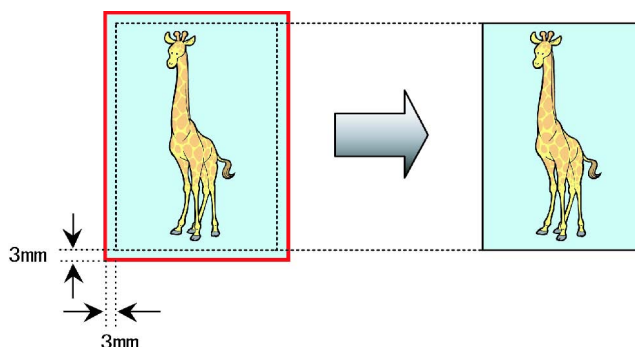
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
 - On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
 - Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- [Borderless Printing at Actual Size \(Windows\)](#) (→P.248)
- [Borderless Printing at Actual Size \(Mac OS X\)](#) (→P.250)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

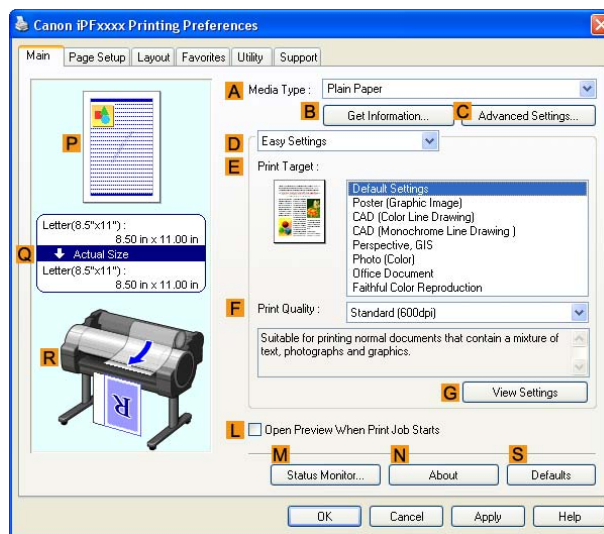
1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)



Note

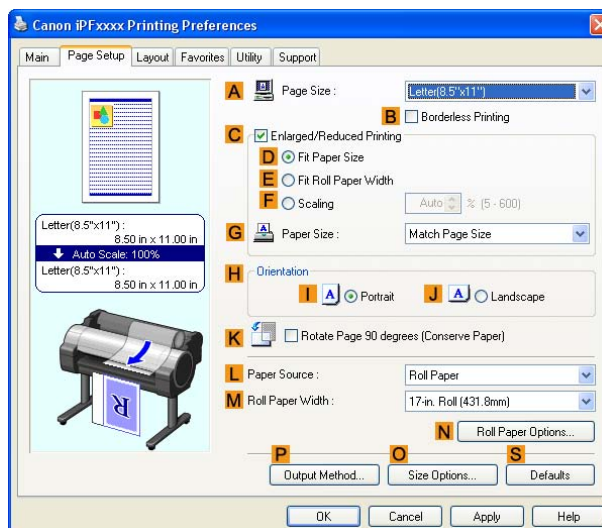
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.

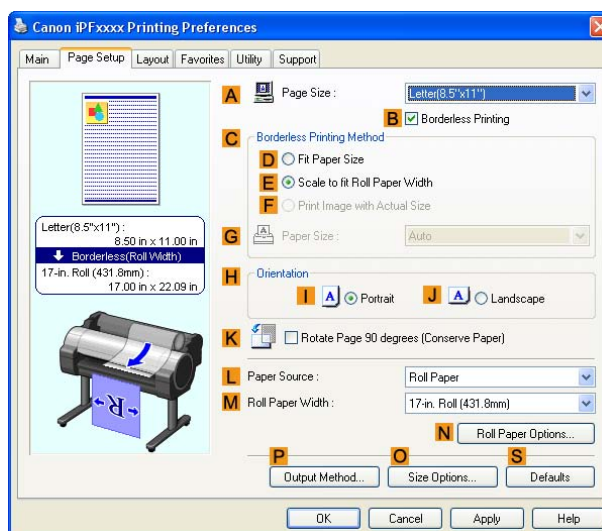
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. Select the **B Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.

13. In **C Borderless Printing Method**, click **F Print Image with Actual Size**.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.

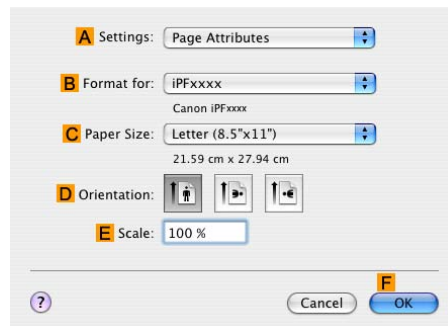
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

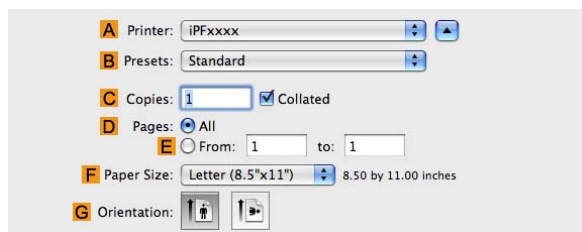


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

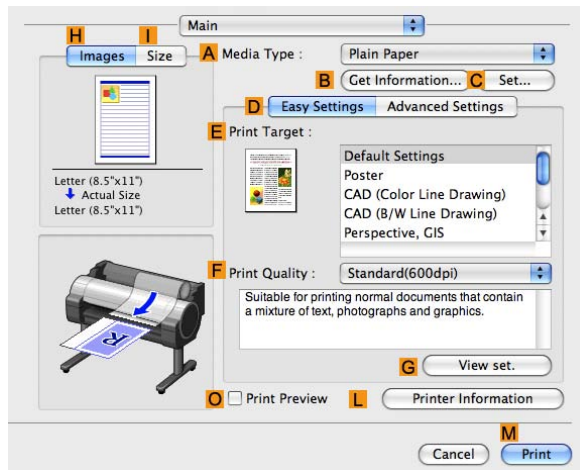


Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless”.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

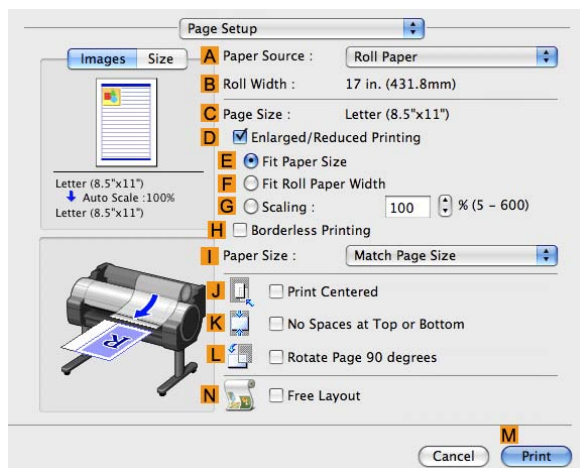


6. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Paper Source** list.

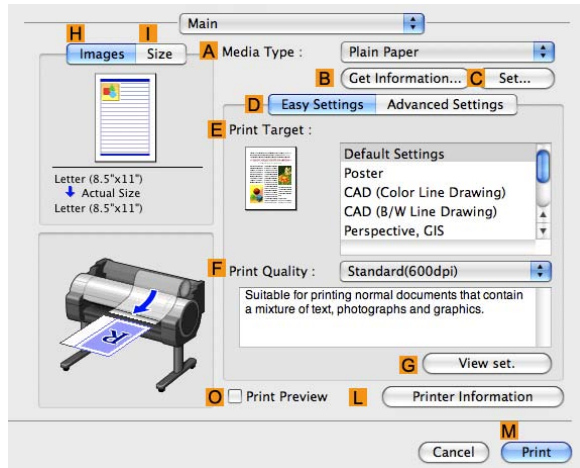
11. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

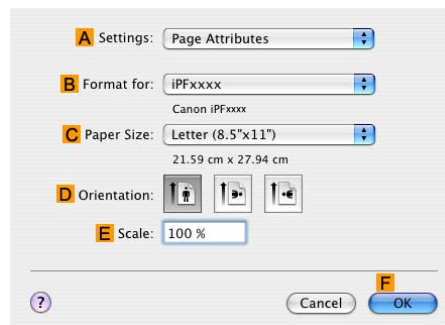


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

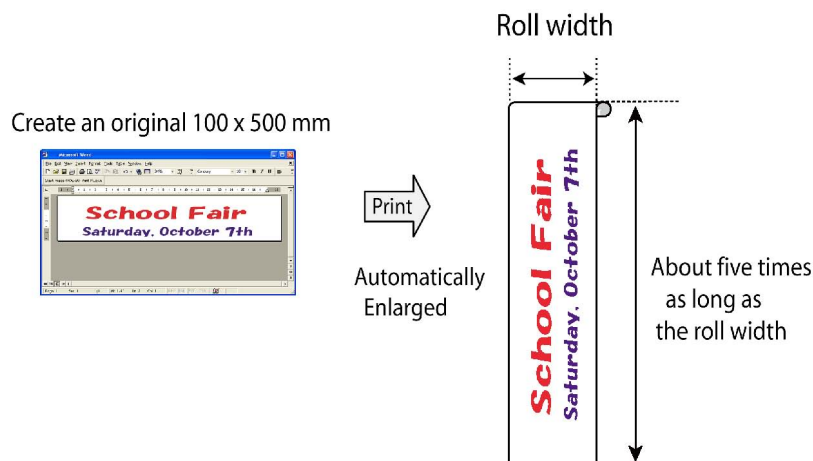
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls.

Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.



Note

- The maximum supported roll length is 18.0 m or 19.7 yd.

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.254)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.258)



Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Paper Size**.

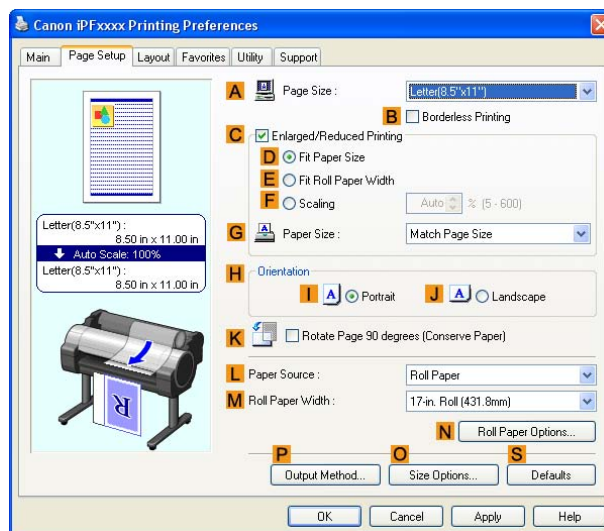
Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Paper Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.

2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Paper Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.348)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
4. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Paper Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.
8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.



Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
For more information, see "Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)". (→P.262)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Paper Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.
3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Paper Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.



Important

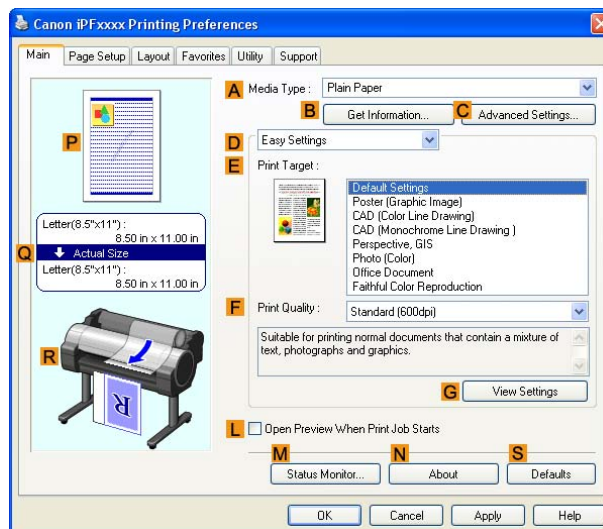
- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in "Custom" and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal.
5. Create the banner.

Printing the banner

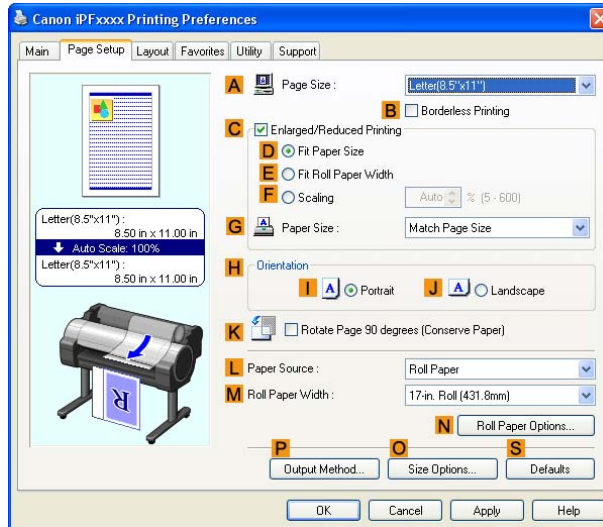
Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster** in the **E Print Target** list.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



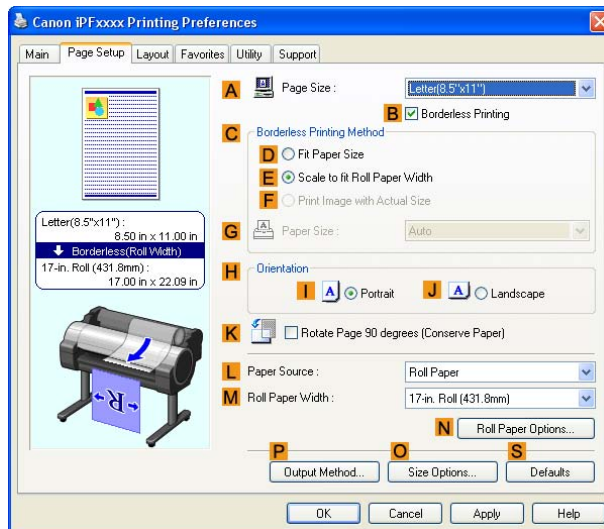
7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner".

8. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.



Note

- If the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

10. After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.

11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

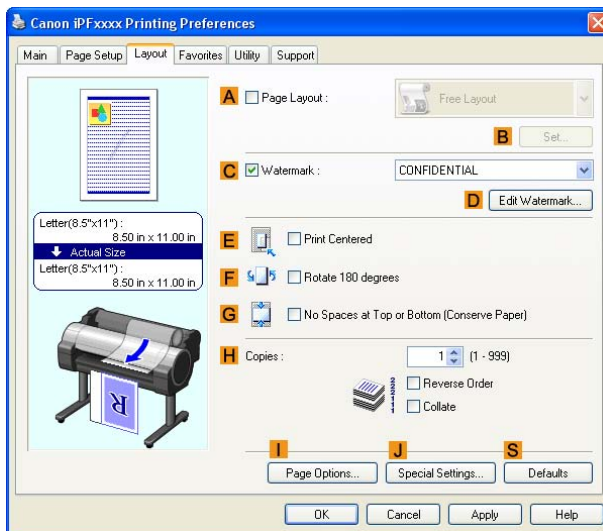


Note

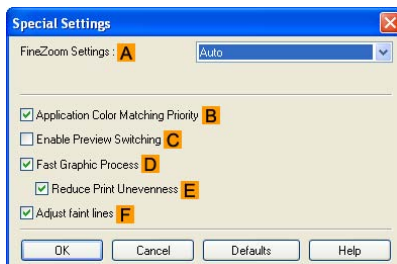
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1. On the **Layout** sheet, click **J Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.



Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.

2. Register a **Custom Page Sizes**

Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Page Sizes** in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.

3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.



Note

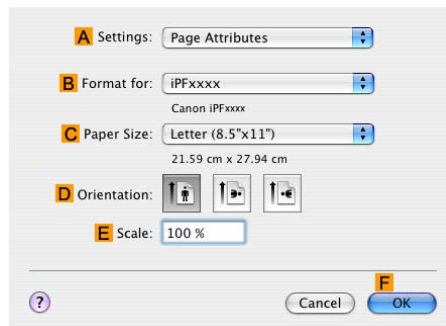
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Sizes

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

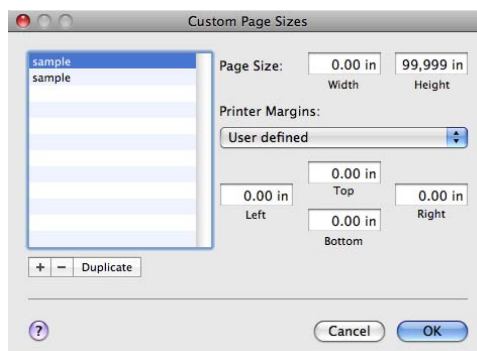
1. Create the document in the application.

2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attributes** dialog box.



3. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.

4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

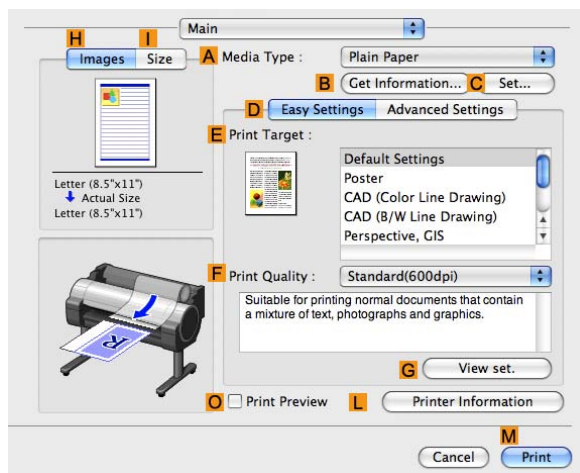


5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter "100*500."
If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter "10" in **Width** and "50" in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
7. Specify the margins by entering "0.3" in **Printer Margins**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
9. In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500", the size you registered.
10. In **D Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.

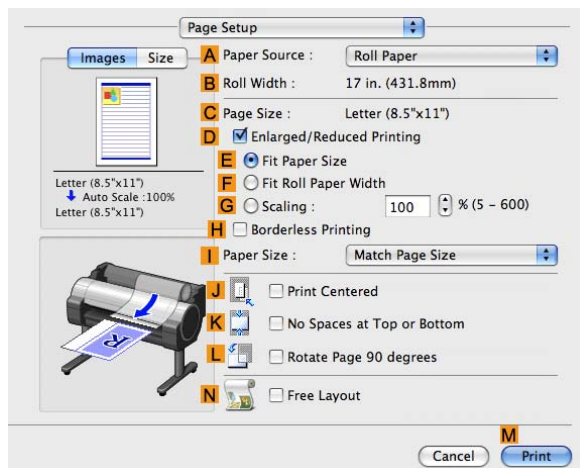
Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
5. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

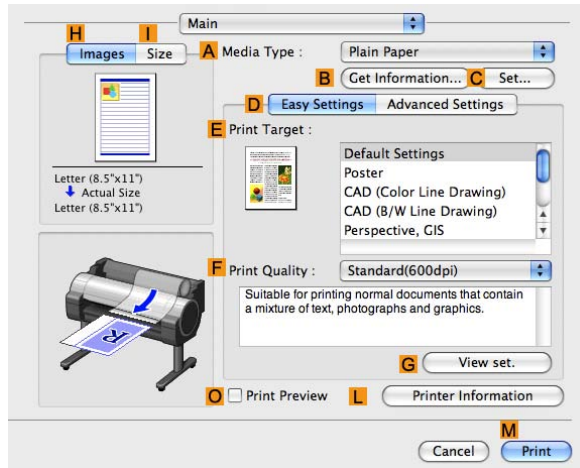


7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.
8. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.



Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



9. In **C Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
10. Select the **D Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **F Fit Roll Paper Width**.
12. Confirm the print settings, and click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)". (→P.457)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.

There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.



Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called **Custom Paper Size** in Windows and “Custom Sizes” in Mac OS X.

Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.



Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.
- This can only be configured in Windows.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- [Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes \(Windows\)](#) (→P.262)
- [Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes \(Mac OS X\)](#) (→P.266)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

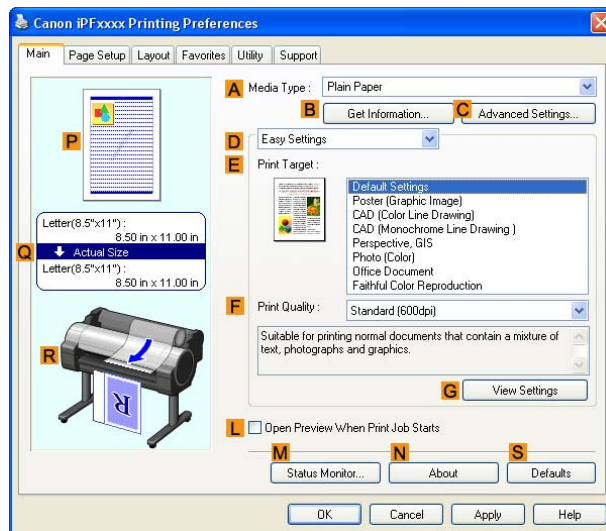
This topic describes two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes.

- Printing by using **Custom Size**
- Printing by using **Custom Paper Size**

Printing by using Custom Size

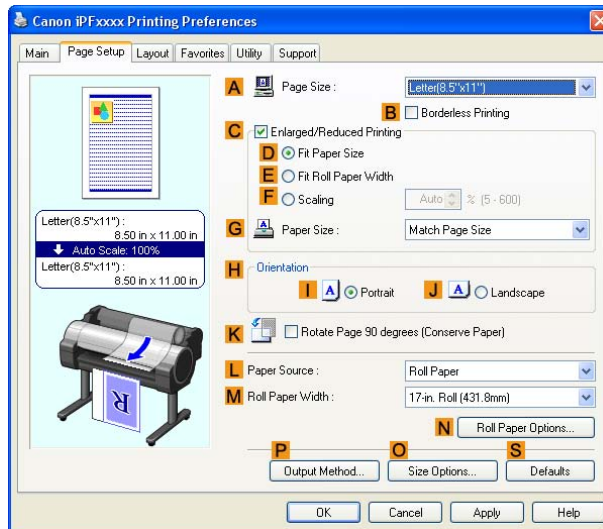
This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
 - Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
 - Paper: Sheets
 - Paper type: Any type
 - Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
 2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
 3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
 4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
6. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the **A Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Confirm that **mm** is selected in **Units**.
11. Enter “430” (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

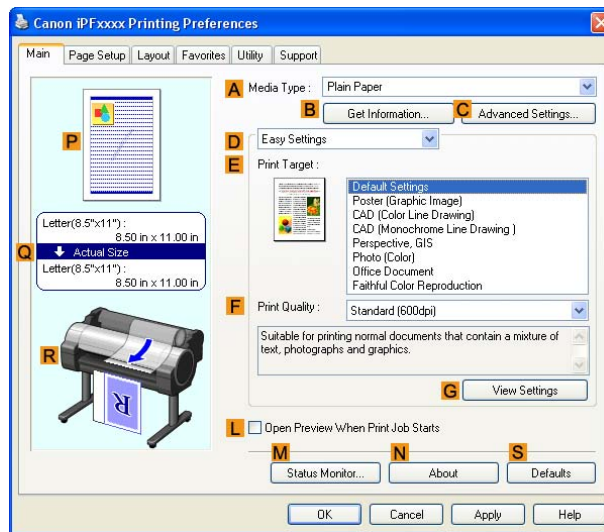
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing by using Custom Paper Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Paper Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called “430 mm Square” as a **Custom Paper Size**.

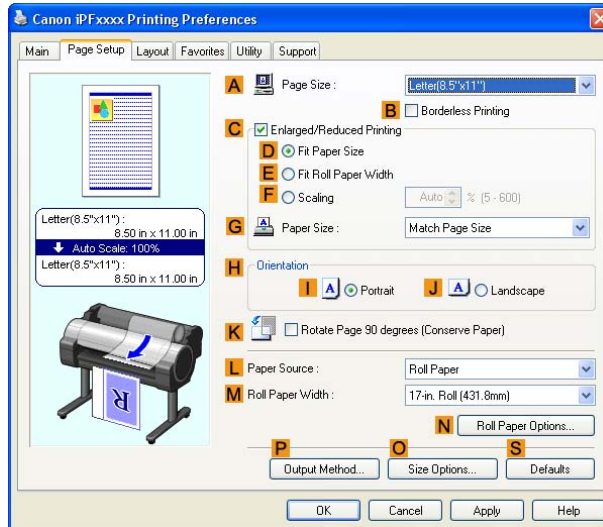
- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A Media Type** list, select the **A Media Type** that is loaded in the printer.
6. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select the **E Print Target** from the **E Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **O Size Options** to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

9. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Paper Size Name**. "430 mm Square" is used in this example.

10. Select **mm** in **Units**.

11. Enter "430" (16.9 in) in both **Width** and **Height**.



Note

- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

12. Click **Add** to register "430 mm Square".

13. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Size Options** dialog box.

14. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.

15. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size you added, "430 mm Square".

16. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

This section describes how to register and print **Custom Page Sizes** based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in **Custom Page Sizes**.

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Media Type: Any type
- Paper Size: A square sheet (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in])



Note

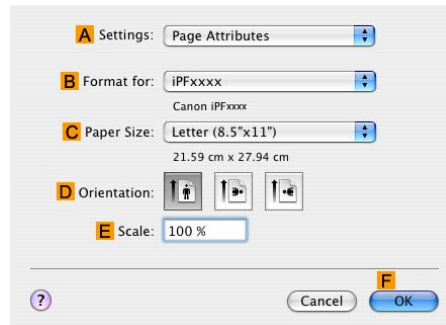
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430 × 430 mm [16.9 × 16.9 in]) in the printer.
3. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

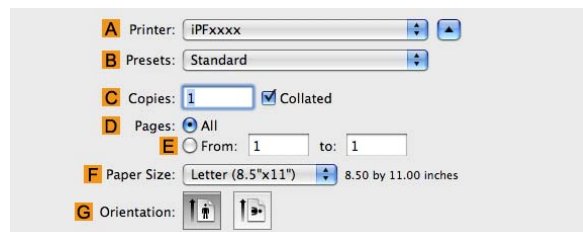


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

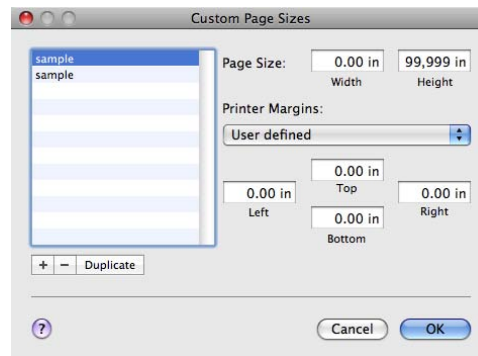


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

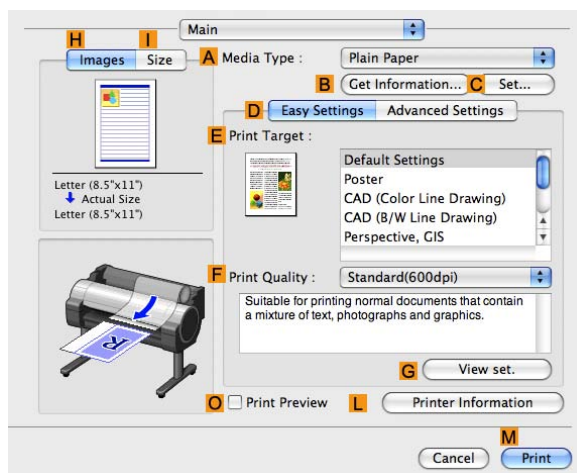


4. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

- Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

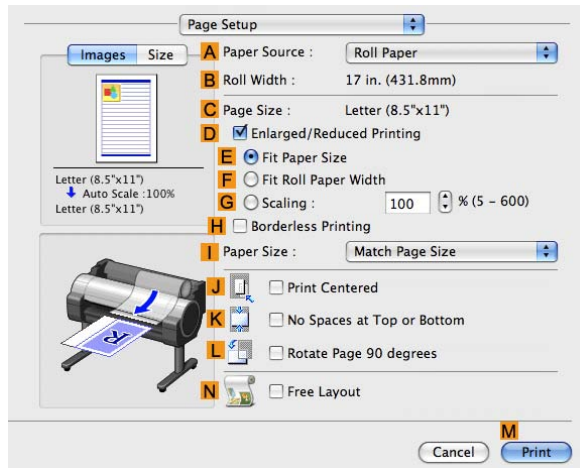


- In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
- In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.5” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
- Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
- Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
- In the **C Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
- If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
- Access the **Main** pane.



- In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
- After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, select from the **E Print Target** list.
- Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Manual** in the **A Paper Source** list.

18. In **C Page Size**, make sure “430*430” is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

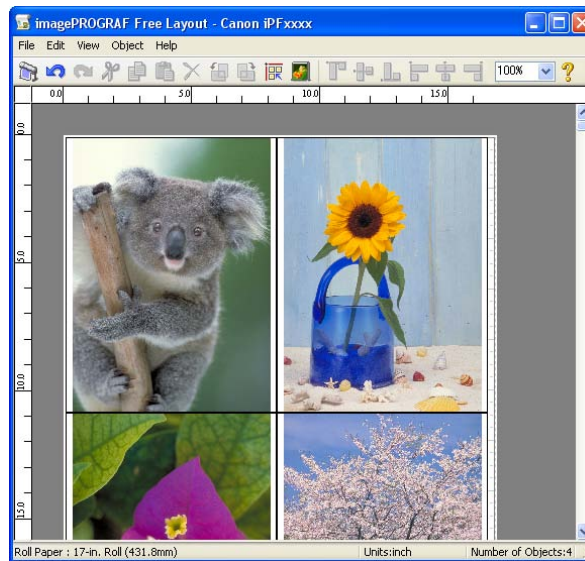
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

Free Layout (Windows)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.

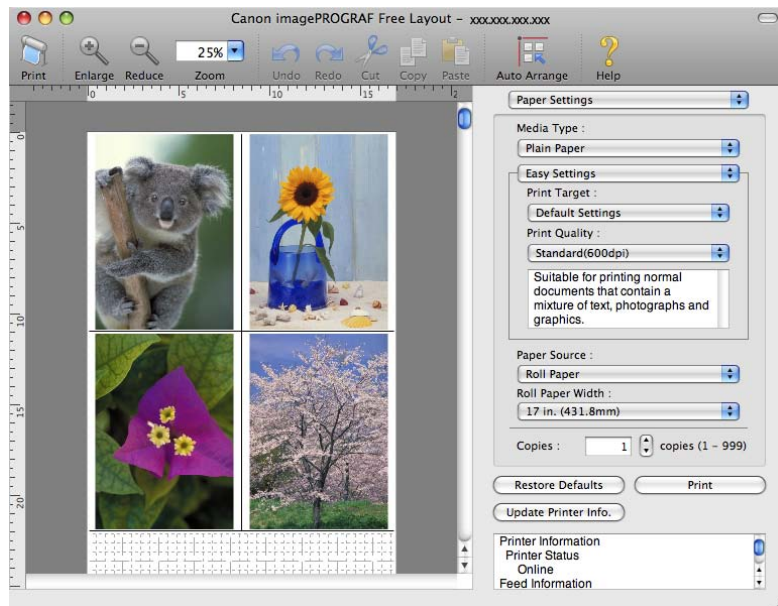


Important

- Free Layout cannot be used in 64-bit version of Windows.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files—even multiple source applications—in a single-page layout.



For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.271)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.273)

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

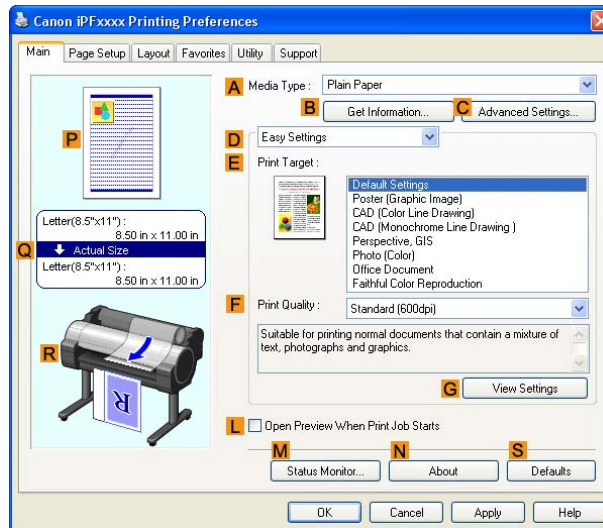
This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.



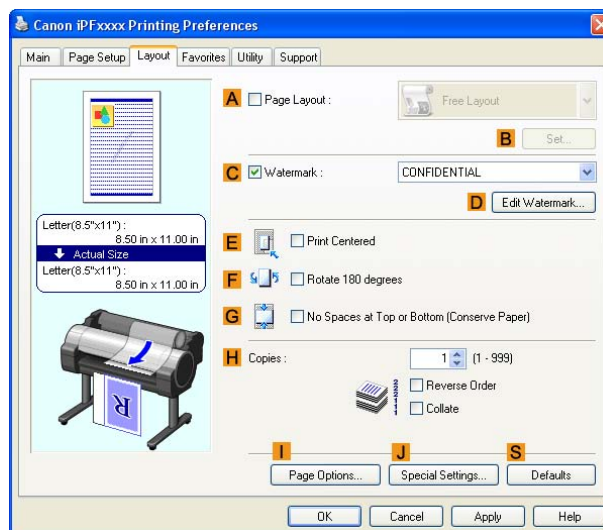
Important

- Free Layout cannot be used in 64-bit version of Windows.

- Choose **Print** in the application menu.
- Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
- Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

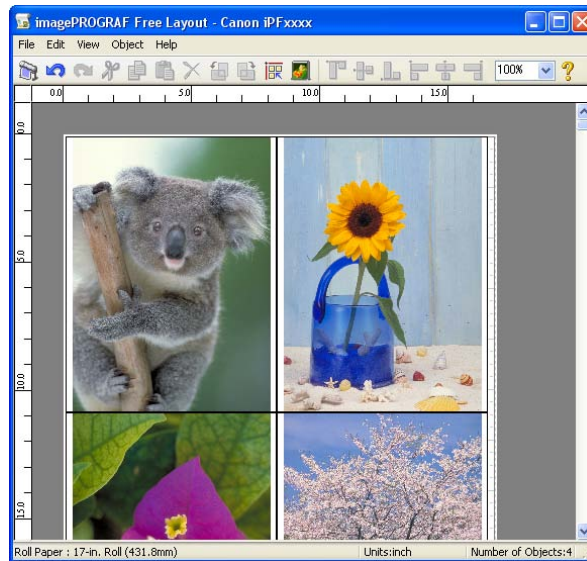


- Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



- Select the **Page Layout** check box.
- Click **Free Layout** in the **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.



Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.



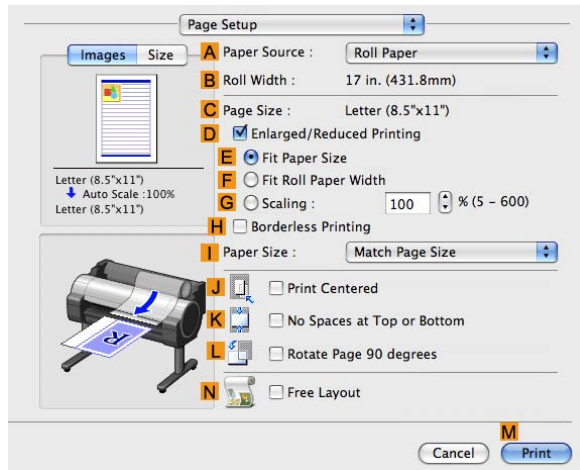
Note

- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout.

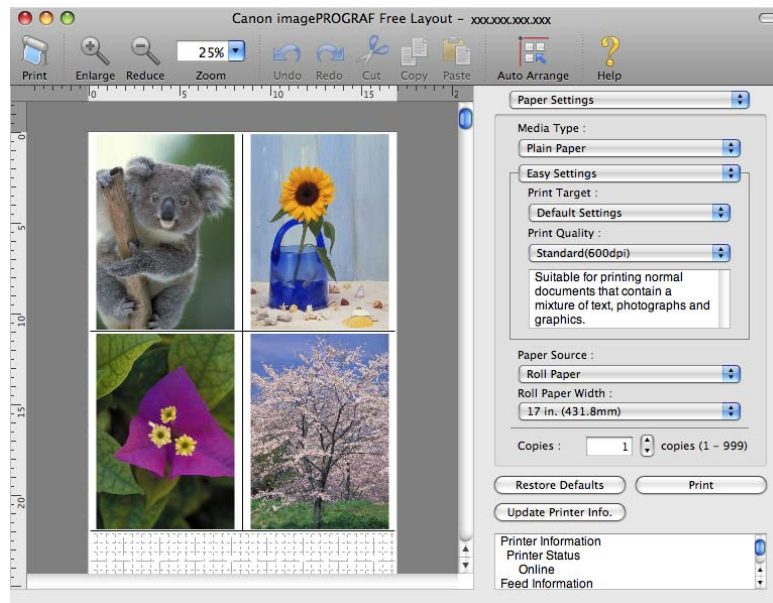
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



3. Select the **N Free Layout** check box.
4. Click **M Print**.
5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



6. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.



Note

- Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1 to 4 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

7. Print from the Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.



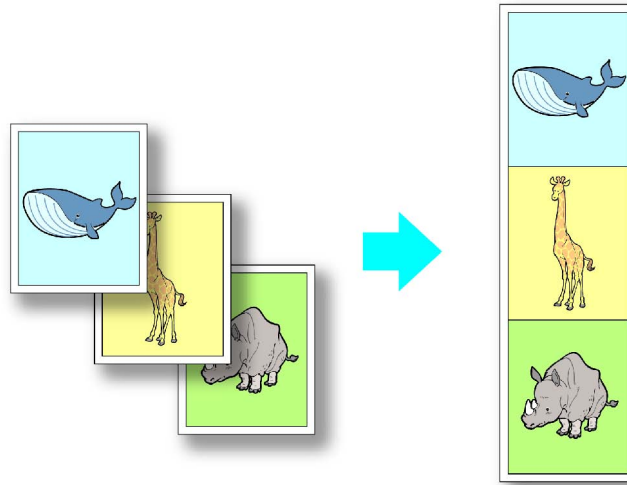
Note

- For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout.

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.276)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.278)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

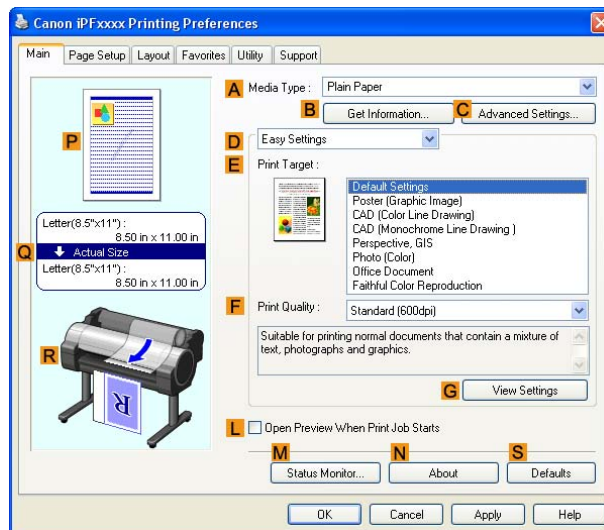
This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



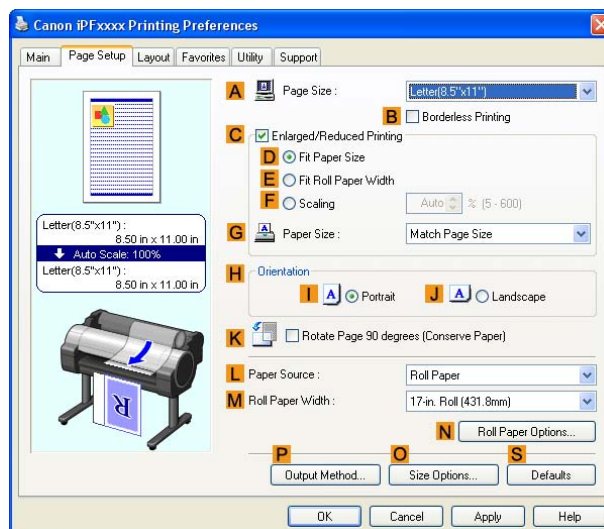
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

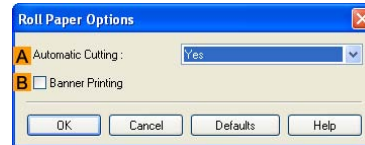


4. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.

- Click **N Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



- Select the **B Banner Printing** check box.
- Click **OK**.
- Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.



Important

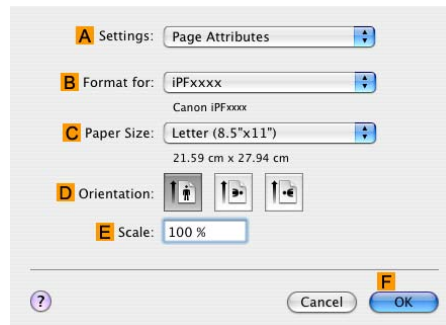
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

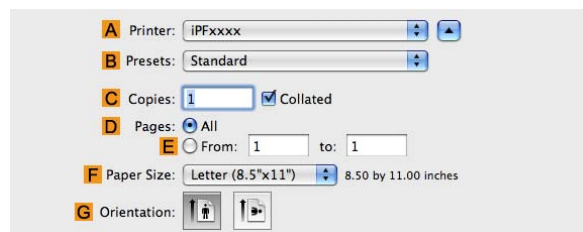


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

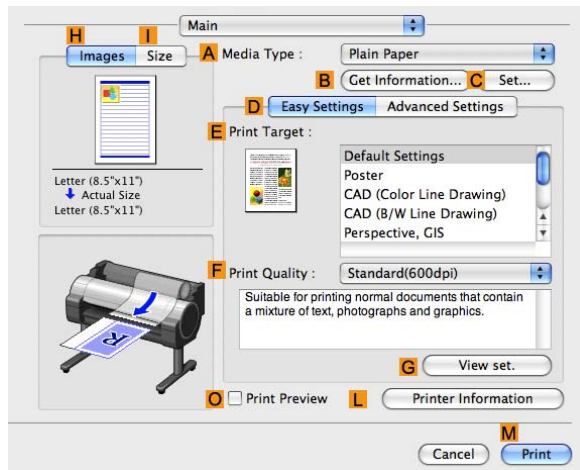


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Click the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

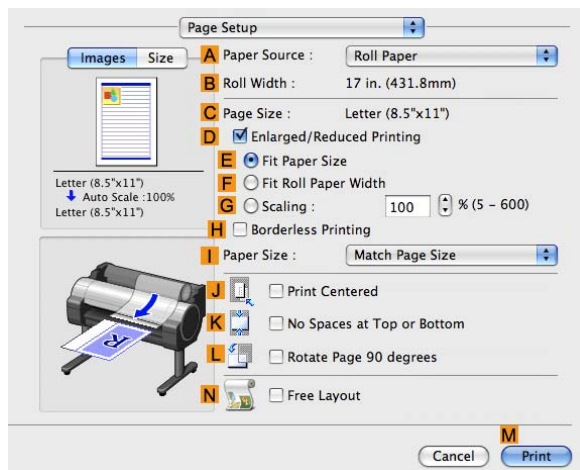


6. In the **A Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

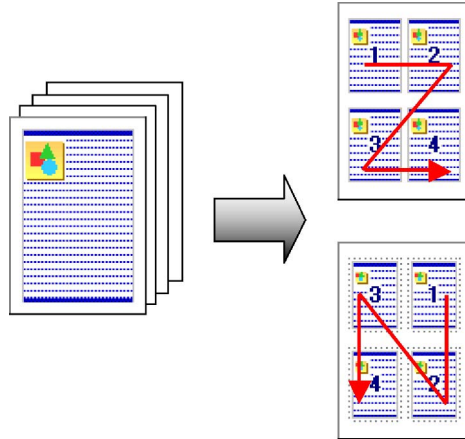


Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.



Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.



Important

- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
 - Borderless Printing
 - Scaling Originals (Windows)
 - Banner Printing (Windows)

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

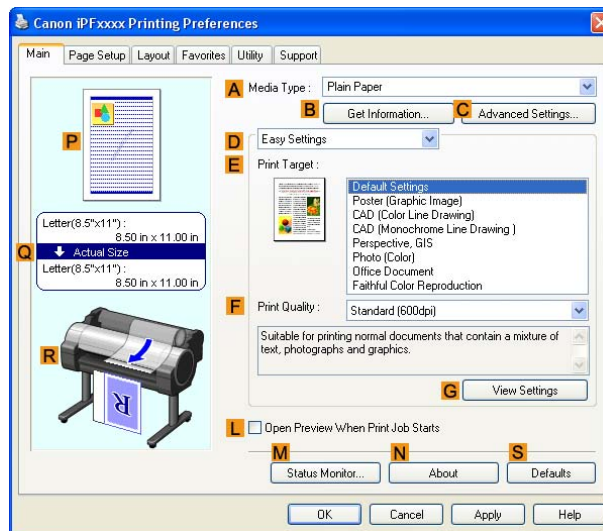
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.281)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.283)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

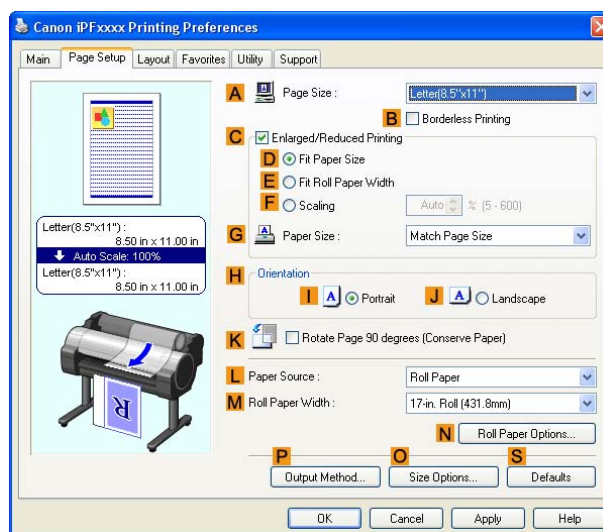
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

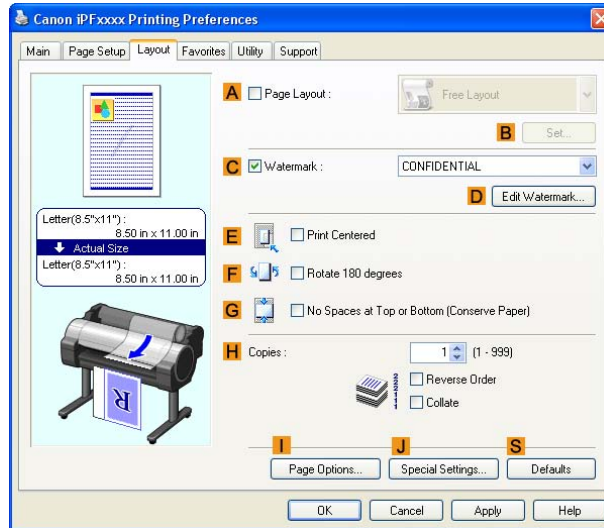
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
10. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
11. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



12. Select the **A Page Layout** check box.
13. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **A Page Layout** list.



Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking **B Set**.

14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

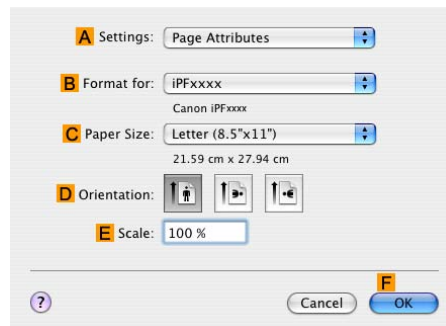
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A3 (297.0 × 420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

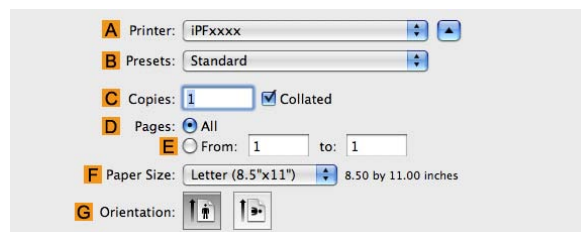


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

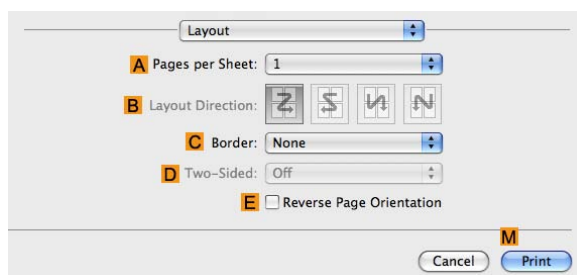


2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.

3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.

4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Layout** pane.



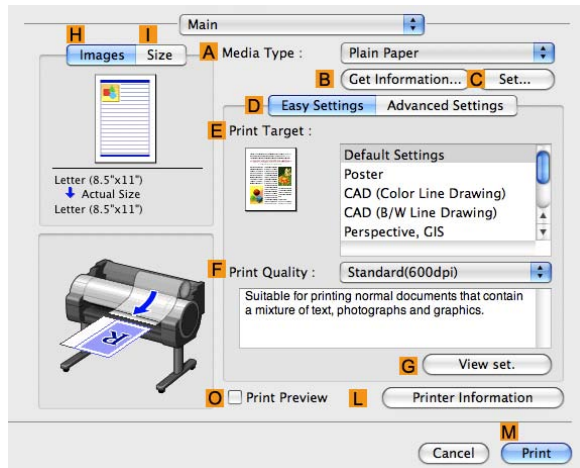
6. Click **4** in the **A Pages per Sheet** list.



Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **B Layout Direction** and **C Border**.

7. Access the **Main** pane.

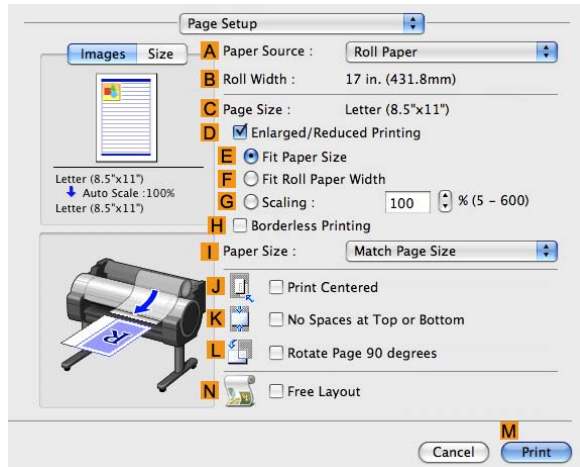


8. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

9. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

10. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



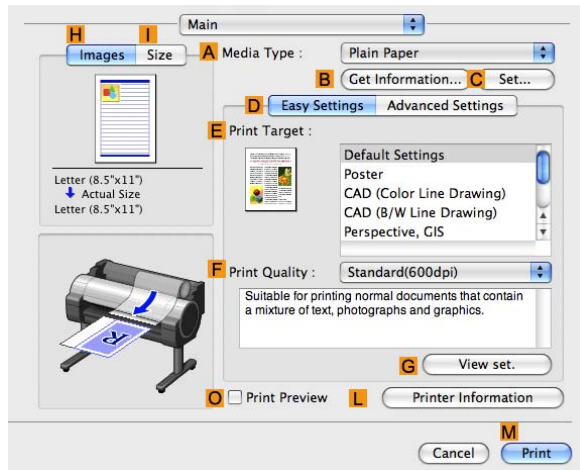
12. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

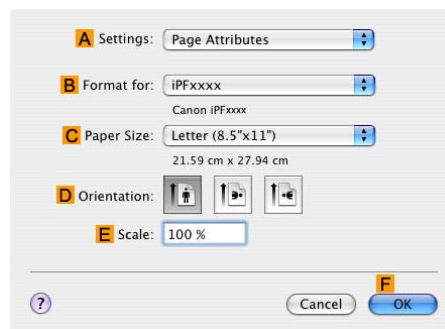


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



14. Make sure **C Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



15. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

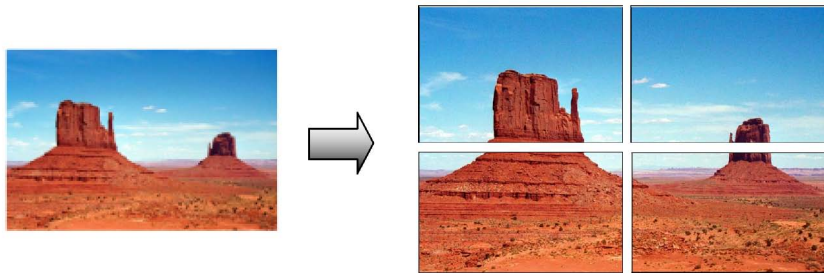


Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.

For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- [Printing Large Posters \(Windows\)](#) (→P.287)



Note

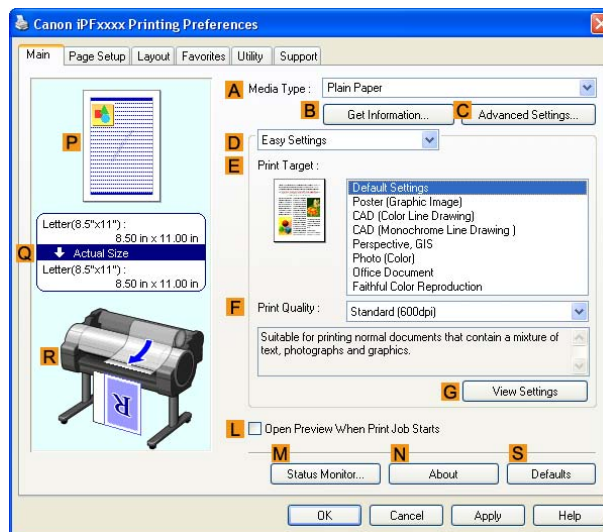
- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

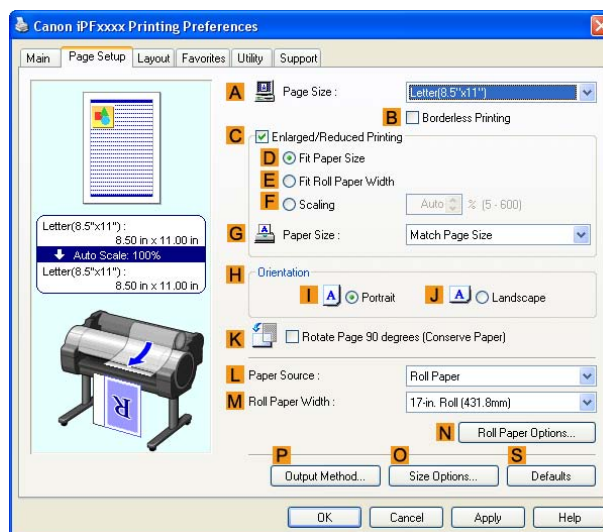
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper Size: A2 (420.0 × 594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

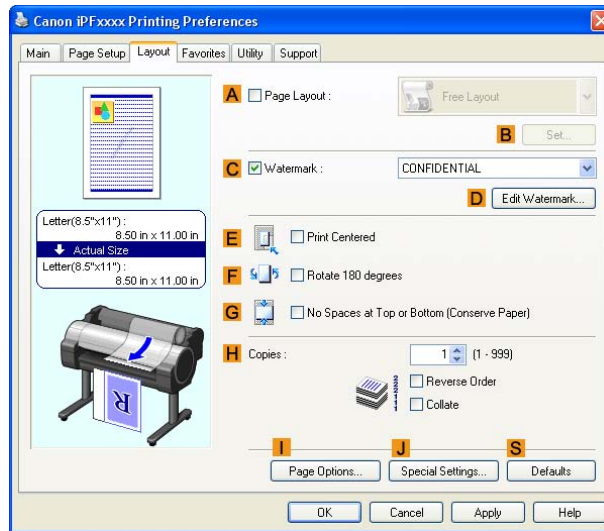
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click **Poster** in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **A Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the **A Page Layout** list.



Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
 - Click **B Set** under **A Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
 - On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
 - Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Centering originals

☐ Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

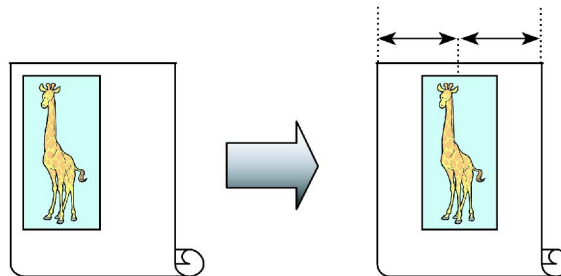
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals relative to roll paper width

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

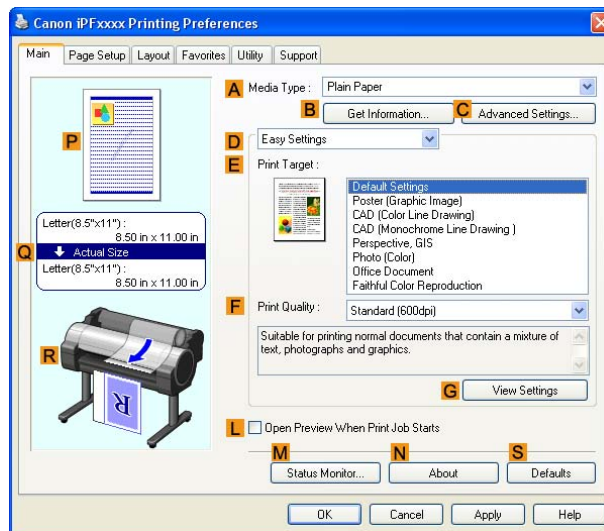
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.290)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.292)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

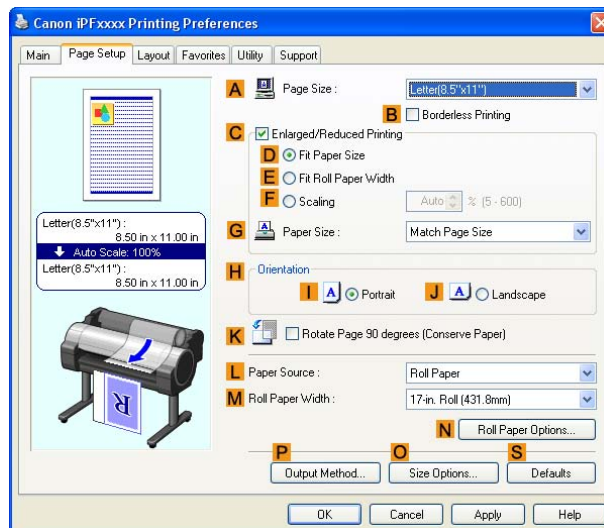
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

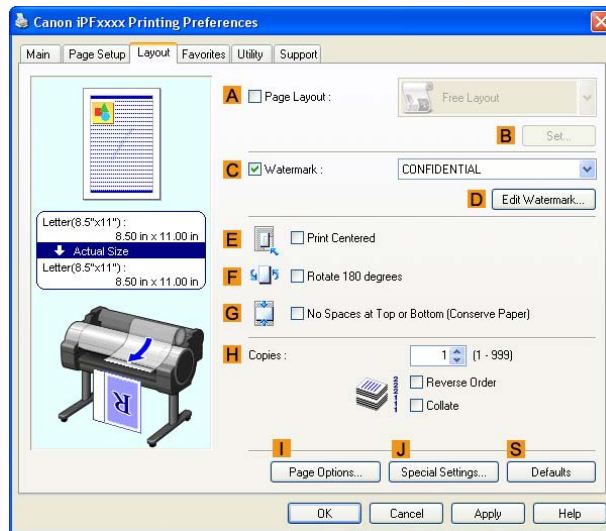
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **E Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

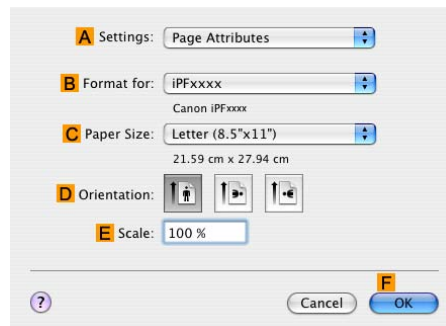
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

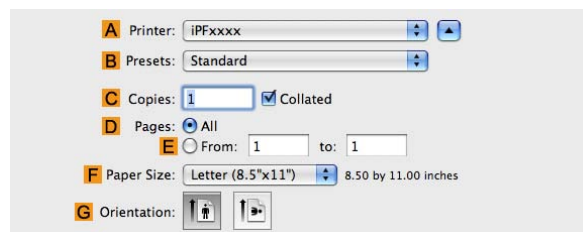


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

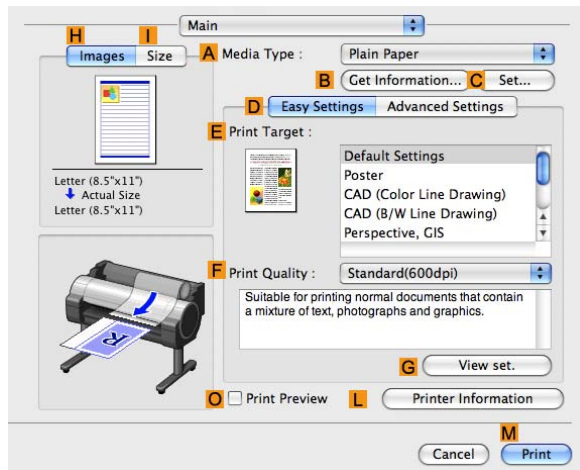


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

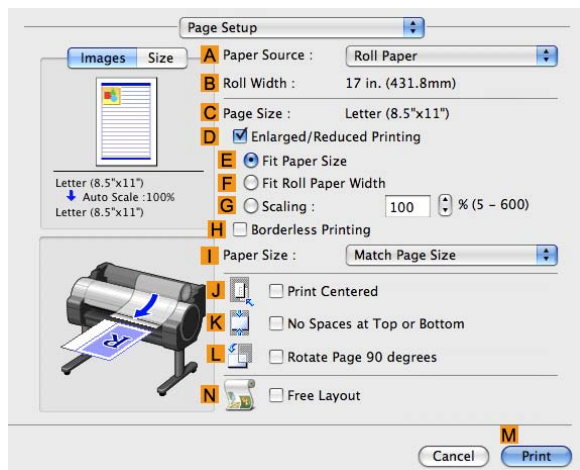


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



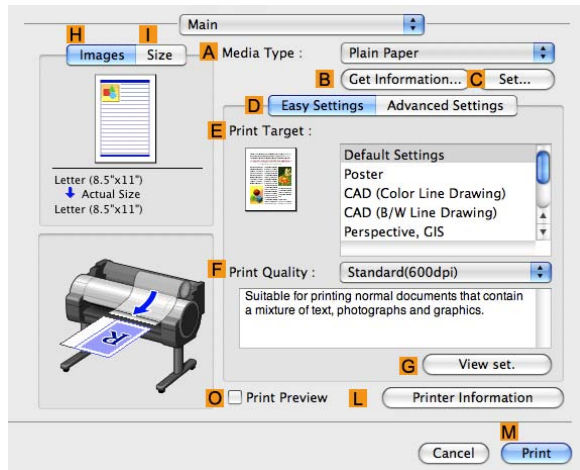
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

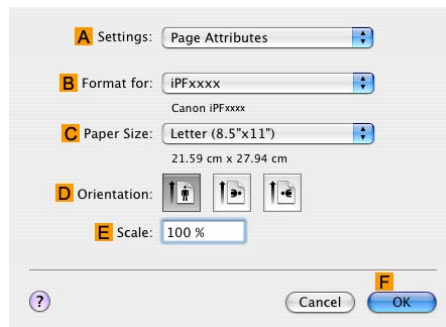


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the **J Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

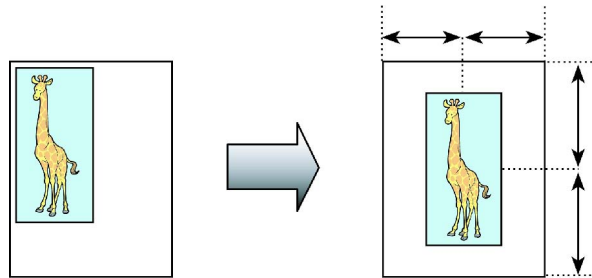
You can print originals centered on a page—for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals on sheets

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

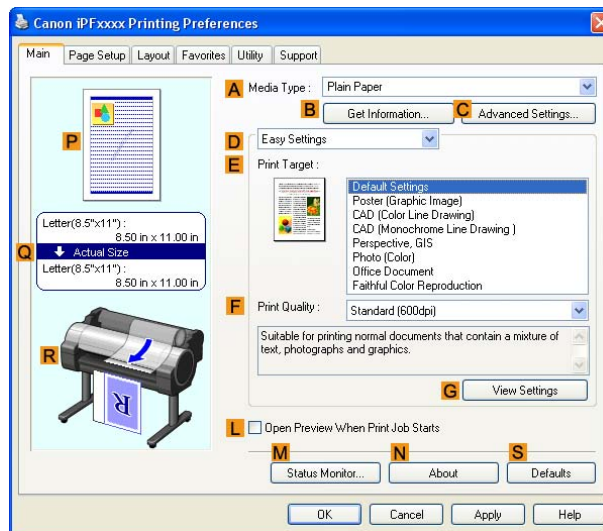
- [Printing Originals Centered on Sheets \(Windows\)](#) (→P.296)
- [Printing Originals Centered on Sheets \(Mac OS X\)](#) (→P.298)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

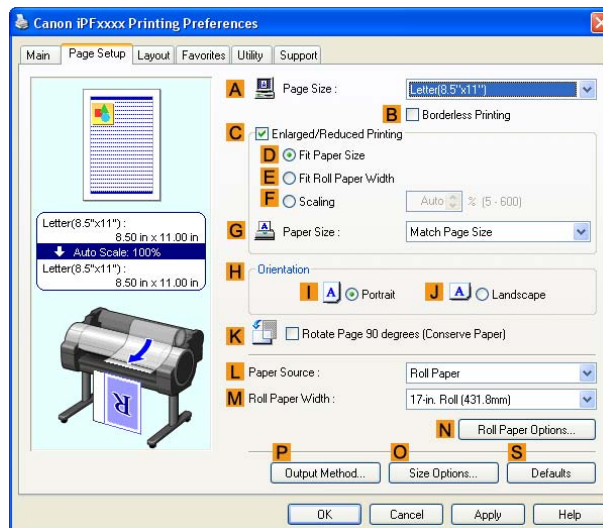
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

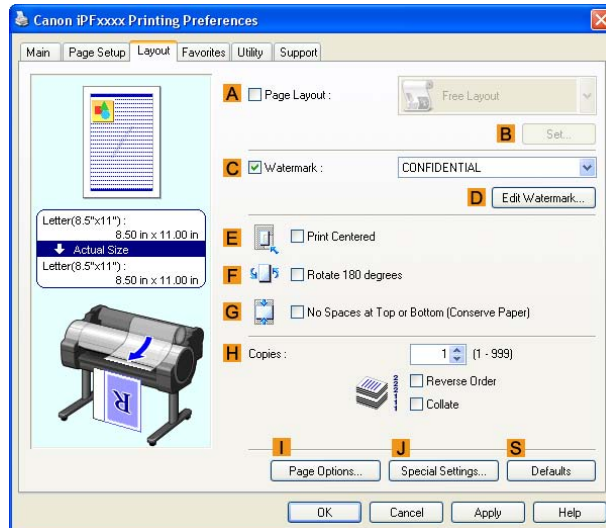


4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

8. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
9. Click **Match Page Size** in the **G Paper Size** list.
10. Click **F Scaling** and enter “50”.
11. Click **Manual** in the **L Paper Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the **E Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)



Important

- If you have selected **Manual** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

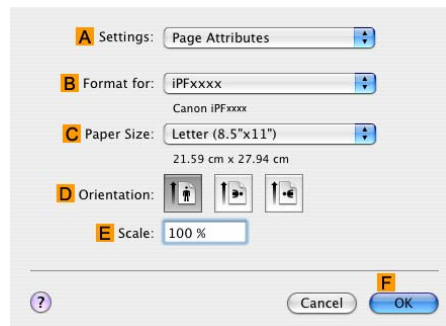
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

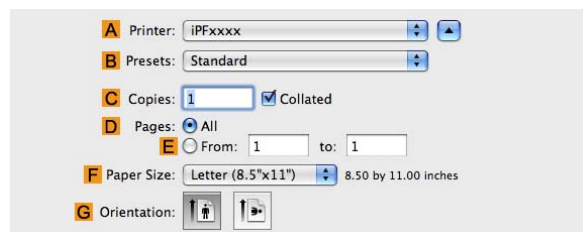


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

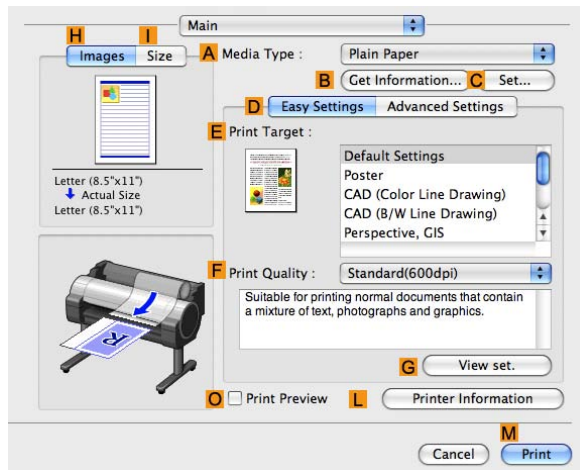


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.

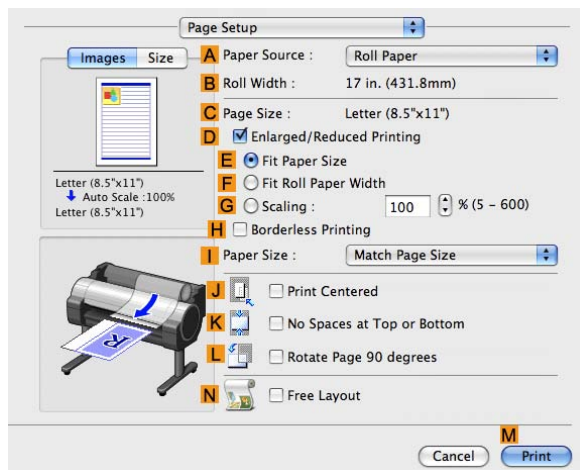


6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

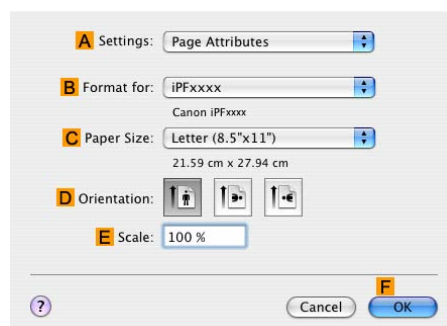
8. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Manual** in the **A Paper Source** list.

11. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - for Paper Tray (Large Margins)**.



12. Select the **J Print Centered** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)



Important

- If you have selected **Manual** as the paper source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.

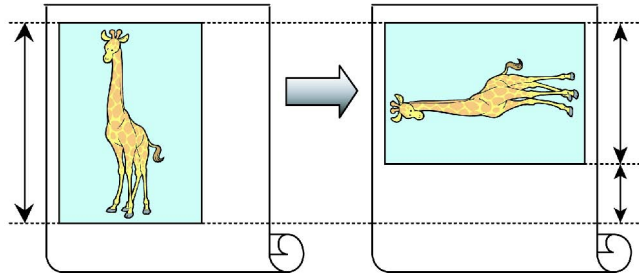
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.302)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.304)

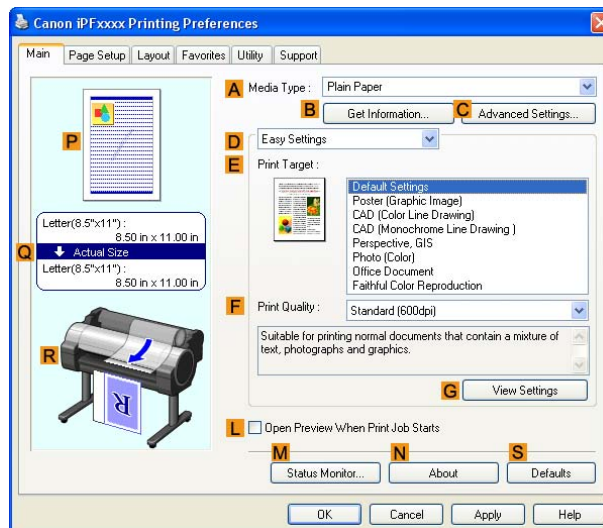
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

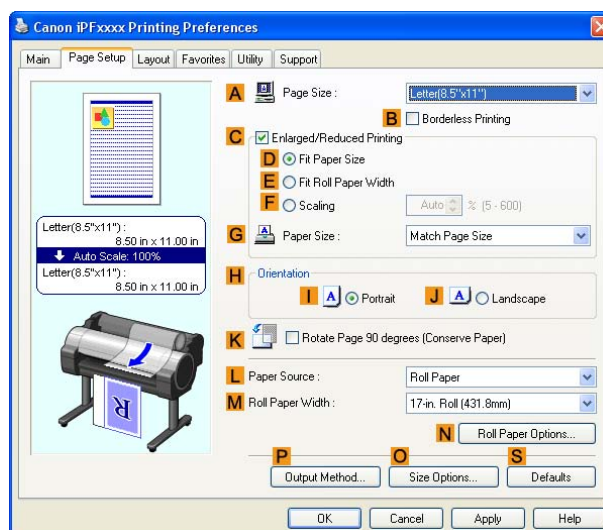
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the **K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

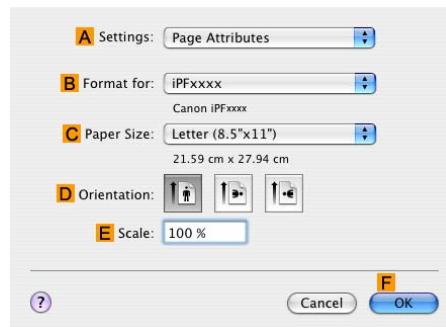
This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

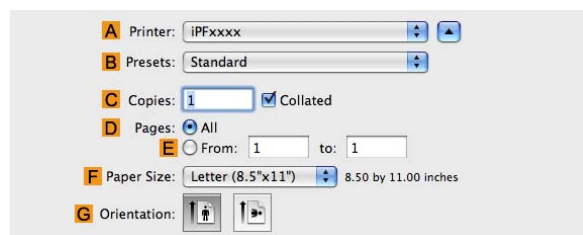


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

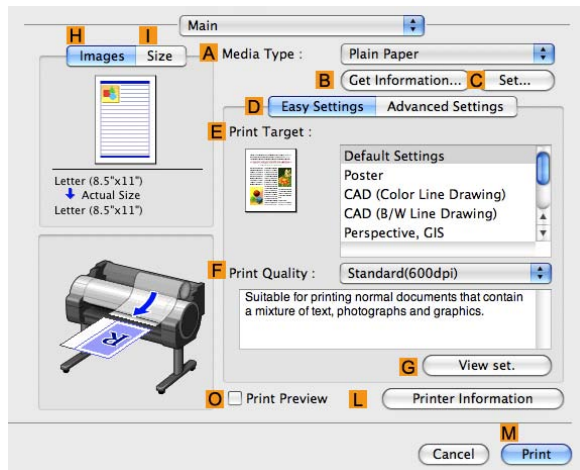


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



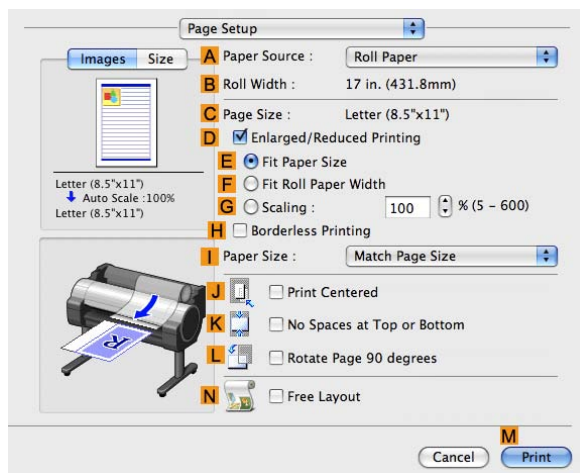
2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



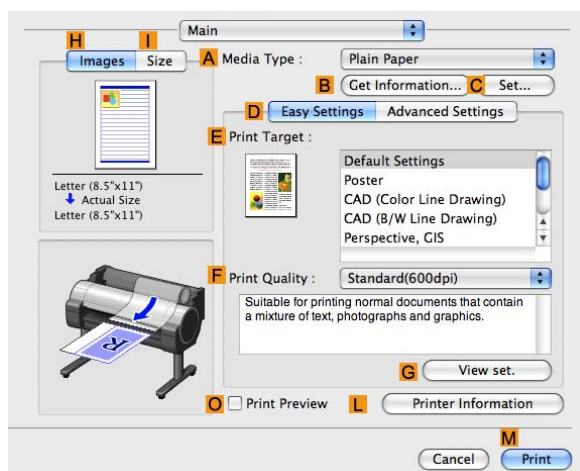
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Paper Source** list.

9. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **Roll Width** -in this case, ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm).

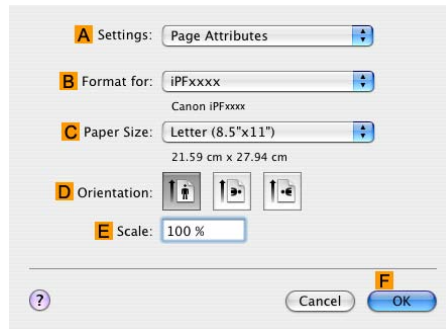


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **Roll Width**, click **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



10. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the **L Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

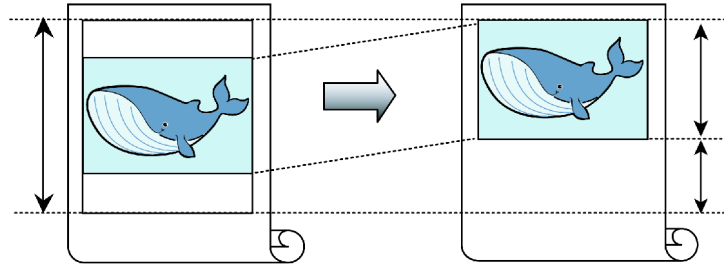
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
 - Banner printing
 - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout



Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

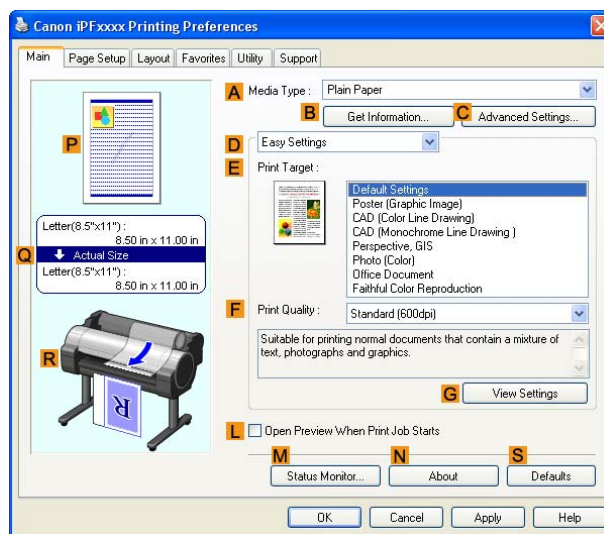
- [Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins \(Windows\)](#) (→P.308)
- [Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins \(Mac OS X\)](#) (→P.310)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

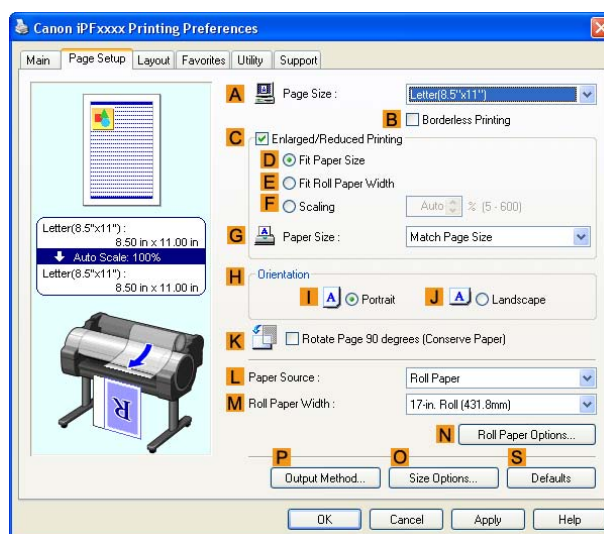
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

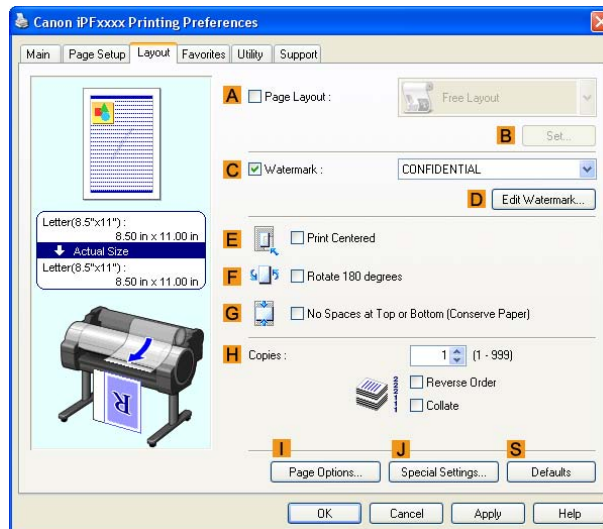
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the **G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

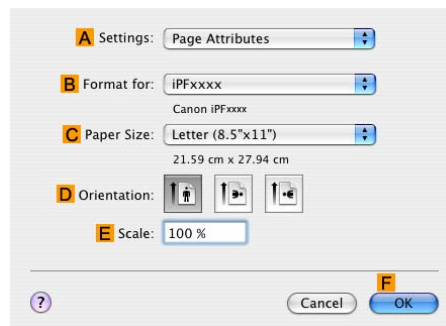
- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

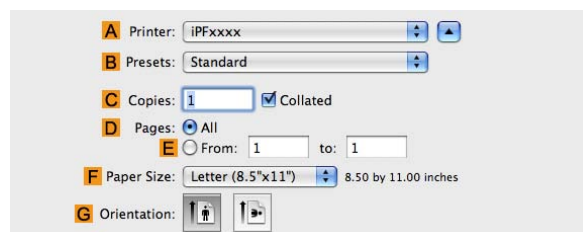


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

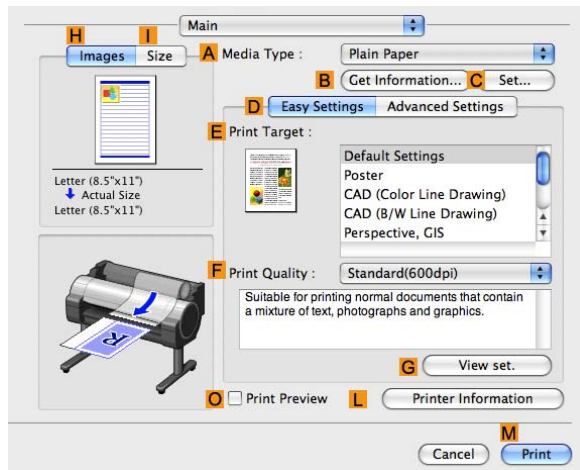


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



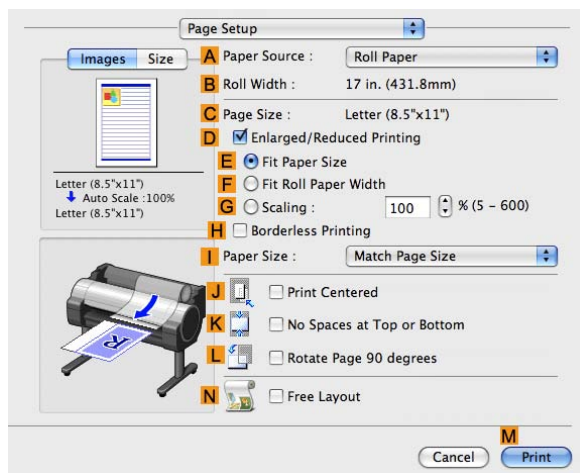
2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



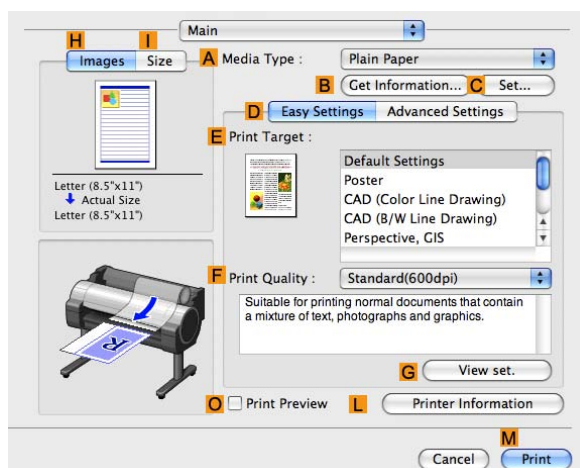
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Paper Source** list.

9. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **Roll Width** -in this case, ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm).

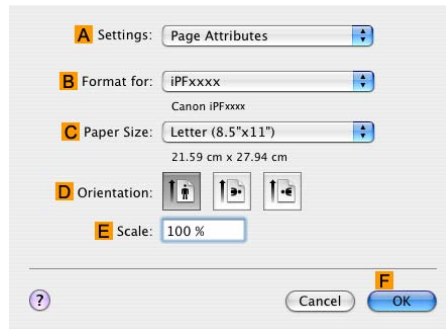


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **Roll Width**, click **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



10. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the **K No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

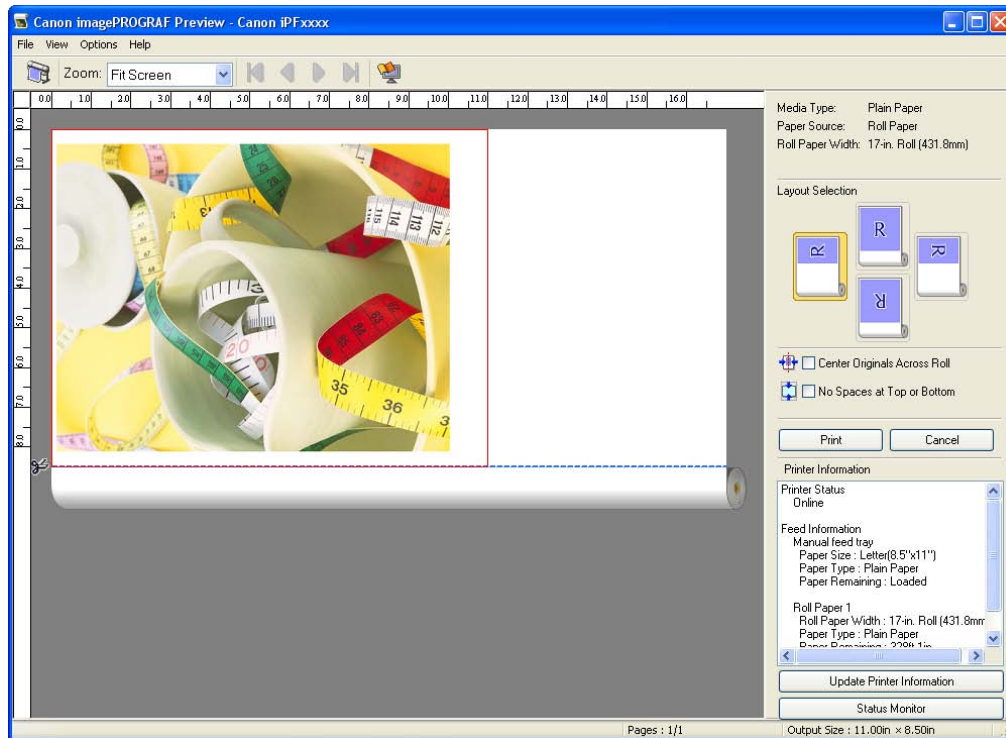
Checking Images Before Printing

☐ Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen.

Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust orientation or other settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

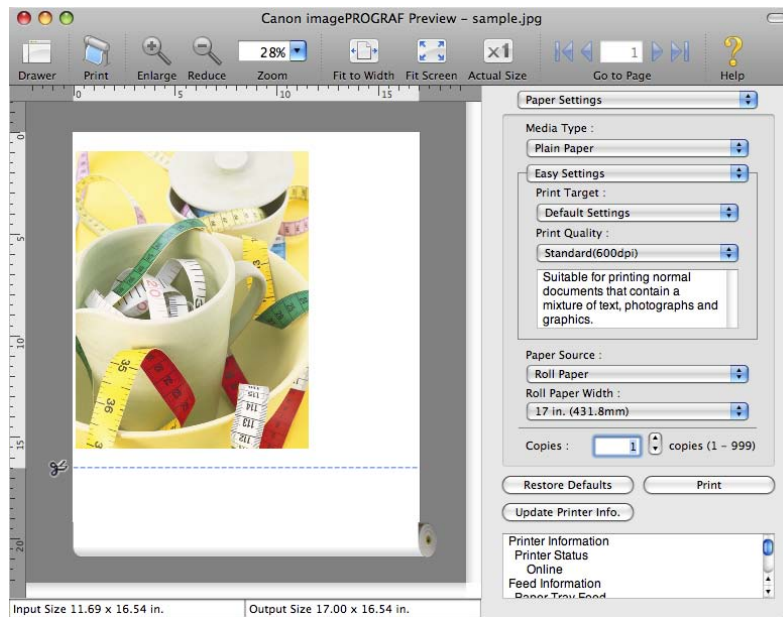


Note

- Under some settings and in some environments, PageComposer may be started.

Preview (Macintosh)

While viewing the preview screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.



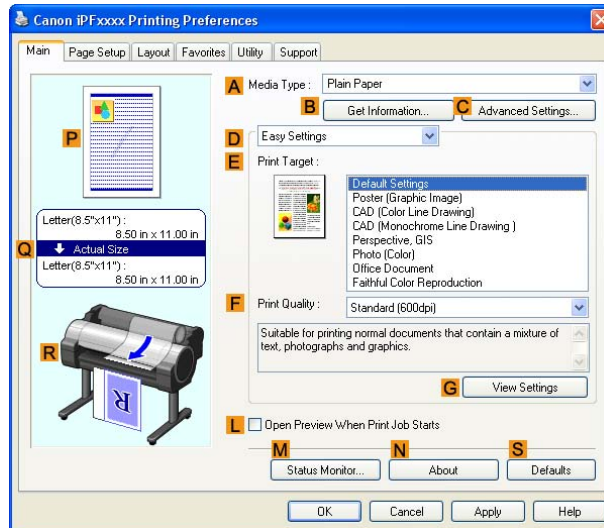
For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- [Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing \(Windows\)](#) (→P.315)
- [Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing \(Mac OS X\)](#) (→P.317)

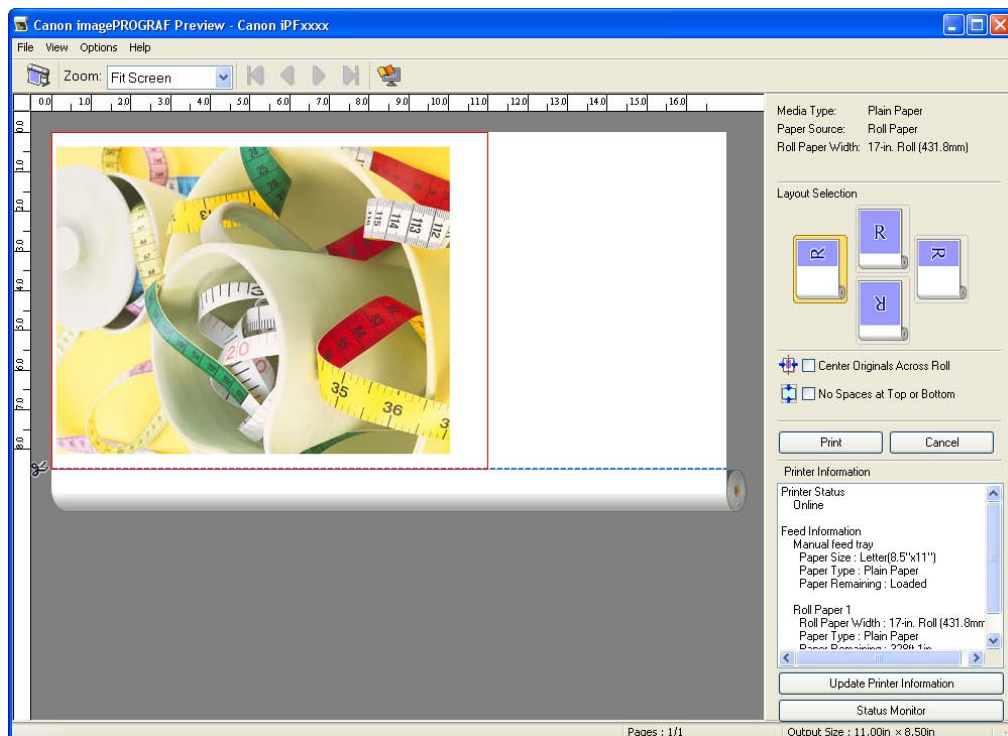
☐ Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **imagePROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

Checking Images Before Printing

6. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
7. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.



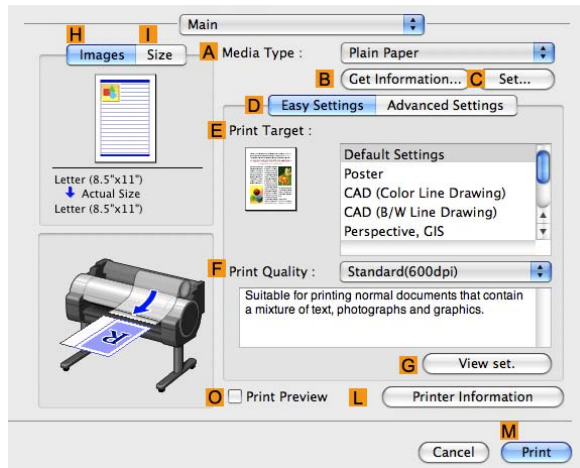
Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see [Preview](#).

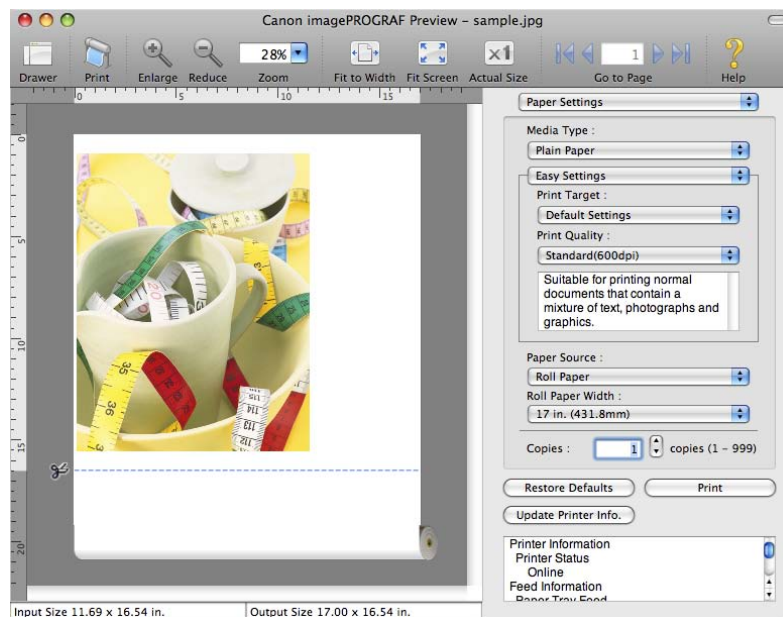
☐ Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. Select the **O Print Preview** check box.
4. Click **M Print**.
5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



6. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
7. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.



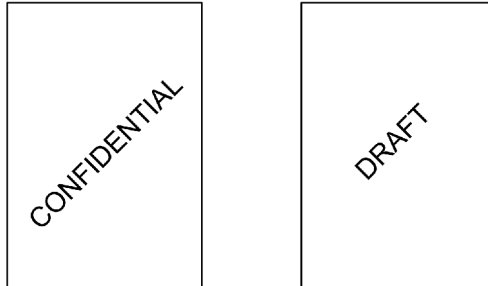
Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to **Preview**.

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.



Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL
- COPY
- DRAFT
- FILE COPY
- FINAL
- PRELIMINARY
- PROOF
- TOP SECRET

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.



Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

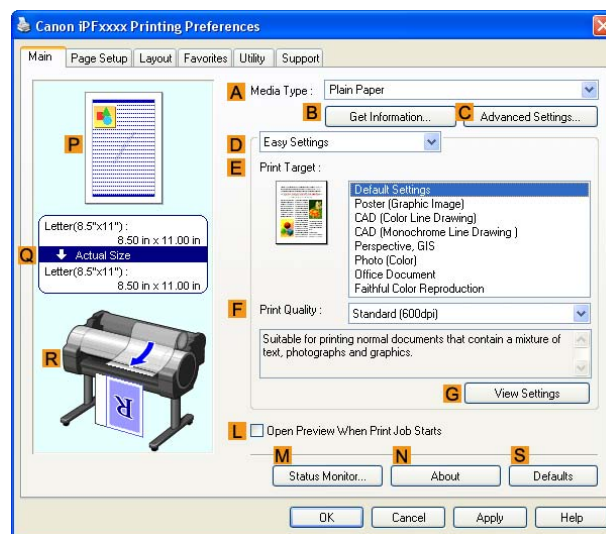
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.319)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a “FILE COPY” watermark.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



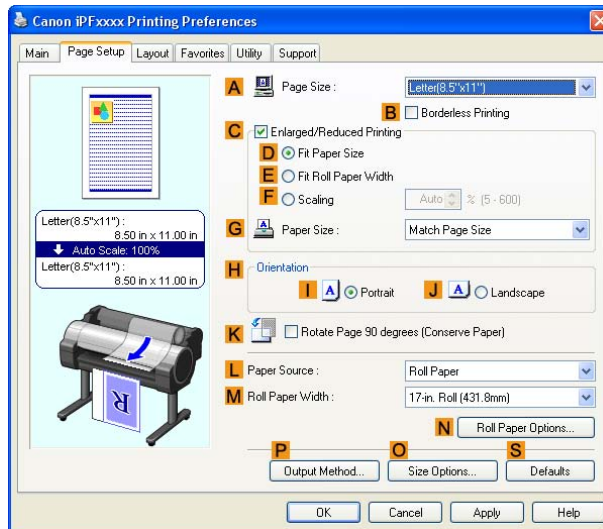
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that **D Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Color Line Drawing)** in the **E Print Target** list.



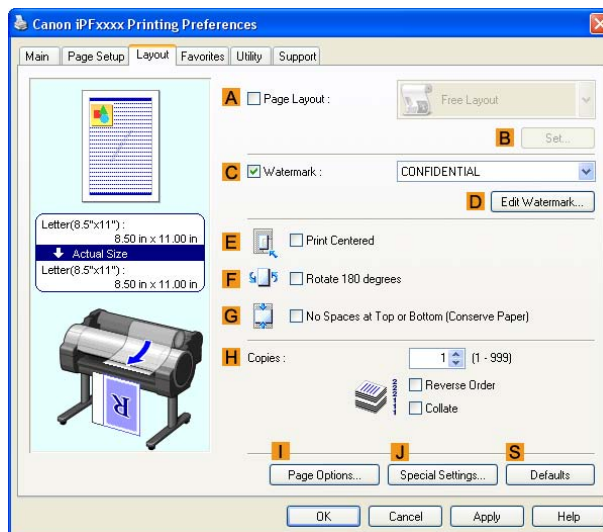
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the **E Print Target** list by clicking **G View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In **A Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the **C Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the **Watermarks** list.



Note

- Click **D Edit Watermark** to open the **Edit Watermark** dialog box. In the **Edit Watermark** dialog box, you can create custom watermarks and change the position and angle of watermarks.

13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

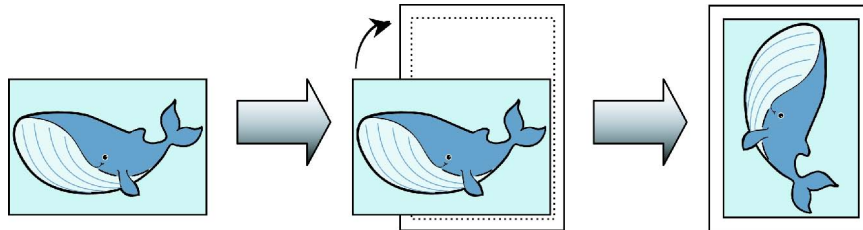
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

☐ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

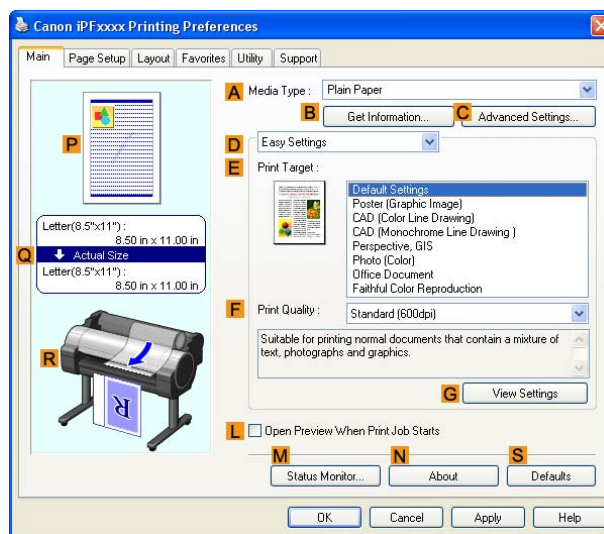
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.322)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.324)

☐ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

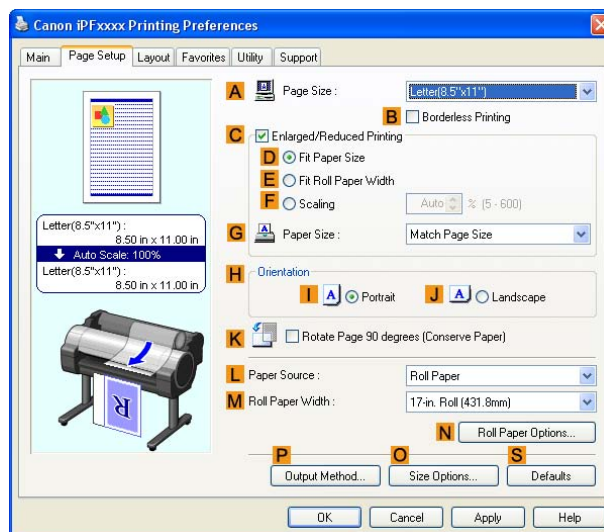
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.
6. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. In **H Orientation**, click **J Landscape**.
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **M Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

☐ Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

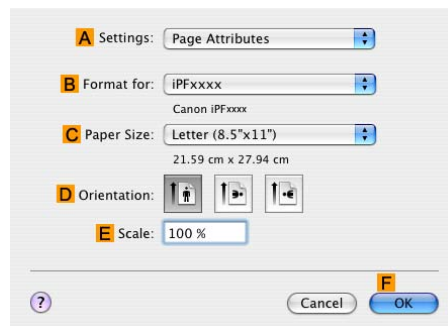
- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0 × 297.0 mm [8.3 × 11.7 in])
- Paper: Roll paper
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

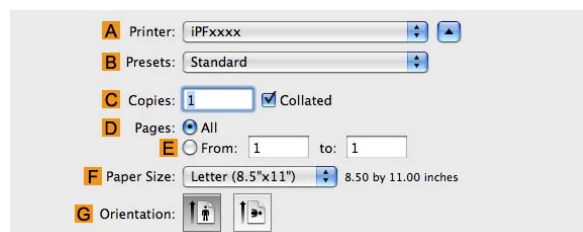


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

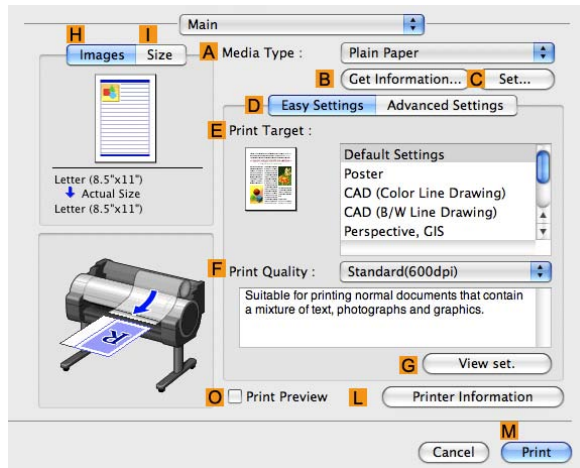


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. In the **F Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In **D Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

6. Access the **Main** pane.

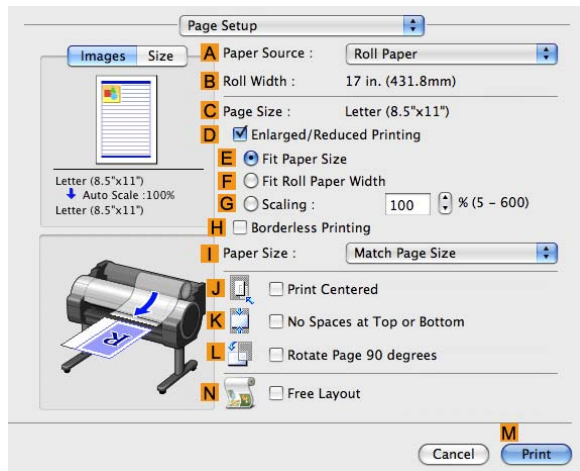


7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. Make your selection in the **E Print Target** list.

9. Make your selection in the **F Print Quality** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



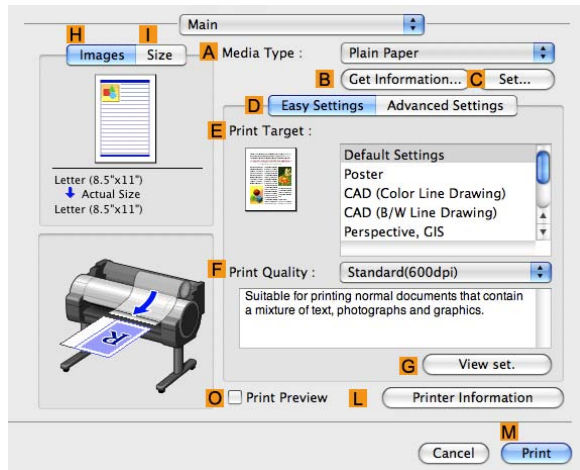
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the **A Paper Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

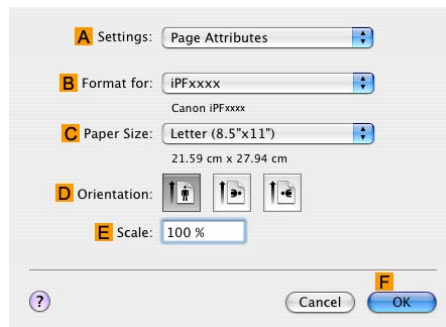


Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



13. Make sure the **C Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attributes** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as “favorites” to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.



Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.328)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.330)

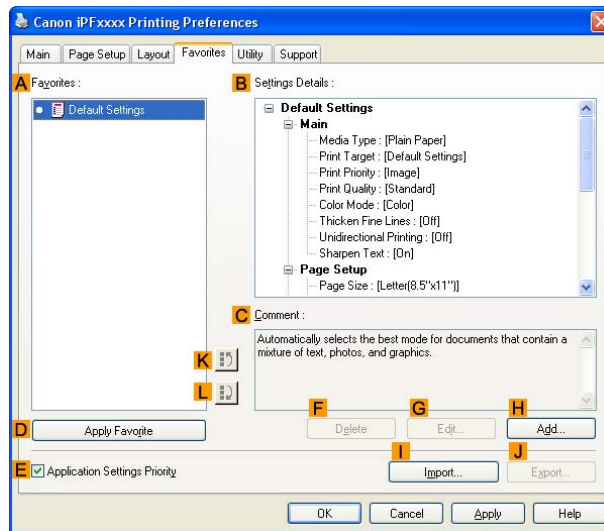
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

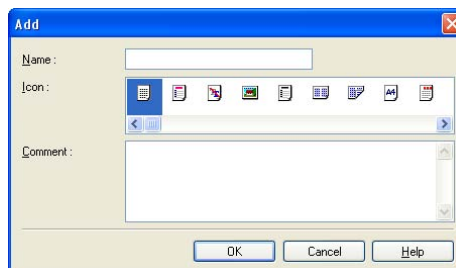
Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click **H Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.



6. Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
7. Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
8. In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

The favorite you have added is now displayed in **A Favorites**.



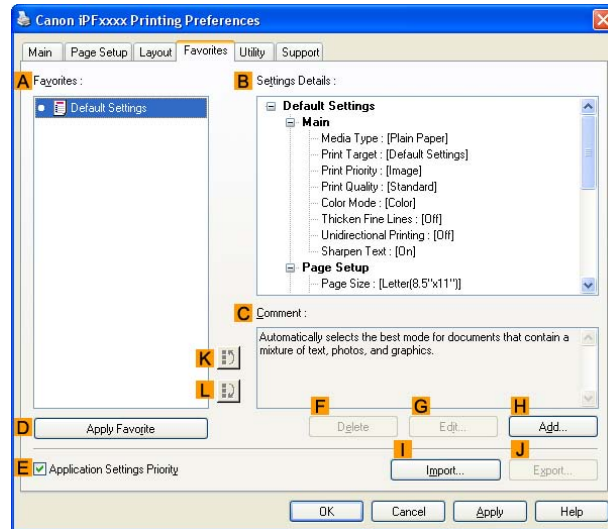
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click **J Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the **A Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.



Note

- To import a favorite, click **I Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click **D Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.



Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.



Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide (→P.95)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.

For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.332)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.333)

☐ Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

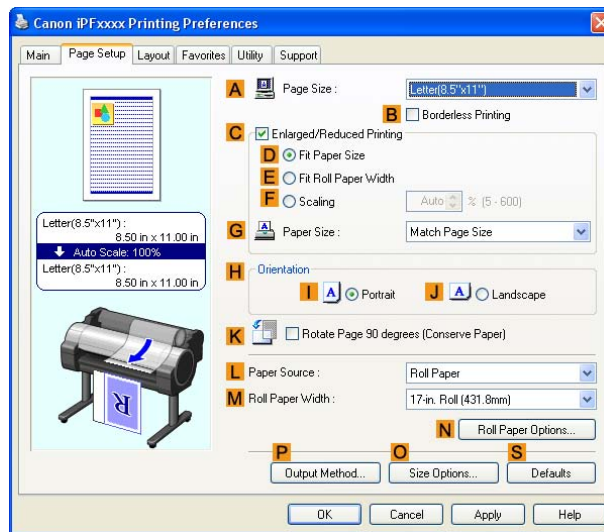
This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.



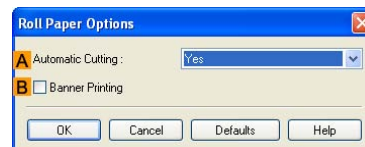
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Paper Source** list.
5. Click **N Roll Paper Options** to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the **A Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.340)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

☰ Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically after printing (using the auto cut function), as well as how to print a cut line for manual cutting.



Note

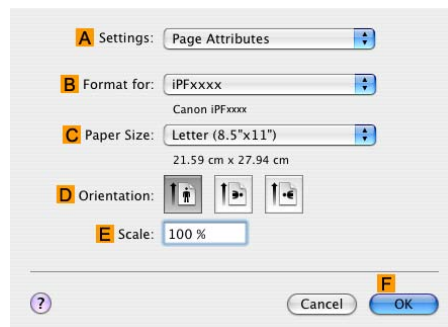
- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function if it is disabled, or to select the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

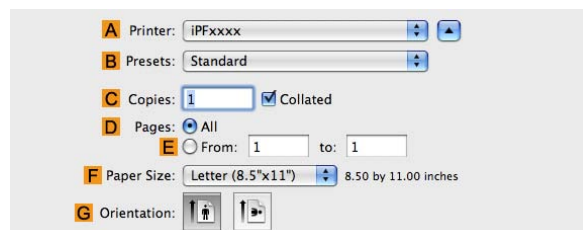


Note

- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.

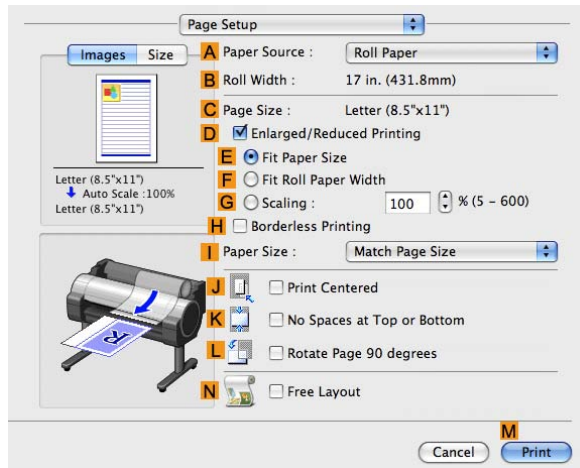


If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.



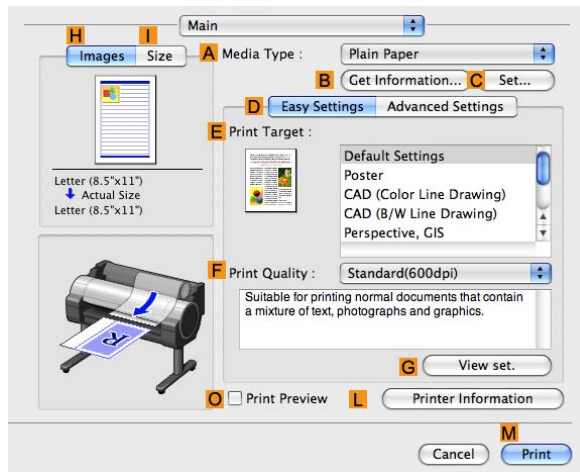
- Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
- Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
- If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.

5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



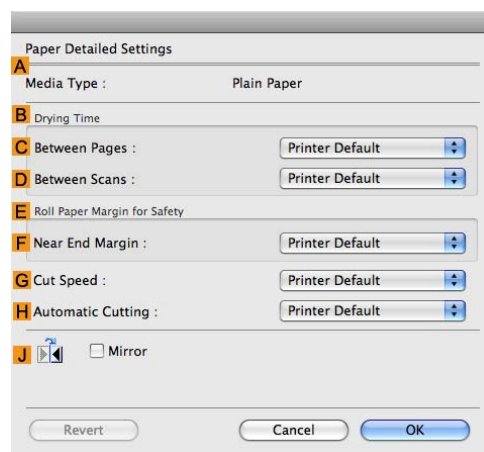
6. Click **Roll Paper** in the **Paper Source** list.

7. Access the **Main** pane.



8. In the **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

9. Click **Set** to display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.



10. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the **H Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

**Important**

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

11. Click **OK** to close the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

**Note**

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.457)

Windows Software

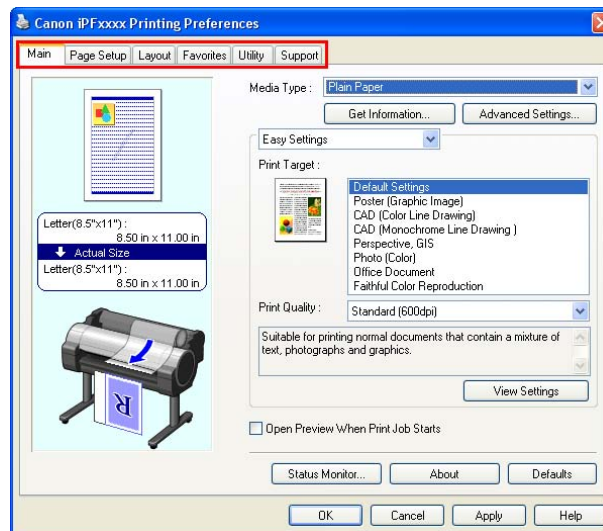
Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.346)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.348)

For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.



- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.350)

You can specify the type of paper, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings.

Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.354)
- View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.355)
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.356)
- Matching Sheet (Windows) (→P.359)
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.361)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.364)

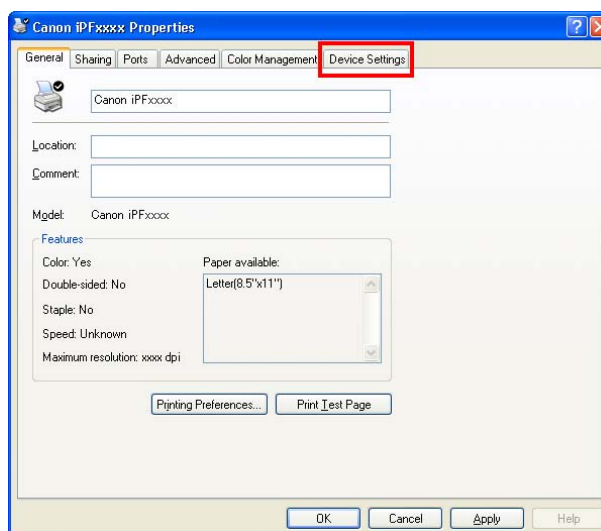
You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and feed source, and automatic cutting.

 - Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.367)
- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.368)

You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

 - Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.370)
 - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.371)

- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.372)
Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved as a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.
- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.374)
You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.375)
You can view support information and the user manual.



- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.377)
You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the version information for the printer driver.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.



Important

- **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** and **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

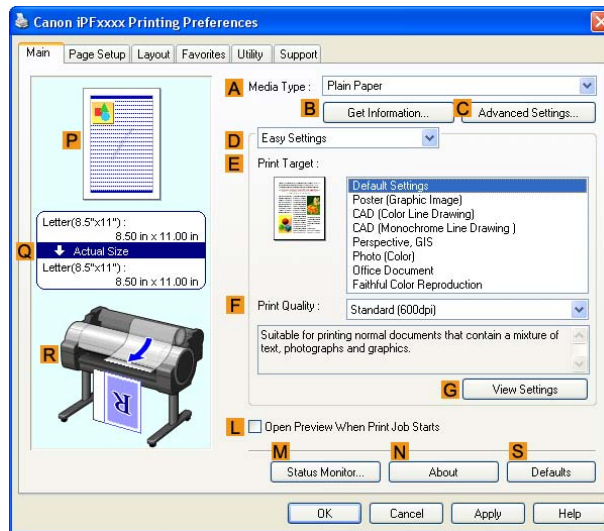
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver. If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



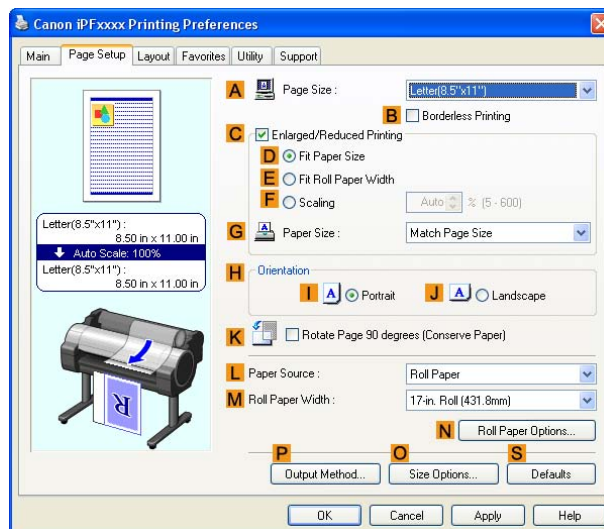
4. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.



Note

- Click the **B Get Information** button to display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box. On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the feed source and type of paper.

5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the **A Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the **L Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **L Paper Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in **M Roll Paper Width**.

**Note**

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.336)

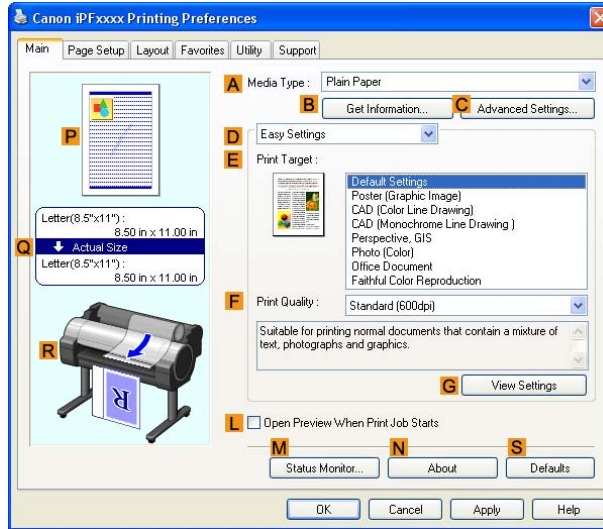
☐ Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings
- Checking a print preview

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking illustrations and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, layout, and so on.

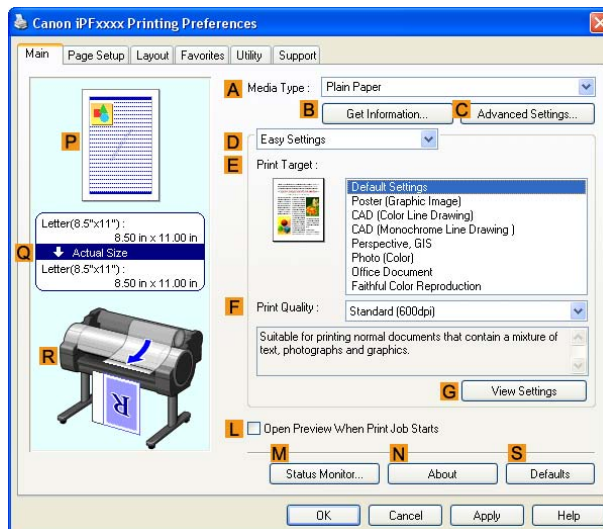


Display Area	Information Displayed
P Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Q Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are indicated.
R Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the feed source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.



Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

When you activate this feature, imagePROGRAF Preview or PageComposer is started before printing.

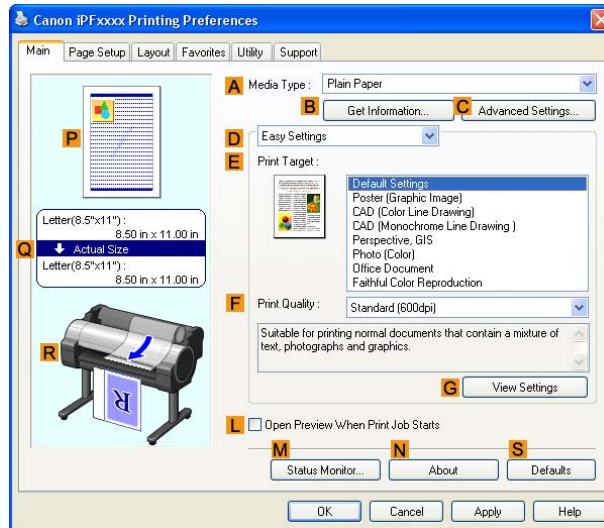
Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see "Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing". (→P.313)

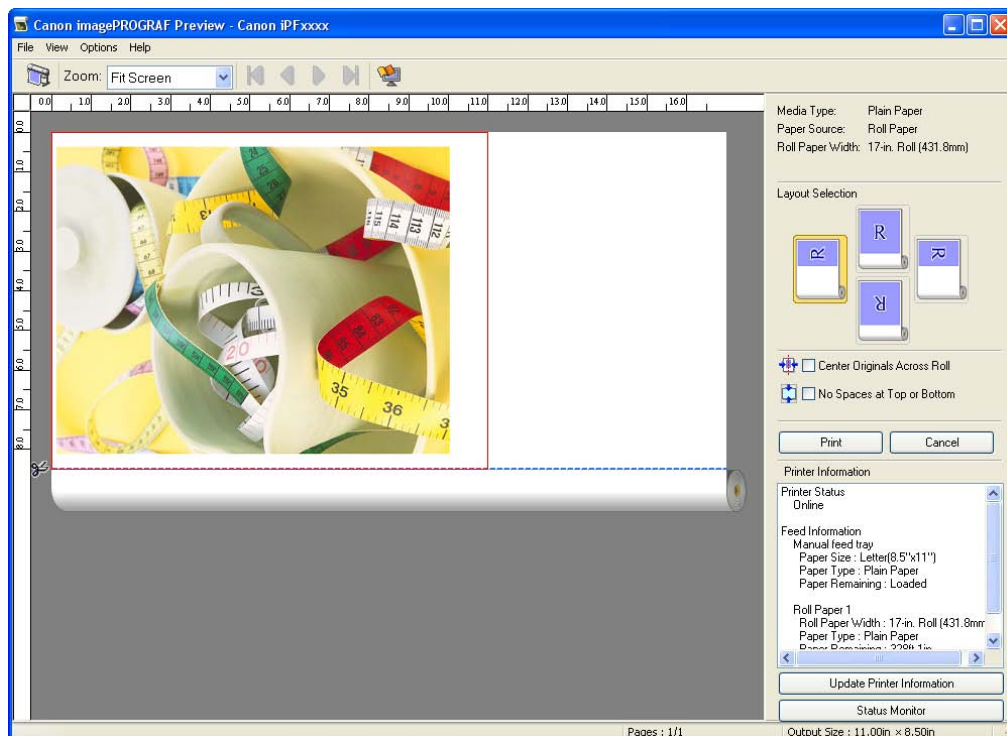
☐ Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. After you click **OK**, when you print a job, the **imagePROGRAF Preview** window will be displayed.



Note

- If PageComposer is running, access the **Special Settings** dialog box from the **Layout** sheet and clear **Enable Preview Switching**.

6. On the main window, you can check the layout and change settings as needed.
7. To print, click **Start Printing** in the **File** menu.

**Note**

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, see [Preview](#).

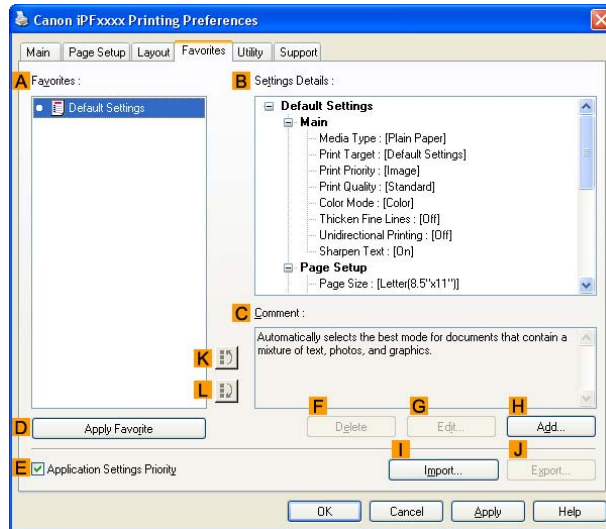
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

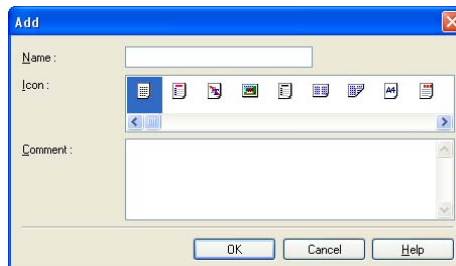
Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click **H Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.



6. Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
7. Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
8. In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

The favorite you have added is now displayed in **A Favorites**.



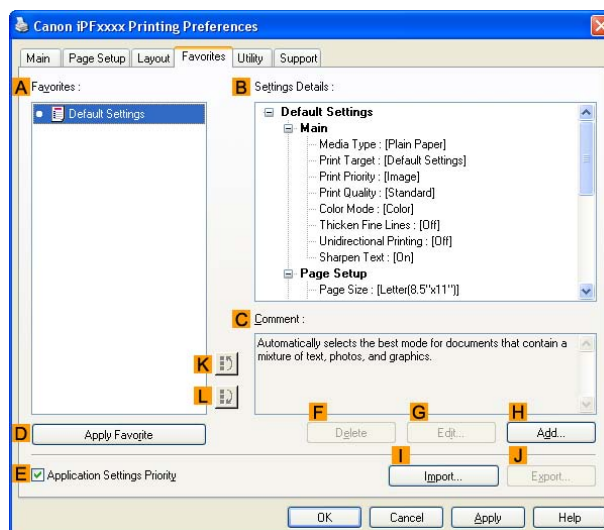
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click **J Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the **A Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.



Note

- To import a favorite, click **I Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click **D Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.



Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see "Confirming Print Settings (Windows)". (→P.340)

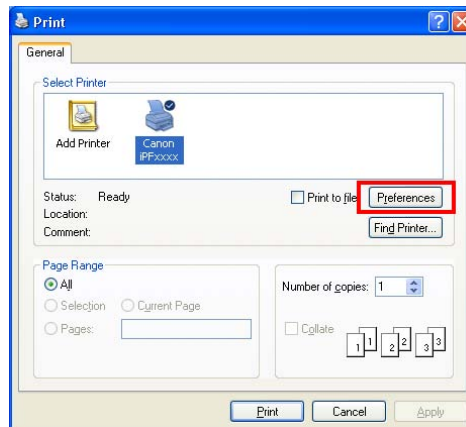
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

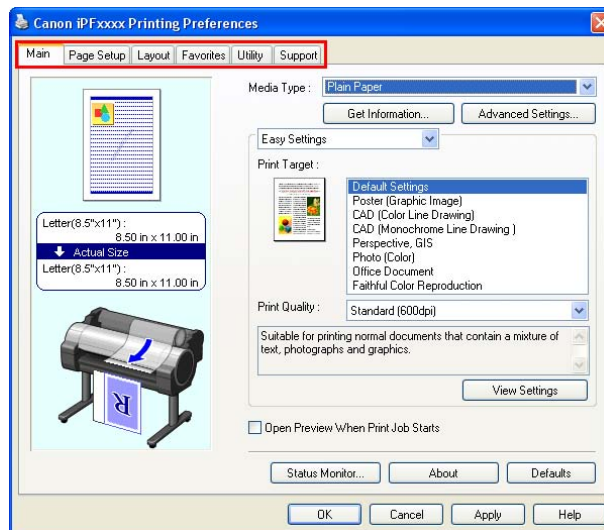


Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.
- Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

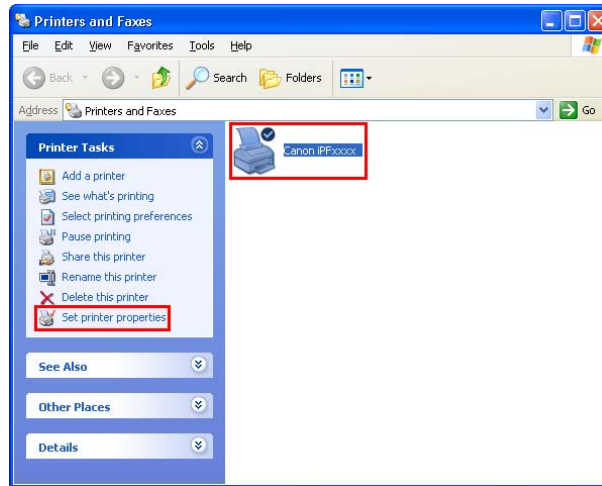


Important

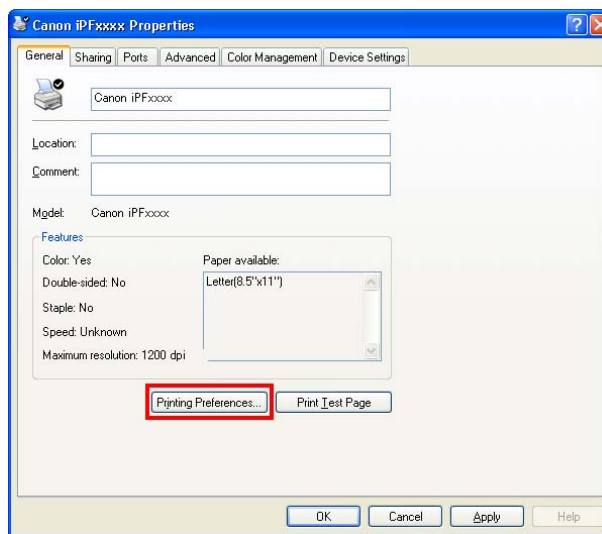
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
To use the settings continuously in all applications, open the printer driver from the system menu to make the settings.
see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.348)

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start > Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



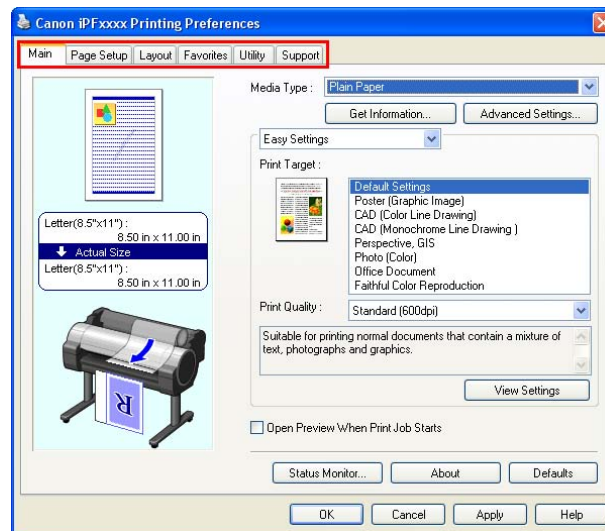
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.377)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications. see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.346)

Main Sheet (Windows)

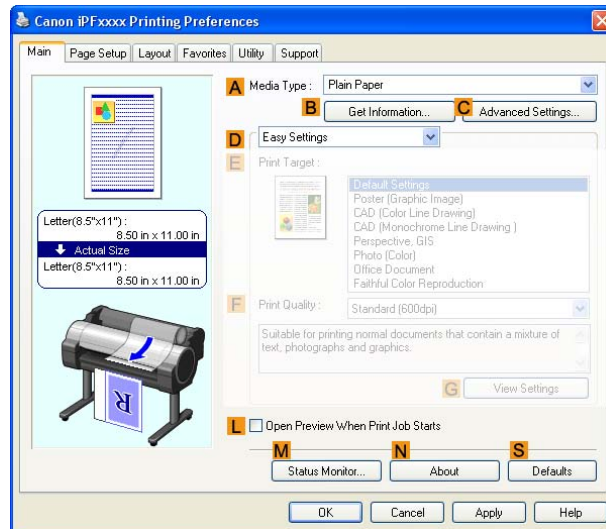
The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the particular printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



A Media Type

Select the type of paper.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

B Get Information

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

- Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.353)

C Advanced Settings

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.354)

L Open Preview When Print Job Starts

If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.

This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.

- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.313)

M Status Monitor

Starts imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

You can check the printer status, job status, and other conditions.

You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings.

For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help file.

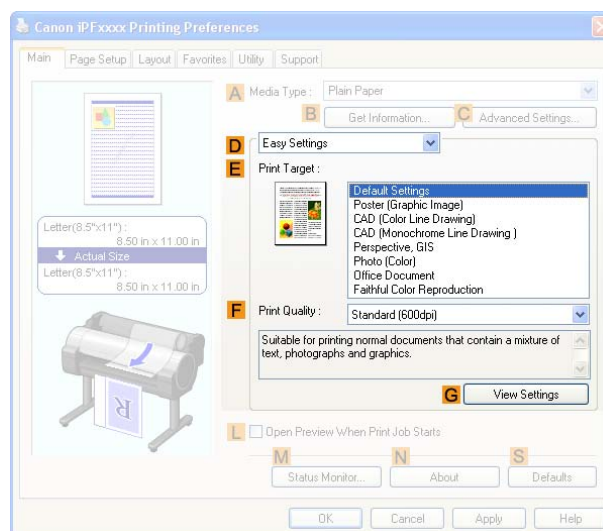
N About

Displays version information for the printer driver.

S Defaults

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Easy Settings



E Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- Printing Photos and Images (→P.152)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.160)
- Printing Office Documents (→P.171)

Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **E Print Target** options may not be available.

F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

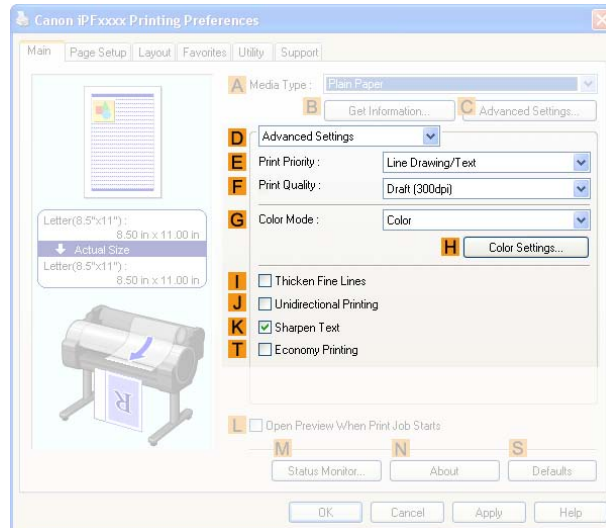
G View Settings

Displays the **Print Target** setting values.

You can view and change the order of **Print Target** setting values.

- View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.355)

Configuration using Advanced Settings



E Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

G Color Mode

Choose the color mode.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

Depending on the **A Media Type** setting, some **G Color Mode** options may not be available.

H Color Settings

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

- Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.177)

I Thicken Fine Lines

Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

J Unidirectional Printing

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

K Sharpen Text

Activate this option to print text more sharply.

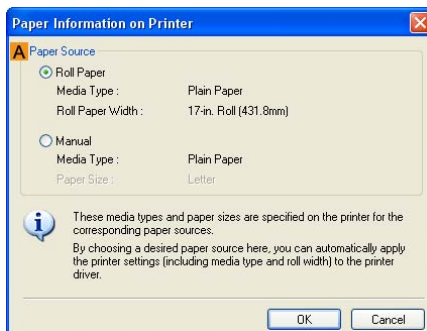
T Economy Printing

Select this checkbox to reduce the amount of ink consumed during printing. However, the print quality is worse than for normal printing.

Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **A Media Type** and **F Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

☰ Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the paper source and media type.



Note

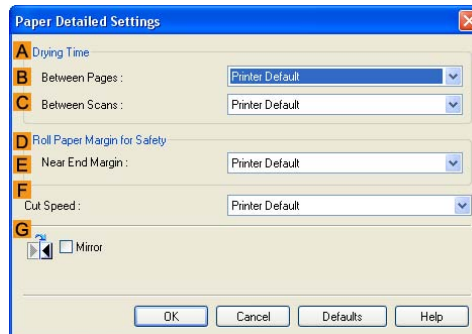
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Get Information by Media Type**. (→P.350)

▲ Paper Source

Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the **Paper Source** and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

☐ Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **Settings by Media Type**. (→P.350)

A Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls.

- (→P.127)

B Between Pages

Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.

C Between Scans

Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.

D Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

E Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

F Cut Speed

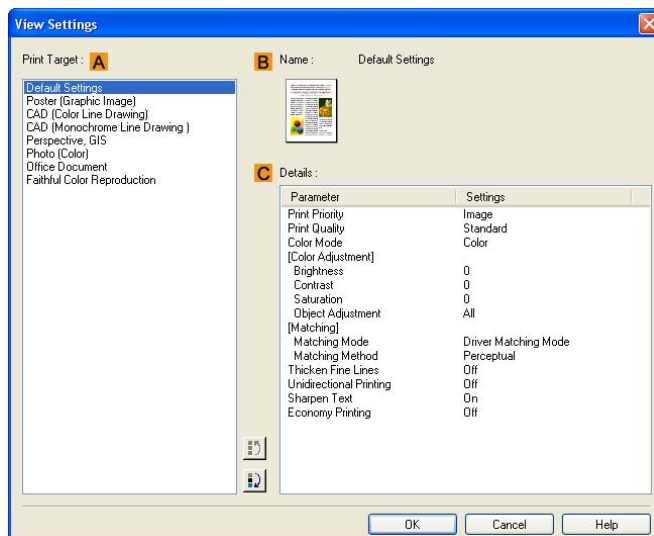
Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

G Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** sheet, click **View Settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.350)

A Print Target

Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

B Name

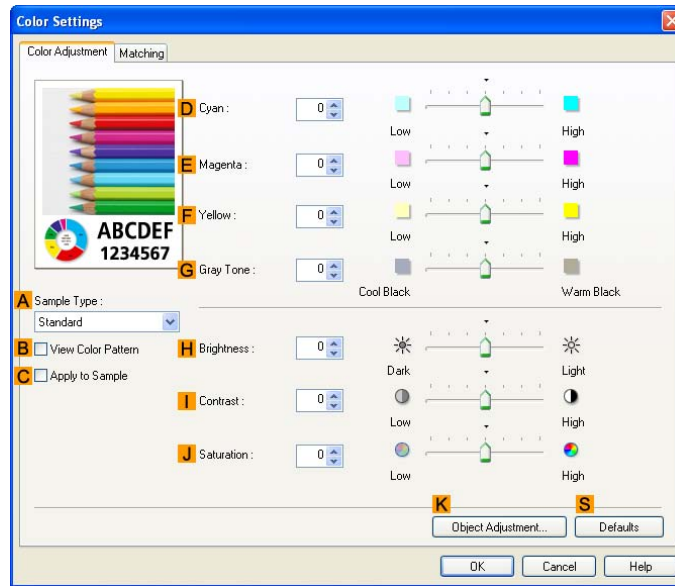
Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

C Details

Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target**.

Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows)

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.350)

A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow

Fine-tune color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

G Gray Tone

Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue) or **Warm Black** (tinged with red).

H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

I Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

Saturation

Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

K Object Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

S Defaults

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

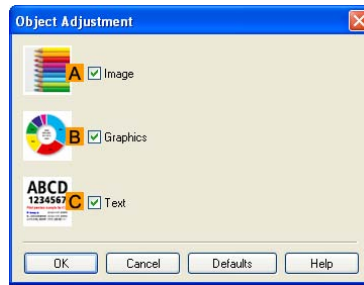


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

Object Adjustment dialog box: Color

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

A Image

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

B Graphics

Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

C Text

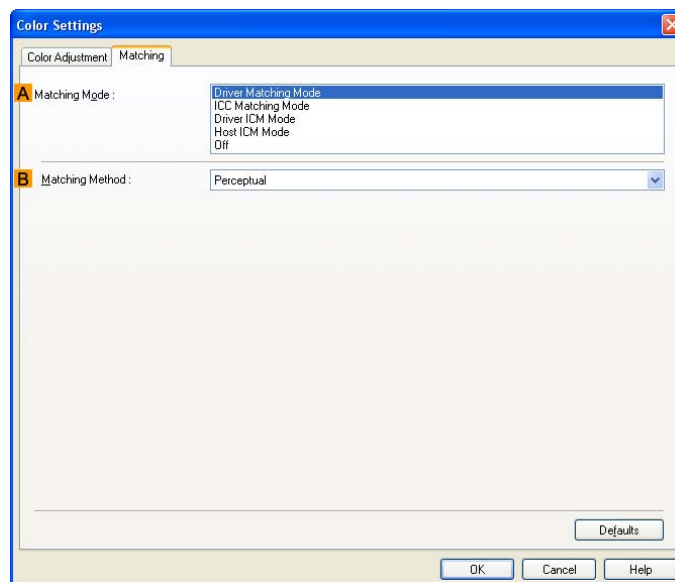
Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

☐ Matching Sheet (Windows)

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.

Driver Matching Mode

The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **A Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.350)

A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode**. For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode**, depending on your color matching system. If you prefer not to use the printer driver for color matching, select **No**.

B Matching Method

Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching Mode**.

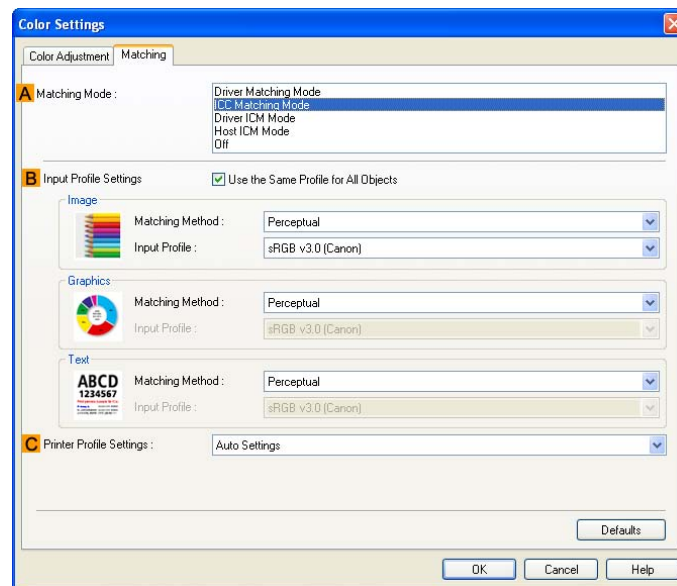


Note

- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver". (→P.177)

ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet. (→P.350)

A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

B Input Profile Settings

You can select **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**. You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile**.

Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode**.

To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text**, select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**. To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text**, clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.

C Printer Profile Settings

Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings**.

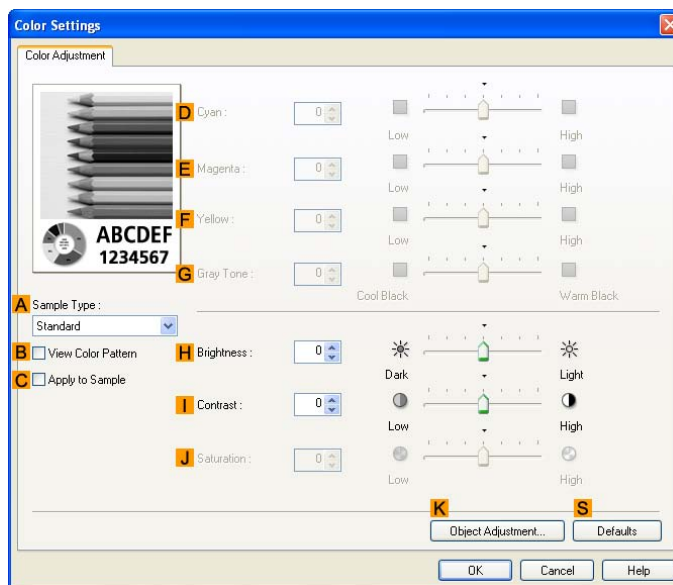


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** sheet, click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.350)

A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow

Not available.

G Gray Tone

Not available.

H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

I Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

J Saturation

Not available.

K Object Adjustment

Select this option to display the **K Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

S Defaults

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

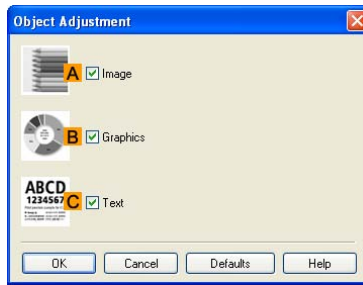


Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

A Image

Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.

B Graphics

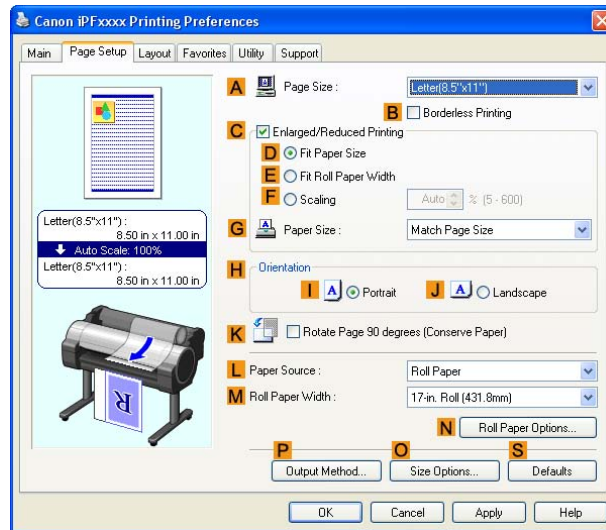
Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.

C Text

Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

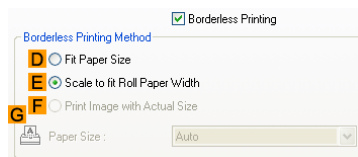
The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help file.



A Page Size

Select the page size as specified in the source application.
For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)

B Borderless Printing



Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the **L Paper Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225)

D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

F Print Image with Actual Size

Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either the length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.

G Paper Size

Available when **D Fit Paper Size** is selected.
Choose the size of the paper you will print on.
For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)
Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.

C Enlarged/Reduced Printing



Choose from the following options when this setting is activated.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.201)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.207)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.213)

D Fit Paper Size

Scales the document image to match the paper size.

E Fit Roll Paper Width

Scales the document image to match the roll width.

F Scaling

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”

G Paper Size

Choose the size of the paper you will print on.

For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)

H Orientation

Choose the printing orientation.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.321)

K Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.301)

L Paper Source

Choose the feed source, as desired.

Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** on the **Main** sheet.

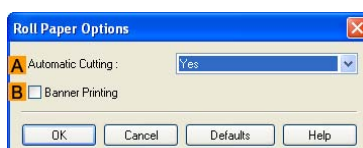
M Roll Paper Width

Choose the roll width.

For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)

N Roll Paper Options

Complete optional roll paper settings. Click to display the **Roll Paper Options** dialog box.



Under **A Automatic Cutting**, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline**.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.331)

Select **B Banner Printing** when printing multiple pages continuously.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (→P.275)

P Output Method

Click to display the **Output Method** dialog box, which enables you to complete the **Output Method** and **Name of data to be saved** settings.

O Size Options

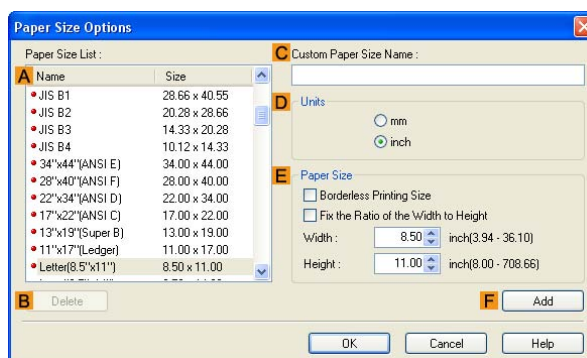
Click to display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.

S Defaults

Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Paper Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard paper sizes for selection later as needed.



Note

- To display the **Paper Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** sheet, click **Paper Size Options**. (→P.364)

A Paper Size List

Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.

B Delete

Custom paper sizes created by users can be deleted from the **A Paper Size List**, as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations.

- If a standard paper size of the printer driver is selected.
- If an oversized paper size is selected.
- If a paper size in a red box is selected.

C Custom Paper Size Name

You can name **Custom Paper Size** as desired.

D Units

Specify the desired unit of measure for the **Custom Paper Size** height and width.

E Paper Size

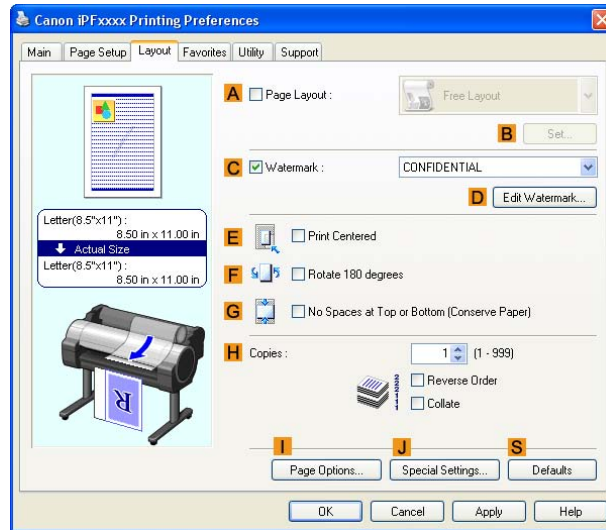
Specify the desired **Width** and **Height**. You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size**. To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**.

F Add

Enables you to register the custom paper size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom paper size.

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layout** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



A Page Layout

Activate this setting to select a particular page layout.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.280)
- Printing Posters in Sections (→P.286)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.269)
- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.450)

B Set

Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout**. In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings.

- **Page Layout Printing**
- **Pages to Print**
- **Free Layout Settings**

C Watermark

Activating this option makes two settings available, **Watermarks** and **D Edit Watermark**.

- Printing With Watermarks (→P.318)

Watermarks

Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.

D Edit Watermark

Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.

E Print Centered

Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.289)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.295)

F Rotate 180 degrees

Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.

G No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.307)

H Copies

Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”

Reverse Order

Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.

I Page Options

Click to display the **Page Options** dialog box, which enables you to complete settings for printing the user name, date, or page number in the header or footer.

J Special Settings

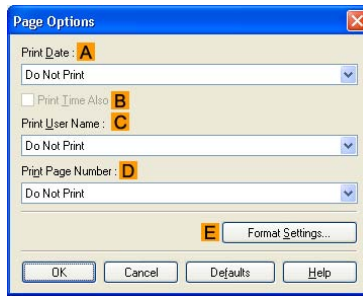
If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.

S Defaults

Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Options Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Page Options** dialog box offers the following settings.



Note

- To display the **Page Options** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Page Options**. (→P.368)

A Print Date

Select where the date is printed, as desired. To print the time as well, select **B Print Time Also**.

C Print User Name

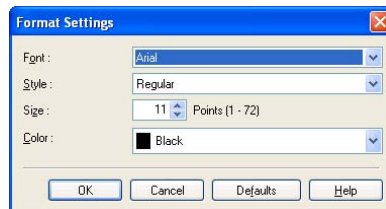
Select where the user name is printed, as desired.

D Print Page Number

Select where the page number is printed, as desired.

E Format Settings

Click to display the **Format Settings** dialog box, which enables you to complete format-related settings.

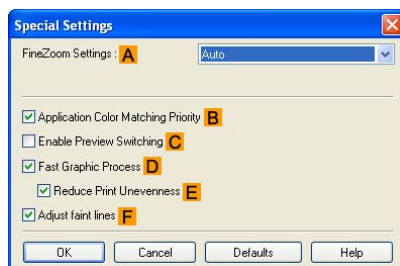


Note

- If you specify the same position for multiple items, the items are printed from left to right in this order: date, user name, and page number.
- When you print multiple pages per sheet using **Page Layout Printing** or similar functions, these items will be printed for each page.

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** sheet, click **Special Settings**. (→P.368)

A FineZoom Settings

This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto**. If documents are not printed correctly on large-format paper, it may help to select **Yes**, and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No**.

B Application Color Matching Priority

You can give applications priority in color management.

C Enable Preview Switching

When this option is selected, PageComposer starts if you print with **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** selected on the **Main** sheet.

D Fast Graphic Process

If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.



Important

- This function cannot be used on 64-bit version of Windows.

E Reduce Print Unevenness

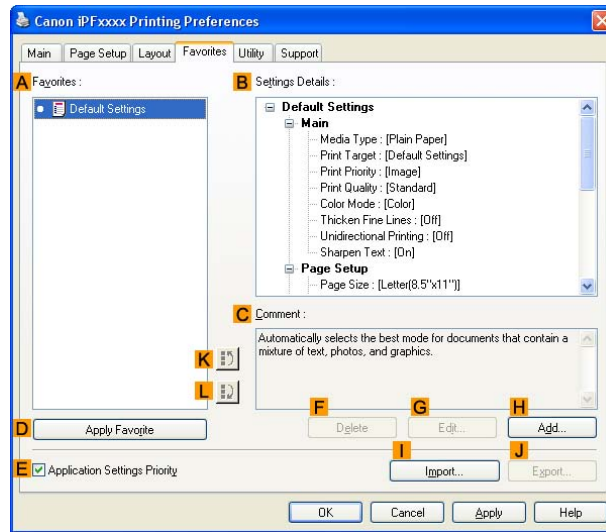
If you are concerned about print unevenness, the printing results can be improved by selecting this option. However, printing may take longer for some images.

F Adjust faint lines

If fine lines are printed in colors that do not match the colors of other shapes, clearing this option may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken.

Favorites Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Favorites** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



A Favorites

Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites.

- Using Favorites (→P.327)

B Settings Details

Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.

C Comment

Displays notes registered in the favorite.

D Apply Favorite

Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites**.

E Application Settings Priority

Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites**, when clicking **D Apply Favorite**. For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.

F Delete

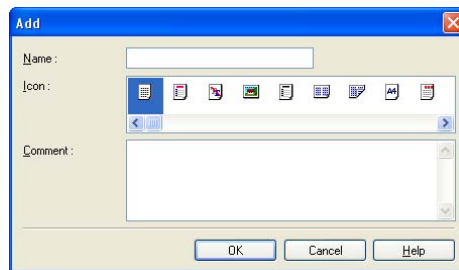
Click to delete the selected favorite from the **A Favorites** list.

G Edit

Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** list.

H Add

Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite.



I Import

Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.

J Export

Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

K Up

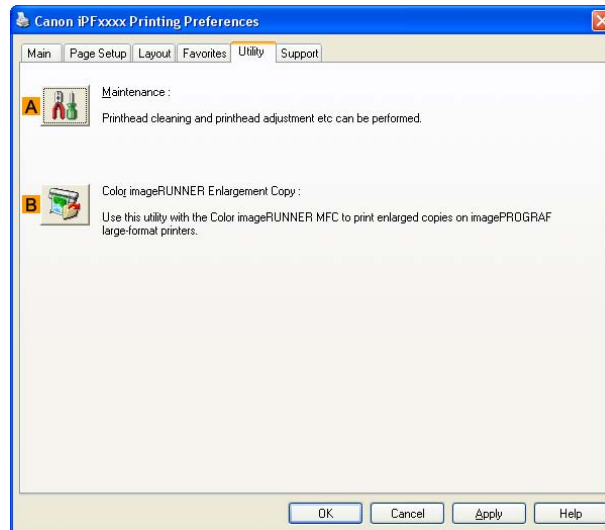
Click to move the selected favorite up in the **▲ Favorites** list.

L Down

Click to move the selected favorite down in the **▲ Favorites** list.

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following items can be executed on the **Utility** sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.



A Maintenance

Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check
- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
- Head alignment adjustment
- Feed amount adjustment

B Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

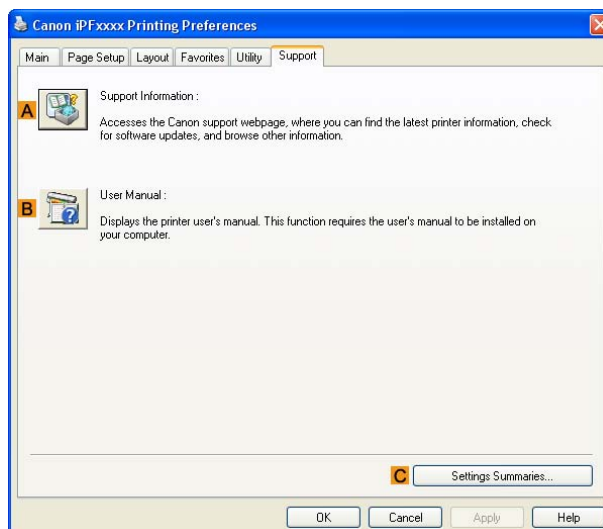
Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.432)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Support Sheet (Windows)

On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.



A Support Information

Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

B User Manual

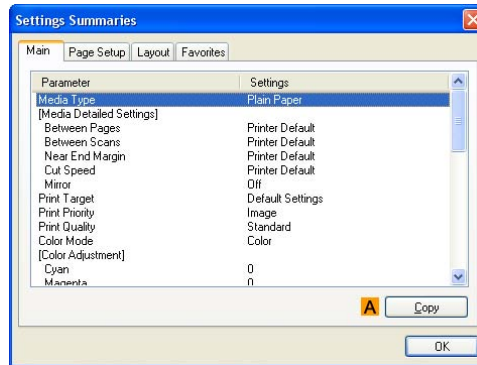
Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

C Settings Summaries

Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.

☐ Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



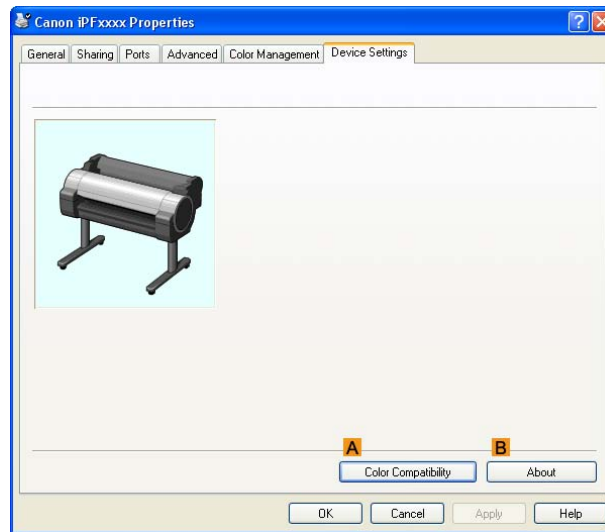
A Copy

Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

☐ Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

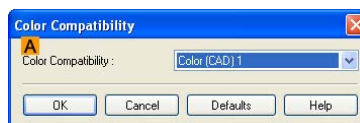
Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.

The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** sheet.



A Color Compatibility

Click to display the **Color Compatibility** dialog box, which enables you to adjust colors if you have selected **Color Mode > Color (CAD)**.



- For details on color settings, see Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings. (→P.167)

B About

You can display version information for the printer driver.

Preview

☐☐☐ The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

☐☐☐ Operating Environment

You can use the Preview in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Preview

Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

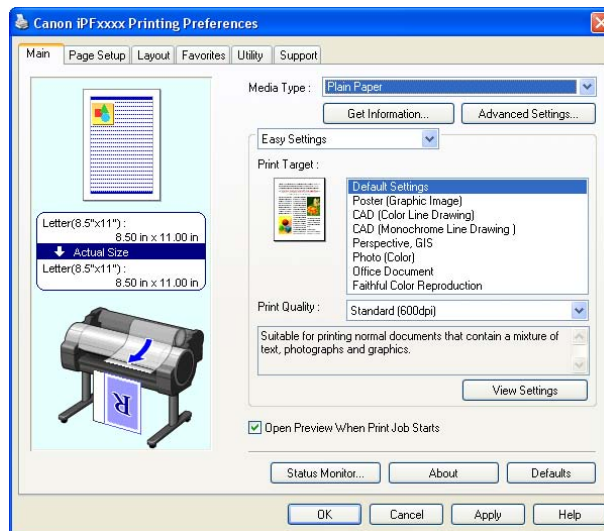
1. Start the application software which you use.
2. From the application software's **File** menu, select the printer setup menu to open the **Print** dialog box.



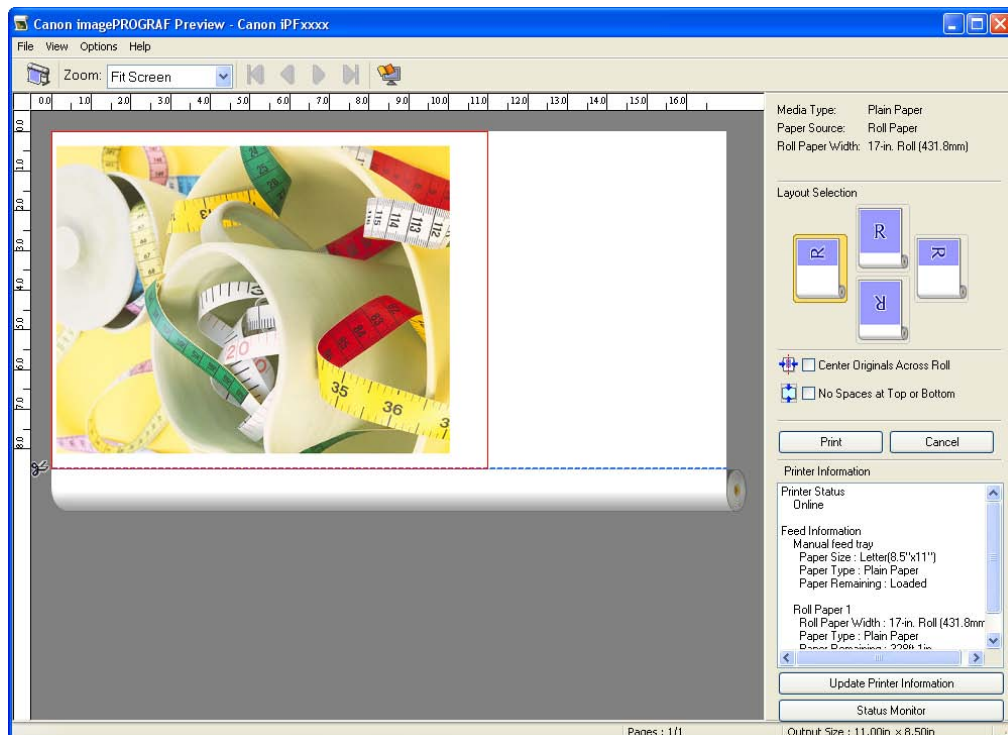
Note

- Normally, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3. On the **Main** sheet, click on the **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box. Click the **OK** button to save the settings.

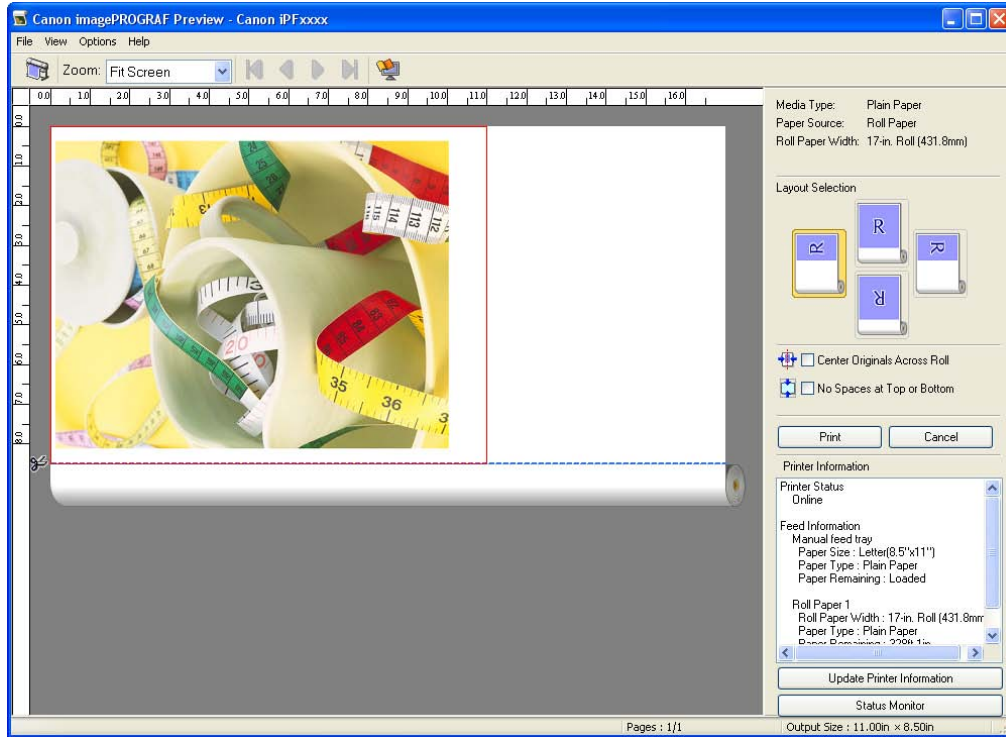


4. On the **Print** dialog box in the application software, click the **Print** button.
5. Preview main window is displayed.



Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, preview and dialog area and status bar.

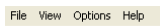


Note

- You can use the **View** menu to show or hide the tool bar.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



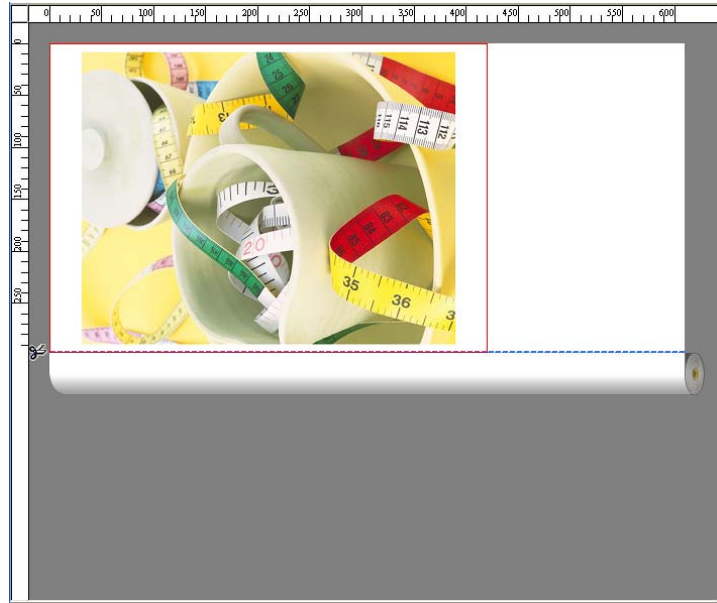
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



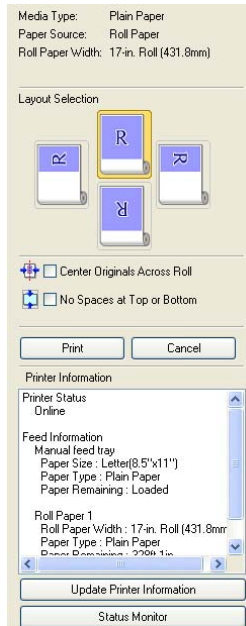
Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.



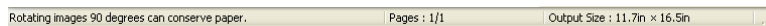
Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.
For more information about Dialog Area, see “Dialog Area”. (→P.382)



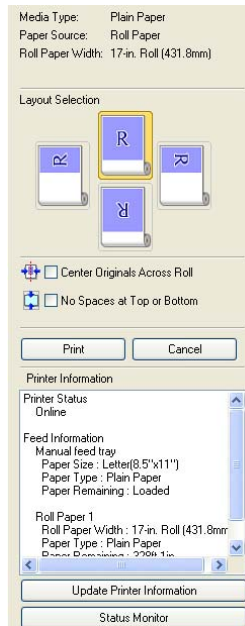
Status Bar

This shows the message, **Pages** and **Output Size**.



Dialog Area

You can select the layout and print on the center.



Media Type / Paper Source / Paper Size

You can confirm the information that is set.

Layout Selection

You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

For more information about **Layout Selection**, see “Printing with Selecting the Layout”. (→P.387)

Center Originals Across Roll

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

For more information about **Center Originals Across Roll**, see “Print on the Center”. (→P.384)



Note

- You cannot select this if **Cut Sheet** is selected in **Paper Source**.

“No Spaces at Top or Bottom”

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about “No Spaces at Top or Bottom”, see “Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom”. (→P.385)



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Print” Button

Click the button to start printing.

“Cancel” Button

Click the button to stop printing.

Printer Information

You can confirm the information acquired from the printer.

Update Printer Information Button

Click the button to update the printer information with connecting to the printer.

Status Monitor Button

Click the button to start **Status Monitor**.

Print on the Center

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

1. Click the **Center Originals Across Roll** check box on.



2. Click the “Print” button
Printing on the center begins.



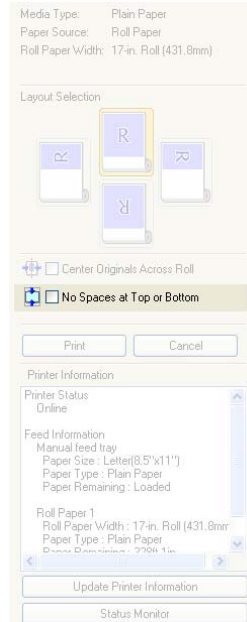
Note

- You cannot select this if **Cut Sheet** is selected in **Paper Source**.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

1. Click the “No Spaces at Top or Bottom” check box on.



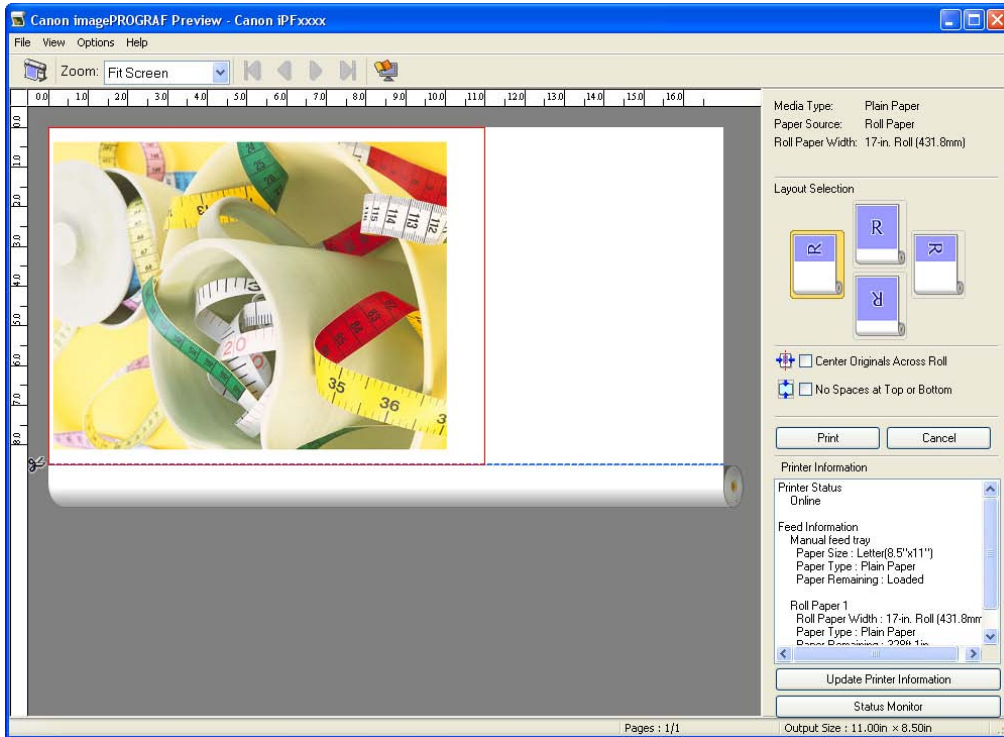
2. Click the “Print” button.
Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees

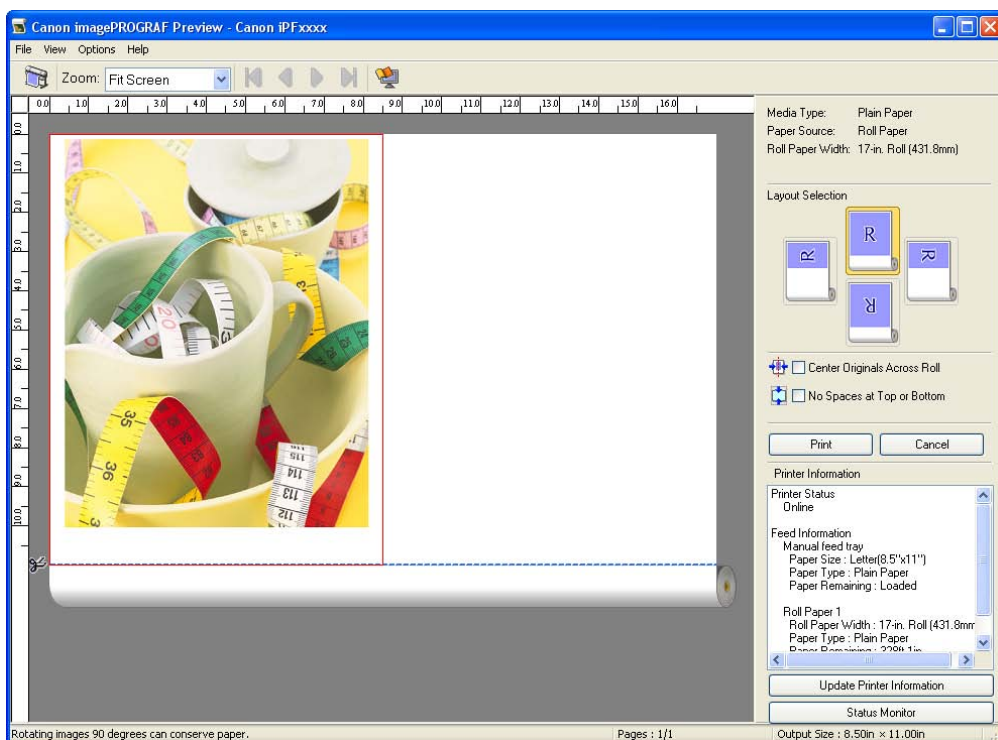
You can select **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or **Use Driver Settings** from the **Options** menu.

Setting	Details
Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible	Rotates pages in portrait orientation 90 degrees before printing. Pages are only rotated if they can fit lengthwise across the roll.
Use Driver Settings	Follows printer driver settings when determining whether to rotate pages.

Selecting **Rotate 90 Degrees If Possible** or Placing a checkmark for **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** on the printer driver



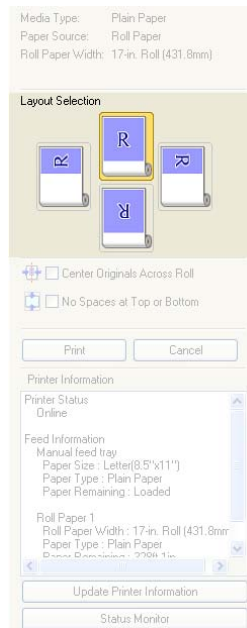
Selecting **Use Driver Settings**







Printing with Selecting the Layout

You can print which conserves paper by selecting the layout.

1. In **Layout Selection**, click the layout button to use.

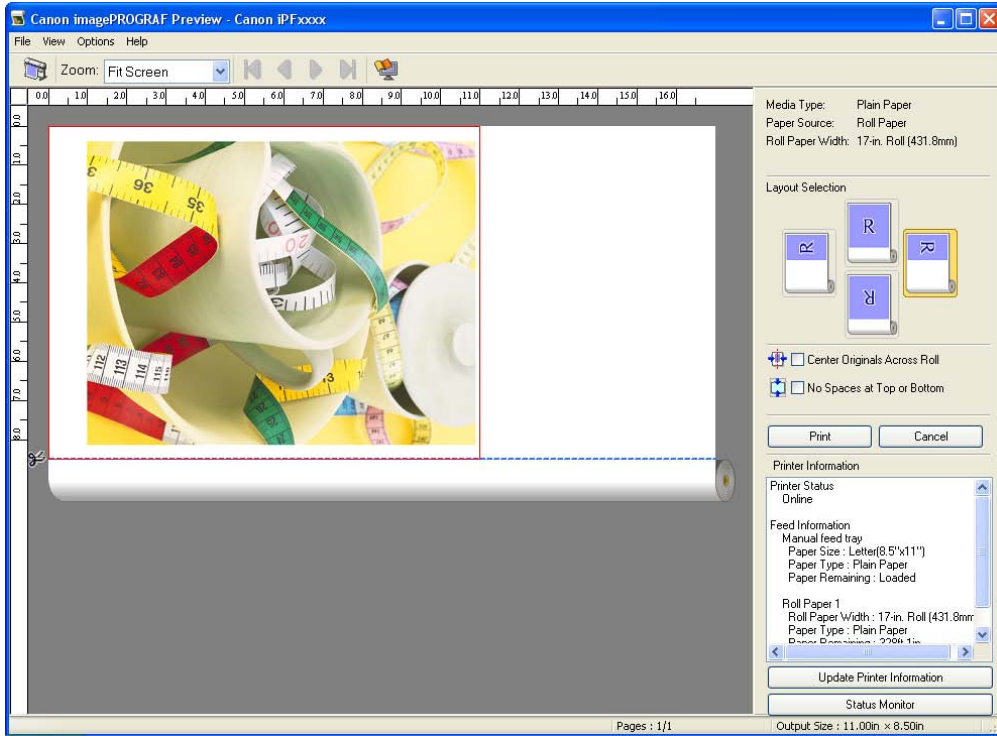





Button	Details
Upper Button	Turn at the position of 
Right Button	Turn at the position of 
Left Button	Turn at the position of 
Lower Button	Turn at the position of 



Note

- **Right Button** or **Left Button** can be selected only when the rotated pages can fit lengthwise across the roll.
- By clicking **Right Button** or **Left Button**, you can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.
- You can select only **Upper Button** or **Lower Button** if **Cut Sheet** is selected.



Button	Details
	The button is selected currently.
	The button can be selected.
	The button can not be selected.

2. Click the **Start Printing** button.
Printing on the selected layout begins.

☰ Enlarge/Reduce the screen display

You can enlarge or reduce the screen display when you select **Zoom** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
Fit Screen	Display all.
Fit to Width	Display to the width of the paper.
Reduce	Display at half of the standard size.
Standard	Display at the standard size.
Enlarge	Display with the double of the standard size.
Enlarge More	Display with the triple of the standard size.



Note

- You can also select the setting by clicking the ▼ button on the tool bar.

☰ Moving a Page

You can move a page to display when you select **Go to Page** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
First Page	Go to the first page.
Previous Page	Go to the previous page.
Next Page	Go to the next page.
Last Page	Go to the last page.
Go to Page	Go to the specified page.



Note

- You can also move a page by clicking  on the tool bar.

☰ Using the ruler

You can confirm the layout with using the ruler.

- Switching the ruler Show/Hide
In the **View** menu, select **Ruler** to switch the ruler Show/Hide.
- Changing the ruler unit
You can set the ruler unit when you select **Units** from the **View** menu.

Setting	Details
mm	Use mm as the ruler unit.
inch	Use inches as the ruler unit.

Free Layout

☐☐☐ The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

☐☐☐ Operating Environment

You can use the Free Layout in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver



Note

- This function is not available on 64-bit version of Windows.

Starting Free Layout

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

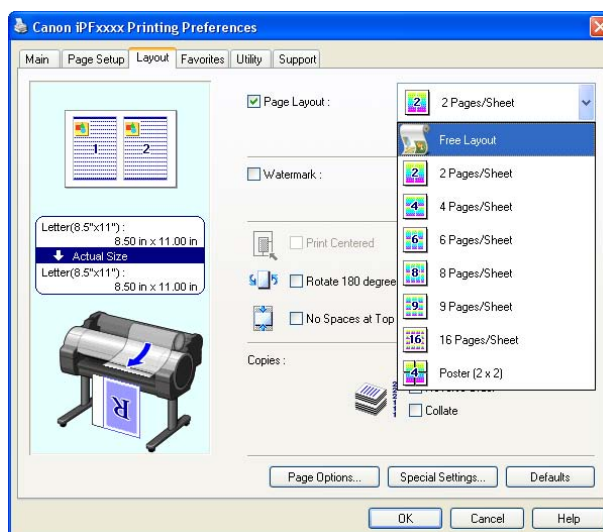
1. Start the application software which you use.
2. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

3. From the list, select the printer and select the "Layout" sheet.



Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

4. In the "Layout" sheet, click on the "Page Layout" check box and select "Free Layout" from the list. Click the "OK" button to save the settings.

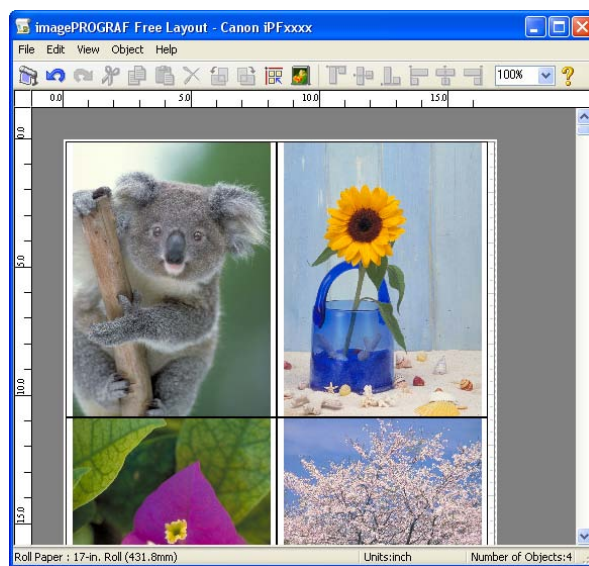


Note

- When you select "Free Layout", all other setting items will be disabled.

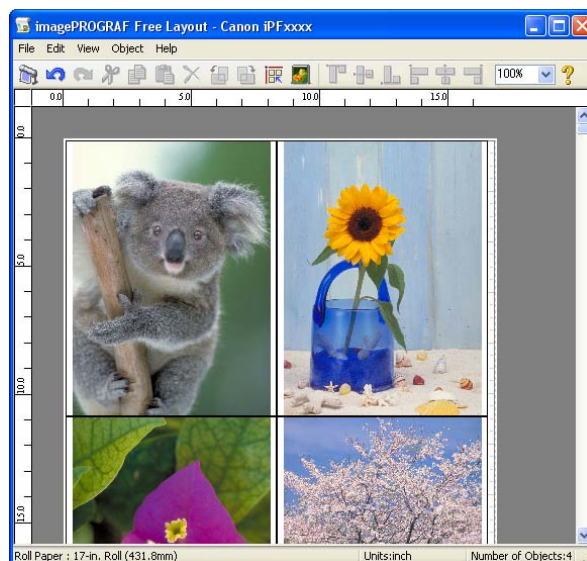
Free Layout

5. On the **Print** dialog box in the application software, click the **Print** button.
Free Layout main window is displayed.



Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



Note

- You can use the “View” menu to show or hide the tool and status bar.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



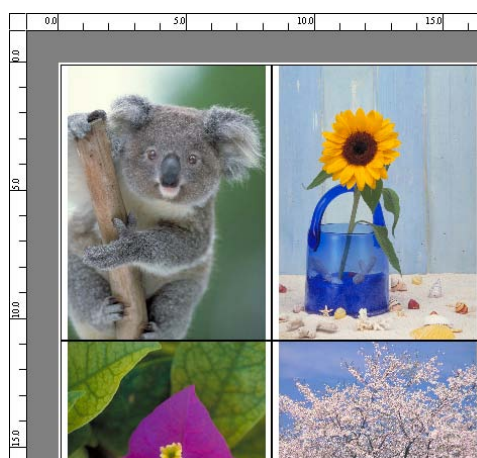
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



Layout Area

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



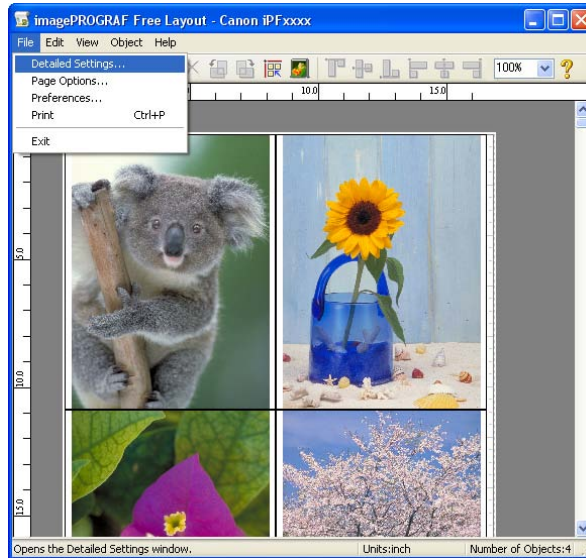
Status Bar

This shows the paper size, unit of length, and number of objects.



☐ Detailed Settings

The printer driver opens when you select “Detailed Settings” from the “File” menu. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



Refer to Printer Driver for details on the printer driver.

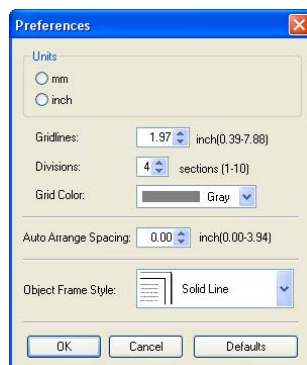


Note

- When you select the “Detailed Settings”, the only three sheets displayed are the “Main” sheet, the “Page Setup” sheet, and the “Layout” sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Preferences” from the “File” menu. This allows you to configure the preferences of Free Layout.



“Units”

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

“Gridlines”

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



Note

- You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.88(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Divisions”

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



Note

- You can input between 1 and 10.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Grid Color”

Select the grid line color.

Auto Arrange Spacing

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.



Note

- You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Object Frame Style”

You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
“None”	You can print with no frame style.
“Solid Line”	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
“Dotted Line”	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
“Dashed Line”	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.
“Crop Marks”	You can print with the crop marks.

Page Options Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Page Options” from the “File” menu. This allows you to configure the roll paper length, object layout order, and margins of Free Layout.



“Roll Paper Length”

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

The following settings are available for roll paper length.

Setting	Details
“Auto Settings”	The one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.
“Manual Settings”	You can input the length of one page to print on roll paper in numerical characters.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Order”

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
“Upper Left to Right”	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
“Upper Left to Bottom”	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.
“Upper Right to Left”	The objects are laid out from upper right to left.
“Lower Left to Top”	The objects are laid out from lower left to top.



Note

- When you have selected “Roll Paper Length” > “Auto Settings” and “Paper Orientation” > “Vertical”, you can choose “Upper Left to Right” or “Upper Right to Left”.
- When you have selected “Roll Paper Length” > “Auto Settings” and “Paper Orientation” > “Horizontal”, you can choose “Upper Left to Bottom” or “Lower Left to Top”.

“Margins”

You can input the paper margins in numerical characters.

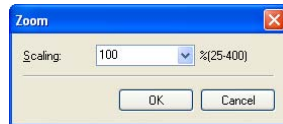


Note

- You can input between 0.0 and 50.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 1.97(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Zoom” from the “View” menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.



Note

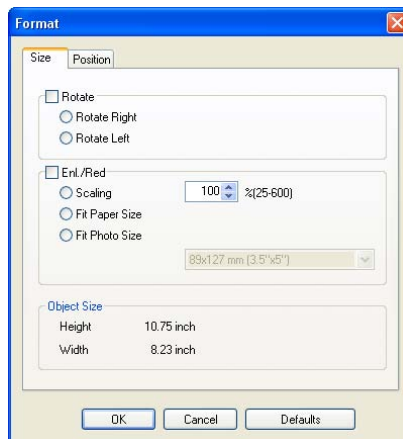
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking “▼” button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Format” from the “Object” menu after you select an object.

“Size” Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note

- When the objects are not selected, you can not select “Format”.

“Rotate”

When you place a checkmark here, you can select “Rotate Right” or “Rotate Left”.

Setting	Details
“Rotate Right”	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
“Rotate Left”	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.



Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select “Rotate”.

“Enl./Red.”

When you place a checkmark here, you can select “Scaling”, “Fit Paper Size”, or “Fit Photo Size”.

Setting	Details
“Scaling”	Allows you to input the value of the enlargement or reduction ratio of an object.
“Fit Paper Size”	Prints by enlarging or reducing each object to match the paper size. If you are using roll paper, objects are enlarged or reduced so that the width of each object matches the width of the roll paper.
“Fit Photo Size”	Prints all of the objects at the specified photo size.

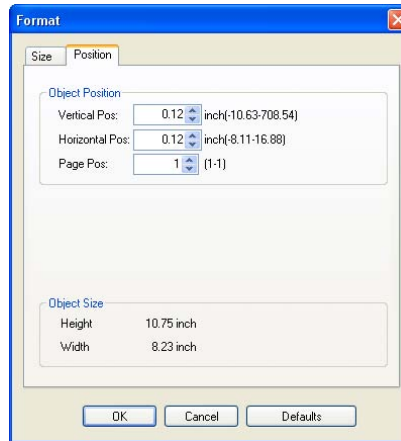


Note

- You can input between 25 and 600.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Position” Sheet

You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note

- When the objects are not selected, you can not select “Format”.

“Object Position”

You can move the object position by changing the values.

Setting	Details
“Vertical Pos”	You can input the number of the vertical position in numerical characters.
“Horizontal Pos”	You can input the number of the horizontal position in numerical characters.
“Page Pos”	You can input the number of the page position in numerical characters.

“Object Size”

You can confirm the object size.



Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot display “Object Size”.

☐ Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

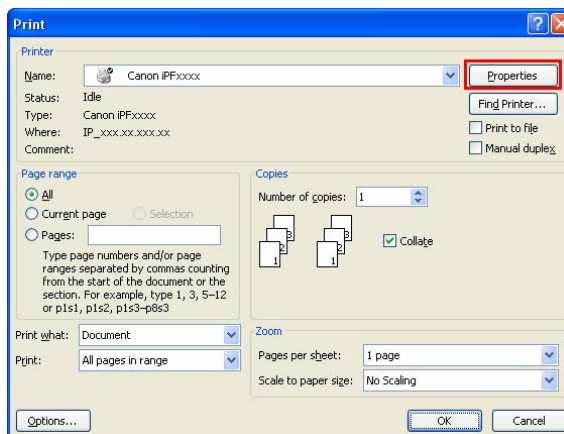
1. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



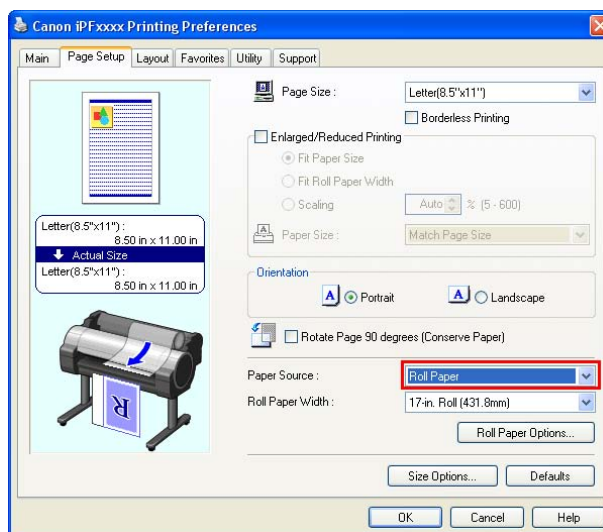
Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

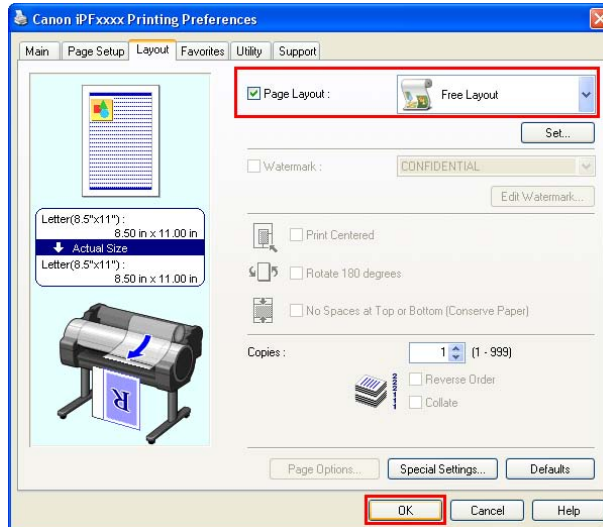
2. Click "Properties" to open the "Properties" dialog box.



3. In the "Page Setup" sheet, select **Paper Source**.



4. In the “Layout” sheet, click on the “Page Layout” check box and select “Free Layout” from the list.

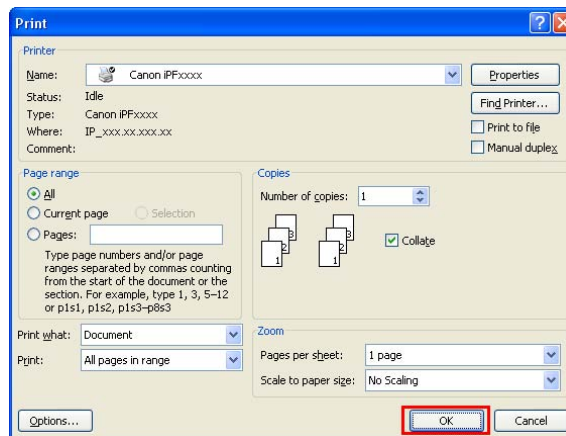


Note

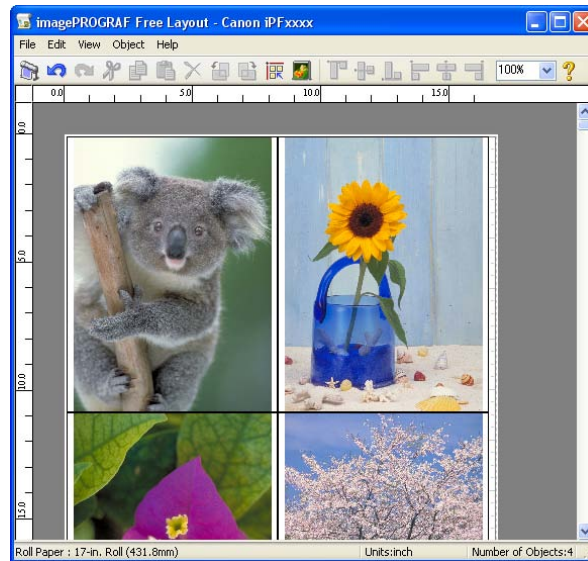
- When you select “Free Layout”, all other setting items will be disabled.

5. Click the “OK” button to save the settings.

6. In the “Print” dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the “OK” button.



Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



7. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

☐ Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

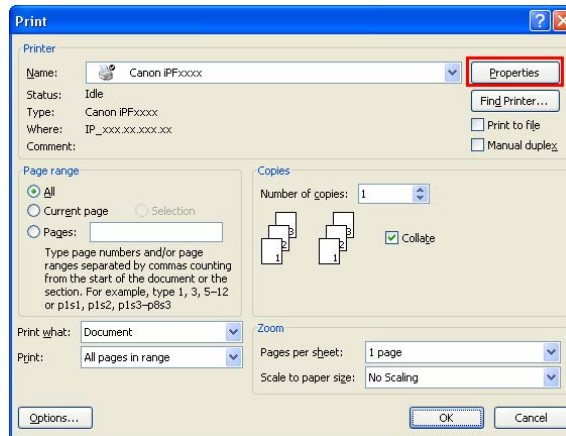
1. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



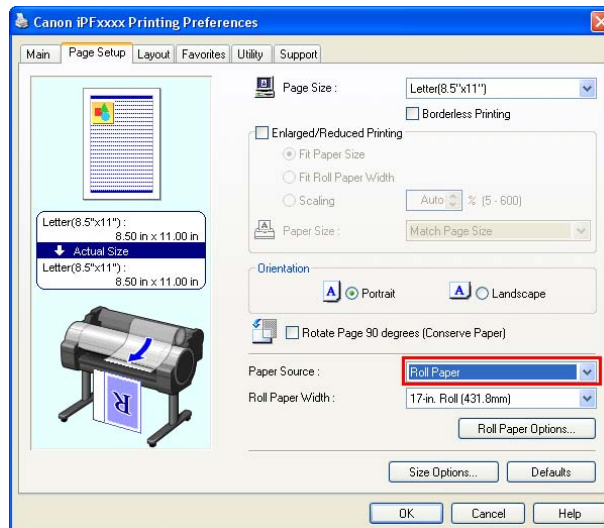
Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

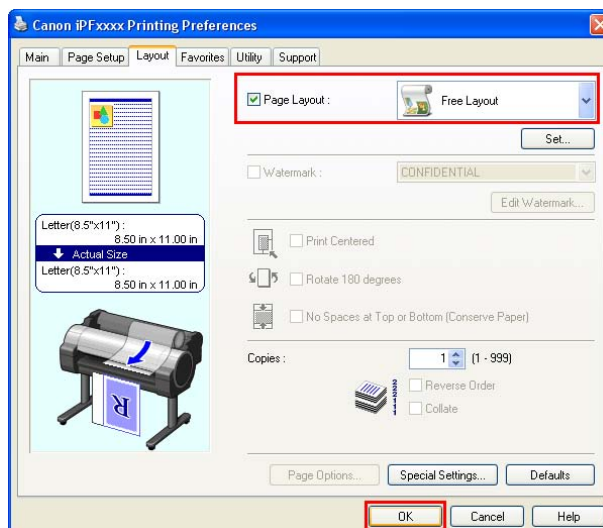
2. Click "Properties" to open the "Properties" dialog box.



3. In the "Page Setup" sheet, select **Paper Source**.



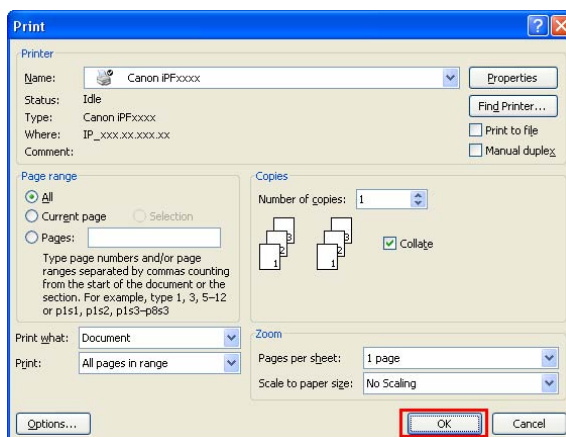
4. In the “Layout” sheet, click on the “Page Layout” check box and select “Free Layout” from the list.



Note

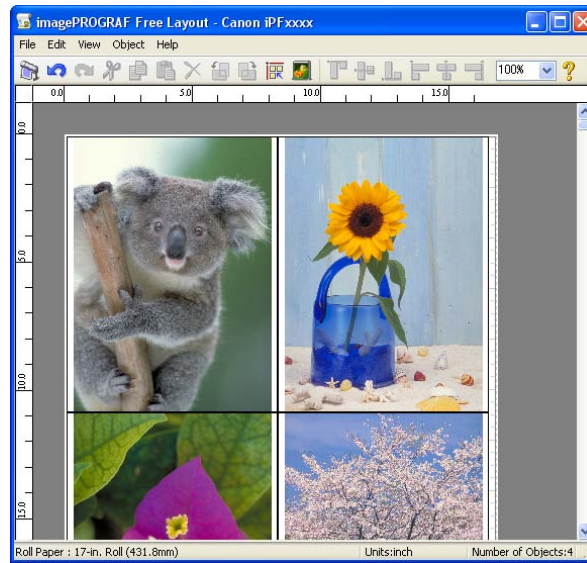
- When you select “Free Layout”, all other setting items will be disabled.

5. Click the “OK” button to save the settings.
6. In the “Print” dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the “OK” button.



Free Layout

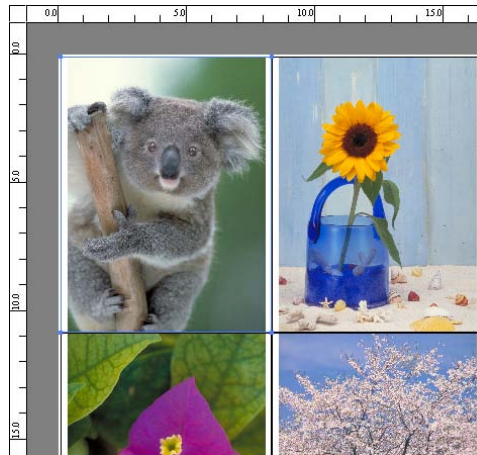
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.



7. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

☐ Selecting an Object

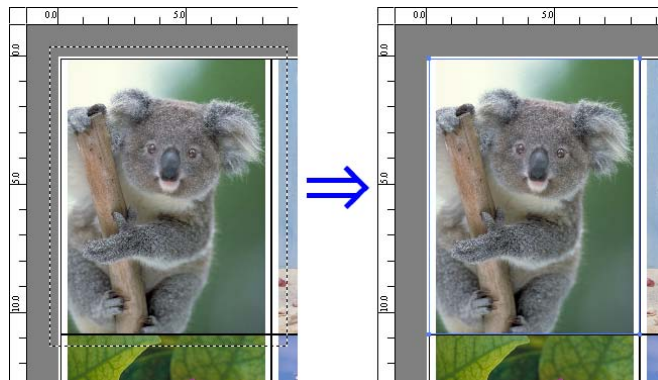
When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note

- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the Shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the Ctrl key.
- To select all objects, select “Select All” from the “Edit” menu.

When you specify the area with dragging the mouse, the object in the area is selected.



☐ Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

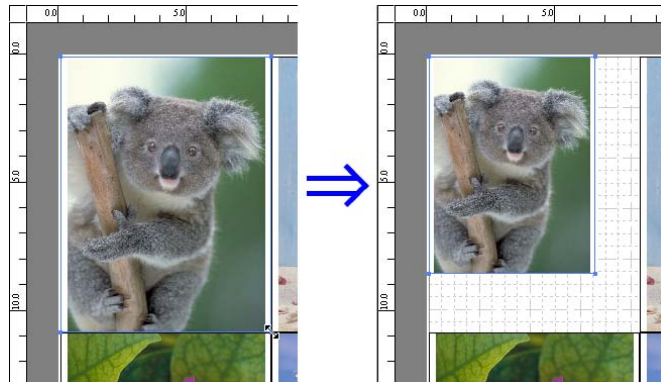


Note

- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1. Select an object.
Click on the “Enl./Red.” checkbox in the Format Dialog Box (→P.399) and select “Scaling”.
2. You either enter numbers directly.



Note

- You can input between 25 and 600.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

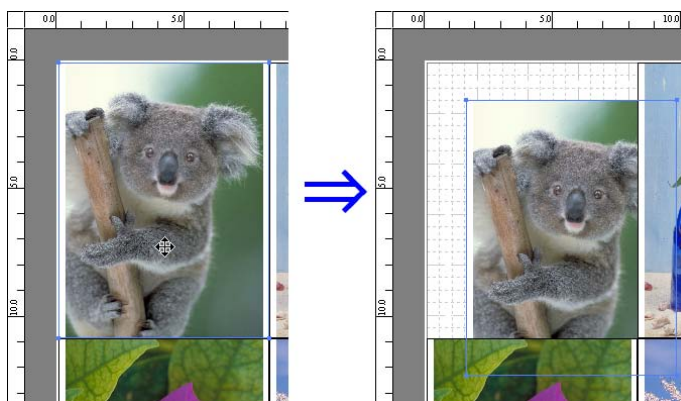
3. Click the “OK” button.

☐☐☐ Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.

Alternatively, you can move the “Object Position” by changing the values in “Vertical Pos”, “Horizontal Pos” and “Page Pos” in the Format Dialog Box. (→P.399)

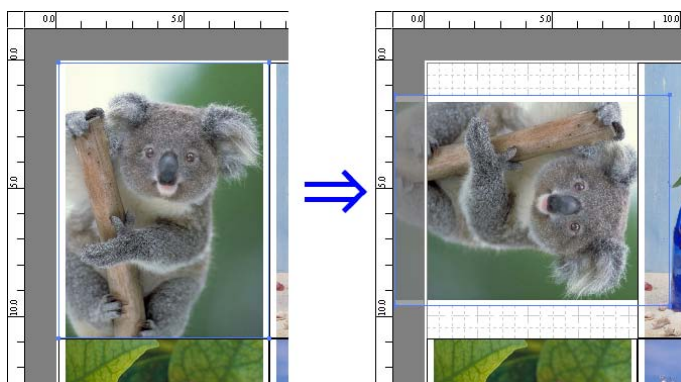


☐☐☐ Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

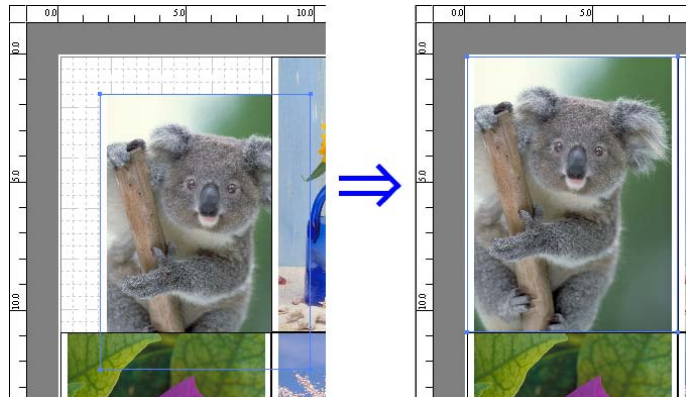
1. Select an object.
2. Select “Rotate Left 90 Degrees” or “Rotate Right 90 Degrees” from the toolbar.

Alternatively, you may click on the “Rotate” check box in the Format Dialog Box (→P.399) then select “Rotate Right” or “Rotate Left”, and click the “OK” button.



☐ Laying out Objects Automatically

Click “Auto Arrange Object” in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select “Auto Arrange Object” from the “Object” menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the “Order” setting in the Page Options Dialog Box (→P.397) dialog box.

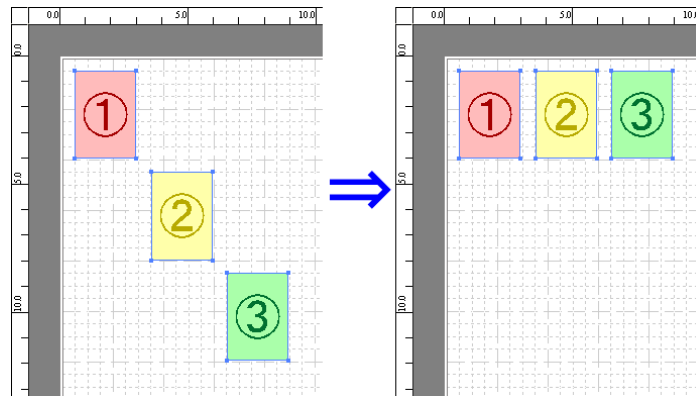
Aligning Objects

You can align objects systematically.

1. Select multiple objects.
2. Click the align button from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select the align menu from the “Object” menu.

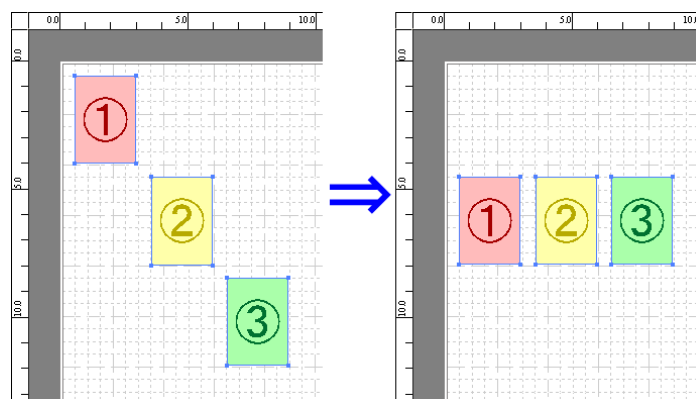
“Align Top”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



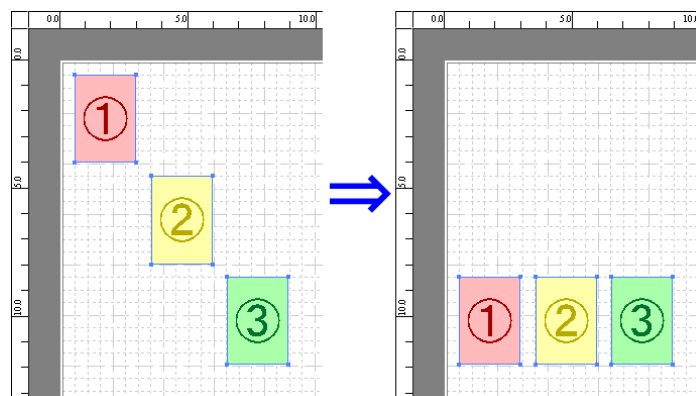
“Center Vertically”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



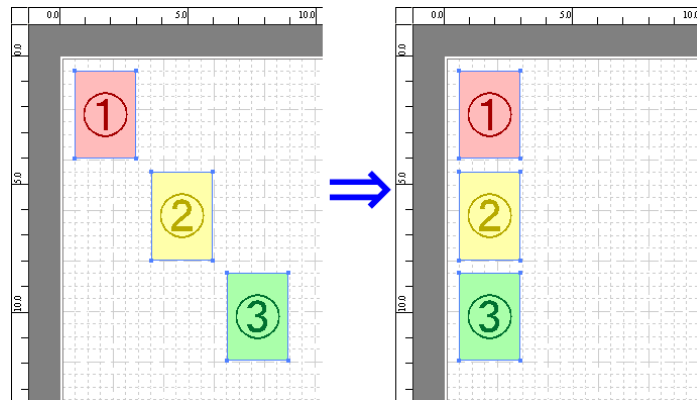
“Align Bottom”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



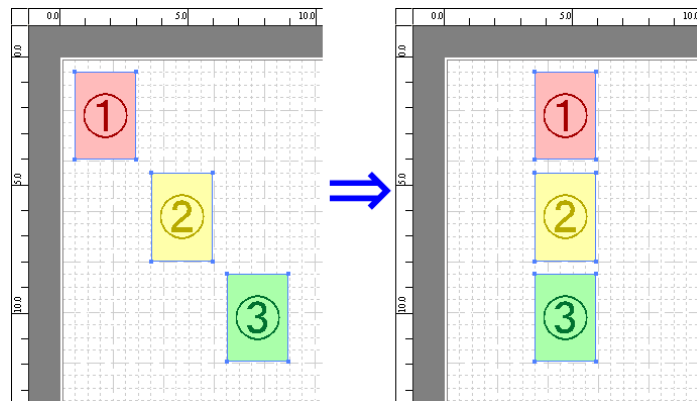
“Align Left”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



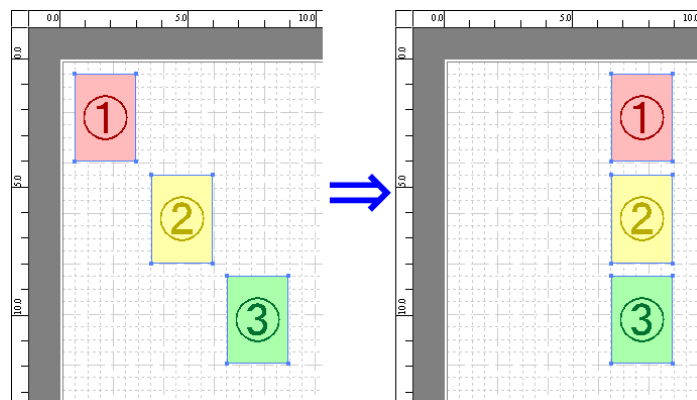
“Center Horizontally”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



“Align Right”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



☰ Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.
2. Select the Overlapping Order menu from the “Object” menu.

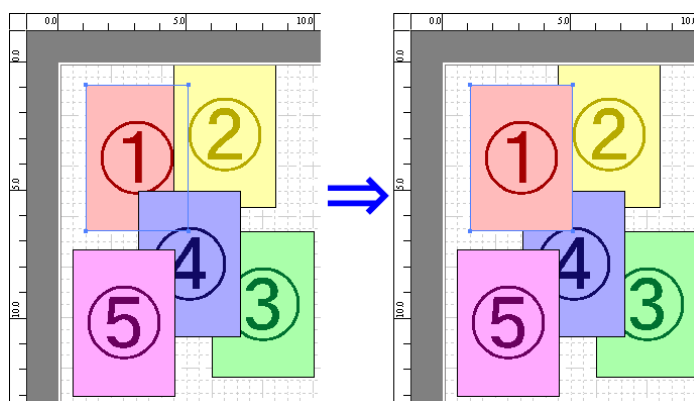


Note

- The order of overlapping affects the order of objects automatically laid out.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.

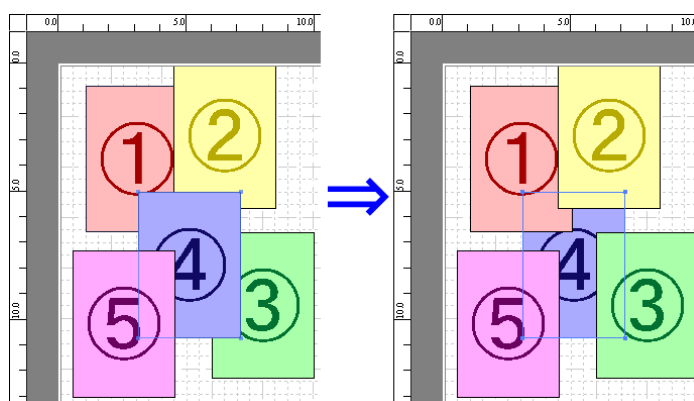
“Bring to Front”

Moves the object to the frontmost position.



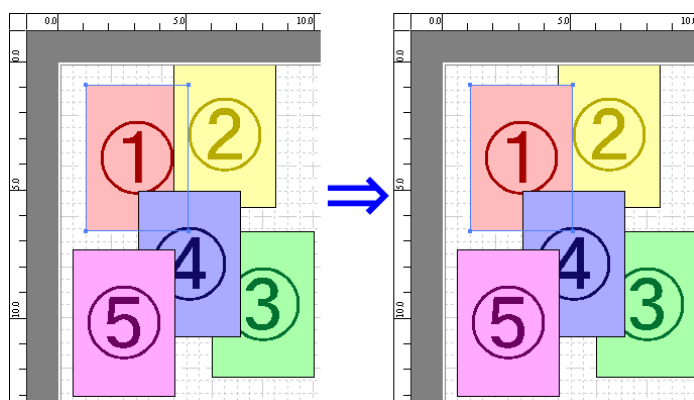
“Send to Back”

Moves the object to the backmost position.



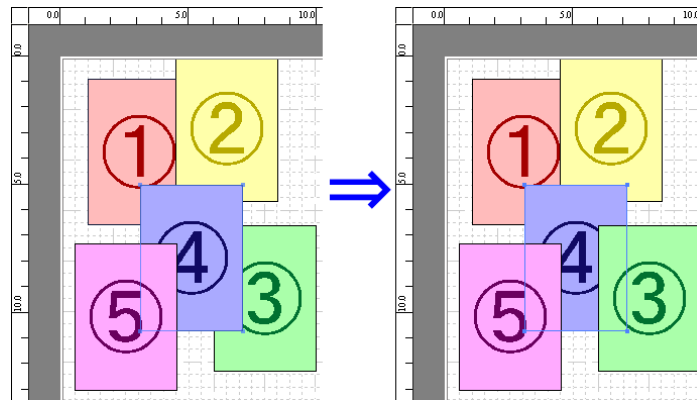
“Bring Forward”

Moves the object one position to the front.



“Send Backward”

Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click “Copy” or “Cut” from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select “Copy” or “Cut” from the “Edit” menu.
2. Click “Paste” from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select “Paste” from the “Edit” menu.



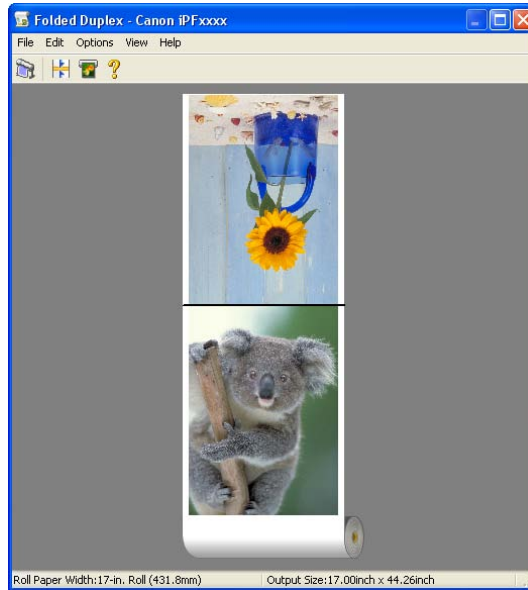
Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.
- You can also select by clicking the right button of the mouse on an object.
- In order to paste an object on any position that you like, you can paste the object with “Pointed Paste” by clicking the right button of the mouse on any position that you want.

☐ Folded Duplex Window

This window is displayed if you select “Folded Duplex” from the “Edit” menu after selecting an object. Using the “Folded Duplex” function allows you to print with fold lines added.

The **Folded Duplex** window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and status bar.



Note

- The toolbar and status bar can be toggled between hidden and displayed from the “View” menu.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



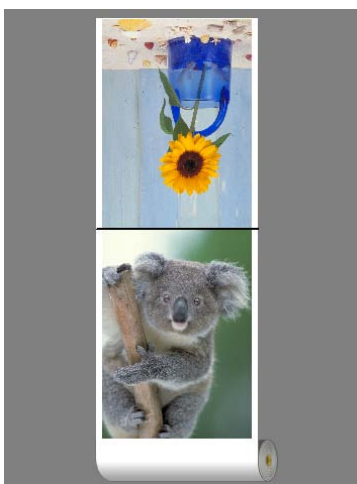
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



Layout Area

This allows you to check the arrangement and orientation of objects.



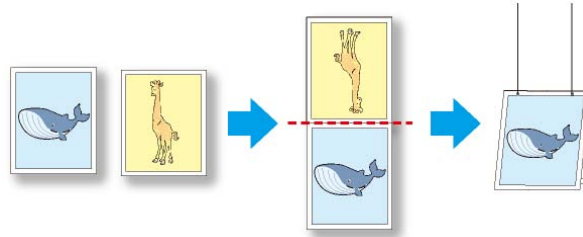
Status Bar

This shows the paper source, roll paper width, and output size.

Roll Paper Width:17-in. Roll (431.8mm) Output Size:17.00inch x 44.26inch

Prints using Folded Duplex

Allows you to produce duplex printing by combining two pages and folding them.



“Folded Duplex”

Any two pages can be arranged and printed in a layout that becomes duplex on folding. This can be used such as for advertising posters that are suspended from the ceiling.

1. Select two objects from the layout area of Free Layout.
2. Select **Folded Duplex** from the “Edit” menu of Free Layout.
Open the **Folded Duplex** window and arrange the selected objects in the layout area.
3. Open the “Finished Size Settings” dialog box from the “Edit” menu.
4. Select “Fit Roll Paper Width” or “Specify Folded Size” in “Finished Size”.



Note

- “Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)” is also available when “Specify Folded Size” is selected.

5. Click “OK” to save the settings.
6. Open the “Binding Settings” dialog box from the “Edit” menu.
7. Select “Bottom” or “Top” in “Binding Edge”.
8. Specify the “Binding” width in “Binding”.
9. Configure the **Fold Line Color** and **Fold Line Type** from **Print Fold Lines**.



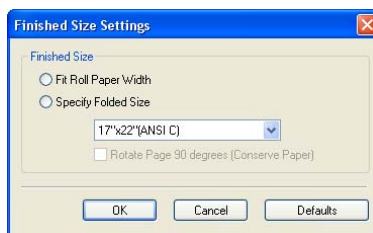
Note

- When the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox is selected, fold lines are only printed at the three locations of the center and both edges.

10. Click “OK” to save the settings.
11. Confirm the print setting and begin printing.

Finished Size Settings Dialog Box

This dialog box is displayed when you select “Finished Size Settings” from the “Edit” menu. This allows you to configure finished size settings.



“Finished Size”

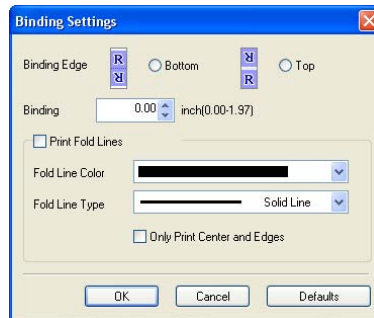
Selects the method for setting the finished size.

The following settings are available for the finished size.

Setting	Details
“Fit Roll Paper Width”	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document so that the width of the document matches the roll paper width.
“Specify Folded Size”	Prints by automatically enlarging or reducing the entire document to match the size of the paper. Select the actual size of the paper you want to print on in “Fit Paper Size”.
“Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)”	Prints by rotating pages by 90 degrees. Pages are automatically rotated if they will fit within the roll paper width when rotated, and are not rotated if they will not fit within the roll paper width.

☰ Binding Settings Dialog Box

This is displayed when you select “Binding Settings” from the “Edit” menu. This allows you to configure the binding edge settings.



“Binding Edge”

Configures the binding edge when folding paper.

The following settings are available for the binding edge.

Setting	Details
“Bottom”	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the bottom of the document.
“Top”	Prints by placing the binding margin (gutter) at the top of the document.

“Binding”

Configures the binding margin (gutter).

Prints by creating a binding margin (gutter) of the specified size. Enter the margin size as a number.



Note

- The values that can be entered are 0 to 50 (mm).

“Print Fold Lines”

Configures the color and type of fold lines.



Note

- To not print fold lines, clear the “Print Fold Lines” checkbox.

“Fold Line Color”

You can select the fold lines.

“Fold Line Type”

You can select the fold lines.

The following settings are available for the fold line type.

Setting	Details
“Solid Line”	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
“Dotted Line”	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
“Dashed Line”	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

“Only Print Center and Edges”

To print fold lines at the center and both edges, select the **Only Print Center and Edges** checkbox.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

☐ The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

☐ Operating Environment

You can use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver



Note

- This function is not available on 64-bit version of Windows.

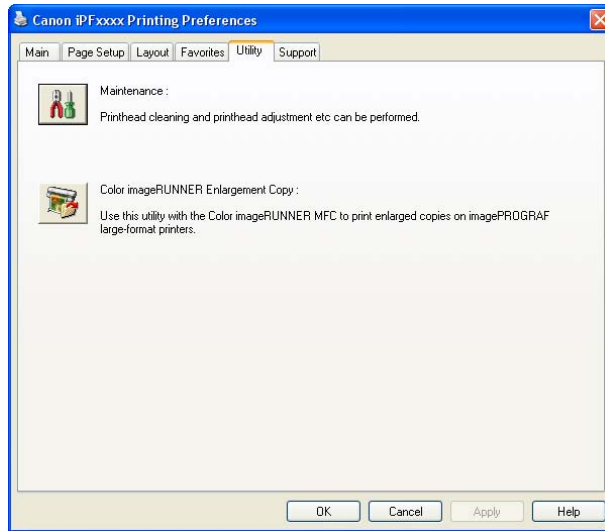
Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

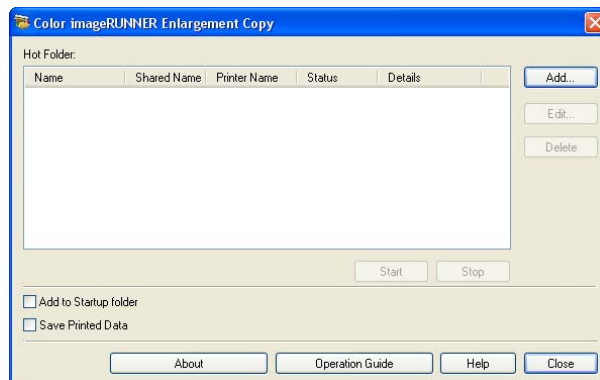
To start by selecting “Printers and Faxes” from the “start” button

1. From the Windows “start” button, select “Printers and Faxes” to open the “Printers and Faxes” dialog box.
2. Right-click the Printers icon and select “Print Settings” to open the “Printing Preferences” dialog box.

In the “Utility” sheet, click the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” button.



3. The “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box displays.



Note

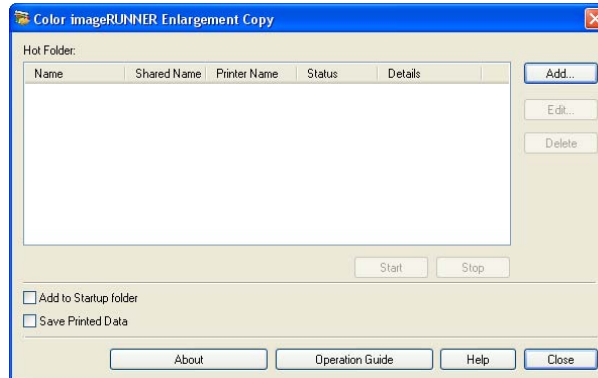
- If you click on the “Add to Startup folder” check box in the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the task bar when starting Windows thereafter.

To start by selecting “imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” from the “start” button

1. From the Windows “start” button, select “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”.

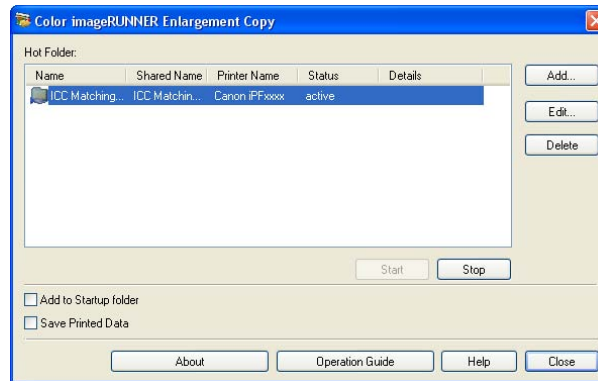


2. The “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box displays.



Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



Note

- For the step to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, see “Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”. (→P.422)

“Hot Folder”

The hot folder list appears.

“Add” Button

Click the button to open the “Easy Setup Wizard” dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

“Edit” Button

From the “Hot Folder” list, select a hot folder and click the button to open the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

“Delete” Button

From the “Hot Folder” list, select a hot folder and click the button to delete the hot folder.

“Start” Button

Clicking the button changes the status of the selected “inactive” Hot Folder to “active”.

“Stop” Button

Clicking the button changes the status of the selected “active” Hot Folder to “inactive”.

“Add to Startup folder”

Register the application in the Windows startup menu.

“Save Printed Data”

Automatically saves printed data.

“About” Button

Click the button to display the name and the version number of the utility.

“Operation Guide” Button

Click the button to display the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual”.

Hot Folder

Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

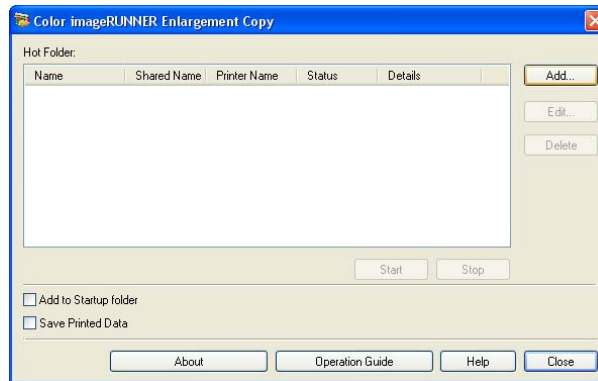


Note

- You can create up to 20 hot folders.

Creating a New Hot Folder

1. Open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, and then click the “Add” button.

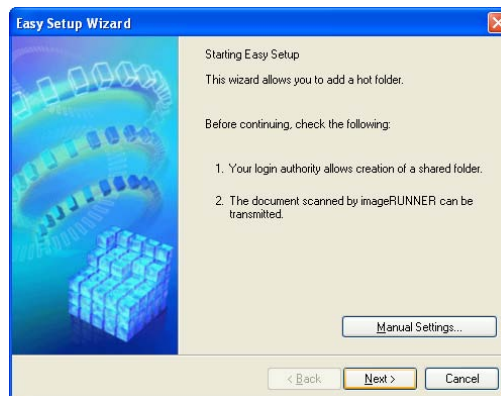


Note

- For the step to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, see “Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”. (→P.422)

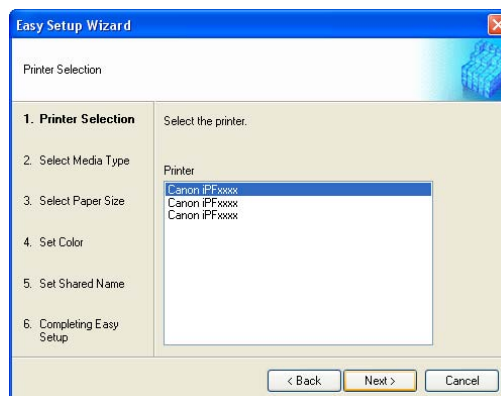
2. The “Easy Setup Wizard” dialog box displays.

Click the “Next” button.



3. Select the type of printer to use.

Click the “Next” button.



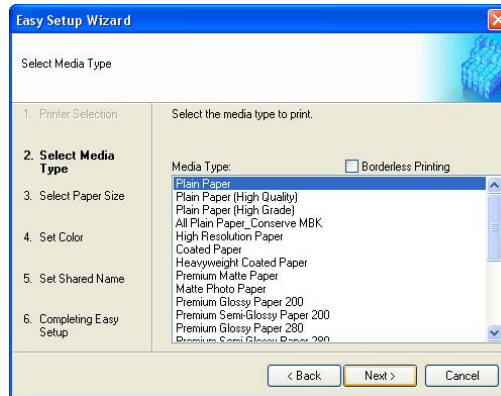
4. Select the media type to print.



Note

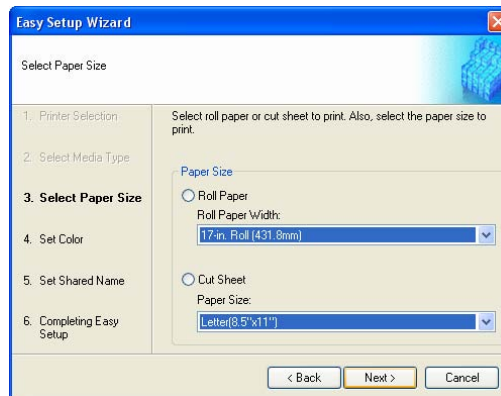
- If the “Borderless Printing” checkbox is checked, only media types that can be used for borderless printing are displayed in the list.

Click the “Next” button.



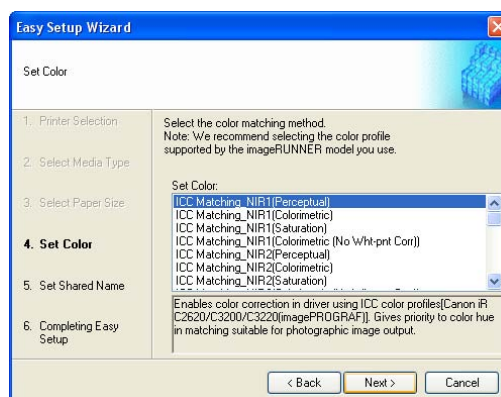
5. Select roll paper or cut sheet to print. Also, select the media size to print.

Click the “Next” button.



6. Select the color matching method.

Click the “Next” button.

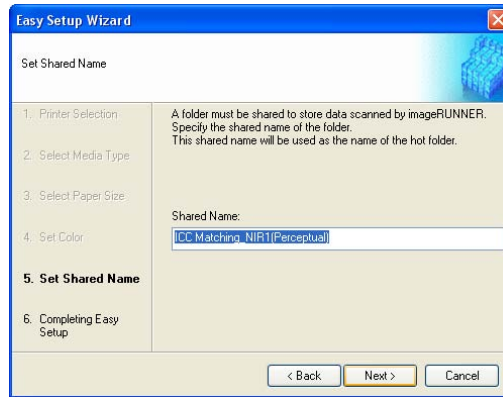


- To receive a document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER, you need to share a folder. Enter the folder shared name in **Shared Name**. Click the “Next” button.

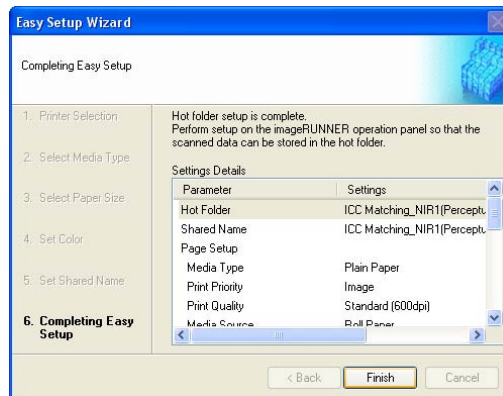


Note

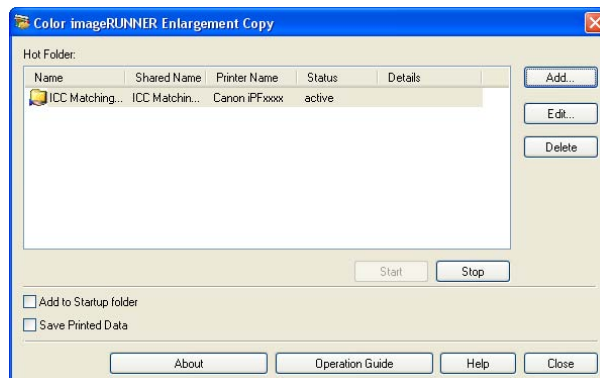
- This shared name is used as the name of the hot folder.
- You cannot use the “Back” button, after clicking the “Next” button here.



- Click “Finish” button to close the “Easy Setup Wizard” dialog box.

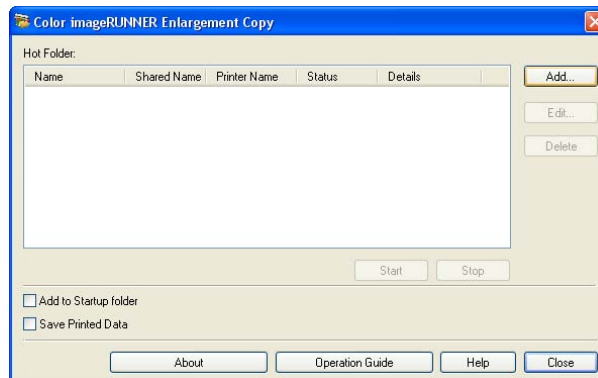


The hot folder you have created appears in the “Hot Folder” list in the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



■ Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder

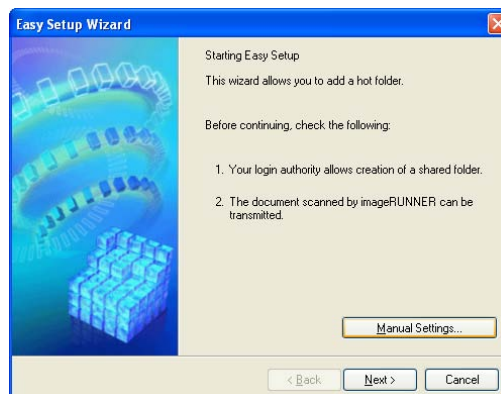
1. Share the folder you want to specify as a hot folder.
2. Open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, and then click the “Add” button.



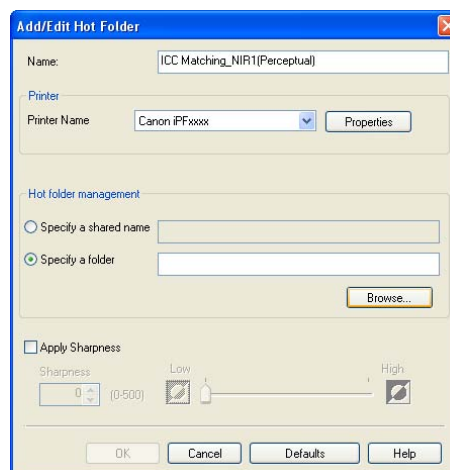
Note

- For the step to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, see “Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”. (→P.422)

3. The “Easy Setup Wizard” dialog box displays.
Click the “Manual Settings” button.

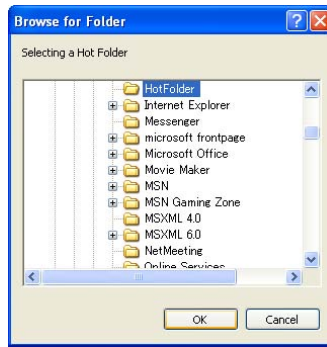


4. The “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box displays.
Enter the hot folder name in “Name”.
Click the “Browse” button, with selecting “Specify a folder”, to set the existing shared folder.



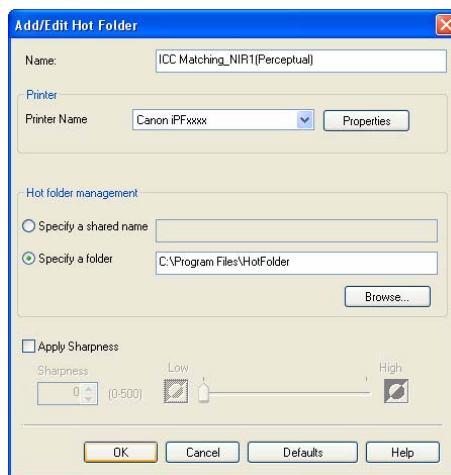
5. The location of the folders will appear.

Select the folder to specify a hot folder, and click the “OK” button.

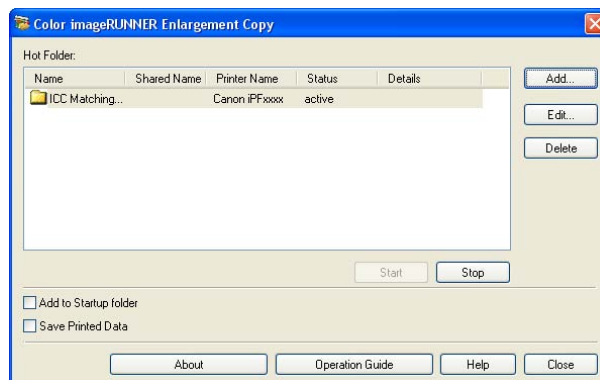


6. As necessary, set the print conditions in the hot folder. (→P.431)

Click the “OK” button to close the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box.

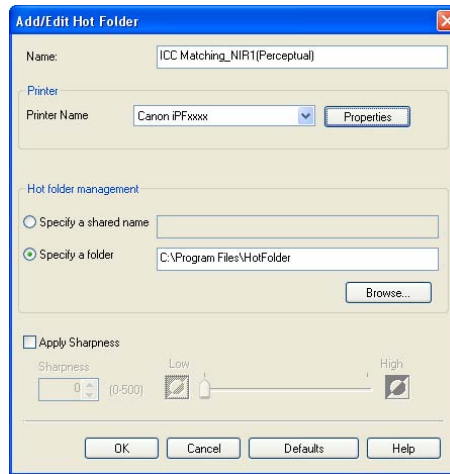


The hot folder you have created appears in the “Hot Folder” list in the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



Setting the Print Parameters

The printer driver opens when you click the “Properties” button in the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box. The printer driver is used to configure basic settings to match the type of media loaded in the printer.



Refer to Printer Driver for details on the printer driver.



Note

- The only three sheets displayed are the “Main” sheet, the “Page Setup” sheet, and the “Layout” sheet. Some of the printer driver settings may be disabled.

“Apply Sharpness”

Place a checkmark here to set the sharpness.

Drag the slider bar to the left or right to adjust. You can also adjust by directly entering a number in the numeric input field.



Note

- You can input between 0 and 500.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.
- You cannot be applied to PDF files.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

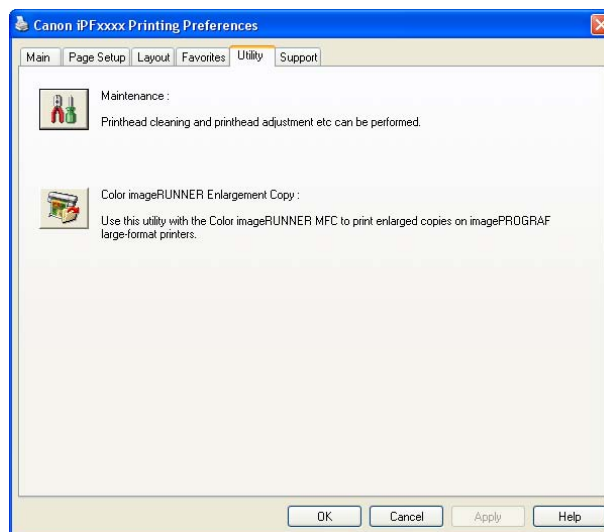
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.348)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders. For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.

For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.



Note

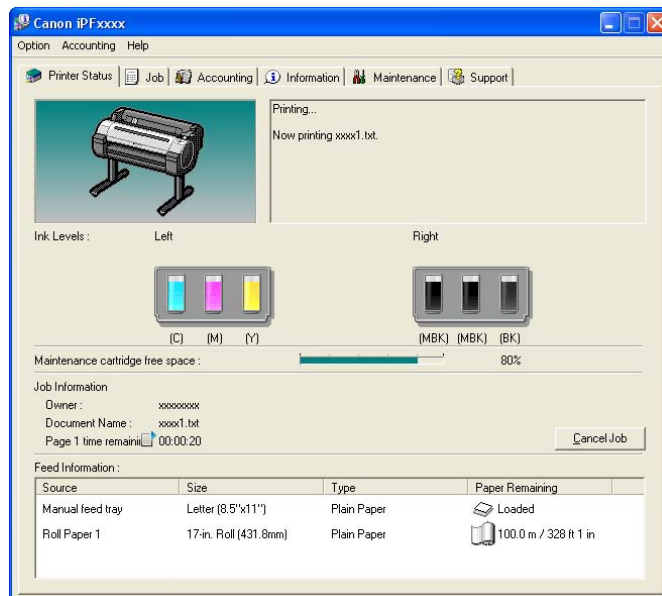
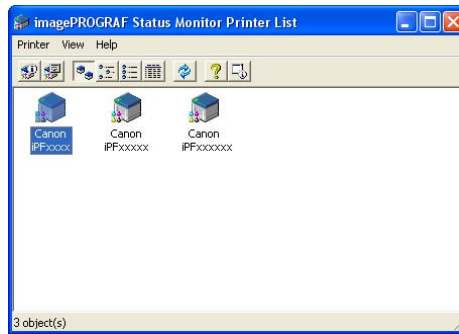
- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Status Monitor

▣ The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.

Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.



- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.
- You can use the Accounting Manager to collect the print job logs for the printers and check information such as the printing costs.

For details of the Accounting Manager, see Accounting Manager. (→P.437)

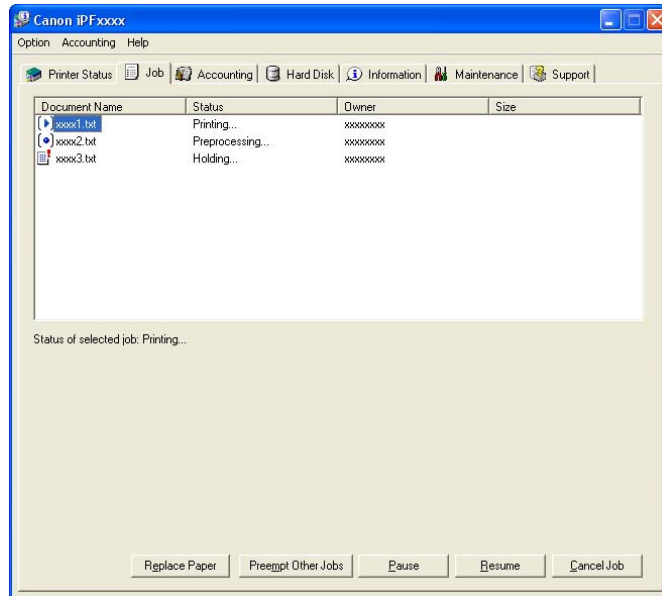


Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor

You can use the “Job” sheet in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.



Preempting Other Jobs

If you select a print job and click the “Preempt” button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the “Pause” button pauses printing of the selected job.

To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the “Resume” button.



Note

- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the “Cancel Job” button cancels printing of the selected job.



Note

- You cannot cancel other users’ print jobs.

Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a “Status” of “Holding” is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the “Replace Paper” button.
2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.



Note

- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click “Continue to print” button.

Accounting

Accounting Manager

The Accounting Manager stores the printer's print job logs so that you can use the information for checking printing costs, etc.

The benefits of using the Accounting Manager are outlined below.

- **Print Job Log Collection**
This allows you to check which documents were printed from each printer, who printed them and when.
- **Calculation of the Total Pages Used and the Total Cost**
This allows you to use the collected print job logs to calculate totals for items such as the number of pages printed, the amount of paper used and the printing costs incurred.
- **Regular Data Acquisition for Print Jobs**
This automatically logs print jobs at regular intervals.
- **Exporting Print Job Data**
This allows you to export collected print job data as a CSV file.



Important

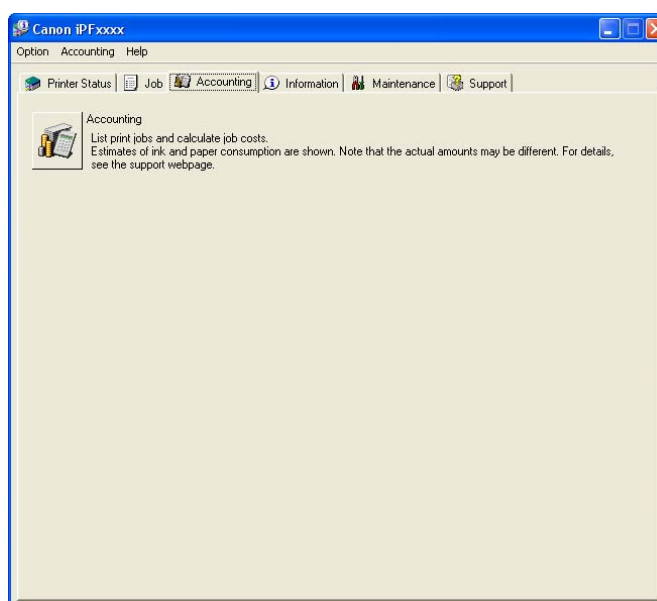
- The Accounting Manager in Status Monitor displays approximate estimates of the amount of paper consumed and the ink consumed per printed page. Canon cannot guarantee the accuracy of these estimates. These estimates will also vary depending on the conditions of printer use.

Launching the Accounting Manager

The procedure for launching the Accounting Manager is shown below.

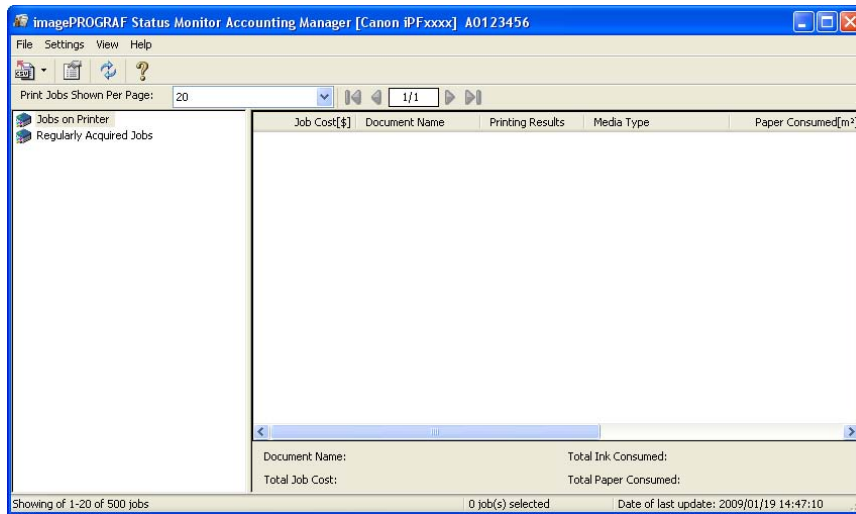
1. Open the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor window.
2. Select "Accounting" in the "Accounting" menu.

Or, open the "Accounting" sheet and click the "Accounting" button.



Accounting Manager Main Window

The Accounting Manager main window consists of a title bar, menu bar, toolbars, listed job selection area, job list area, totals area and status bar.



Title Bar

This displays the printer model, its serial number and the port number it is using.



Menu Bar

Allows you to select the menu options required for operation.



Toolbars

Provide tool buttons and pull-down menus for the main operations.



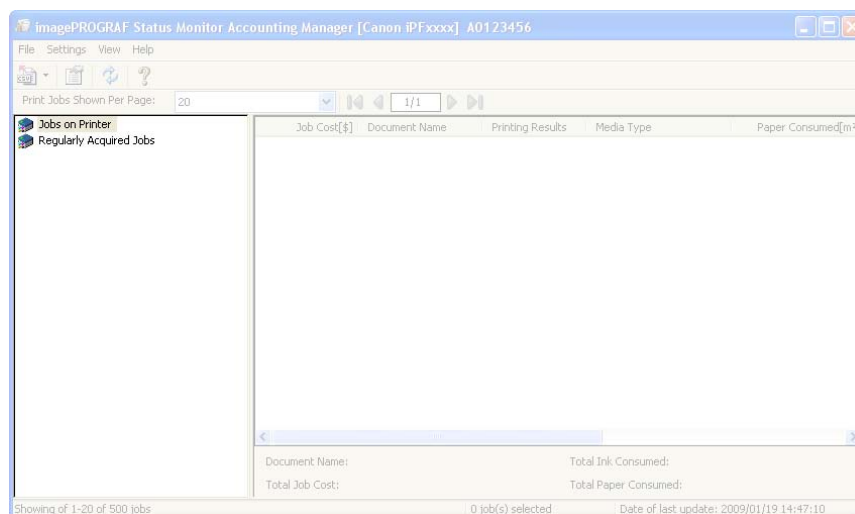
Note

- You can opt to either show or hide the toolbars in the “View” menu.

Listed Job Selection Area

You can use this area to select which job log is displayed.

If you are using regular data acquisition, this area allows you to view the collective job logs for each specified period.



For more information on how to select the job logs displayed, see [Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs.](#) (→P.447)

Job List Area

This area lists the details of acquired jobs.

It displays a list of either the print jobs on the printers or the regularly acquired print jobs. The displayed information includes the amounts of paper and ink consumed, the costs, the media type and the time taken for printing.

Job Cost[\$]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Paper Consumed[m ²]
**** STS Job500		OK	Durable Backlit Film	0.0525
**** STS Job499		OK	Heavyweight Coated Paper	0.6636
**** STS Job498		OK	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	0.3997
**** STS Job497		Cancel	Premium Coated Paper	0.8864
**** STS Job496		OK	All Plain Paper_Conserve...	0.9987
**** STS Job495		OK	Premium RC Photo Luster	0.0500
**** STS Job494		OK	Backlit Film	1.1000
**** STS Job493		Cancel	Special 4	0.2900
**** STS Job492		OK	CAD Clear Film	0.7925
**** STS Job491		Cancel	Extra Matt Coated Paper	0.6378
**** STS Job490		OK	All Plain Paper_Conserve...	0.0500
**** STS Job489		OK	Standard Paper1570B 90g	0.5555
**** STS Job488		Cancel	Heavyweight Coated Paper	2.1000
**** STS Job487		Cancel	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	0.9500
**** STS Job486		OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	1.0000
**** STS Job485		OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	0.9000
**** STS Job484		OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	3.0000
**** STS Job483		Cancel	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	1.6500
**** STS Job482		OK	Extra Heavyweight Coat...	2.4000
**** STS Job481		OK	Unknown	1.0000

Document Name: Total Ink Consumed: 1088.458 ml
Total Job Cost: Total Paper Consumed: 19.4767 m²

Totals Area

Displays the total costs for the selected job and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

Job Cost[€]	Document Name	Printing Results	Media Type	Paper Consumed[m²]
****	ST5 Job500	OK	Durable Backlit Film	0.0525
****	ST5 Job499	OK	Heavyweight Coated Paper	0.6636
****	ST5 Job498	OK	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	0.3997
****	ST5 Job497	Cancel	Premium Coated Paper	0.8864
****	ST5 Job496	OK	All Plain Paper_Conserve...	0.9987
****	ST5 Job495	OK	Premium RC Photo Luster	0.0500
****	ST5 Job494	OK	Backlit Film	1.1000
****	ST5 Job493	Cancel	Special 4	0.2900
****	ST5 Job492	OK	CAD Clear Film	0.7925
****	ST5 Job491	Cancel	Extra Matt Coated Paper	0.6378
****	ST5 Job490	OK	All Plain Paper_Conserve...	0.0500
****	ST5 Job489	OK	Standard Paper1570B 90g	0.5555
****	ST5 Job488	Cancel	Heavyweight Coated Paper	2.1000
****	ST5 Job487	Cancel	Matte Coated Paper 90gsm	0.9500
****	ST5 Job486	OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	1.0000
****	ST5 Job485	OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	0.9000
****	ST5 Job484	OK	Newsprint for Proofing 1	3.0000
****	ST5 Job483	Cancel	Premium Semi-Glossy Pa...	1.6500
****	ST5 Job482	OK	Extra Heavyweight Coat...	2.4000
****	ST5 Job481	OK	Unknown	1.0000

Document Name: Total Ink Consumed: 1088.458 ml
 Total Job Cost: Total Paper Consumed: 19.4767 m²



Note

- If you are viewing regularly acquired print jobs, selecting a period on the left side of the window displays the total costs for that period and the amounts of paper and ink consumed.

Status Bar

Displays messages and other information.

Showing of 1-20 of 500 jobs 0 job(s) selected Date of last update: 2009/01/19 14:47:10

Accounting Manager Basic Procedures

The first time you use the Accounting Manager, use the following procedures to configure the settings.

- 1.** Configure unit costs, including the costs of ink and paper.
For details of the unit cost settings, see [Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager](#). (→P.441)
- 2.** Set options such as the units displayed.
For details of the unit settings, see [Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager](#). (→P.445)
- 3.** If you are using Regular Data Acquisition, configure the Regular Data Acquisition settings.
For details of the Regular Data Acquisition settings, see [Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals](#). (→P.446)
- 4.** Specify the jobs to be listed.
For details of how to select the job logs displayed, see [Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs](#). (→P.447)
This displays the required print job logs and lists the details.

Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager

Select “Unit Costs” in the “Settings” menu to open the “Unit Costs” dialog box. Configure the unit cost settings in this dialog box.



Note

- When you select a job and then open the “Unit Costs” dialog box, items with unit costs that have not yet been configured for that job are shown highlighted.
- [Setting the Unit Cost for Ink](#) (→P.442)
- [Setting the Unit Cost for Paper](#) (→P.443)
- [Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper](#) (→P.444)

Setting the Unit Cost for Ink

Open the “Ink” sheet. Set the unit cost for ink in this sheet.

To set the same unit cost for all the inks

1. Select the “Use same price for all ink” checkbox.
2. Enter the “Tank Capacity” and “Price”.
3. Click the “OK” button.



Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the “OK” button.

To set different unit costs for each ink color

1. Select the ink color to be costed.
2. Enter the “Tank Capacity” and “Price”.
3. Click the “Overwrite” button.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for all the inks.
5. Click the “OK” button.



Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the “OK” button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Paper

Open the “Paper” sheet. Set the unit cost for paper in this sheet.

The screenshot shows the 'Unit Costs' dialog box with the 'Paper' tab selected. The 'Price List' table is empty. The 'Paper Unit Cost Settings' section has the following values: Media Type: Plain Paper, Width: (empty), Length: (empty), Price: (empty). The 'Add' button is highlighted.

1. Select a media type from the “Media Type” list.
2. Enter the “Width”, “Length” and “Price”.
3. Click the “Add” button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the “Overwrite” button.
4. Click the “OK” button.



Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the “OK” button.

Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper

Open the “Other” sheet. Use this sheet to set any price for items other than inks and paper.

The screenshot shows the 'Unit Costs' dialog box with the 'Other' tab selected. The 'Price List' table is empty. The 'Unit Costs' section has the following fields: 'Name' (empty text box), 'Unit Cost' (empty text box followed by a '\$' symbol), and 'Allocated' (a dropdown menu set to 'Yes'). There are buttons for 'Delete', 'Add', and 'Overwrite' below the 'Unit Costs' section. At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

1. Enter any name in the “Name” field.
2. Enter a value in “Unit Cost”.
3. Use “Allocated” to specify whether the costs are allocated as being incurred by the print job.
4. Click the “Add” button. To change the unit cost for a media type you have already set, click the “Overwrite” button.
5. Click the “OK” button.



Note

- You can set unit costs for up to 5 items.

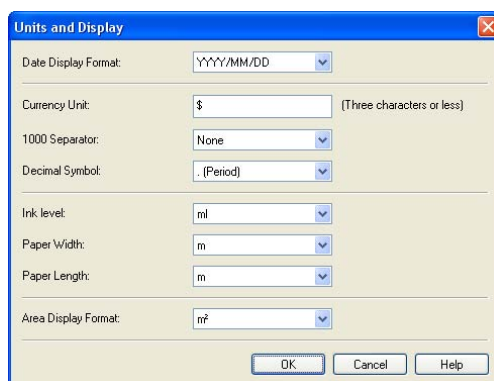


Important

- Your settings are not applied until you click the “OK” button.

☰ Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager

Select “Units and Display” in the “Settings” menu to open the “Units and Display” dialog box. Use this dialog box to configure the display settings.



“Date Display Format”

Use this option to select the display format for dates. "YYYY" indicates the year, "MM" the month and "DD" the day.

“Currency Unit”

Enter the currency unit. Enter a text string up to 3 characters long.

“1000 Separator”

Use this option to select the symbol used as a separator in numbers. The symbol is inserted every 3 digits.

“Decimal Symbol”

Use this option to select the symbol used as a decimal point.

“Ink Consumed”

Use this option to select the unit used for ink consumption.

“Paper Width”

Use this to select the unit used for paper width.

“Paper Length”

Use this to select the unit used for paper length.

“Area Display Format”

Use this to select the unit used for paper area.

Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals

This feature collects print job logs from the printer at regular intervals and saves the logs on your computer.

1. Select “Regular Data Acquisition” in the “Settings” menu.
2. Select “Acquire print job logs regularly”.
3. Click the “OK” button to close the dialog box.



Note

- Immediately after you configure Regular Data Acquisition, no print jobs are displayed. Wait a few moments and then select “Refresh” in the “View” menu to display the print jobs.
- A maximum of 10,000 records are saved in a print job log. If this number is exceeded, jobs are deleted from the log starting from the oldest record. To save old data, it is recommended that you export the data as a CSV file.

For details of how to export print job logs as CSV files, see Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File. (→P.447)

Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition

You can use this procedure to cancel the regular acquisition of print job logs from printers.

1. Select “Regular Data Acquisition” in the “Settings” menu.
2. Uncheck the “Acquire print job logs regularly” option.
3. Click the “OK” button to close the dialog box.

☰ Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs

The print job logs displayed by the Status Monitor Accounting Manager contain two types of job: Jobs on Printer and Regularly Acquired Jobs.

You can select whether to display Jobs on Printer or Regularly Acquired Jobs in the Listed Job Selection Area on the left side of the window.

“Jobs on Printer”

This shows a list of the print jobs currently held on printers.

You can change the number of jobs displayed per page using the “Print Jobs Shown Per Page” setting in the “View” menu or the toolbar.

You can skip to a particular page using the “Go to” option in the “View” menu or the toolbar.



Note

- For printers with built-in hard disks, you can view up to 500 print jobs per printer.
- For printers without built-in hard disks, you can view up to 32 print jobs per printer. However, only 10 jobs can be displayed if the printer is switched off.

“Regularly Acquired Jobs”

This shows a list of regularly acquired print jobs.

To view all the jobs in a set period, specify the period using “Period” and then “Starting Date” (or “Starting Day of Week” or “Starting Month”) in the “View” menu or the toolbar.

For example, to view monthly job logs starting on the 1st of each month, set “Period” to “Monthly” and set “Starting Date” to “1”.



Note

- Up to 10,000 regularly acquired jobs are displayed for each printer.

☰ Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File

You can export the collected print job data in the form of a CSV file by selecting “Export Job Cost Data” in the “File” menu.



Note

- You can also select “Export Job Cost Data” using the icon in the toolbar.

“Selected Jobs”

Exports the data for the selected print jobs in the job list as a CSV file.



Note

- You can select multiple jobs by holding down the Shift key or Ctrl key as you click the job names.

“Listed Jobs”

Exports the data for the print jobs currently displayed in the list as a CSV file.

☰ Showing Job Properties

If you select a job in the job list and then select “Show Job Properties” in the “File” menu, the “Job Properties” dialog box appears, allowing you to check information such as detailed cost data.

You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the “Copy” button.



Note

- You can also open this dialog box by right-clicking the selected job and selecting “Show Job Properties”. Or you can also use the toolbar icon to open the dialog box.
- If you select multiple jobs and open the “Job Properties” dialog box, the total costs for the selected jobs are displayed.

☰ Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data

“Show Unit Cost Data”

Select “Show Unit Cost Data” in the “File” menu to open the “Unit Cost Data” dialog box. This lists the unit costs for items such as the selected ink and paper.

You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the “Copy” button.

“Save Unit Cost Data”

Select a destination folder using “Save Unit Cost Data” in the “File” menu. The unit cost data for items such as the selected ink and paper is saved as a file.

“Load Unit Cost Data”

Selecting “Load Unit Cost Data” in the “File” menu loads saved unit cost data.

☰ Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed

Select “Show Ink and Paper Consumed” in the “File” menu to open the “Show Ink and Paper Consumed” dialog box.

This lists the total amounts of ink and paper consumed by the printer so far.

You can copy text-based information in this dialog box to the clipboard by clicking the “Copy” button.



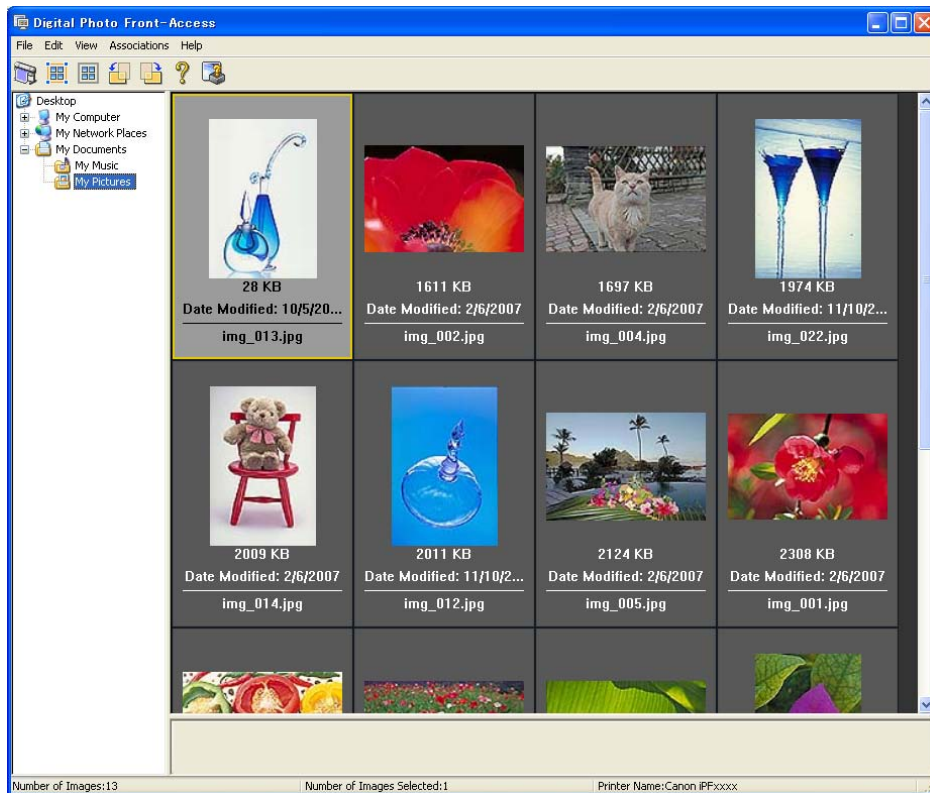
Note

- Up to 7 types of media are listed in order of the amount consumed. The total consumption for other media types is shown as “Other”.

Digital Photo Front-Access

☐ Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.



Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

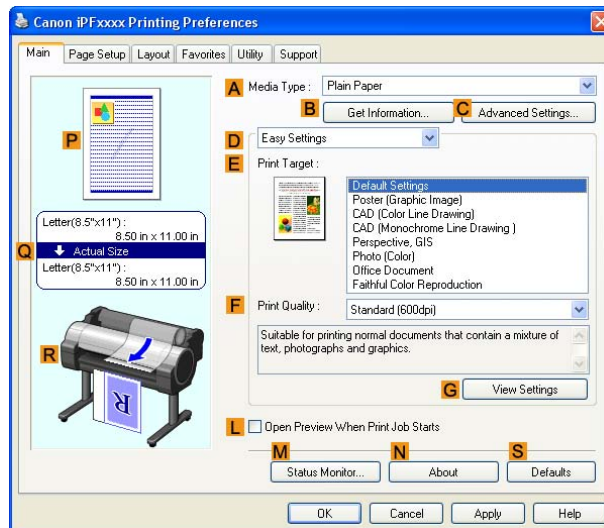
This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.



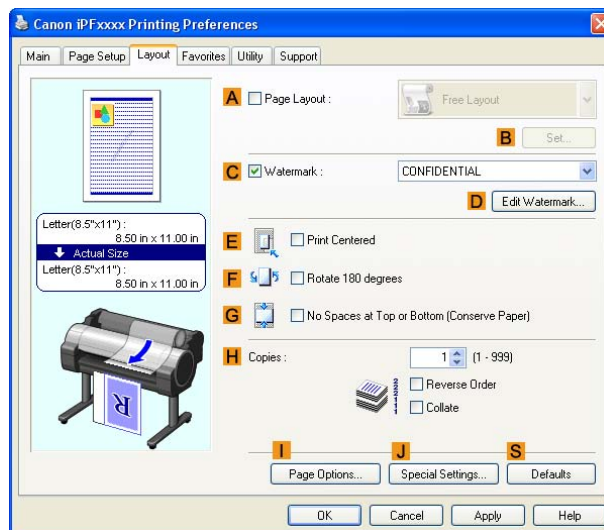
Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.
- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

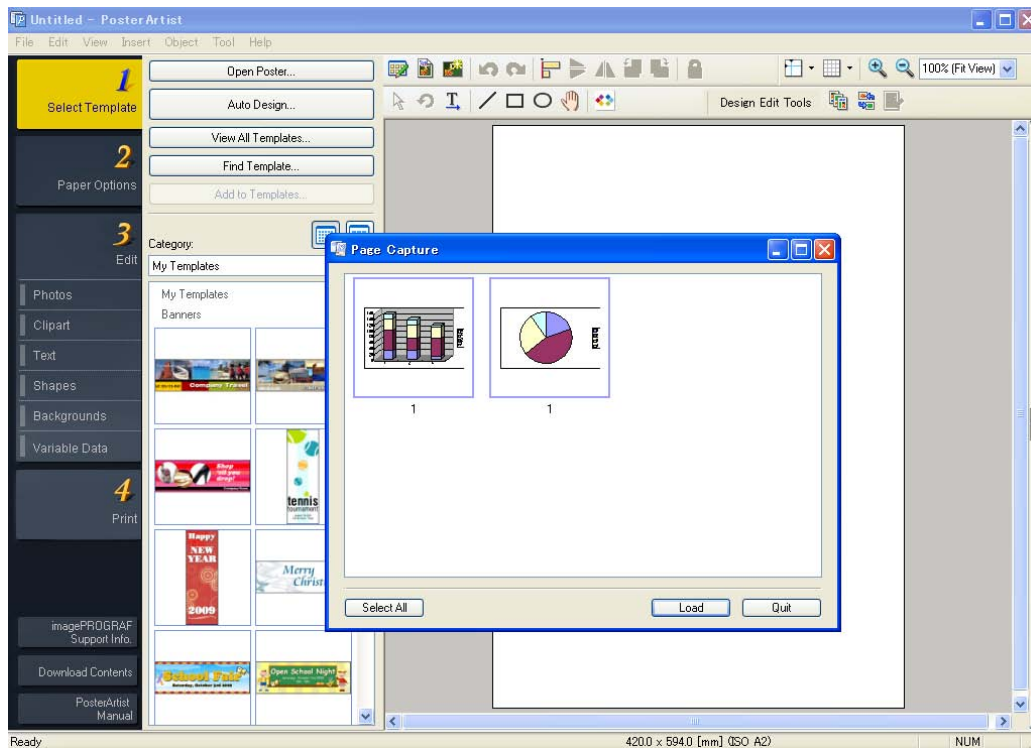
1. Choose “Print” in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.346)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the **▲ Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the **▲ Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.
9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.



Important

- Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.



Note

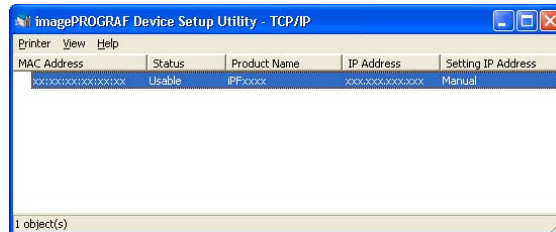
- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's MAC address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.



Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:



Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the "Administrator" account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

☰ Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

On a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.452)

When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv4** tab.
5. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
6. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
8. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv6** tab.
5. In **IPv6**, select **On**.
6. When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select **On** in **Stateless Address**.

Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select **On** in **DHCPv6**.



Note

- When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select **On** in **Manual** and enter the **IPv6 Address** and **Prefix Length**.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

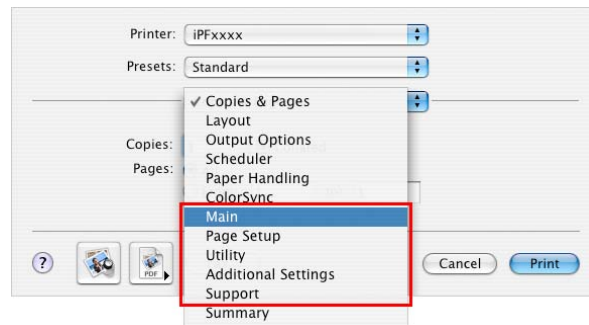
Mac OS X Software

Printer Driver

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.460)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.461)

You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

 - Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.465)
 - View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.466)
 - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.467)
 - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.469)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.471)

You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the paper size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.473)

You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.474)

You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.475)

You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see Free Layout.

With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see Preview.

With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

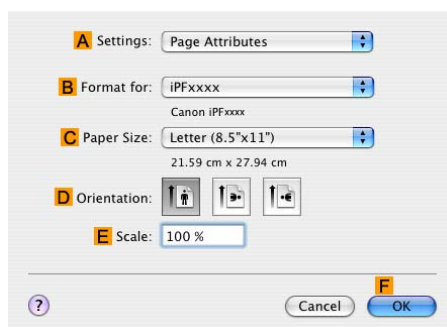
If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. This sets the **B Format for** and **C Paper Size**.

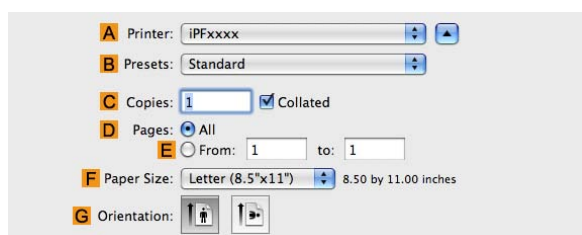


Note

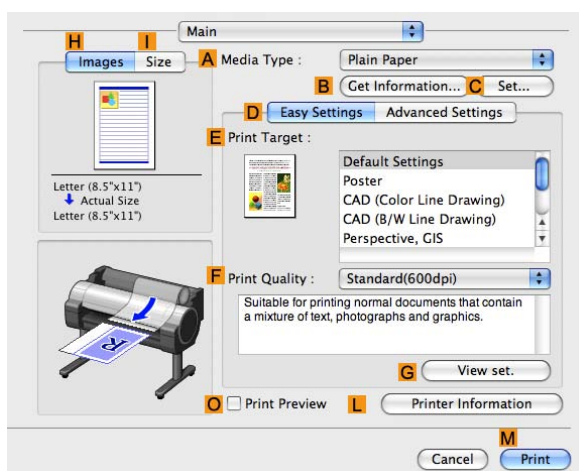
- The configuration method varies depending on the OS and application software you are using. If **Page Setup** is displayed in the application menu, the settings are configured by opening the **Page Attributes** dialog box from **Page Setup**.



If it is not displayed, the settings are configured in the upper part of the printer driver displayed when you select **Print** from the application software menu.

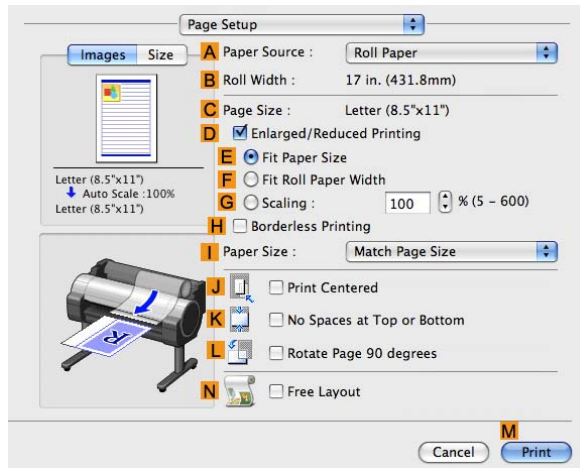


2. Select the printer in the **A Printer** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **F Paper Size** list.
4. If you configured the settings using the **Page Attributes** dialog box, click **F OK** to close the dialog box, and then select **Print** from the application software menu.
5. Access the **Main** pane.



6. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

7. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



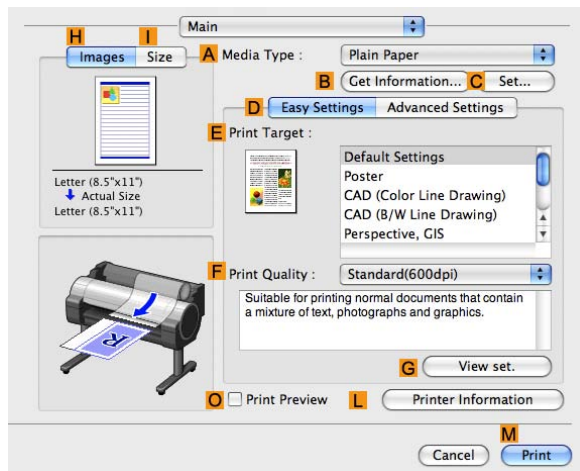
8. In the **A Paper Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

9. If you have selected **Manual** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Paper Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Width**.



Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.454)

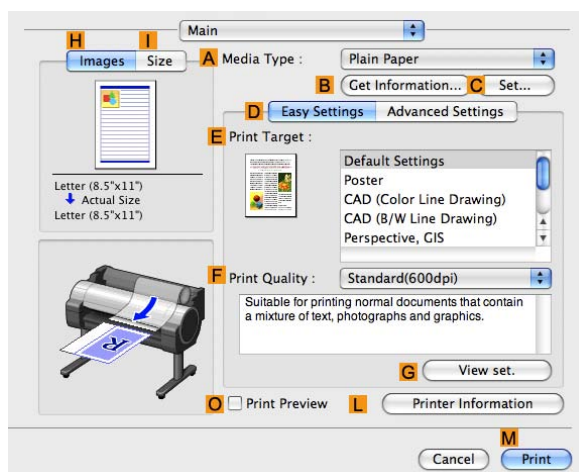
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings
- Checking a print preview

Checking a preview of the settings

A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, paper source, and so on.

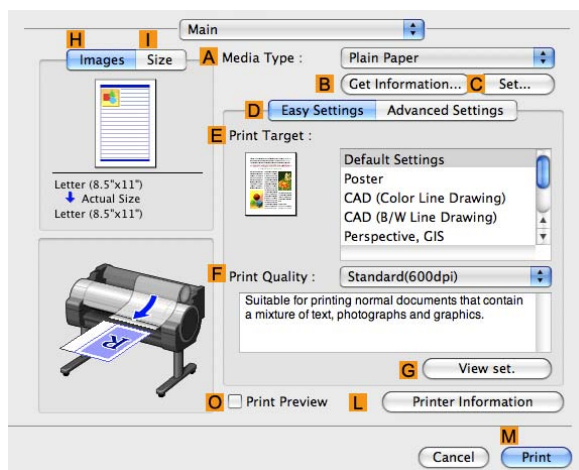


Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H Images tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I Size tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the paper source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.



Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **G View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.

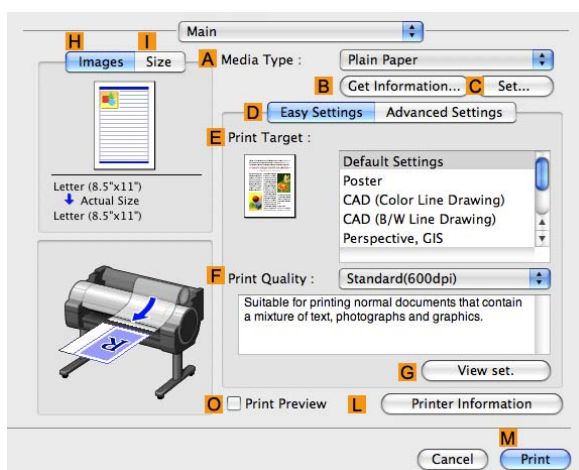
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.

For details on print previews, see “Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing”. (→P.313)

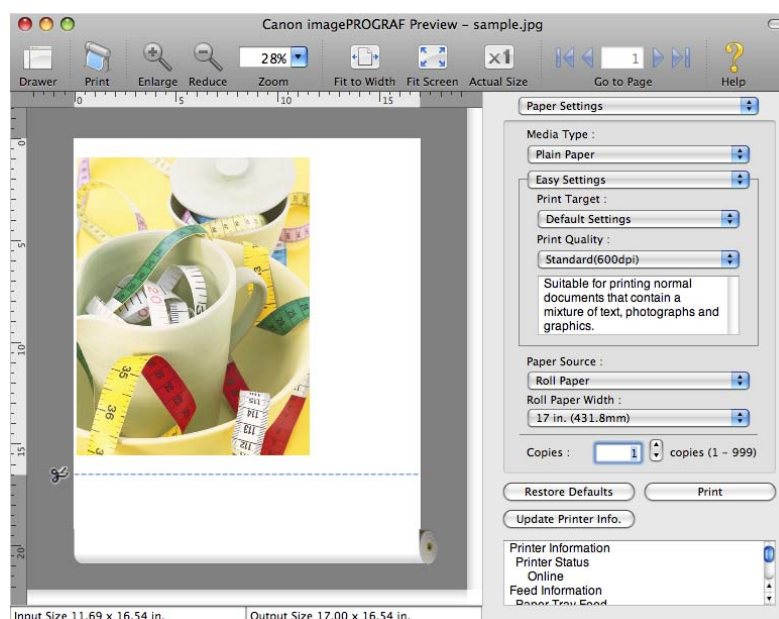
☐ Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. Select the **O Print Preview** check box.
4. Click **M Print**.
5. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



6. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
7. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.



Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to Preview.

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.



Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

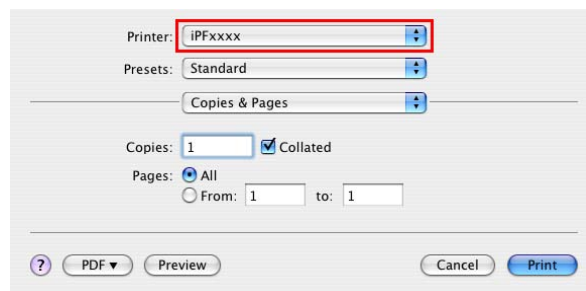
1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.



Note

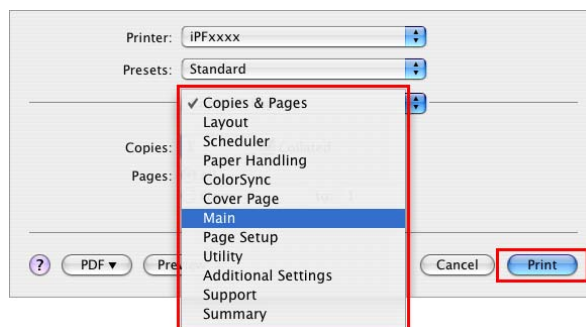
- This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Main Pane (Mac OS X)

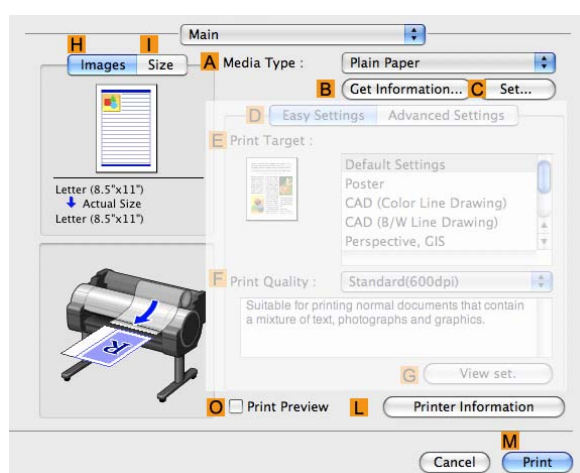
The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Common Items



A Media Type

Select the paper type.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

B Get Information

Displays **Paper Information on Printer**. You can update the printer driver settings for the feed source, media type, and roll width by selecting the feed source.

- Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.464)

C Set

Displays **Paper Detailed Settings**. You can configure the printing settings to match the type of media, such as the ink drying time.

- Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.465)

O Print Preview

If you turn this on, **imagePROGRAF Preview** starts before printing.

This allows you to check on-screen previews of documents before printing.



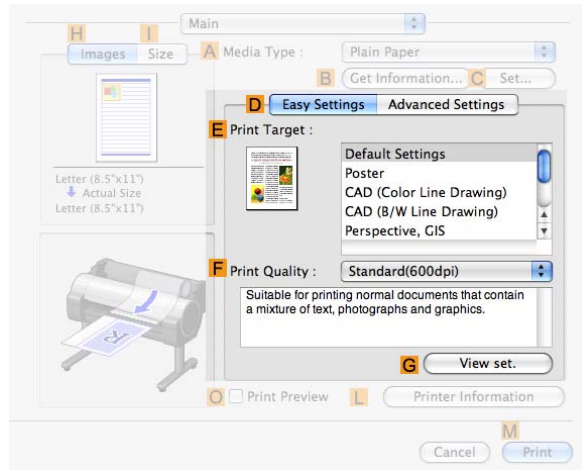
Important

- This cannot be selected if **Free Layout** is enabled in the **Page Setup** panel.
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (→P.313)

L Printer

Displays **Printer**. You can display printer information such as the remaining ink levels.

Configuration using Easy Settings



E Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

- Printing Photos and Images (→P.152)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (→P.160)
- Printing Office Documents (→P.171)

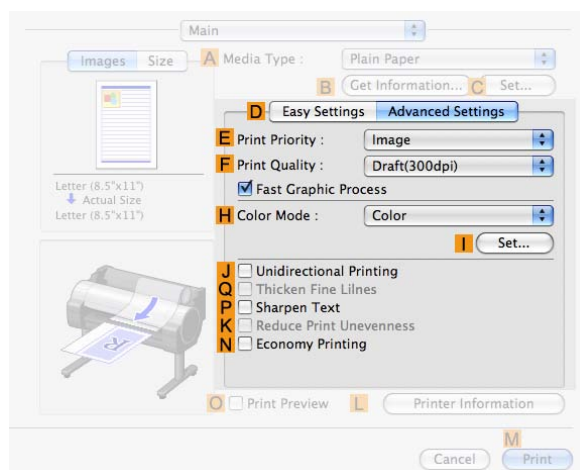
F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

G View set.

Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target**.

Configuration using Advanced Settings



E Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

F Print Quality

Choose the level of print quality.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

H Color Mode

Choose the color mode.

- Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187)

I Set

Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings.

- Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.177)

J Unidirectional Printing

Select this checkbox to prevent problems such as misaligned lines and improve the print quality. However, the printing speed becomes slower.

Q Thicken Fine Lines

Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.

P Sharpen Text

Activate this option to print text more sharply.

K Reduce Print Unevenness

Select this checkbox for two-pass printing to reduce color shading.

This option is displayed if you have selected Plain Paper in **Media Type** and **Office Document** in **Print Priority**.

N Economy Printing

Select this checkbox to reduce the amount of ink consumed during printing. However, the print quality is worse than for normal printing.

Select this mode if you want to conserve ink when checking drawings, for example. Depending on the **Media Type** and **Print Quality** settings, this mode may not be available.

☐ Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.



Note

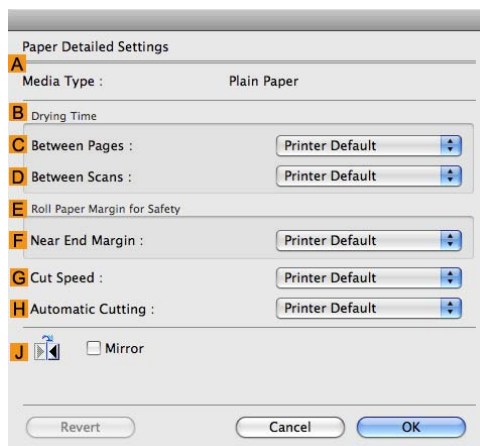
- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Get Information** by **Media Type**. (→P.461)

A Paper Source

Shows the **Paper Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Paper Source** option and click **OK**.

☰ Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

- To display the **Paper Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **Set by Media Type**. (→P.461)

A Media Type

Select the paper type.

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95)

B Drying Time

Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls.

- (→P.127)

C Between Pages

Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.

D Between Scans

Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.

E Roll Paper Margin for Safety

You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen.

F Near End Margin

Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.

G Cut Speed

Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.

H Automatic Cutting

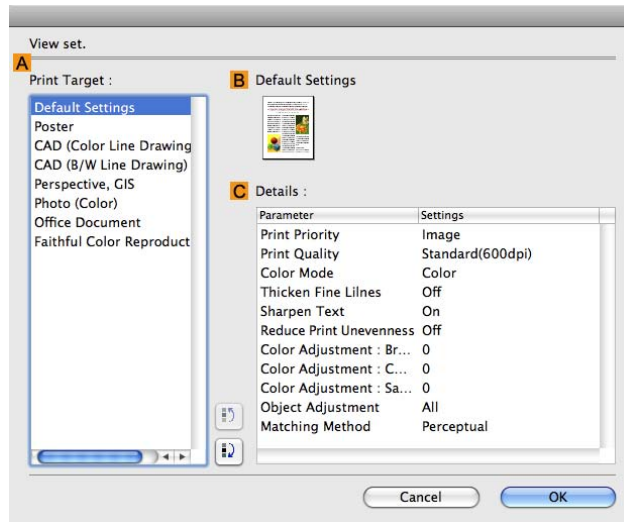
You can activate or deactivate automatic cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Printer Default**, **None**, or **Print Cut Guideline**.

J Mirror

Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View settings** dialog box, on the **Main** pane, click **View settings** by **Print Target**. (→P.461)

A Print Target

Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).

B Name

Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.

C Details

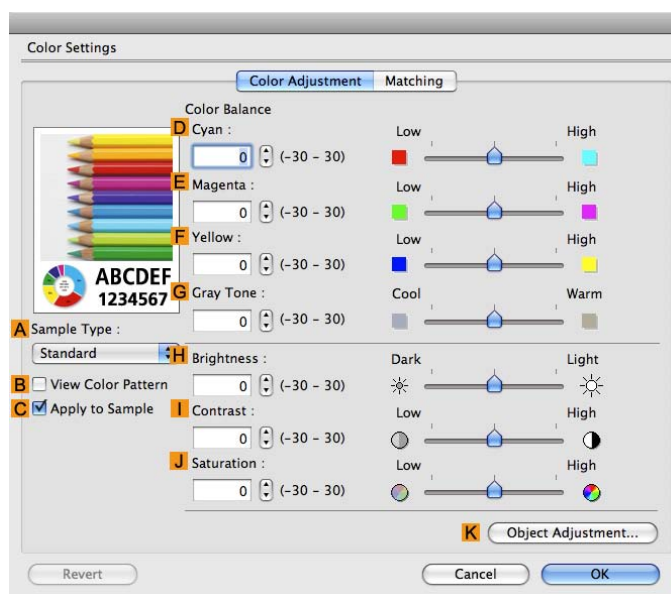
Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.461)

A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow

Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.

G Gray Tone

Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool** (tinged with blue) or **Warm** (tinged with red).

H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

I Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.

J Saturation

Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.



Note

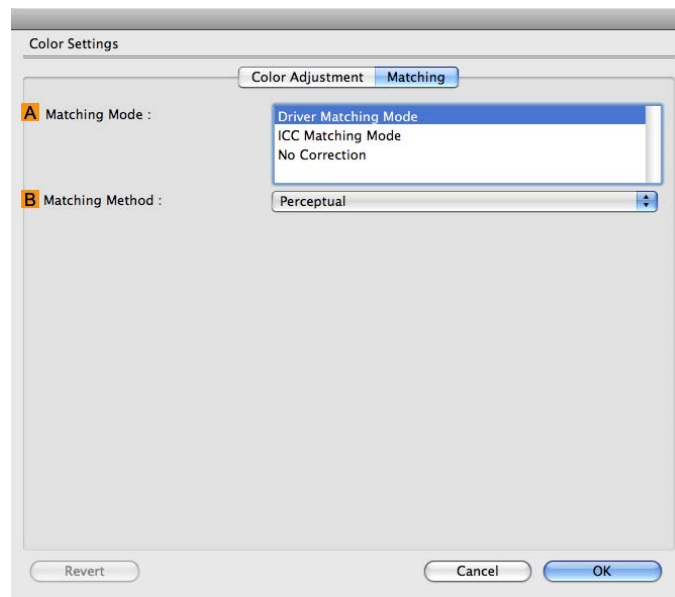
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

K Object Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** pane click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**. (→P.461)

A Matching Mode

Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.

B Matching Method

Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching Mode**.



Note

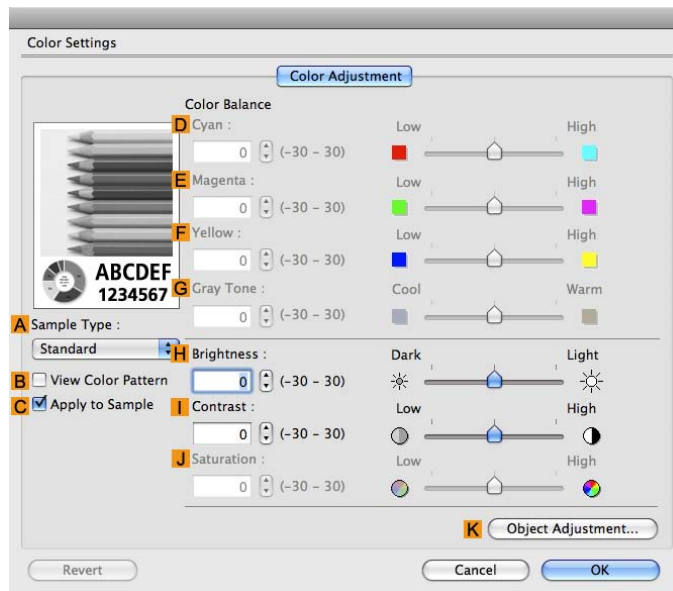
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: Monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** pane, click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**. (→P.461)

A Sample Type

Choose a sample image from **Standard**, **Portrait**, **Landscape**, or **Graphics**.

B View Color Pattern

Select this checkbox to display the color pattern.

C Apply to Sample

Select this checkbox to apply the changed settings to the sample image.

D Cyan / E Magenta / F Yellow

Not available.

G Gray Tone

Not available.

H Brightness

Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).

I Contrast

Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **I Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **I Contrast** softens images.

J Saturation

Not available.



Note

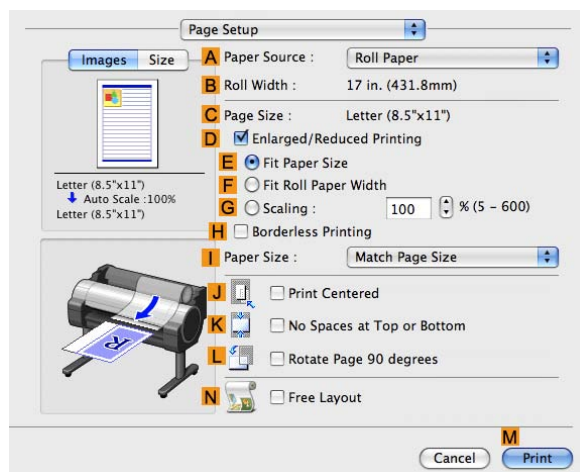
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.177)

K Object Adjustment

Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



A Paper Source

Choose how paper is supplied.

Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **A Media Type** in the **Main** pane.

B Roll Width

Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.

C Page Size

Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on page sizes available in the application, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)

D Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Select this checkbox to choose the following options.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.201)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.207)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.213)

E Fit Paper Size

Resizes the document image to match the paper size.

F Fit Roll Paper Width

Resizes the document image to match the roll width.

G Scaling

Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”

H Borderless Printing

Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the **A Paper Source** list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper.

- Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225)

I Paper Size

Choose the size of the paper you will print on.

Click **Display all selections for Paper Size** to list available sizes.

For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.100)

J Print Centered

Select this checkbox to print document images in the center of the paper.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.289)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.295)

K No Spaces at Top or Bottom

Select this checkbox to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.307)

L Rotate Page 90 degrees

Select this checkbox to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing.

- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.301)

N Free Layout

Select this checkbox to start **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** before printing.

This allows you to print multiple documents next to each other.

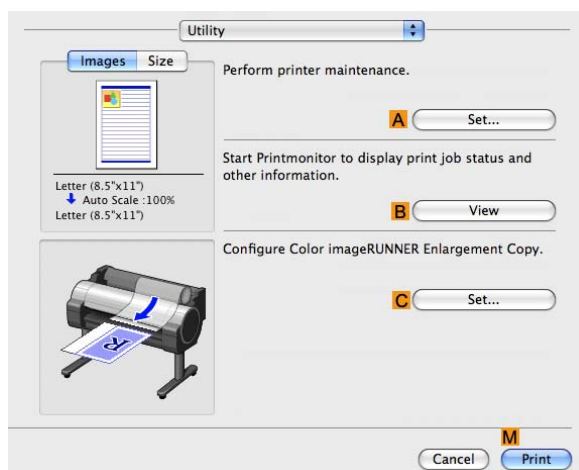


Important

- This cannot be selected if **Print Preview** is enabled in the **Main** panel.
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.269)

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility** pane.



A Set

Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer.

- Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning
- Head alignment adjustment
- Feed amount adjustment

B View

Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, which enables you to view the status of print jobs.

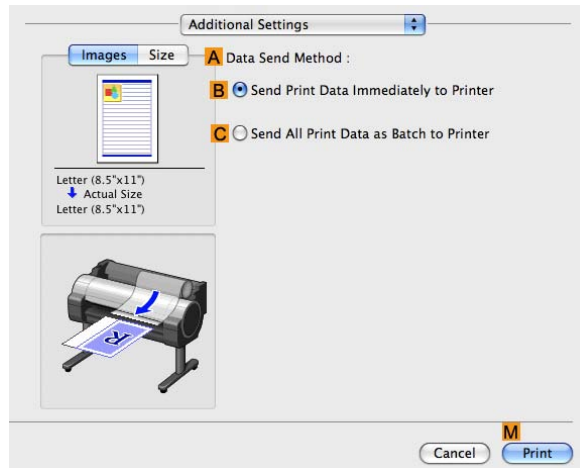
C Set

Click to complete the settings for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings** pane.



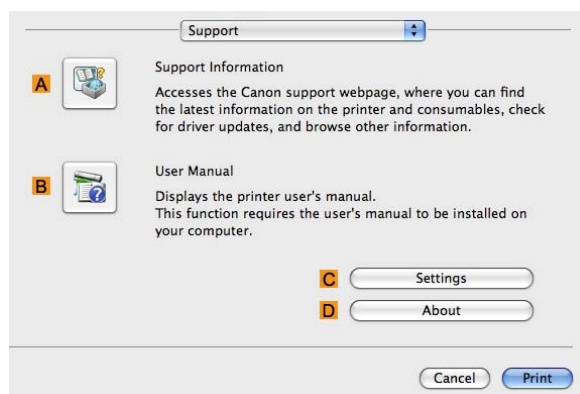
A Data Send Method

Choose how print data is sent to the printer.

- **B Send Print Data Immediately to Printer**
- **C Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



A Support Information

Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.

B User Manual

Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.

C Settings

The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.

D About

You can display version information for the printer driver.

Preview

☐☐☐ The Features of Preview

The main features of Preview are as follows.

- While viewing this screen, you can adjust layout settings of a document created with application software.
- You can not only adjust layout settings but also your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen, and you can print the preview screen as it is seen.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Preview settings.

☐☐☐ Operating Environment

You can use the Preview in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Mac OS X (10.3.9 to 10.5)
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Preview

Follow the procedure below to start the Preview.

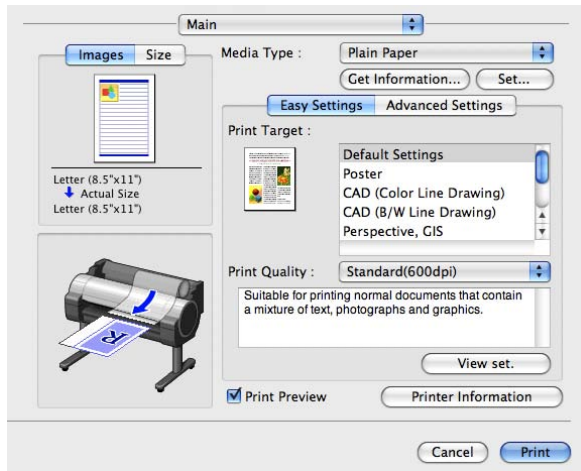
1. Start the application software which you use.
2. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



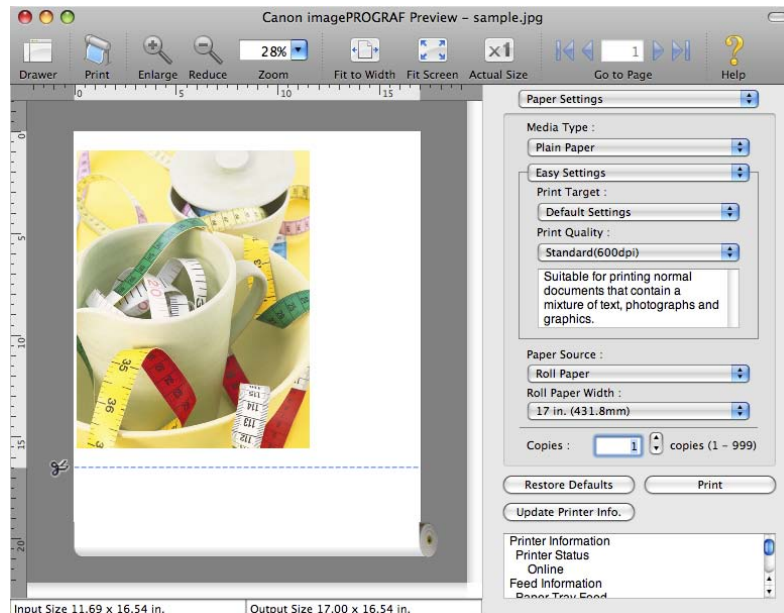
Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

3. Click "Print Preview" in the "Main" panel to attach a checkmark.
4. Click the "Print" button in the "Print" dialog box.

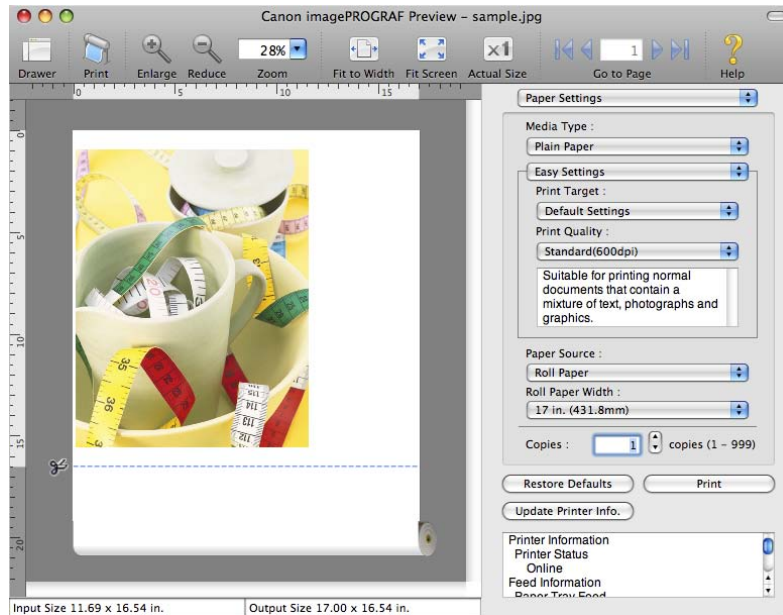


5. Preview main window is displayed.



Preview Main Window

The Preview main window consists of the menu and tool bars, and preview, dialog, drawer and status area.



Note

- You can use the “View” menu to show or hide the tool bar.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



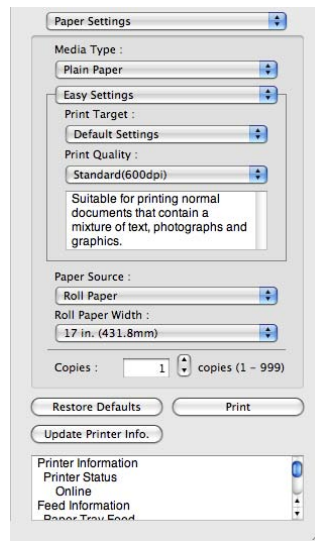
Preview Area

You can check the settings you made in this area.



Dialog Area

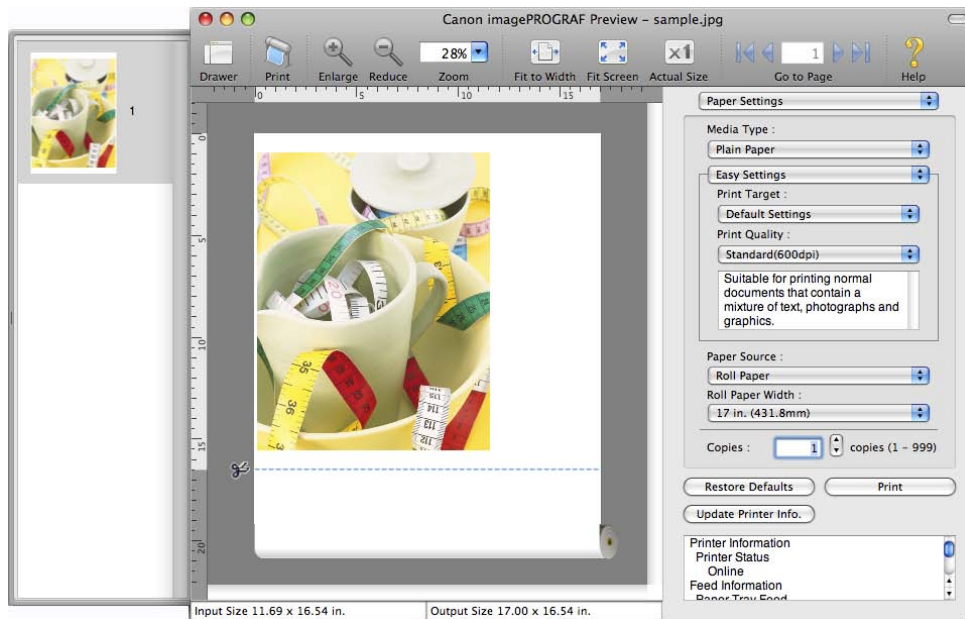
This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.



Drawer Area

This allows you to display the thumbnails of a document.

This area appears when you click  "Drawer" from the tool bar. Alternatively, you may select "Drawer" from the "View" menu.



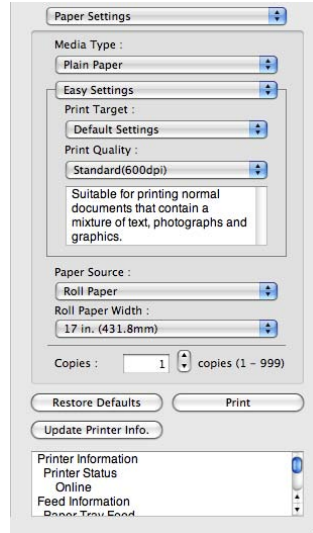
Status Area

This shows "Input Size" and "Output Size".

Input Size 16.54 x 23.39 in. Output Size 24.00 x 23.39 in.

Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



“Media Type”

This allows you to select the media type.



Note

- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

“Easy Settings” / “Advanced Settings”

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings (→P.482)
- Advanced Settings (→P.484)

Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
“Manual”	Select for manual paper feed printing.
“Roll Paper”	Select to print on roll paper.

“Roll Paper Width”

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Copies”

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.



Note

- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Restore Defaults” Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

“Print” Button

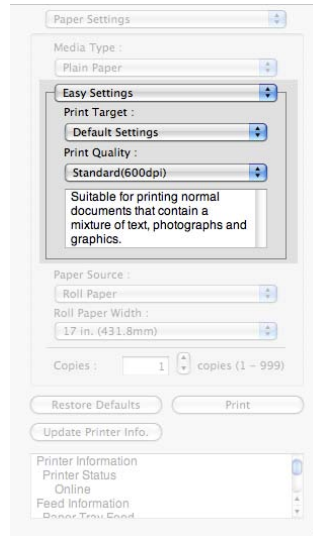
Click the button to begin printing.

“Update Printer Info.” Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



“Print Target”

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each “Print Target” item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
“Default Settings”	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
“Office Document”	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
“Poster”	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
“CAD (Color Line Drawing)”	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.
“Perspective, GIS”	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
“Photo (Color)”	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
“Faithful Color Reproduction”	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
“Custom Settings”	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”

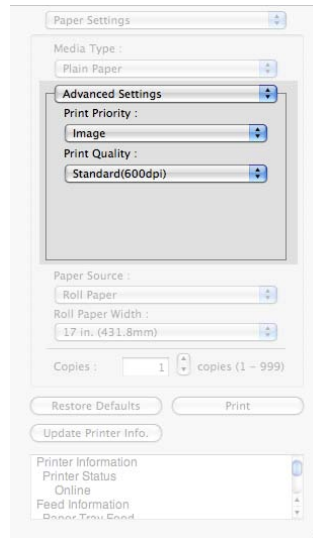


Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print quality, the color mode, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



“Print Priority”

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
“Image”	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
“Line Drawing”	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newsheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select “Image”.
“Office Document”	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”

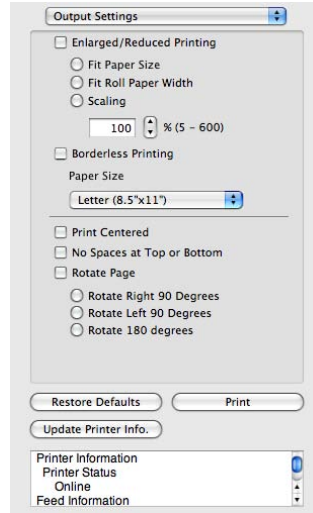


Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

☐ Output Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Output Settings** in the dialog area.



“Enlarged/Reduced Printing”

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from Paper Size .
“Fit Roll Paper Width”	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for “Roll Paper Width” in the Paper Settings panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in Paper Source .
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Borderless Printing”.

“Borderless Printing”

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.

For more information about “Borderless Printing”, see “Print with No Borders”. (→P.496)



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Print Centered”.

Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.



Note

- This is not displayed when “Fit Roll Paper Width” is set in “Enlarged/Reduced Printing”.

“Print Centered”

You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.

For more information about “Print Centered”, see “Print on the Center”. (→P.497)



Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Borderless Printing”.

“No Spaces at Top or Bottom”

You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.

For more information about “No Spaces at Top or Bottom”, see “Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom”. (→P.498)



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Rotate Page”

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
“Rotate Right 90 Degrees”	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
“Rotate Left 90 Degrees”	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated.
“Rotate 180 degrees”	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.

“Restore Defaults” Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

“Print” Button

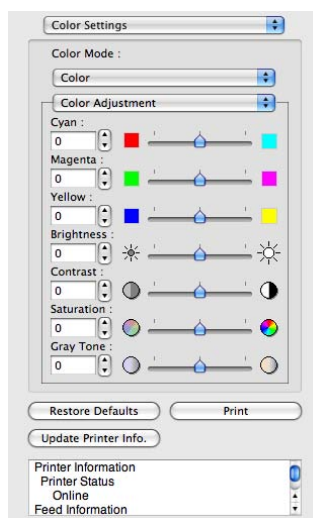
Click the button to begin printing.

“Update Printer Info.” Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

☐ Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



“Color Mode”

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
“Color”	Enables color printing.
“Monochrome”	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
“Color (CAD)”	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
“Monochrome Bitmap”	Prints all colors other than white in black.
“Monochrome (BK ink)”	Select to print all lines with black ink.



Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

“Color Adjustment” / “Matching”

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment (→P.488)
- Matching (→P.490)

“Restore Defaults” Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Preview.

“Print” Button

Click the button to begin printing.

“Update Printer Info.” Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

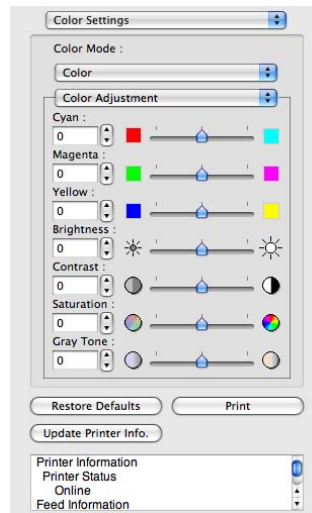
Color Adjustment

You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1. Select “Color” on “Color Mode” in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select “Color Adjustment”.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
“Cyan”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Magenta”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Yellow”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Brightness”	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
“Contrast”	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
“Saturation”	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
“Gray Tone”	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).



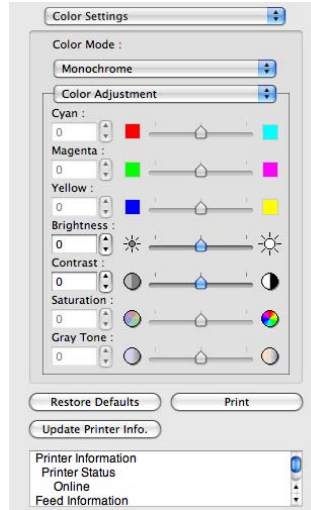
Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select “Monochrome” on “Color Mode” in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select “Color Adjustment”.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
“Brightness”	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
“Contrast”	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

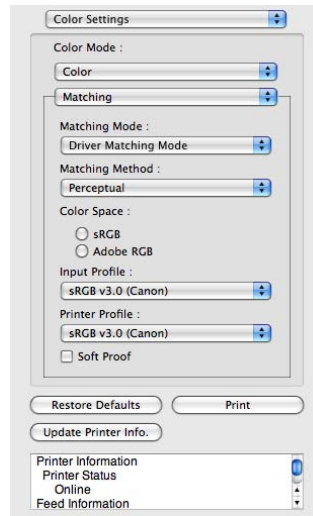


Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Matching

You can set the matching.



“Matching Mode”

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode (→P.492)	Independent driver color matching is performed.
ICC Matching Mode (→P.493)	Color matching using ColorGear is performed.
ColorSync (→P.494)	Color matching using CMM from Mac OS is performed.
“No Correction”	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.



Note

- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.

“Matching Method”

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

“Input Profile”

Select the input profile.



Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in “Matching Mode”.

“Printer Profile”

Select the printer profile.



Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** or “ColorSync” has been selected in “Mode”.

“Soft Proof”

When you place a checkmark here, “ColorSync” applies to the preview area.

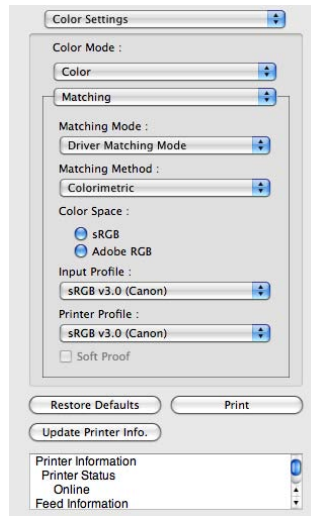


Note

- You can select only after “ColorSync” has been selected in “Matching Mode”.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under “Mode”, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

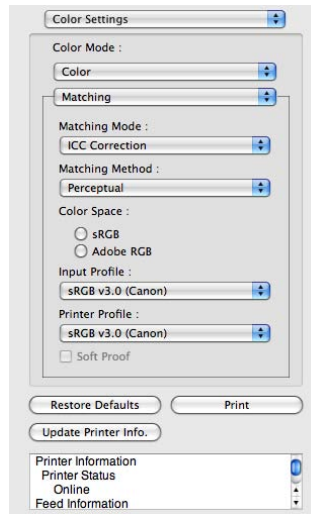


2. Click “Matching Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Auto”	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
Saturation	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.

☐ ICC Matching Mode

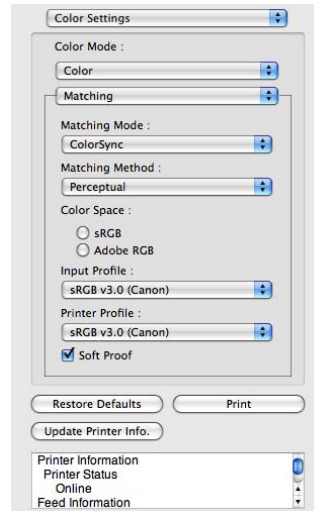
1. Under “Matching Mode” on the “Matching”, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2. Click the “Matching Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	Performs Colorimetric color matching but without white point correction.
“Saturation”	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.

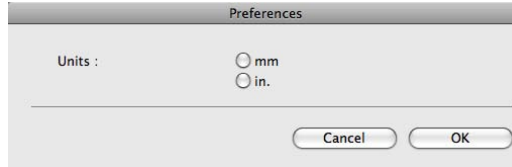
3. Click the “Input Profile” list and select an input profile.
4. Click the “Printer Profile” list and select a printer profile.



1. Place a checkmark on “Soft Proof” to simulate the output product in Layout Area.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Preferences” from the “imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview” menu. You can set the preferences for Preview.

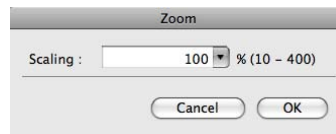


“Units”

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Zoom” from the “View” menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

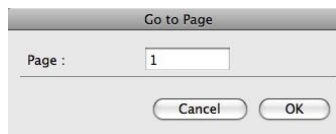


Note

- You can input between 10 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking “▼” button.

Go to Page Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Go to Page” from the “View” menu.



Note

- You can not select “Go to Page” if the document is only one page.

“Page”

Input the page number in numerical characters to display in the preview area.



Note

- You can change the numbers in the range of the page of the documents.

Print with No Borders

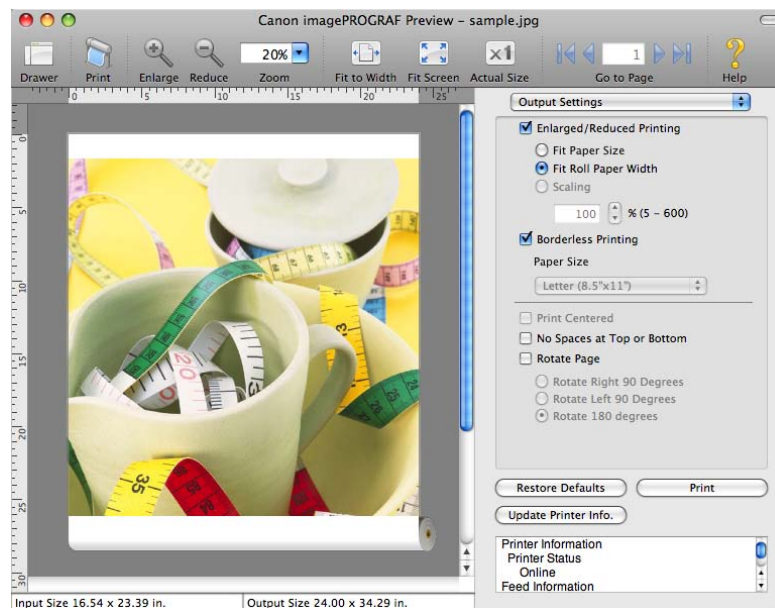
You can use the borderless printing function to print without margins surrounding the image.



Note

- With some media borderless printing can be performed only between two edges.
- To use the borderless printing function, the specified media must be set to the printer.

1. On the Paper Settings Panel (→P.480) , select “Roll Paper” in **Paper Source**.
2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the “Enlarged/Reduced Printing” check box on.
3. Select “Fit Roll Paper Width”.
4. Click the “Borderless Printing” check box on.



5. Click the “Print” button.
Borderless printing begins.

Print on the Center

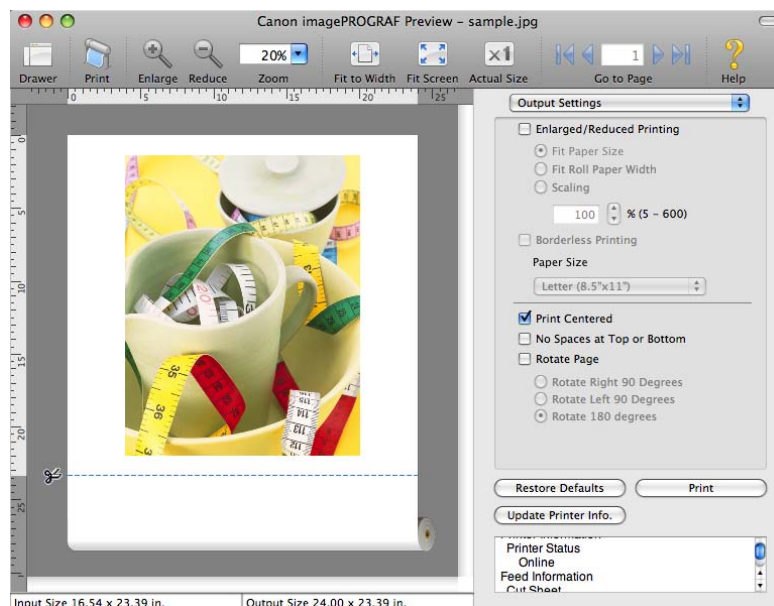
You can print on the center of the media loaded in the printer.



Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Borderless Printing”.

1. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the “Print Centered” check box on.



2. Click the “Print” button.
Printing on the center begins.

Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom

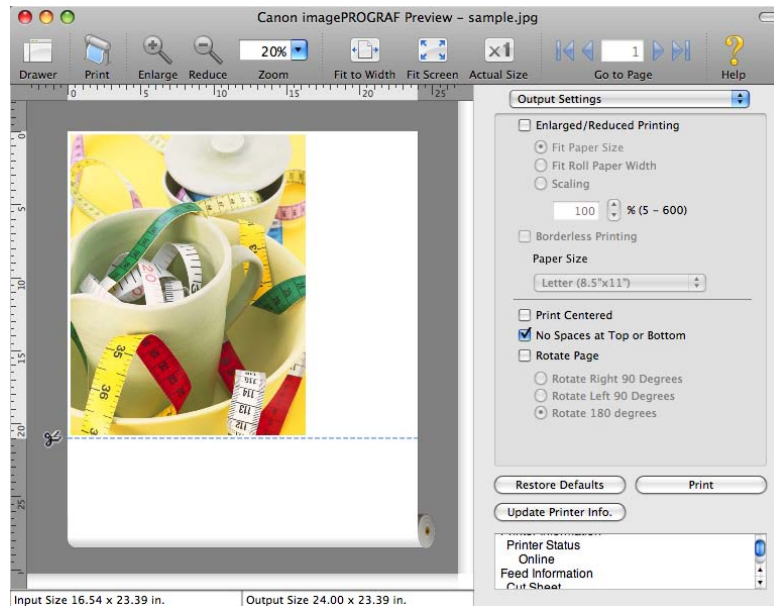
You can save paper on not to feed roll paper for the empty spaces when the print data contains spaces at the top or bottom.



Note

- This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Borderless Printing”.

1. On the Paper Settings Panel (→P.480) , select “Roll Paper” in **Paper Source**.
2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the “No Spaces at Top or Bottom” check box on.

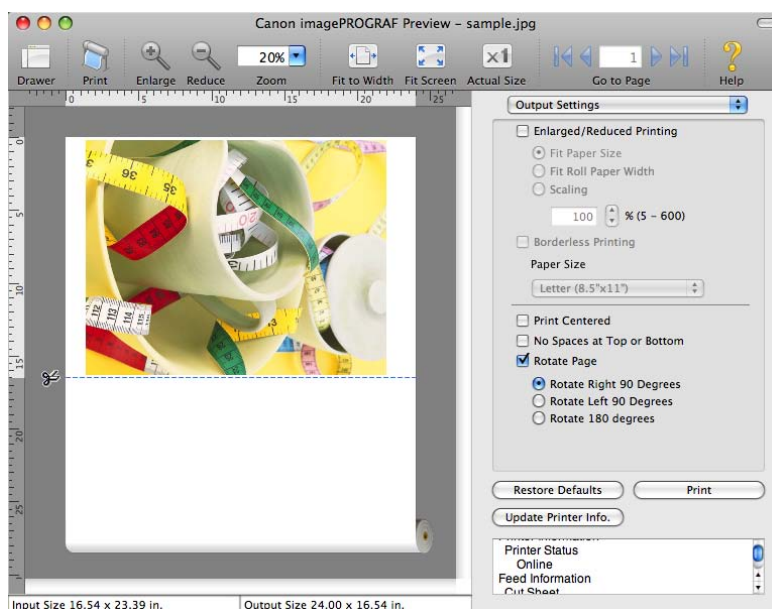


3. Click the “Print” button.
Printing on the settings with no spaces at top or bottom begins.

Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees

You can save paper by printing in landscape orientation on roll paper.


1. On the Paper Settings Panel (→P.480) , select “Roll Paper” in **Paper Source**.
2. On the **Output Settings** panel, click the “Rotate Page” check box on.
3. Select “Rotate Right 90 Degrees” or “Rotate Left 90 Degrees”.

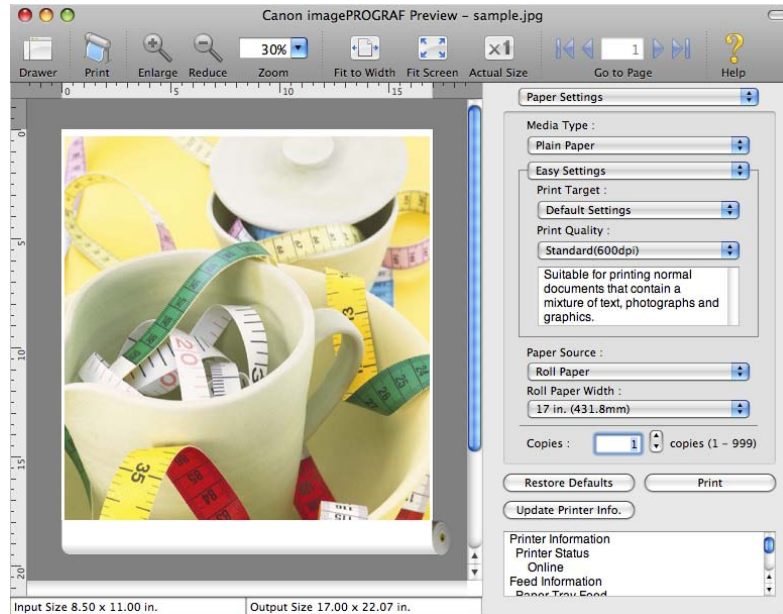


4. Click the “Print” button.
Printing on rotating 90 degrees begins.

Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper


In the preview area, you can display to the width of the paper.

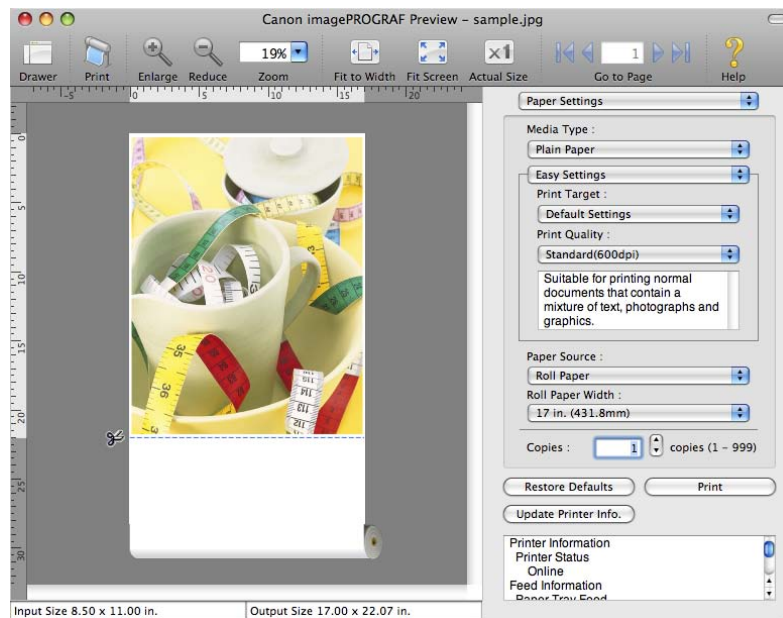
1. Select  "Fit to Width" from the tool bar.
2. Fitting to the width of the paper, it is displayed.



Display with All


In the preview area, you can display all.

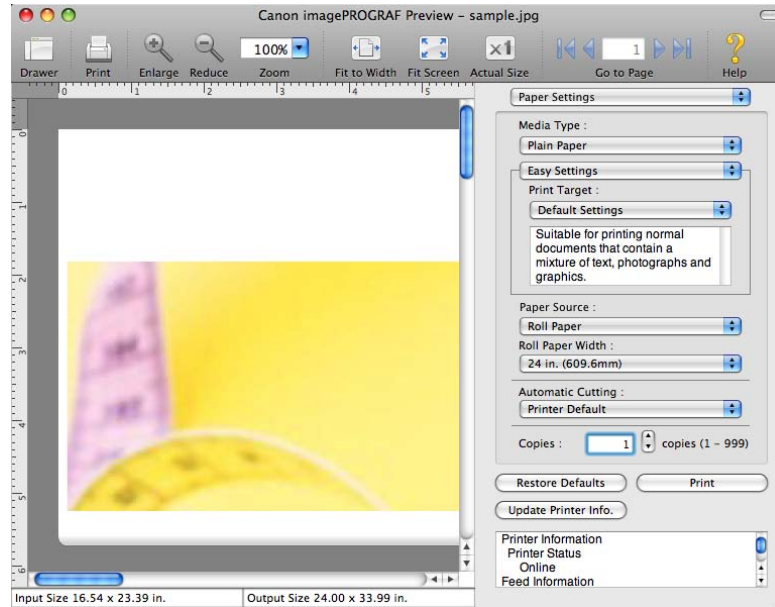
1. Select  "Fit Screen" from the tool bar.
2. All is displayed.



Display with Actual Size

In the preview area, you can display the actual size.





1. Select  "Actual Size" from the tool bar.
2. Actual size is displayed.



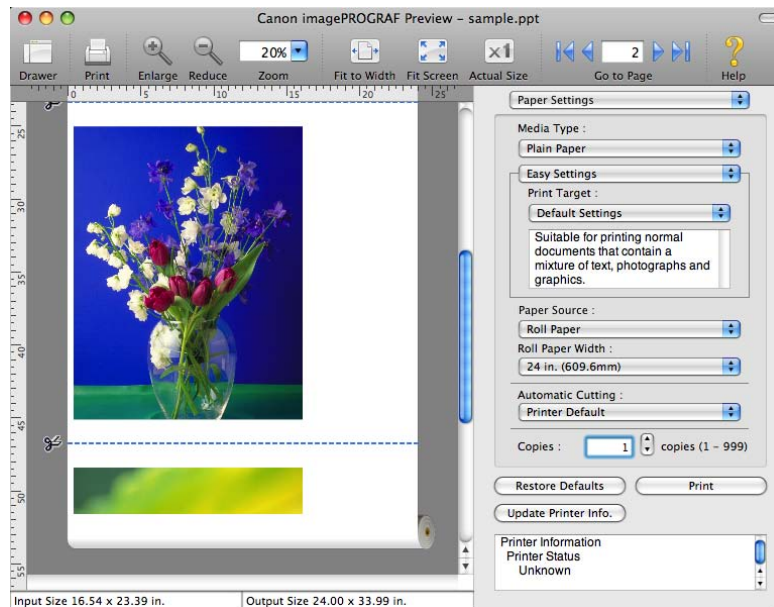
Moving a Page

You can move a page to display in the preview area.

1. Select each button in “Go to Page” on the tool bar.

Setting	Details
	Go to the first page.
	Go to the previous page.
	Go to the next page.
	Go to the last page.

2. The target page appears.



Note

- You can also move a page by clicking the page on the thumbnails.

Free Layout

☐☐☐ The Features of Free Layout

The main features of Free Layout are as follows.

- Allows you to lay out at will and print a document created with application software.
- You can not only lay out multiple pages on one page but also lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page, or lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Free Layout settings.

☐☐☐ Operating Environment

You can use the Free Layout in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Mac OS X (10.3.9 to 10.5)
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Free Layout

Follow the procedure below to start the Free Layout.

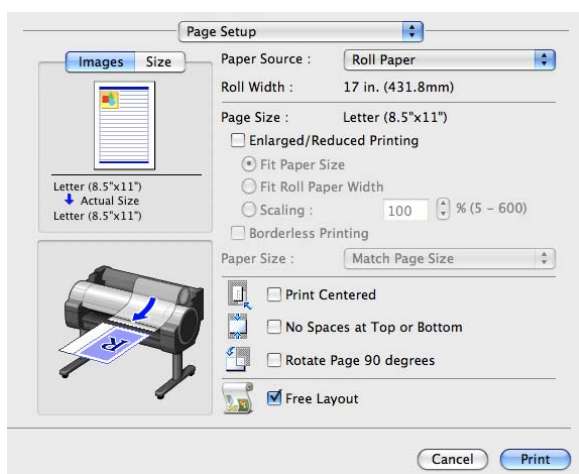
1. Start the application software which you use.
2. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



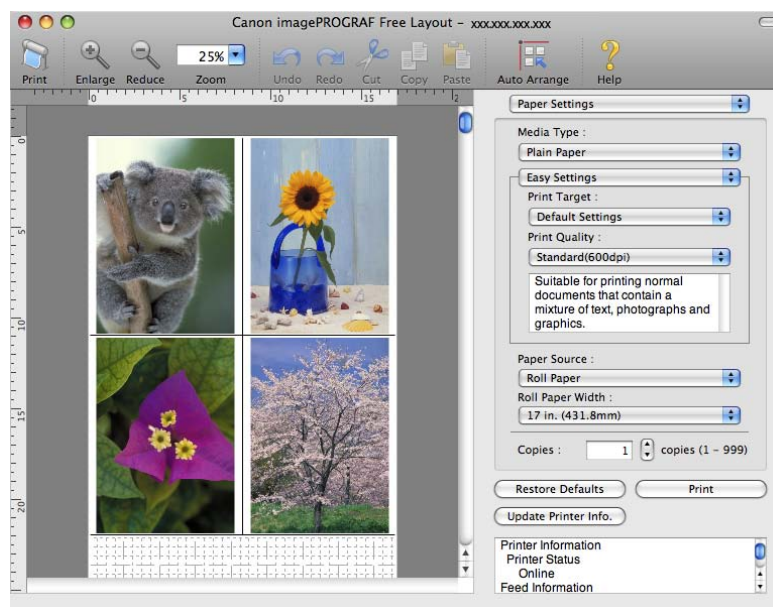
Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

3. Click on "Free Layout" in the "Page Setup" panel to attach a checkmark.
4. Click the "Print" button in the "Print" dialog box.

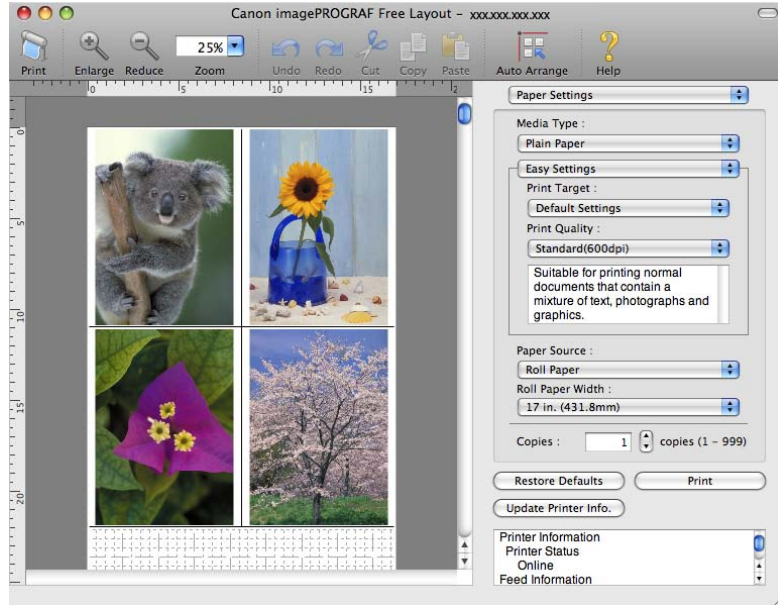


5. Free Layout main window is displayed.



Free Layout Main Window

The Free Layout main window consists of the menu and tool bars, layout area and dialog areas.



Note

- You can use the "View" menu to show or hide the tool.

Menu Bar

This allows you to select menus required for operations.



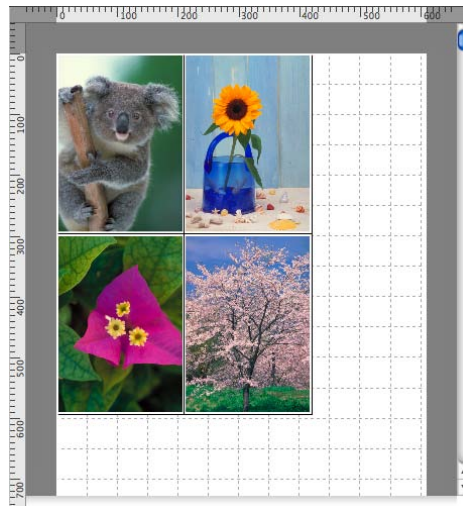
Tool Bar

This allows you to select tool buttons required for major operations.



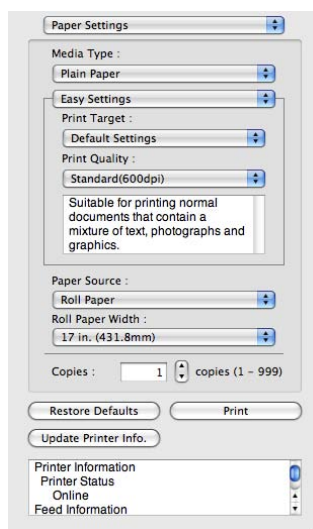
Layout Area

This allows you to lay out objects and edit the object size and orientation.



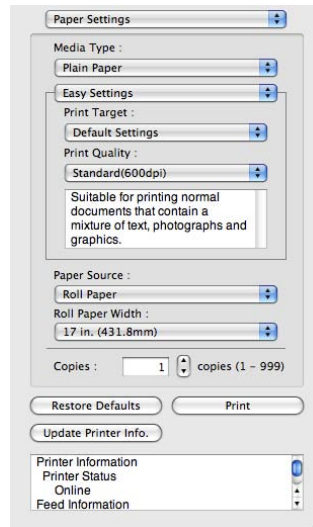
Dialog Area

This allows you to set the print conditions and perform a print job.



Paper Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Paper Settings** in the dialog area.



“Media Type”

This allows you to select the media type.



Note

- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

“Easy Settings” / “Advanced Settings”

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings (→P.510)
- Advanced Settings (→P.512)

Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
“Manual”	Select for manual paper feed printing.
“Roll Paper”	Select to print on roll paper.

“Roll Paper Width”

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Copies”

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.



Note

- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Restore Defaults” Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

“Print” Button

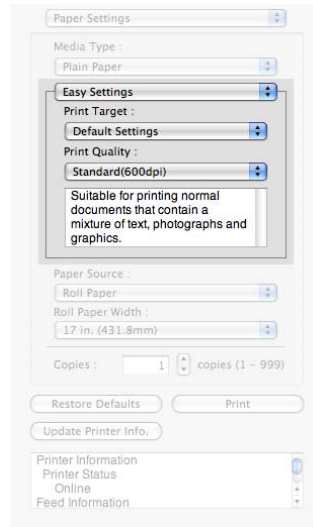
Click the button to begin printing.

“Update Printer Info.” Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



“Print Target”

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each “Print Target” item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
“Default Settings”	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
“Office Document”	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
“Poster”	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
“CAD (Color Line Drawing)”	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.
“Perspective, GIS”	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
“Photo (Color)”	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
“Faithful Color Reproduction”	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
“Custom Settings”	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”

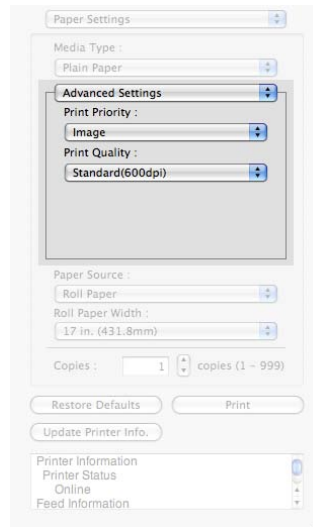


Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



“Print Priority”

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
“Image”	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
“Line Drawing”	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newsheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select “Image”.
“Office Document”	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”

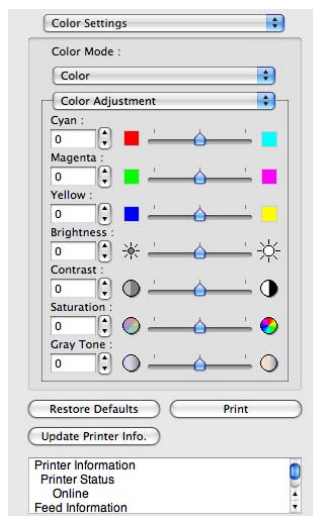


Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Color Settings Panel

This panel appears when you select **Color Settings** in the dialog area.



“Color Mode”

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
“Color”	Enables color printing.
“Monochrome”	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
“Color (CAD)”	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
“Monochrome Bitmap”	Prints all colors other than white in black.
“Monochrome (BK ink)”	Select to print all lines with black ink.



Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

“Color Adjustment” / “Matching”

You can set the color adjustment and matching.

- Color Adjustment (→P.514)
- Matching (→P.516)

“Restore Defaults” Button

Click the button to reset to the setting when starting Free Layout.

“Print” Button

Click the button to begin printing.

“Update Printer Info.” Button

Click the button to acquire printer information.

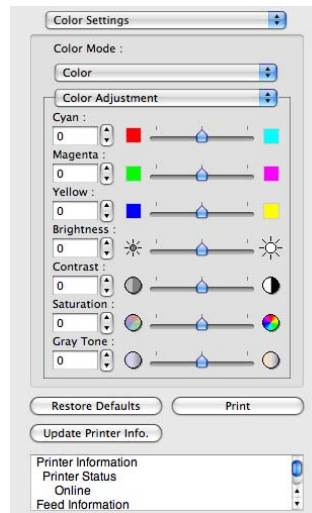
Color Adjustment

You can set the color adjustment.

Adjusting Color

Normally colors should be adjusted in the software application, but if you see colors in the printout that do not match colors on the screen, you can perform color adjustments.

1. Select “Color” on “Color Mode” in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select “Color Adjustment”.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
“Cyan”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Magenta”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Yellow”	Adjusts the strength of colors to compensate the hues.
“Brightness”	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
“Contrast”	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
“Saturation”	Adjusts the hues for vivid color or dark color.
“Gray Tone”	Adjusts gray from cool black (bluish tones) to warm black (reddish tones).



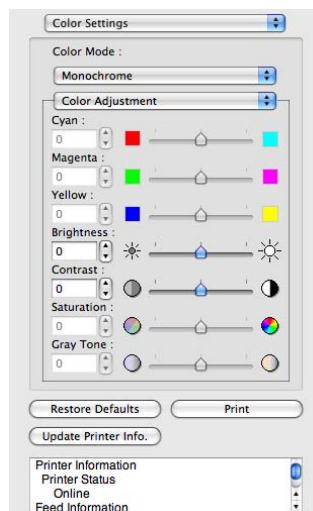
Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

Adjusting Monochrome

Use the monochrome setting to print monochrome images of color photographs captured with a scanner or digital camera or other color images.

1. Select “Monochrome” on “Color Mode” in the **Color Settings** panel.
2. Select “Color Adjustment”.



3. Drag each slider to the left or right to adjust.

Setting	Details
“Brightness”	Adjusts the brightness of the entire image. When the results of the printout are brighter than the original images such as the original photo before scanning and graphics created on the display, or when you want to print in different degrees of brightness, use this feature.
“Contrast”	Adjusts the relative brightness between the brightest and darkest portions of the image. *For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.

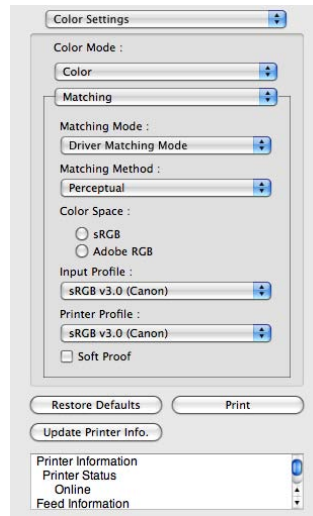


Note

- You can also click the up or down arrow, or enter the number directly to increase or decrease the value.

☐ Matching

You can set the matching.



“Matching Mode”

You can select a matching mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode (→P.518)	Independent driver color matching is performed.
ICC Matching Mode (→P.519)	Color matching using ColorGear is performed.
ColorSync (→P.520)	Color matching using CMM from Mac OS is performed.
“No Correction”	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.



Note

- You need to set each correction on the printer driver.

“Matching Method”

You can select a matching method to suit the print job.

“Input Profile”

Select the input profile.



Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** has been selected in “Matching Mode”.

“Printer Profile”

Select the printer profile.



Note

- You can select only after **ICC Matching Mode** or “ColorSync” has been selected in “Mode”.

“Soft Proof”

When you place a checkmark here, “ColorSync” applies to the layout area.

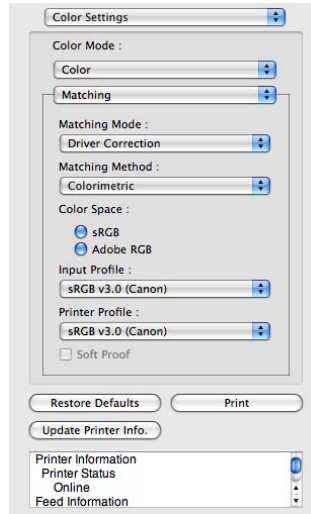


Note

- You can select only after “ColorSync” has been selected in “Matching Mode”.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under “Matching Mode”, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

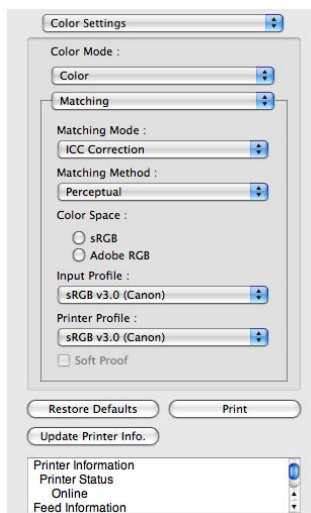


2. Click the “Matching Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Auto”	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
Saturation	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.

☐ ICC Matching Mode

1. Under “Matching Mode”, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



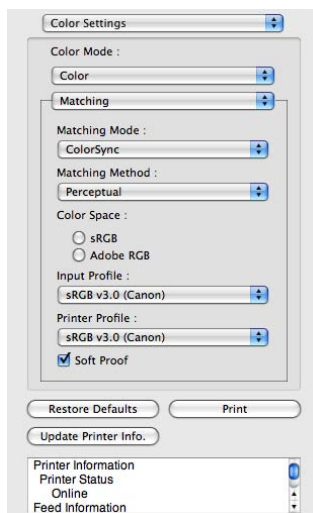
2. Click the “Matching Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
Saturation	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	Performs Colorimetric color matching but without white point correction.

3. Click the “Input Profile” list and select an input profile.
4. Click the “Printer Profile” list and select a printer profile.

ColorSync

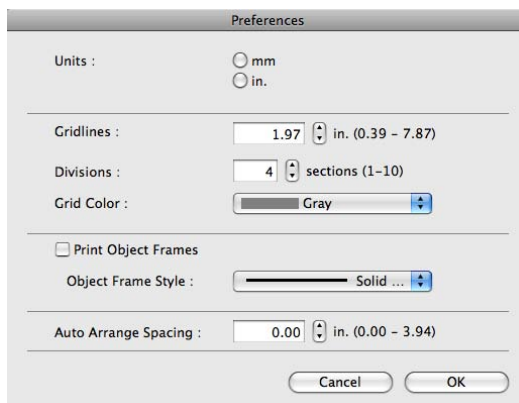
1. Check that “ColorSync” is selected in “Matching Mode”.



2. Place a checkmark on “Soft Proof” to simulate the output product in Layout Area.

Preferences Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Preferences” from the “imagePROGRAF Advanced Preview” menu. You can set the preferences for Free Layout.



“Units”

Set the unit for paper length, margins, and so on.

“Gridlines”

You can input a grid line width value in numerical characters so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



Note

- You can input between 10.0 and 200.0(mm) (between 0.39 and 7.87(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Divisions”

You can change the number of divisions of grid lines so that they serve as a guide to laying out objects.



Note

- You can input between 1 and 10.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Grid Color”

Select the grid line color.

“Print Object Frames”

You can print the object border.



Note

- If you do not want to print the object border, deselect the “Print Object Frames” check box.

“Object Frame Style”

You can select the object frame style for printing.

The following settings are available for the object frame style.

Setting	Details
“Solid Line”	You can print the solid line as the frame style.
“Dotted Line”	You can print the dotted line as the frame style.
“Dashed Line”	You can print the dashed line as the frame style.

Auto Arrange Spacing

Change the object-to-object spacing to be applied in the operation of laying out objects automatically.

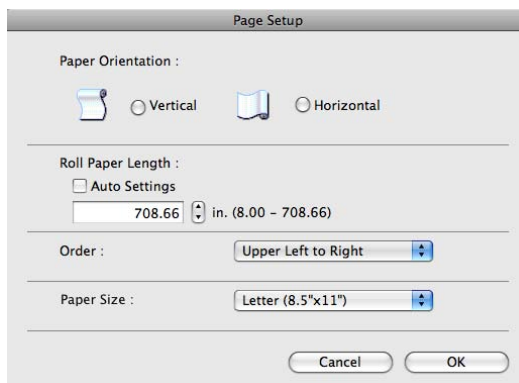


Note

- You can input between 0.0 and 100.0(mm) (between 0.00 and 3.94(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

Page Setup Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Page Setup” from the “File” menu. This dialog box provides selections for setting the media size, orientation and other important features.



“Paper Orientation”

This selects the paper orientation.

The following settings are available for orientation.

Setting	Details
“Vertical”	Prints the image and text created with the application software in the orientation as it is.
“Horizontal”	Prints the image and text by rotating sideways 90 degrees from the orientation as specified in the application.

“Roll Paper Length”

Set the length of one page to print on roll paper.

When you place a checkmark on “Auto Settings”, the one-page length to be printed on roll paper is automatically set so that the laid-out objects are printed on one page.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.
- You can input between 203.2 and 18000.0(mm) (between 8.00 and 708.66(inch)).
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Order”

Set the object layout order.

The following settings are available for order.

Setting	Details
“Upper Left to Right”	The objects are laid out from upper left to right.
“Upper Left to Bottom”	The objects are laid out from upper left to bottom.



Note

- When you have selected “Roll Paper Length” > “Auto Settings” and “Paper Orientation” > “Vertical”, you can choose only “Upper Left to Right”.
- When you have selected “Roll Paper Length” > “Auto Settings” and “Paper Orientation” > “Horizontal”, you can choose only “Upper Left to Bottom”.

Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.

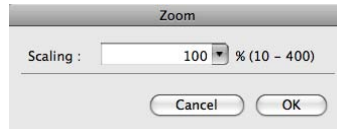


Note

- You cannot display this if “Roll Paper” is selected in **Paper Source**.

Zoom Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Zoom” from the “View” menu. You can enlarge or reduce the screen display.



Scaling

Set the magnification for enlargement or reduction of the screen display.

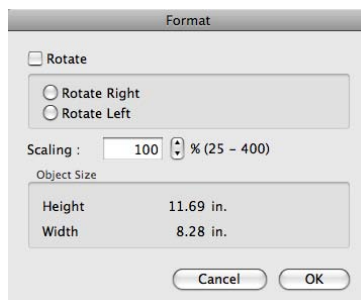


Note

- You can input between 10 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking “▼” button.

Format Dialog Box

This dialog box appears when you select “Format” from the “Object” menu after you select an object. You can rotate, enlarge, or reduce an object.



Note

- When the objects are not selected, you can not select “Format”.

“Rotate”

When you place a checkmark here, you can select “Rotate Right” or “Rotate Left”.

Setting	Details
“Rotate Right”	Rotates the object 90 degrees clockwise.
“Rotate Left”	Rotates the object 90 degrees counterclockwise.



Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select “Rotate”.

Scaling

You can input the value for enlargement or reduction of the object in numerical characters.



Note

- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

“Object Size”

You can confirm the object size.



Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot display “Object Size”.

☰ Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page

You can lay out and print a multiple-file document on one page.

1. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

2. Click on "Free Layout" in the "Page Setup" panel to attach a checkmark.
3. In the "Print" dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the "Print" button.
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.
4. Leaving Free Layout running, open other files with the application software and repeat the above steps.

☰ Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page

You can lay out and print a document created with multiple application programs on one page.

1. From the application software's "File" menu, select the printer setup menu to open the "Print" dialog box.



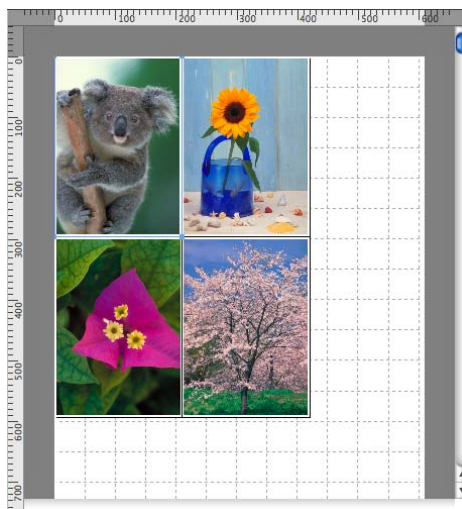
Note

- Normally, select "Print" from the "File" menu.

2. Click on "Free Layout" in the "Page Setup" panel to attach a checkmark.
3. In the "Print" dialog box, select the pages to print and the number of copies, and click the "Print" button.
Free Layout starts, laying out the document created with application software in the layout area as an object.
4. Leaving Free Layout running, open the files with other application software and repeat the above steps.

☐ Selecting an Object

When an object is selected, a select box (blue border) appears around the object.



Note

- To select an object, click that object.
- To select multiple successive objects, click them while holding down the shift key.
- To select multiple arbitrary objects, click them while holding down the command key.
- To select all objects, select “Select All” from the “Edit” menu.

☐ Changing the Object Size

You can change the object size by means of mouse operation or by specifying a scaling value.

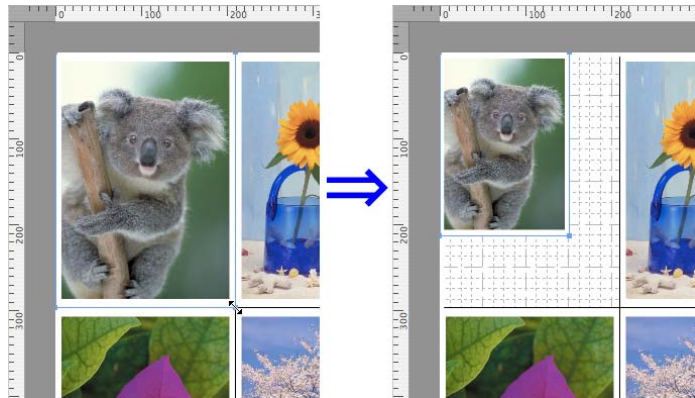


Note

- The vertical-to-horizontal ratio remains unchanged when the object is enlarged or reduced.

Resizing by means of mouse operation

1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer at a corner of the selection box around the object to show the arrow handle, and drag this handle to change the object size.



Resizing by specifying a scaling value

1. Select an object.
2. Open the Format Dialog Box. (→P.525)
3. Use **Scaling** to set the magnification for enlargement or reduction. You either enter numbers directly.



Note

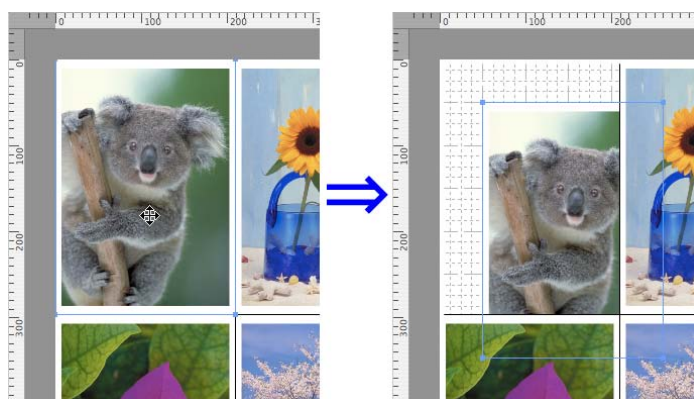
- You can input between 25 and 400.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

4. Click the “OK” button.

☐ Moving an Object

You can move the object position.

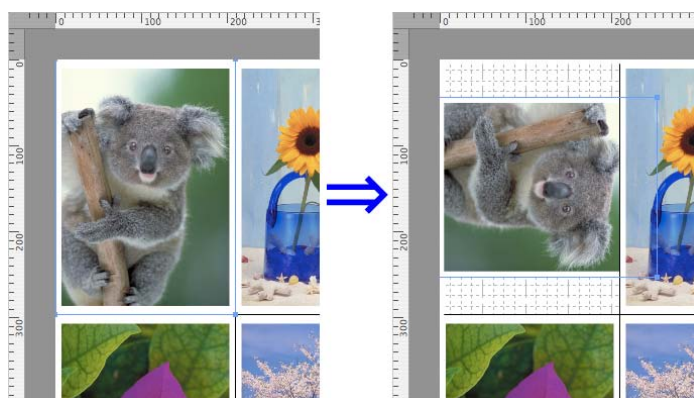
1. Select an object.
2. Place the pointer inside the selection box of the object to show the crosshair handle, and drag it to move the object.



☐ Rotating an Object

You can rotate the object.

1. Select an object.
2. Select “Rotate Left” or “Rotate Right” from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may click on the “Rotate” check box in the Format Dialog Box (→P.525) then select “Rotate Right” or “Rotate Left”, and click the “OK” button.

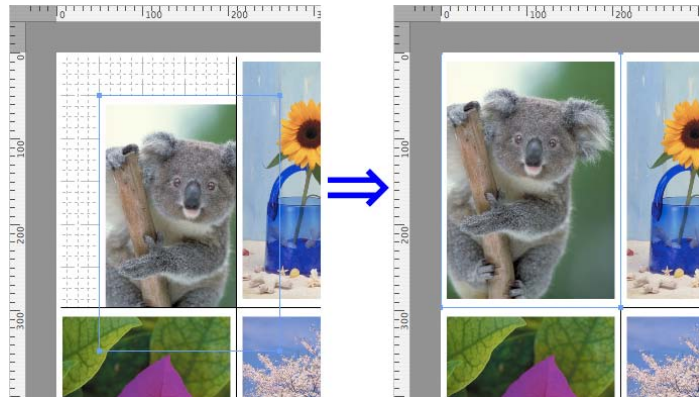


Note

- When several objects are selected, you cannot select “Rotate”.

☐ Laying out Objects Automatically

Click “Auto Arrange” in the tool bar. This automatically lays out objects. Alternatively, you may select “Auto Arrange Object” from the “Object” menu.



Note

- The object layout order varies depending on the “Order” setting on the Page Setup Dialog Box. (→P.523)

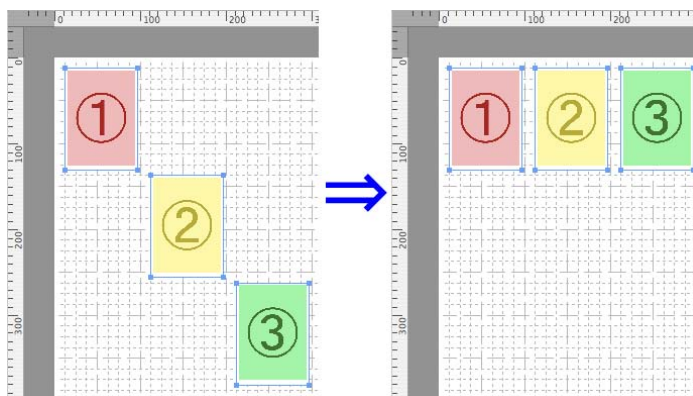
Aligning Objects

You can align objects systematically.

1. Select multiple objects.
2. Select the align menu from the “Object” menu.

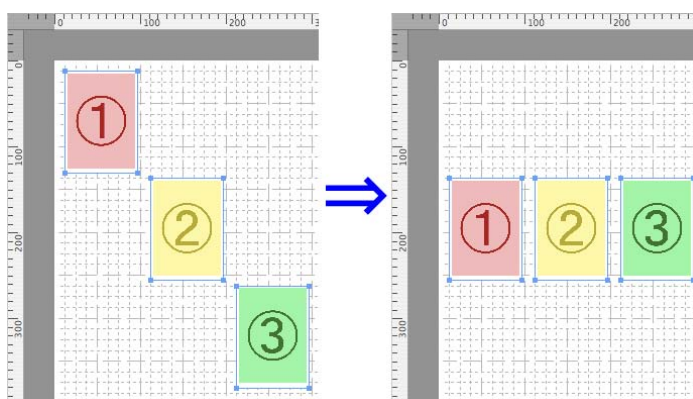
“Align Top”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the top.



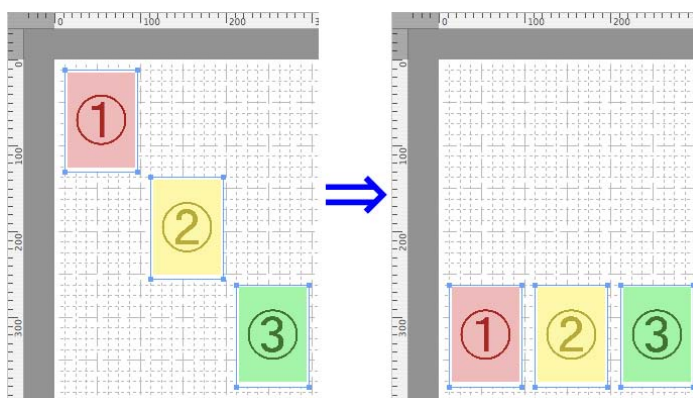
“Center Vertically”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the vertical center.



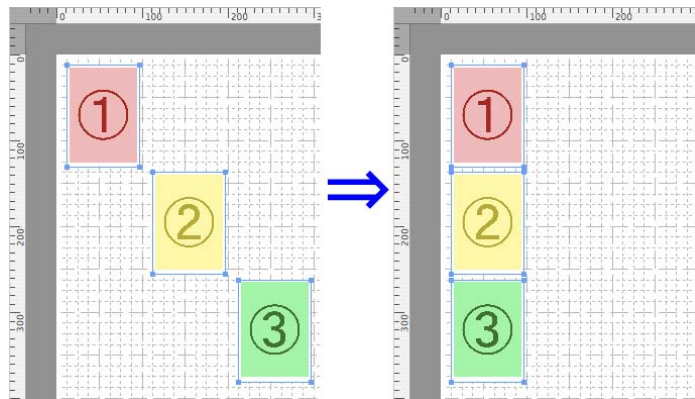
“Align Bottom”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the bottom.



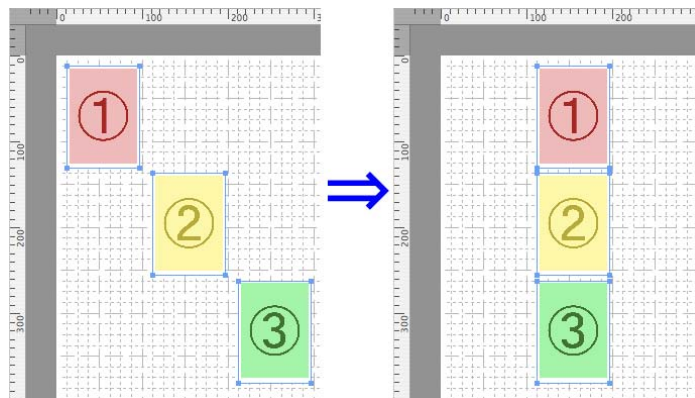
“Align Left”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the left.



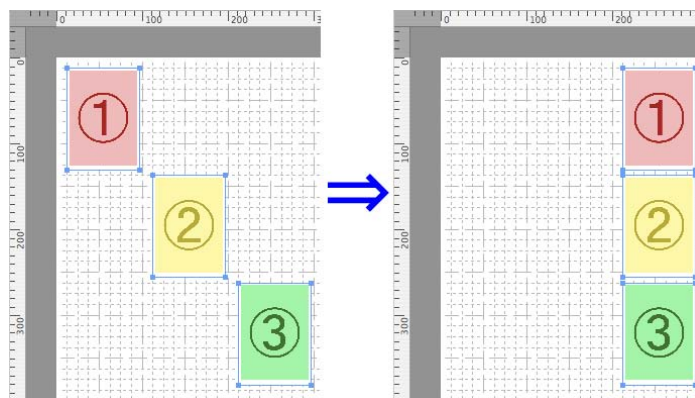
“Center Horizontally”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the horizontal center.



“Align Right”

Lays out the objects, justifying them to the right.



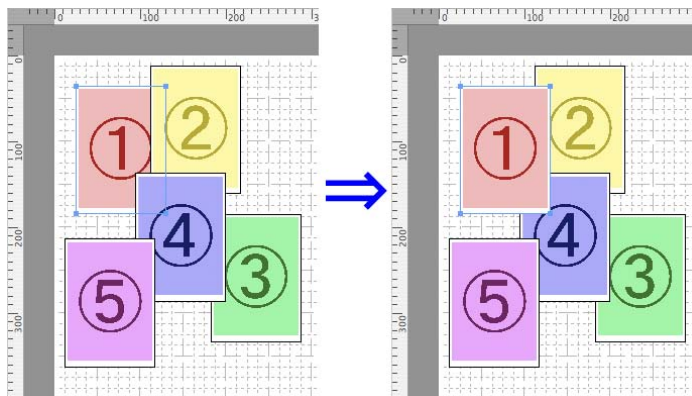
☐ Changing the Object Overlapping Order

You can change the object overlapping order.

1. Select an object.
2. Select the overlapping order menu from the “Object” menu.

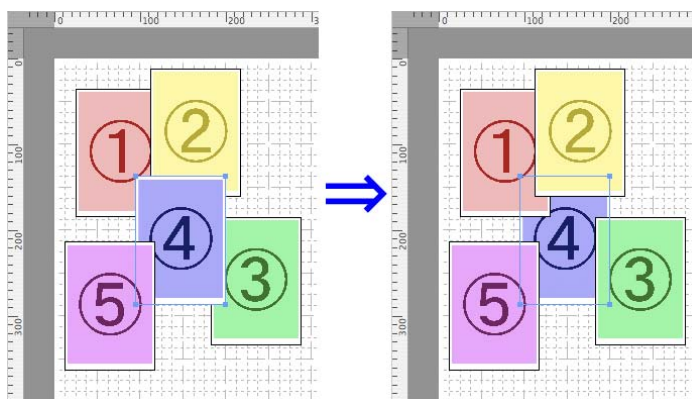
“Bring to Front”

Moves the object to the frontmost position.



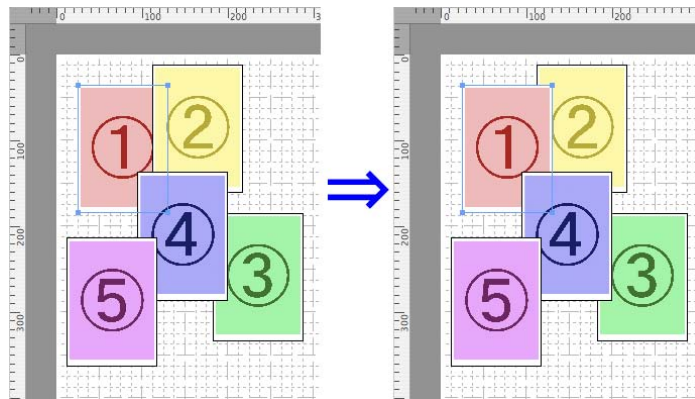
“Send to Back”

Moves the object to the backmost position.



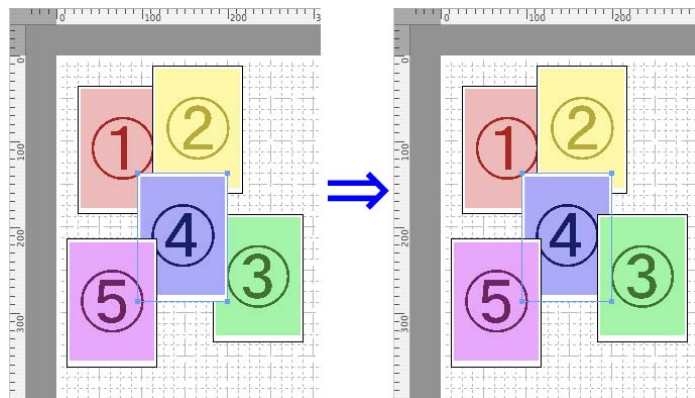
“Bring Forward”

Moves the object one position to the front.



“Send Backward”

Moves the object one position to the back.



Pasting a Copied or Cut Object

1. Click “Copy” or “Cut” from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select “Copy” or “Cut” from the “Edit” menu.
2. Click “Paste” from the toolbar.
Alternatively, you may select “Paste” from the “Edit” menu.



Note

- The copied or cut object is laid out at the end of the page.

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

☐ The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

The main features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy are as follows.

- Allows the document scanned with the Color imageRUNNER to be automatically enlarged and printed.
- You can perform basic printer settings such as printer selection, media type and output profile selection, and matching methods, in addition to borderless printing and enlargement/reduction process without growing through the printer driver.



Note

- The media type, image size, detailed media settings, and the printer settings can cause the actual print output to differ from the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy settings.

☐ Operating Environment

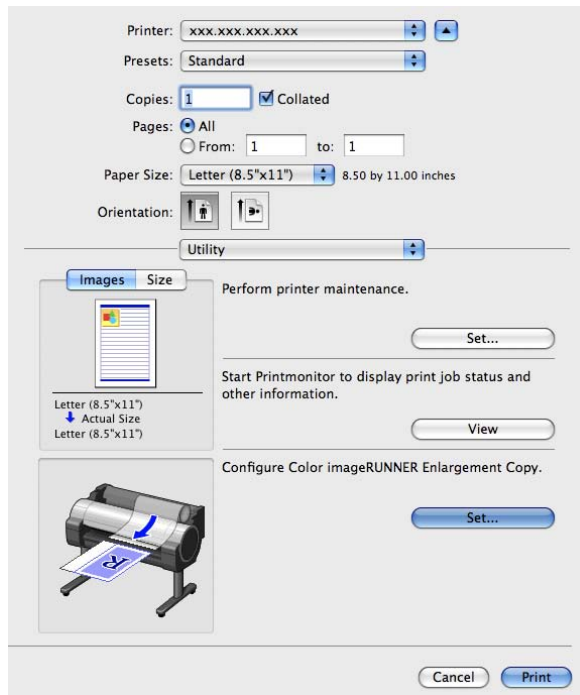
You can use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy in the following environments.

- Compatible Operating System
Mac OS X (10.3.9 to 10.5)
- Software that requires installation
imagePROGRAF Printer Driver

Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy

Follow the procedure below to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

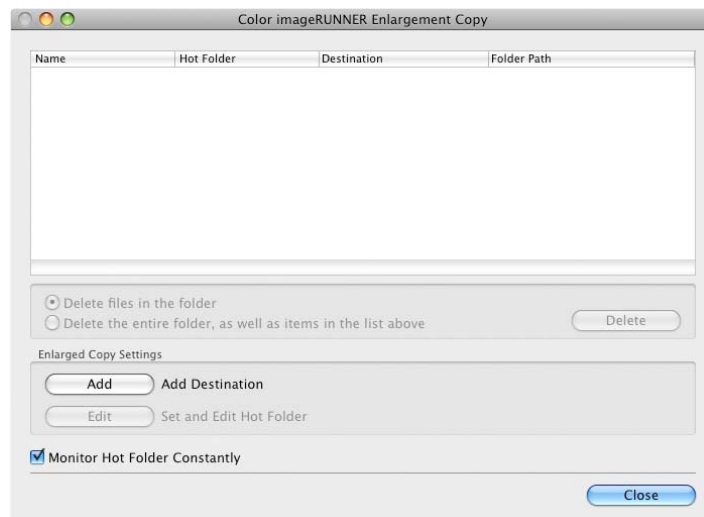
1. Open the “Utility” panel of the “Print” dialog box.



Note

- Your printer is depicted in the lower-left area of this screen.

2. Click the “Set” button in “Configure Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.

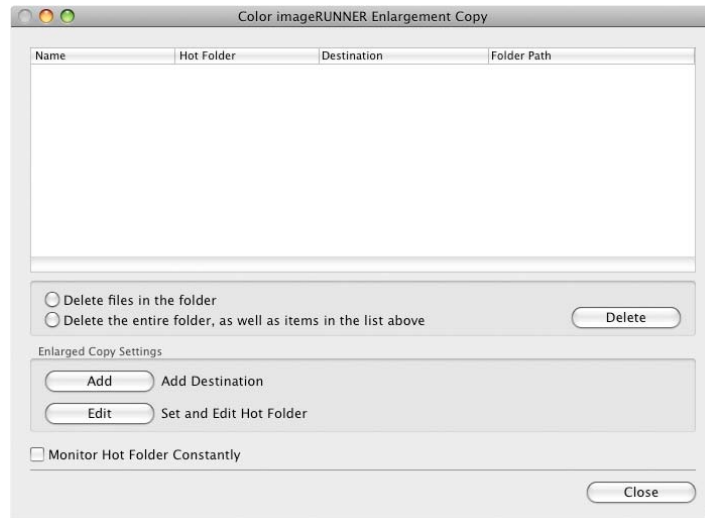


Note

- If you click on the “Monitor Hot Folder Constantly” check box in the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the Dock when starting OS X thereafter.
- You can also start the utility directly by clicking on the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app” icon in “Applications” > “Canon Utilities” > “iR Enlargement Copy”.

☐ Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box

The explanation below is on the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



Note

- For the step to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, see “Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”. (→P.537)

“Delete files in the folder”

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the “Delete” button to delete only files in the hot folder.

“Delete the entire folders, as well as items in the list above”

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click the “Delete” button to delete the hot folder.

“Delete” Button

Select “Delete files in the folder” or “Delete the entire folders, as well as items in the list above” and click this button to delete the hot folder or only files in the hot folder.

“Add” Button

Click the button to open the “Destination Selection” dialog box so that you can add a hot folder.

“Edit” Button

From the Hot Folder list, select a hot folder and click this button to open the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box that allows you to edit the hot folder.

“Monitor Hot Folder Constantly”

If you click on the check box, the icon of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility will appear on the Dock when starting OS X thereafter.

Hot Folder

Hot folder refers to a folder used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

- When transferred to the PC's hot folder, the document data scanned with the Color imageRUNNER is printed in enlarged size from the printer according to the print conditions set in the hot folder.
- You can create a new hot folder, edit or delete an existing one, and set print conditions at will.

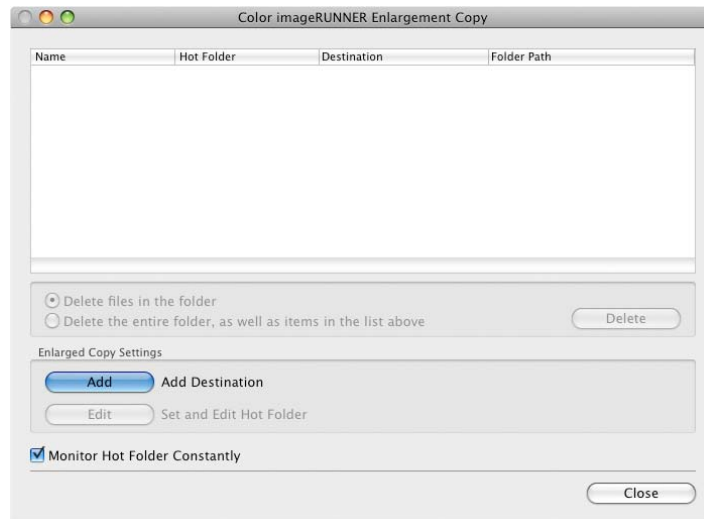


Note

- You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Creating a New Hot Folder

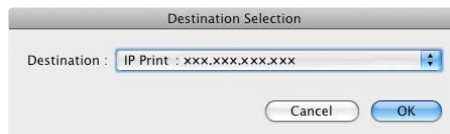
1. Open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



Note

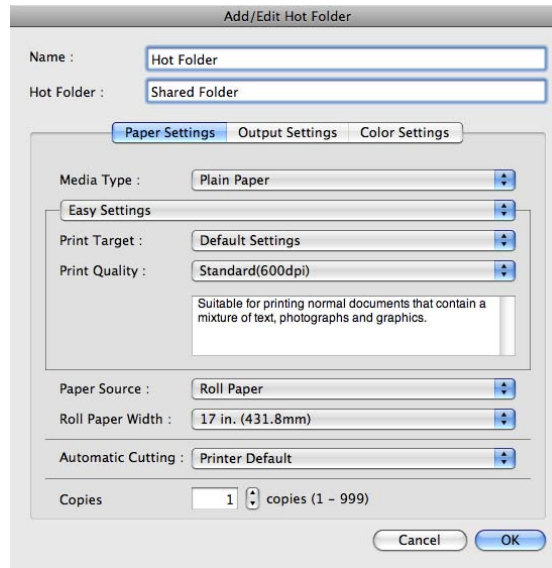
- For the step to open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box, see “Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy”. (→P.537)

2. Click the “Add” button in “Enlarged Copy Settings” to open the “Destination Selection” dialog box.



3. From the printer list in “Destination”, select the printer of destination.

4. Click the “OK” button to open the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box.



5. In “Name”, enter the name to display in the Hot Folder list.
6. In “Hot Folder”, enter the Hot Folder name.
7. Click the “OK” button. The created Hot Folder is listed in the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



8. Click the “Close” button to close the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.
9. From the “Apple” Menu, open the “Sharing” dialog box for “System Preferences”.
10. Select the check box labeled “File Sharing”, and click the “Options” button.
11. Select the check box labeled “Share files and folders using FTP” and “Share files and folders using SMB” to make shared settings.

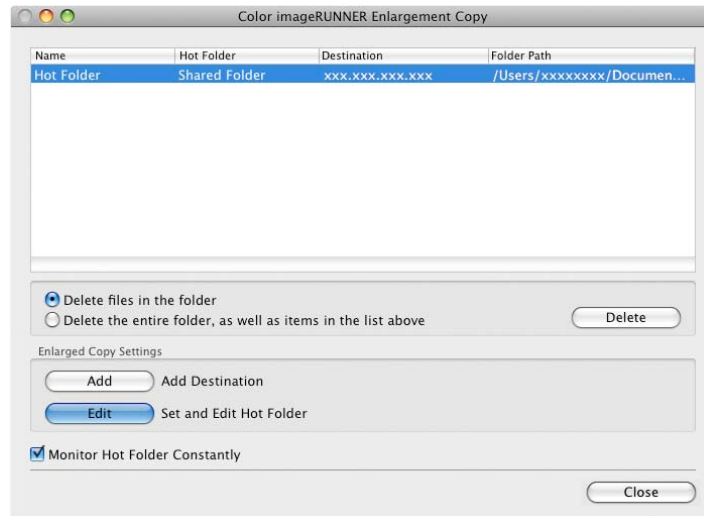


Note

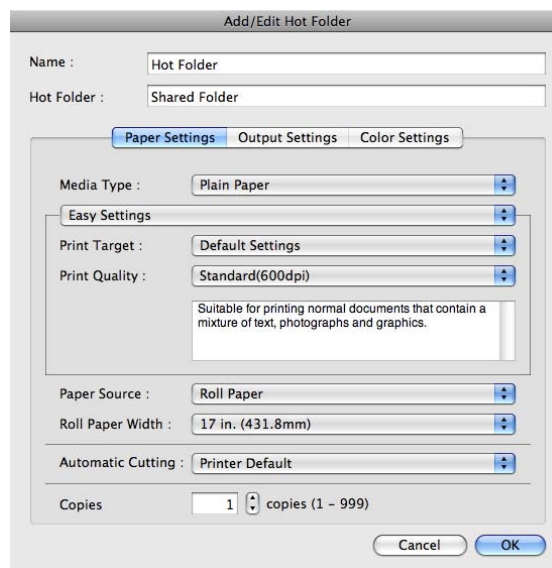
- You can create up to 10 hot folders.

Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions)

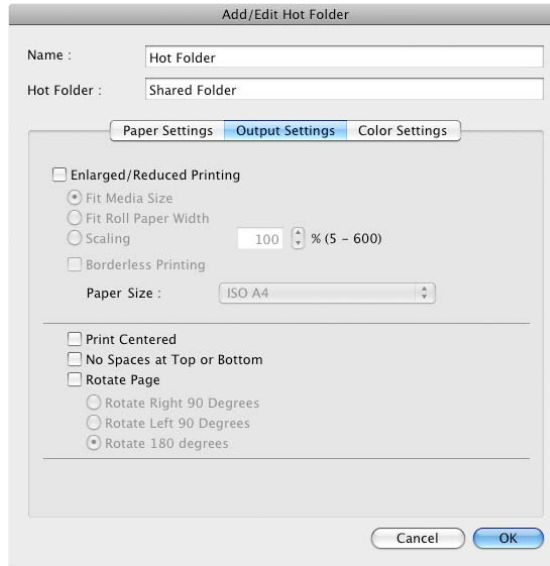
1. Open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



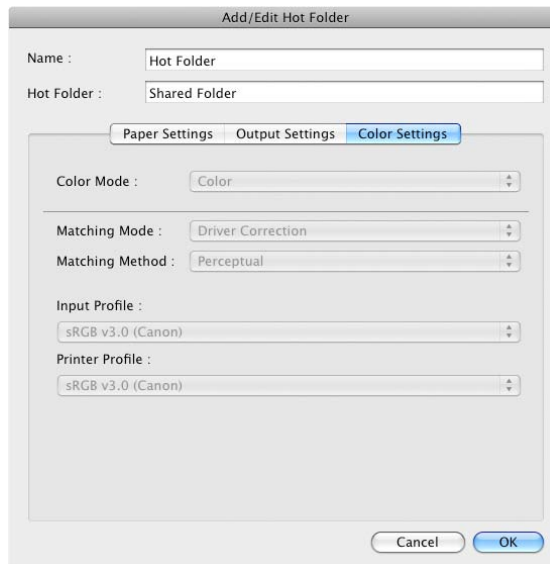
2. Select the Hot Folder from the Hot Folder list.
3. From “Enlarged Copy Settings”, click “Edit” button to open the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box.
4. Make the necessary settings in the Paper Settings Panel. (→P.544)



5. Make the necessary settings in the Output Settings Panel. (→P.549)



6. Make the necessary settings in the Color Settings Panel. (→P.551)



- 7.** Click the “OK” button to close the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box.
- 8.** From the “Apple” Menu, open the “Sharing” dialog box for “System Preferences”.
- 9.** Select the check box labeled “File Sharing”, and click the “Options” button.
- 10.** Select the check box labeled “Share files and folders using FTP” and “Share files and folders using SMB” to make shared settings.

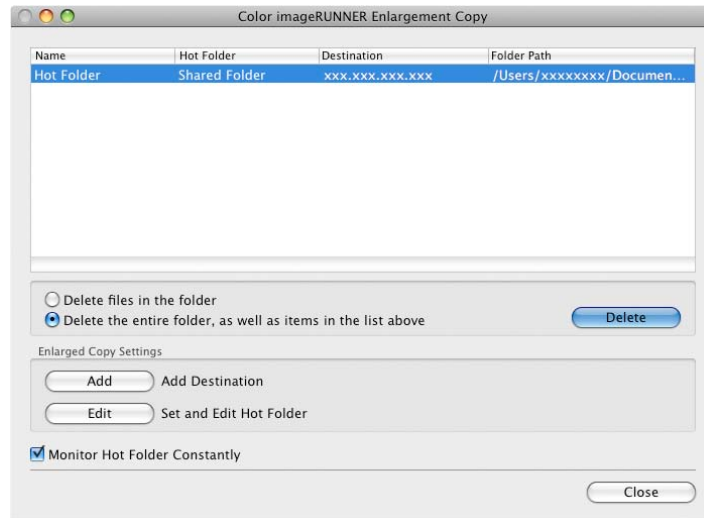


Note

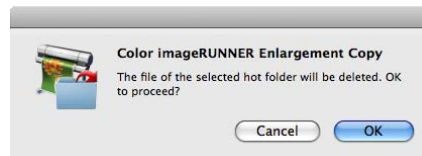
- If you’ve made shared settings when you created a new Hot Folder, you do not need to execute steps 8 to 10.

Deleting a Hot Folder

1. Open the “Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy” dialog box.



2. Select the Hot Folder you want to delete from the Hot Folder list.
3. Select “Delete the entire folders, as well as items in the list above”, and then click the “Delete” button.



4. Read the message and then click the “OK” button.



Note

- Select “Delete files in the folder” to delete only files in the hot folder.

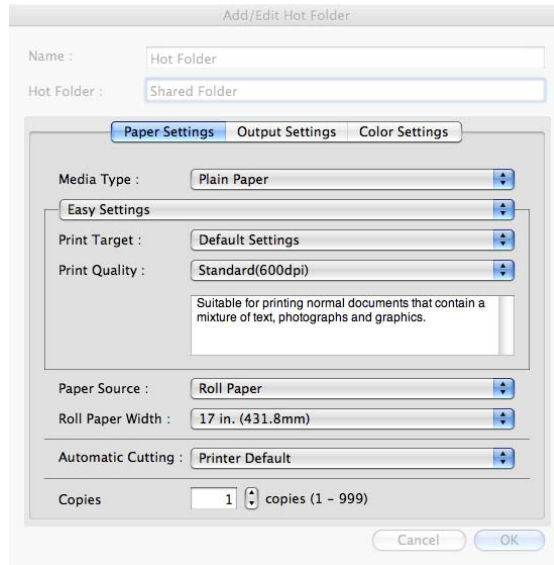
Setting the Print Parameters

You can set the print conditions in the setting panels within the “Add/Edit Hot Folder” dialog box.

The settings available on each panel are as follows.

- Paper Settings Panel (→P.544)
- Output Settings Panel (→P.549)
- Color Settings Panel (→P.551)

Paper Settings Panel



“Easy Settings” / “Advanced Settings”

Two modes are available to provide the optimum print settings for jobs.

The settings available on each mode are as follows.

- Easy Settings (→P.546)
- Advanced Settings (→P.548)

“Media Type”

This allows you to select the media type.



Note

- Always select media type that is actually set in the printer. When the media you chose is different from the media set in the printer, you may not receive the desired print results.

Paper Source

You can select the paper source.

The following settings are available for paper source.

Setting	Details
“Manual”	Select for manual paper feed printing.
“Roll Paper”	Select to print on roll paper.

“Roll Paper Width”

This selects the width of the roll media set to the printer.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

Automatic Cutting

You can set the printer to cut roll paper automatically or print a guideline for cutting.

The following settings are available for automatic cutting.

Setting	Details
“Printer Default”	The value set on the printer operation panel takes priority.
“None”	Each page is not cut after it is printed and printing continues without interruption.
Print Cut Guideline	A print cut guideline is printed after each page and printing continues without interruption.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Copies”

You can input the number of print copies in numerical characters.

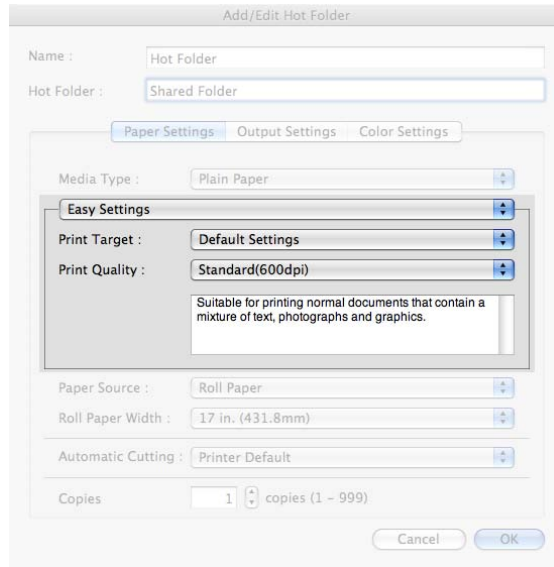


Note

- The maximum value is 999.
- You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button.

Easy Settings

You can easily select the best settings for the print job by just selecting an item from the print target list that matches the content of the document.



“Print Target”

You can easily select the best settings for the print job simply.

If you select each “Print Target” item the corresponding comment for that item is displayed below the list.

Setting	Details
“Default Settings”	Suitable for printing normal documents that contain a mixture of text, photographs, and graphics.
“Office Document”	Suitable for printing handouts as well as general office documents for which print clarity is key.
“Poster”	The best setting for posters. Prints using vivid and high impact colors.
“CAD (Color Line Drawing)”	Prints the fine lines of CAD drawings and other such documents sharp and clear.
CAD (B/W Line Drawing)	Suitable for printing CAD drawings with sharp, dark lines.
“Perspective, GIS”	Suitable for attractive printing of 3D-CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and GIS drawings including maps.
“Photo (Color)”	Suitable for printing photographic images captured with a digital camera.
“Faithful Color Reproduction”	Prints by faithfully reproducing the colors of the original image.
“Custom Settings”	Suitable for printing documents for which Advanced Settings have been specified.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”

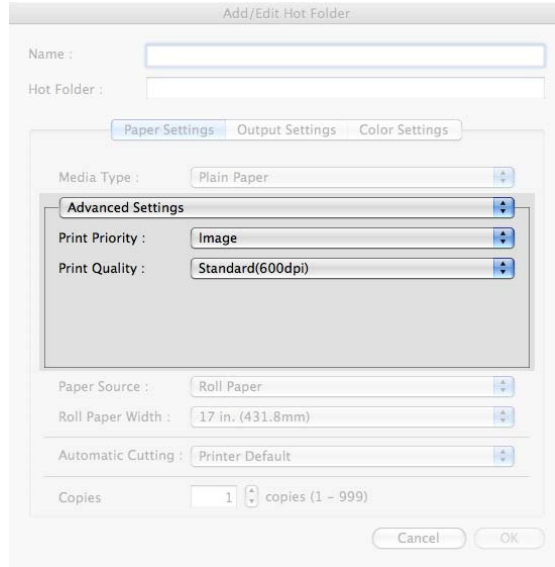


Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Advanced Settings

Presents detailed settings for the print priority, the print quality, and other items so you can select the values for these settings yourself.



“Print Priority”

Select a print quality mode that is appropriate for the print job.

Setting	Details
“Image”	This mode achieves the best results for printing photographic images and illustrations.
“Line Drawing”	This mode is best for printing CAD drawings with fine lines or wall newsheet or other documents that contain large amounts of text. However, you may not achieve the quality you expect with printing photographs or other images with many filled areas. For these types of jobs, select “Image”.
“Office Document”	Prints common office documents, such as proposals, memos for distribution, etc., so they are easy to read.



Note

- The number of settings available for selection depends on the media type.

“Print Quality”

Selecting print quality strikes a balance between the quality of the printed image and printing speed. The level of the print quality and resolution settings are displayed in the following combinations.

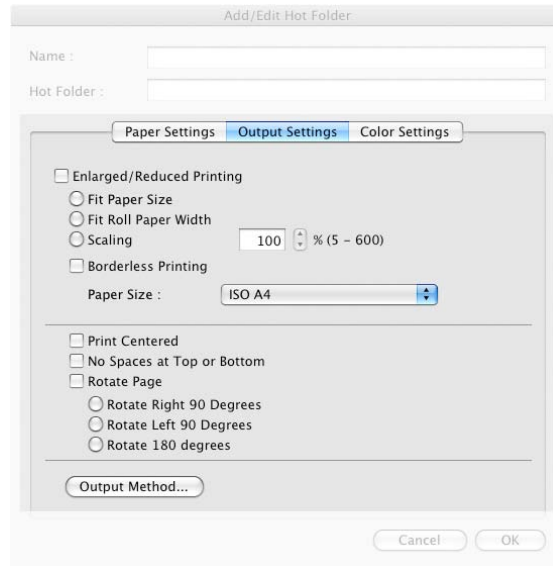
Setting	Details
Print Quality	“Highest” / “High” / “Standard” / “Draft”
Resolution	“1200dpi” / “600dpi” / “300dpi”



Note

- The availability of settings is determined by the media type and print priority selections.
- Printing time is longer and more ink is consumed with **High** than with **Draft**, however, print quality is higher.
- Printing time is shorter and less ink is consumed with **Draft** than with **High**, however, print quality is lower.

Output Settings Panel



“Enlarged/Reduced Printing”

Select the method for enlarged/reduced printing.

The following settings are available for enlarged/reduced printing.

Setting	Details
Fit Paper Size	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the media size selected for output. Select the media size to print from Paper Size .
“Fit Roll Paper Width”	Enlarges/reduces the whole page automatically to fit the width of the roll paper with the page width. *Make sure that the width of the roll paper in the printer is set correctly for “Roll Paper Width” in the Paper Settings panel. *Displayed only if rolls are selected in Paper Source .
Scaling	Enlarges/reduces the whole page by the scaling rate as specified. Input the scaling value in numerical characters. You can specify a range between 5 and 600%. *You can change the numbers by clicking either “▲” button or “▼” button. *Although Scaling can be set to make the image larger than the media size, the part that does not fit in the media cannot be printed. *This is not displayed when a checkmark is placed in “Borderless Printing”.

“Borderless Printing”

You can print the media without margins on all sides when the roll paper with the specific width and the specific media type is used.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

Paper Size

You can select the size of the print media.



Note

- This is not displayed when “Fit Roll Paper Width” is set in “Enlarged/Reduced Printing”.

“Print Centered”

Select this feature to print the image in the center of a cut sheet or to print left and right margins evenly from the edges of roll paper.



Note

- This feature is useful when you print the document enlarged or reduced with **Scaling** as well. When an image is scaled, it is always enlarged or reduced in reference to a starting point in the upper left corner of the page. If the image is reduced, the bottom and right margins are enlarged and the top and left margins remain unchanged. At that point, you can set all margins evenly with this feature.

“No Spaces at Top or Bottom”

You can set the printer to print without any empty area when the print data contains empty area at the top or bottom. Since the printer does not feed paper over the empty area, you can save paper.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Rotate Page”

Select the method for rotating page.

The following settings are available for rotating page.

Setting	Details
“Rotate Right 90 Degrees”	Rotates the portrait page right 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When “Fit Roll Paper Width” is selected under “Enlarged/Reduced Printing”, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
“Rotate Left 90 Degrees”	Rotates the portrait page left 90 degrees and print in landscape orientation. When the rotated page can fit in the width of roll paper, the page is rotated automatically, and when it can not fit in the width of roll paper, the page is not rotated. *When “Fit Roll Paper Width” is selected under “Enlarged/Reduced Printing”, then the image is enlarged or reduced after rotating to fit the width of the roll paper.
“Rotate 180 degrees”	Allows you to rotate the image 180 degrees from the vertical to the right.



Note

- Available only if rolls are selected in **Paper Source**.

“Output Method” Button

Click the button to open the “Output Method” dialog box.

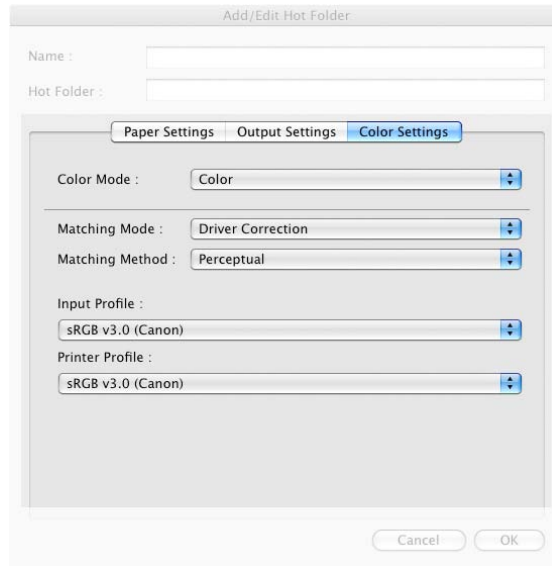
In this dialog box, you can specify the object output method.



Note

- To print after saving jobs in the temporary storage space, select “Save data before printing”.

Color Settings Panel



“Color Mode”

You can select a color mode to suit the print job.

Setting	Details
“Color”	Enables color printing.
“Monochrome”	Disables color printing and converts image from continuous color to grayscaled monochrome.
“Color (CAD)”	Prints lines in the best color possible so they are easy to see.
“Monochrome Bitmap”	Prints all colors other than white in black.
“Monochrome (BK ink)”	Select to print all lines with black ink.



Note

- The availability of settings depends on the print priority and media type selections.

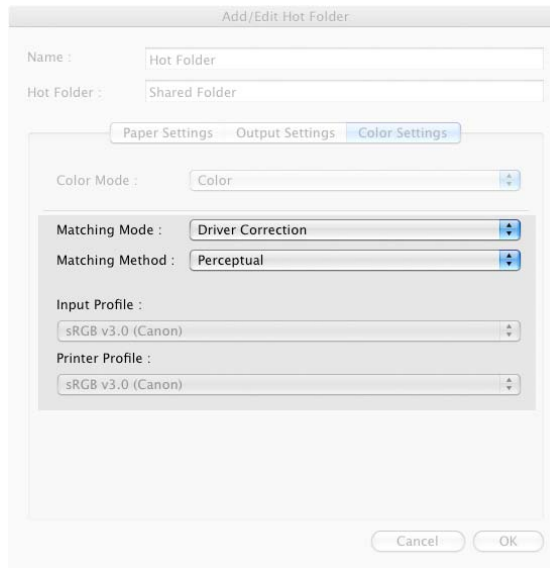
“Mode”

Under “Mode”, select the matching mode.

Setting	Details
Driver Matching Mode (→P.552)	Independent driver color matching is performed.
ICC Matching Mode (→P.553)	Color matching using ColorGear is performed.
ColorSync (→P.554)	Color matching using CMM from Mac OS is performed.
“No Correction”	No color matching is performed. Select this option when you want to perform color matching in the software application.

Driver Matching Mode

1. Under “Mode”, select **Driver Matching Mode**.

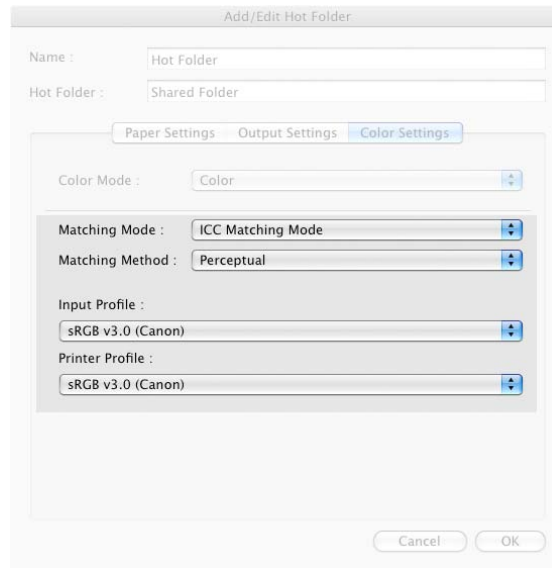


2. Click “Matching Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Auto”	Automatically selects the best color matching method for each Image, Graphics, Text.
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
Saturation	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.

☐ ICC Matching Mode

1. Under “Mode”, select **ICC Matching Mode**.



2. Click “Method” list, and then select a setting.

Setting	Details
“Perceptual”	Gives priority to color hue in color matching suitable for output of photographic images.
“Saturation”	Gives priority to vividness in color matching.
Colorimetric	Gives priority to reducing the differences in color between the original as it appears on the screen and the printed output.
Colorimetric (No White-Point Correction)	Performs Colorimetric color matching but without white point correction.

3. Click the “Input Profile” list, and then select an input profile.



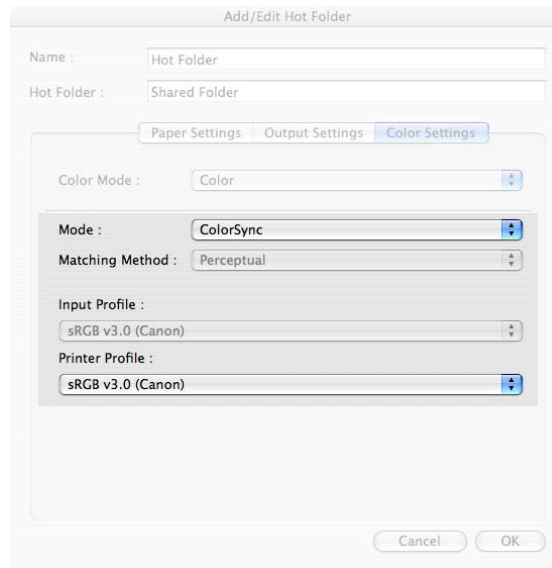
Note

- To match the color on the printing, select the input profile for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy of the Color imageRUNNER type in use.

4. Click the “Printer Profile” list, and then select a printer profile.

ColorSync

1. Under “Mode”, select “ColorSync”.



2. Click the “Printer Profile” list, and then select a printer profile.



Note

- Available when using Mac OS X 10.3.9-10.4.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.

Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.

This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.

To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

1. Register a hot folder on your computer.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.

2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

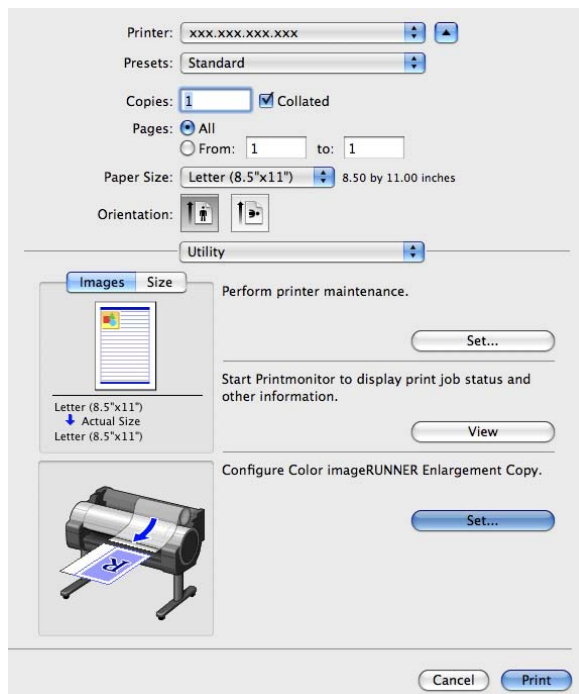
After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders.

Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** dialog box, either double-click the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.app** icon after navigating to **Canon Utilities** - "iR Enlargement Copy" in the **Applications** folder or click **C Set** in the **Utility** pane



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder. For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.

For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.

Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.



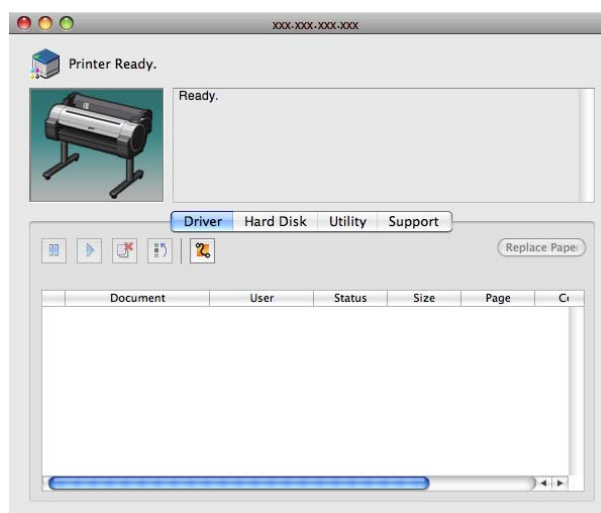
Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy.

Printmonitor

☐ The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

“imagePROGRAF Printmonitor” is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

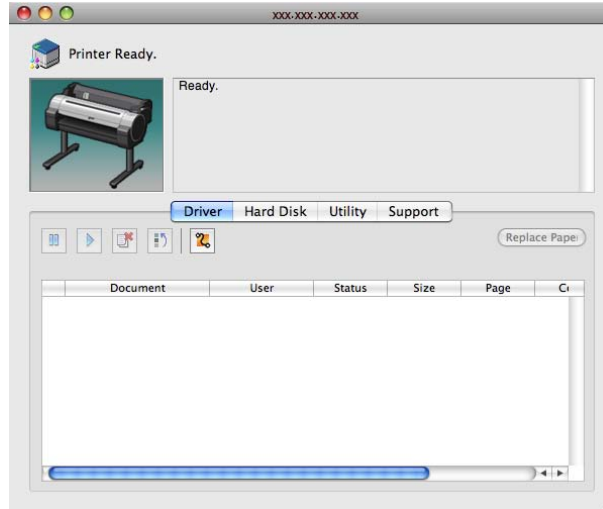


Note


- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, select the printer again as follows.
 1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
 2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
 3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu. Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
 4. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer. After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor

You can use the **Driver** Panel in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor for operations such as pausing and canceling print jobs.




Preempting Other Jobs

If you select a print job and click the  button, the selected job is printed ahead of the job that currently precedes it in the print queue.

Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the  button pauses printing of the selected job.

To resume printing of a paused print job, select the print job and click the  button.



Note

- Once all the print data for a print job has been sent to the printer, the job can no longer be paused/resumed.

Canceling Print Jobs

Selecting a print job and clicking the  button cancels printing of the selected job.



Note

- You cannot cancel other users' print jobs.

Printing Held Jobs

Printing of the job with a “Status” of “Holding” is paused because the paper specified by the driver does not match the paper currently loaded in the printer.

Use the procedure below to print the held job.

1. Select the held job and click the “Replace Paper” button.
2. Replace the paper in the printer with the correct paper.



Note

- To continue printing without changing the paper in the printer, select the held job and click “Continue to print” button.

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv4)
 - Compatible operating systems
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
 - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
 - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
 - Windows Server 2008 (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition)
 - Windows XP Professional x64 Edition
 - Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
 - Windows Vista x64
 - Windows Server 2008 x64
 - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
 - Unix (Solaris 9)
 - Unix (Red Hat 9)
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over a TCP/IP network (when using IPv6)
 - Compatible operating systems
 - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
 - Windows Server 2008 (Standard Edition or Enterprise Edition)
 - Windows Vista x64
 - Windows Server 2008 x64
 - Mac OS X 10.3.9 or later



Note

- When using IPv6, you must specify IPv6 on the Control Panel or in RemoteUI. For instructions, see “Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings”. (→P.568) or see “Configuring the Printer’s TCP/IP Network Settings”. (→P.570)
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is supported in Mac OS X 10.3.9 or later.

- Printing over an AppleTalk network
 - Compatible operating systems
 - Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

**Note**

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.
- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.
- Printing over a NetWare network
 - Compatible servers
 - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
 - Compatible clients
 - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
 - Windows XP (Professional)
 - Compatible computer
 - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

**Note**

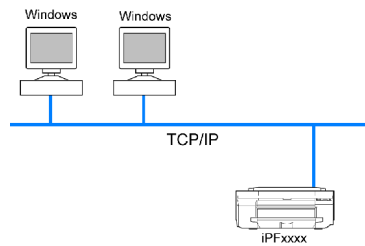
- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network Environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

- Example of a Windows network

In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.

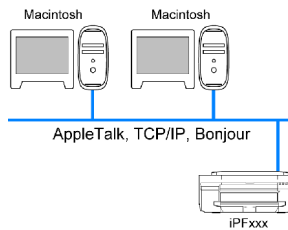


Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network

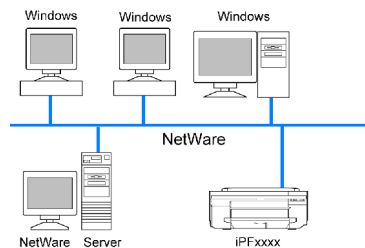
In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour (Zeroconf) functions.



Note

- The imagePROGRAF printer driver is not compatible with AppleTalk.

- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use it in conjunction with TCP/IP or AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer in a TCP/IP network.

The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Setup Guide.

Configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (→P.564)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.565)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.567)



Important

- If you use a DHCP server for automatic assignment of the printer's IP address, printing may no longer be possible after the printer is turned off and on. This is because an IP address different from before has been assigned. Thus, when using DHCP server functions, consult your network administrator and configure the settings in one of the following ways.
 - Configure the setting for dynamic DNS updating
In RemoteUI, activate the setting **Enable DNS Dynamic Update**. (→P.570)
 - Configure the setting for assignment of the same IP address each time the printer starts up



Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in networks other than TCP/IP networks. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser. For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.569)

☐ Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

On a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.452)

When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv4** tab.
5. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
6. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
8. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv6** tab.
5. In **IPv6**, select **On**.
6. When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select **On** in **Stateless Address**.

Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select **On** in **DHCPv6**.




Note

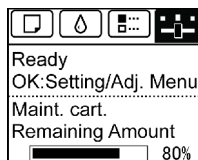
- When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select **On** in **Manual** and enter the **IPv6 Address** and **Prefix Length**.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



Note

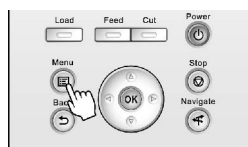
- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv4 Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IP Address**, and then press the **OK** button.
8. After you press ◀ or ▶ to select the input field, numerical input is possible.
9. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to enter the value.



Note

- Pressing the ▲ button increases the number by 1. The maximum value is “9,” after which “0” is displayed.
 - Pressing the ▼ button decreases the number by 1. The minimum value is “0,” after which “9” is displayed.
 - Hold down ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the value continuously.
 - Make sure the IP address you enter for the printer is not the same as any computer IP address in your network.
10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to complete the settings, and then press the **OK** button.
 11. Press the **Menu** button.
If you have changed the settings, a confirmation message is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.





Important

- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

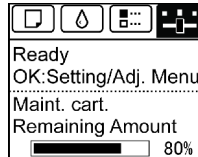
This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.

To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's MAC address.

You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab



2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **MAC Address**, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- You can investigate the MAC address by printing an interface setting report. (→P.65)

2. In Windows, open a command prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding MAC addresses.

```
arp -s [IP address] [the printer's MAC address you have verified]
```

Example: `arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-1E-8F-xx-xx-xx`



Note

- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format "arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:1E:8F:xx:xx:xx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
- ```
ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
```

Example: `ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479`



#### Note

- In "-l," the "l" is the letter "l".
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format "ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.



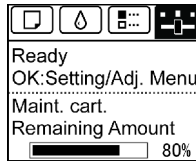
Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway are set to “0.0.0.0.” Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.  
For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.569)

## ☰ Configuring TCP/IPv6 Network Settings

When printing in a TCP/IPv6 network, you must configure the TCP/IPv6 settings on the Control Panel. Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IPv6 network settings.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (☰).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **TCP/IP**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **IPv6 Support**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.



Important

- Once you set **IPv6 Support** to **On**, the **IPv6 StlessAddrs** setting takes effect.
- You can also configure **IPv6 StlessAddrs** and **DHCPv6** from the printer Control Panel.



## Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.

To access RemoteUI, start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.

http://“printer IP address or name”/

Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.570)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.574)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.575)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.577)



### Note

- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. To change the display language, select the desired language under **Language** before logging on in administrator mode.



### Important

- Use Netscape Navigator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

## ☰ Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

### When using an IPv4 IP address

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv4** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

| Item                             | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Default Setting |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Use DHCP</b>                  | Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.                                                                                                                                                                          | Off             |
| <b>Use BOOTP</b>                 | Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.                                                                                                                                                                         | Off             |
| <b>Use RARP</b>                  | Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.                                                                                                                                                                          | Off             |
| <b>Enable DNS Dynamic Update</b> | Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.                                                                                                                                                                    | Off             |
| <b>Use Zeroconf Function</b>     | Activate this setting to use Bonjour.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | On              |
| <b>IP Address</b>                | Specify the printer's IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 0.0.0.0         |
| <b>Subnet Mask</b>               | Specify the printer's subnet mask.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 0.0.0.0         |
| <b>Gateway Address</b>           | Specify the printer's default gateway.                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 0.0.0.0         |
| <b>LPD Printing</b>              | Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On              |
| <b>IPP Printing</b>              | Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On              |
| <b>IPP Printer URI</b>           | Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters. When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL which should not exceed 255 bytes for all characters for “http://“IP address”/IPP-URI.” | printer         |
| <b>RAW Printing</b>              | Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On              |
| <b>RAW Mode Bi-direction</b>     | Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.                                                                                                                                                                         | Off             |
| <b>FTP Printing</b>              | Activate this setting to use FTP Printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | On              |
| <b>Use Discovery</b>             | Activate this setting to use Discovery.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | On              |
| <b>Scope</b>                     | Enter the search range.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | default         |

| Item                                | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Default Setting        |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>SMTP Server Address</b>          | Specify the SMTP server's IP address. You can also specify the SMTP server domain name, if desired.                                                                                                                      | 0.0.0.0                |
| <b>Primary DNS Server Address</b>   | Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                        | 0.0.0.0                |
| <b>Secondary DNS Server Address</b> | Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                      | 0.0.0.0                |
| <b>DNS Host Name</b>                | Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.              | NB-18GBxxxxxxxxxxxx    |
| <b>DNS Domain Name</b>              | Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character. | blank                  |
| <b>Multicast DNS Service Name</b>   | Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name. (1-63 characters)<br>This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.                                                                                      | Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx) |

**7.** Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.



**Note**

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes up to two minutes to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

## When using an IPv6 IP address

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
 http://“printer IP address or name”/  
 Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IPv6** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

| Item                                                  |                               | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Default Setting  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>Use IPv6</b>                                       |                               | Activate to enable IPv6.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Off              |
| <b>Use a stateful address</b>                         |                               | Activate when using a DHCP server to acquire the IP address.                                                                                                                                                             | Off              |
| <b>Use a stateless address</b>                        |                               | Activate when using an IPv6-compatible router to acquire the IP address.                                                                                                                                                 | On               |
| <b>Use a manual address</b>                           |                               | Activate when configuring the IP address manually.                                                                                                                                                                       | Off              |
|                                                       | <b>IP Address</b>             | Enter the printer's IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                          | blank            |
|                                                       | <b>Prefix Length</b>          | Enter the IP address prefix length.                                                                                                                                                                                      | blank            |
|                                                       | <b>Default Router Address</b> | Enter the default router address.                                                                                                                                                                                        | blank            |
|                                                       | <b>Prefix Length</b>          | Enter the prefix length of the default router address.                                                                                                                                                                   | blank            |
| <b>Primary DNS Server Address</b>                     |                               | Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                        | blank            |
| <b>Secondary DNS Server Address</b>                   |                               | Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.                                                                                                                                                                      | blank            |
| <b>Use the same host name and domain name as IPv4</b> |                               | Activate when using the same DNS host and domain names as for IPv4.                                                                                                                                                      | Off              |
|                                                       | <b>DNS Host Name</b>          | Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-4 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and “-” (hyphens). Do not use numbers or “-” for the first character or “-” for the last character.               | NB-18GBip6xxxxxx |
|                                                       | <b>DNS Domain Name</b>        | Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, “-” (hyphens), and “.” (periods). Do not use numbers, “-”, or “.” for the first character, or “-” or “.” for the last character. | blank            |

| Item                                                  | Details                                                  | Default Setting |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Perform dynamic updating of stateful addresses</b> | Activate when assigning a stateful address dynamically.  | Off             |
| <b>Dynamically update the stateless address</b>       | Activate when assigning a stateless address dynamically. | Off             |
| <b>Dynamically update the manual address</b>          | Activate when assigning a manual address dynamically.    | Off             |

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

## Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

| Item              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Default Setting        |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Phase Type</b> | Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose <b>Phase 2</b> . If you will not use AppleTalk, choose <b>Disabled</b> .                                                                  | Disabled               |
| <b>Name (*1)</b>  | Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.                                   | Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx) |
| <b>Zone (*2)</b>  | Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: Also avoid using “*” (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string. | *                      |

\*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is “Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx).” (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer’s MAC address.)

\*2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer’s zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk “\*” entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

## Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

| Item                     |                              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                  | Default Setting               |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Frame Type</b>        |                              | Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.                                                                                                                                             | Disabled                      |
| <b>NCP Burst Mode</b>    |                              | Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.                                   | On                            |
| <b>Print Application</b> |                              | Choose the print service. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Bindery PServer</b></li> <li>• <b>RPrinter</b></li> <li>• <b>NDS PServer</b></li> <li>• <b>NPrinter</b></li> </ul> | NDS PServer                   |
| <b>Packet Signature</b>  |                              | Select <b>If Requested by Server</b> to use packet signature.                                                                                                                            | <b>If Requested by Server</b> |
| <b>Bindery PServer</b>   | <b>File Server Name</b>      | Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                  | -                             |
|                          | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                                         | -                             |
|                          | <b>Print Server Password</b> | Set a password for the print server.<br>(0-20 characters)                                                                                                                                | -                             |
|                          | <b>Polling Interval</b>      | Specify the interval to confirm jobs.<br>(1-15 seconds)                                                                                                                                  | 5                             |
| <b>RPrinter</b>          | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                                         | -                             |

| Item               |                              | Details                                                                               | Default Setting |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                    | <b>Printer Number</b>        | Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server.<br>(0-15)    | 0               |
| <b>NDS PServer</b> | <b>Tree Name</b>             | Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-32 characters) | -               |
|                    | <b>Context Name</b>          | Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-255 characters)  | -               |
|                    | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-64 characters)                      | -               |
|                    | <b>Print Server Password</b> | Set a password for the print server.<br>(0-20 characters)                             | -               |
|                    | <b>Polling Interval</b>      | Specify the interval to confirm jobs.<br>(1-255 seconds)                              | 5               |
| <b>NPrinter</b>    | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                      | -               |
|                    | <b>Printer Number</b>        | Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server.<br>(0-254)   | 0               |

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.



## ☰ Specifying Printer-Related Information

Specify device information, security, and email notification settings as follows.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.

To change the administrator password, click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

6. Refer to the table of settings for device information, security, and email notification as you complete these settings.

Security setting items are displayed when you click the **Change Password** button in the **Security** group.

### Device Information Settings

| Item                    | Details                                                                | Default Setting |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Device Name</b>      | Enter a device name.<br>(0-32 characters)                              | blank           |
| <b>Location</b>         | Enter the location where the device is installed.<br>(0-32 characters) | blank           |
| <b>Administrator</b>    | Enter the administrator's name.<br>(0-32 characters)                   | blank           |
| <b>Phone</b>            | Enter the administrator's contact information.<br>(0-32 characters)    | blank           |
| <b>Comments(E-mail)</b> | Enter any comments regarding the administrator.<br>(0-32 characters)   | blank           |

### Security Settings


| Item                | Details                                                    | Default Setting |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>New Password</b> | Enter the new password.<br>(0-9999999)                     | blank           |
| <b>Confirm</b>      | Enter the new password again to confirm it.<br>(0-9999999) | blank           |

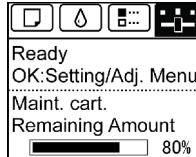
On the **Security** settings screen, besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as IP address-based SNMP or TCP usage restrictions, MAC address-based access restrictions, or IPP and FTP authentication settings.

7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

## Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto Detect**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Off**, and then press the **OK** button.

The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.

The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press the **OK** button.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Ethernet type, and then press the **OK** button.

The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press the **OK** button.

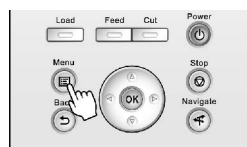
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press the **OK** button.

The display reverts to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

13. Press the **Menu** button.

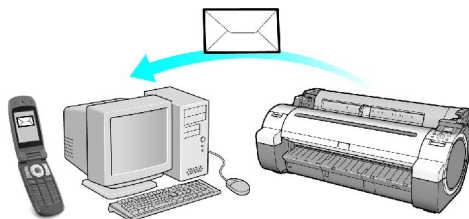
After the confirmation message is displayed, press the **OK** button.

The new settings will take effect after the printer restarts.



## ☐ Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables. For detailed instructions, see "Specifying Printer-Related Information". (→P.577)



### Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.
- Mail server authentication is only supported with imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

## Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.



### Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see “Configuring the IP Address on the Printer”. (→P.563)
- For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.569)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.

http://“printer IP address or name”/

Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/

2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.



### Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.

# Network Setting (Windows)

## ☰ Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

The procedure described below is the configuration based on the LPR or Raw protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).



### Important

- If you will use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - [Configuring the IP Address on the Printer \(→P.563\)](#)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.  
After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **Close** to close the printer properties window.

## Sharing the Printer in Windows

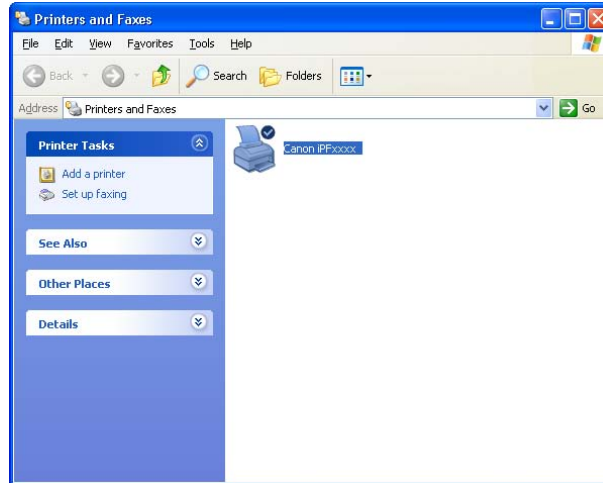
If you set up a computer as a print server in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008, the computer can receive print jobs sent from other computers (clients) connected to it for printing. This topic describes how to share the printer in Windows.



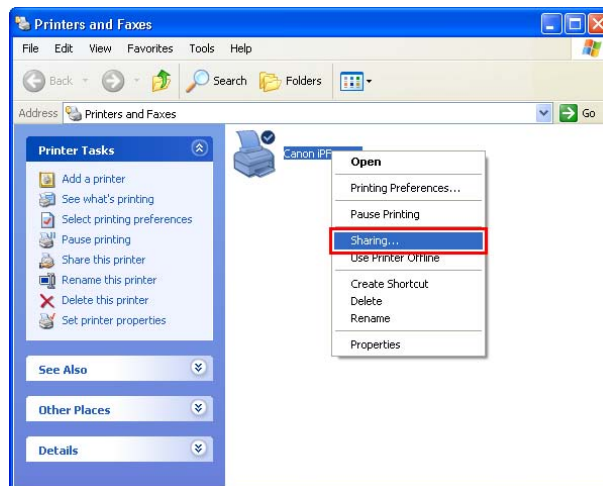
### Important

- We recommend that your network administrator configure your network for printer sharing.

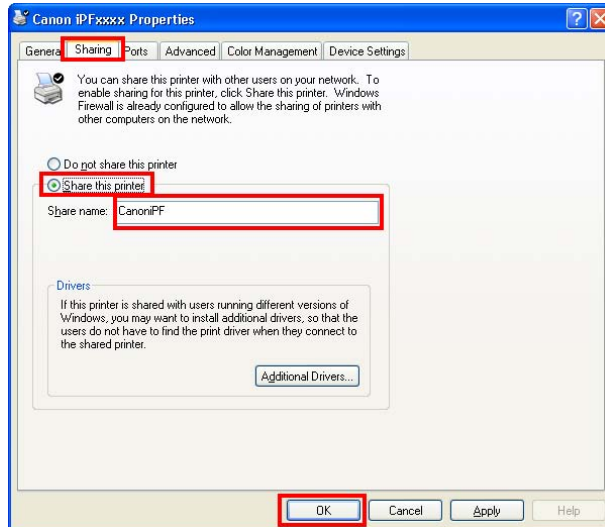
#### 1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.



#### 2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Sharing** to open the printer properties window.



3. On the **Sharing** sheet, click **Share this printer** and enter the shared name.



4. To print jobs from clients running other versions of Windows, click **Additional Drivers** and follow the instructions to install the printer driver of the corresponding version.

If you are prompted to choose the location of the printer driver file, insert the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and specify the folder where the printer driver is located.

5. Click **OK**.



#### Important

- When installing the printer driver on client computers, select "Network Printer" on the connection type screen in the printer wizard, and then select the printer shared from the computer set up as the print server.

## ☰ Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

| Item                     |                              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                  | Default Setting               |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Frame Type</b>        |                              | Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.                                                                                                                                             | Disabled                      |
| <b>NCP Burst Mode</b>    |                              | Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.                                   | On                            |
| <b>Print Application</b> |                              | Choose the print service. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Bindery PServer</b></li> <li>• <b>RPrinter</b></li> <li>• <b>NDS PServer</b></li> <li>• <b>NPrinter</b></li> </ul> | NDS PServer                   |
| <b>Packet Signature</b>  |                              | Select <b>If Requested by Server</b> to use packet signature.                                                                                                                            | <b>If Requested by Server</b> |
| <b>Bindery PServer</b>   | <b>File Server Name</b>      | Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                  | -                             |
|                          | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                                         | -                             |
|                          | <b>Print Server Password</b> | Set a password for the print server.<br>(0-20 characters)                                                                                                                                | -                             |
|                          | <b>Polling Interval</b>      | Specify the interval to confirm jobs.<br>(1-15 seconds)                                                                                                                                  | 5                             |
| <b>RPrinter</b>          | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                                                                                                                         | -                             |



| Item               |                              | Details                                                                               | Default Setting |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                    | <b>Printer Number</b>        | Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server.<br>(0-15)    | 0               |
| <b>NDS PServer</b> | <b>Tree Name</b>             | Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-32 characters) | -               |
|                    | <b>Context Name</b>          | Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server.<br>(0-255 characters)  | -               |
|                    | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-64 characters)                      | -               |
|                    | <b>Print Server Password</b> | Set a password for the print server.<br>(0-20 characters)                             | -               |
|                    | <b>Polling Interval</b>      | Specify the interval to confirm jobs.<br>(1-255 seconds)                              | 5               |
| <b>NPrinter</b>    | <b>Print Server Name</b>     | Specify the name of a NetWare print server.<br>(0-47 characters)                      | -               |
|                    | <b>Printer Number</b>        | Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server.<br>(0-254)   | 0               |

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

## ☰ Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.

Follow these steps to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.



### Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.



### Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.452)

## Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Click the **NetWare** tab and select the frame type in the **NetWare Frame Type** list.
5. Click the **IPv4** tab and select **ETHERNET II** in the **Frame Type** list.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.




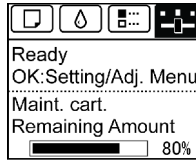
### Important

- You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

## Specifying the frame type using the printer Control Panel

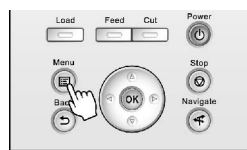
1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **NetWare**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.  
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Frame Type**, and then press the **OK** button.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the frame type to use, and then press the **OK** button.  
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Print Service**, and then press the **OK** button.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired print service, and then press the **OK** button.  
The display reverts to the **NetWare** menu.
11. Press the **Menu** button.  
If any of the settings is changed, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



### Important

- Be sure to complete step 11. This will activate the values you have entered.



### Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel this process, press the **Stop** button.

## Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following Novell software provided with NetWare.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE



### Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

## Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.



### Note

- In NetWare 5.1 or 6.0, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.
- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and bindery  
NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue server mode and remote printer mode  
Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue server mode  
When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote printer mode  
In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

## Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
  1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
  2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
  3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
  4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
  5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
  6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
  7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.



### Note

- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.
- When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."

3. Set a password.
  1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
  2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
  3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
  4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.  
To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.



### Note

- This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Admin and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
  1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup**, and press the Enter key.
  2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.



### Note

- The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Write down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
  1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
  2. Press the Esc key.
  3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
  1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
  2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
  3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
  4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

## ☰ Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.



### Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.569)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://"printer IP address or name"/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.



### Note

- Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.



### Note

- Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
  - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
    1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
    2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"
    3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"
    4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
  - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
    1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"
    2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"

## Network Setting (Windows)

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
  - 1.** In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server.
  - 2.** In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"
  - 3.** In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"
  - 4.** In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
  - 1.** In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)" Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  - 2.** In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in "Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.588)"

### **11.** Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.575)



## Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.



### Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.  
For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.586)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.  
For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.588)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.  
For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.591)  
After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.  
Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.  
Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port. This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.
  1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
  2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
  3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
  4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

## Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:



### Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

## ☰ Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

On a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



### Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see “Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility”. (→P.452)

### When specifying an IPv4 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv4** tab.
5. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
6. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
7. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
8. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.



### Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

### When specifying an IPv6 IP address

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the **Device Name** list displayed, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. Select the **IPv6** tab.
5. In **IPv6**, select **On**.
6. When there is an IPv6-compatible router in the network environment, select **On** in **Stateless Address**.

Additionally, when there is an DHCPv6-compatible server in the network environment, select **On** in **DHCPv6**.



### Note

- When there is no IPv6-compatible router or DHCPv6-compatible server, select **On** in **Manual** and enter the **IPv6 Address** and **Prefix Length**.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

## Network Setting (Mac OS X)

### ⌘ Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)”. (→P.598)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see “Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Macintosh)”. (→P.600)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see “Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.602)

## Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.  
http://“printer IP address or name”/  
Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

AppleTalk Settings Items

| Item              | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Default Setting        |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Phase Type</b> | Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose <b>Phase 2</b> . If you will not use AppleTalk, choose <b>Disabled</b> .                                                                  | Disabled               |
| <b>Name (*1)</b>  | Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @, *, :, and =.                                   | Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx) |
| <b>Zone (*2)</b>  | Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: Also avoid using “*” (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string. | *                      |

\*1: The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is “Canon NB-18GB (xxxxxx).” (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer’s MAC address.)

\*2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer’s zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk “\*” entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

## Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh)


To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

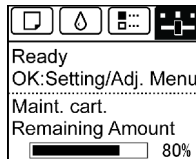
### Activating AppleTalk on the printer



#### Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()

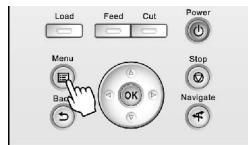


#### Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Interface Setup**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AppleTalk**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press the **Menu** button.

If any of the settings is changed, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



#### Important

- Be sure to complete step 6. This will activate the values you have entered.



#### Note

- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used for AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.  
For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.569)

## Configuring the destination (Mac OS X)



### Important

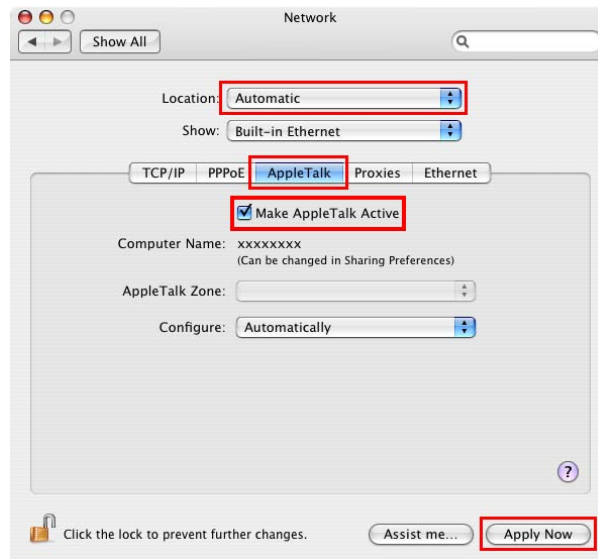
- AppleTalk is supported in Mac OS X 10.2.8-10.4.



### Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.

## Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Macintosh)

Follow these steps to configure the destination when using the printer in a TCP/IP network.

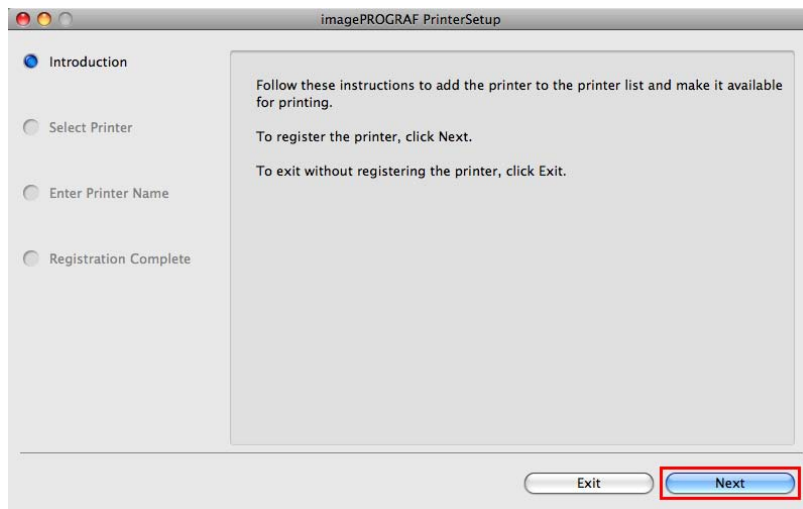


### Important

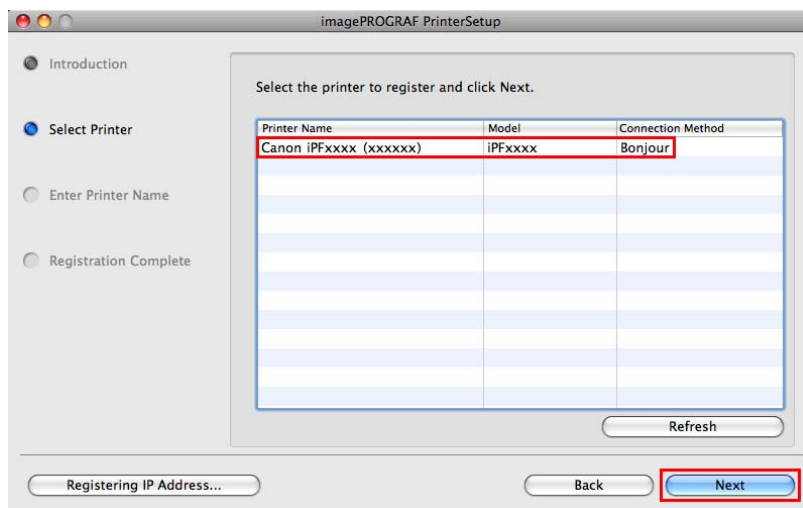
- If you use the printer in a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. (→P.565)

## Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

1. Navigate to **Applications > Canon Utilities > imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup** and double-click **imagePROGRAF PrinterSetup.app**.
2. Click **Next**.



3. Select the printer to register and click **Next**.

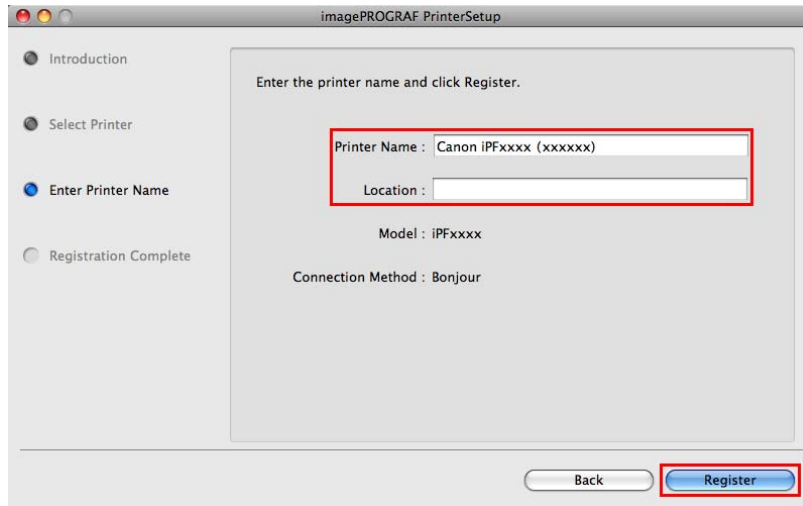


### Note

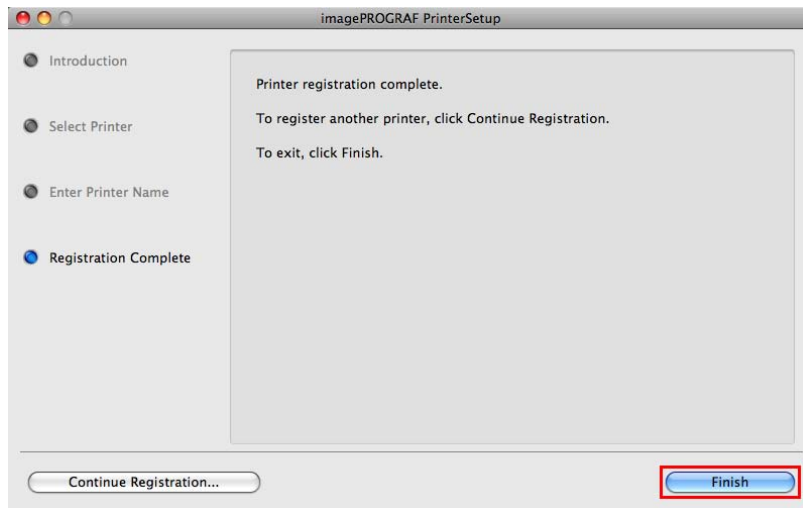
- When specifying an IP address, click **Registering IP Address**. Enter the IP address of the printer to set up in **IP Address** and click **Next**.



**4. Complete Printer Name and Location as desired and click Register.**



**5. Click Finish.**



## Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.



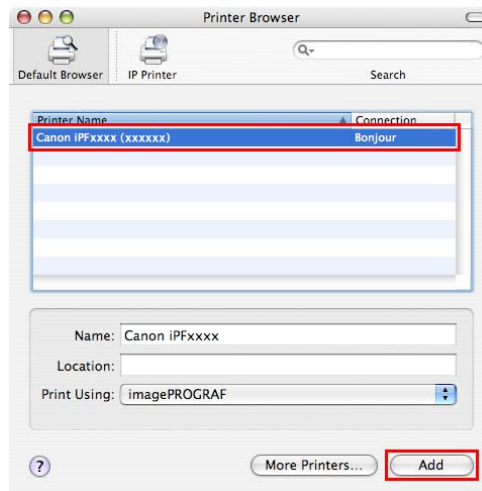
### Important

- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.569)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



# Adjustments for Better Print Quality

## Adjusting the Printhead

### Adjusting the Printhead

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the printhead.

- Printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors  
Execute **Nozzle Check** to check for printhead nozzle clogging.  
For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.630)
- Printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment  
Execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the printhead position.  
Normally, execute **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Advanced)**. However, when using special paper or if printing is not improved after executing **Auto(Advanced)**, try **Manual**.  
(→P.604)  
(→P.606)
- Printed lines are misaligned  
Execute **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the printhead.  
Even slight misalignment can be corrected.  
(→P.608)
- Paper rubs against the printhead, or image edges are blurred  
Executing **Head Height** to adjust the printhead height may improve printing results.  
(→P.611)

## Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.

There are two modes for automatic Printhead adjustment: **Auto(Standard)** and **Auto(Advanced)**.

**Auto(Standard)** will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Auto(Advanced)**.

Use **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Advanced)** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the Printhead.



### Important

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.
- This function is not available with CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of paper, or try **Manual** adjustment.  
(→P.606)



### Note

- When printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Auto(Advanced)**, try **Manual**.  
(→P.606)
- Use **Auto(Standard)** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as clear as possible.
- Use **Auto(Advanced)** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if clearer printing is required. We recommend **Auto(Advanced)** for printing at the highest level of quality.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.


### Paper to Prepare

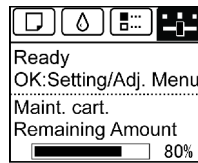
|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | An unused roll at least 10 inches wide                                                                                                                                                                |
| Sheets | <b>Auto(Standard)</b> : One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size<br><b>Auto(Advanced)</b> : Five sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger) |

Perform adjustment as follows.

#### 1. Load the paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (.



#### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Advanced)**, and then press the **OK** button.  
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.  
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.
7. If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Auto(Advanced)**, a confirmation message is displayed requesting you to continue printing. Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions displayed.

## Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.)

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, execute **Head Posi. Adj.** to adjust the Printhead alignment.

Normally, execute **Auto(Standard)** or **Auto(Advanced)**.

(→P.604)

However, when printing on special paper, or if printing is not improved after **Auto(Advanced)**, try **Manual**.

**Manual** adjustment requires you to examine the printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.




### Note

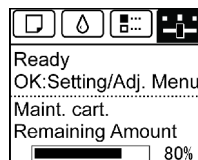
- **Manual** may be unavailable in some cases, even if it is displayed in the menu. If so, execute **Auto(Advanced)** once.
- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

### Paper to Prepare

|        |                                                      |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | An unused roll at least 10 inches wide               |
| Sheets | One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size |

Perform adjustment as follows.

1. Load the paper.
  - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
  - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
  - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)
2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (  ).

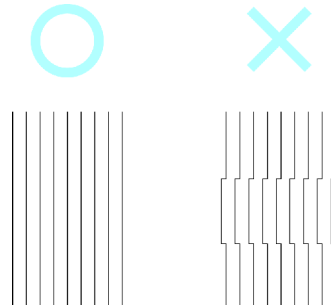


### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Posi. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.  
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D**, and then press the **OK** button.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **D-1**, and then press the **OK** button.
9. Examine adjustment test pattern **D-1** and determine the number with straight lines.



#### Note

- If two patterns seem equally good and you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.

For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.
11. Repeat steps 8-10 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5** and **D-7** to **D-11**.
12. Press the **Back** button.
13. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Register Setting**, and then press the **OK** button.
14. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.  
The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

## Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.)

If printed lines are misaligned, execute **Head Inc. Adj.** to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead. Executing **Head Inc. Adj.** requires you to examine a printed test pattern and enter an adjustment value.

### Paper to Prepare

|        |                                                      |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | An unused roll at least 10 inches wide               |
| Sheets | One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size |

Perform adjustment as follows.

### 1. Load the paper.

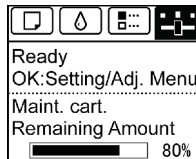
- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)



#### Note

- When loading paper, specify the type of paper correctly. Using paper that you have not specified on the printer may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.
- We recommend loading a type of paper that you use often.

### 2. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



#### Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

### 3. Press the **OK** button.

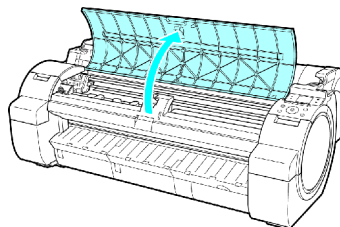
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

### 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

### 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Inc. Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

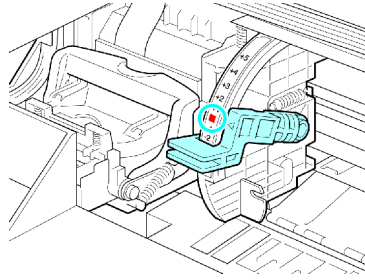
After the Carriage is moved, a message is displayed requesting you to open the Top Cover.

### 6. Open the Top Cover.





7. Align the Angle Adjustment Lever with the red square and close the Top Cover.

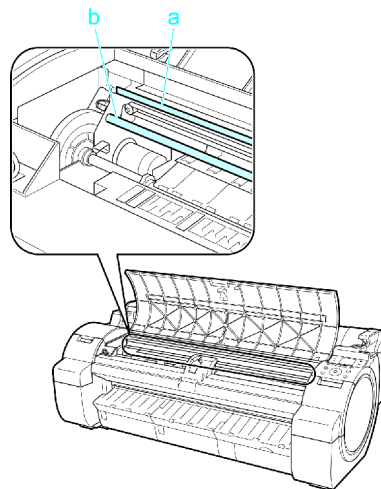


A test pattern is printed for adjustment.



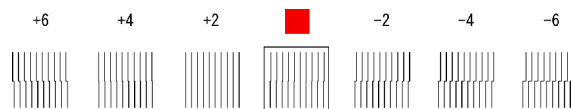
### Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). Touching these parts may damage them.



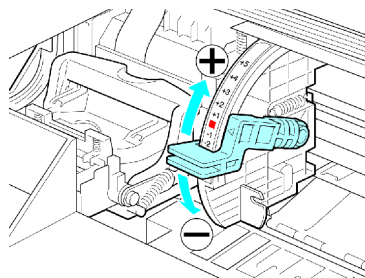
- If you accidentally move the Carriage, you will hear a warning tone. In this case, close the Top Cover.

8. Examine the test pattern for adjustment. Determine the straightest set of lines.



9. Open the Top Cover and move the Angle Adjustment Lever to match the number (or the square) of the straightest set of lines.

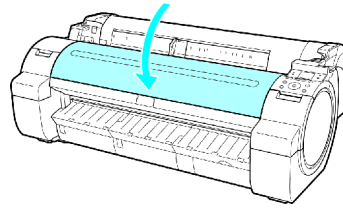
If no single set of lines is perfectly straight, move the Angle Adjustment Lever to a position between the numbers (or between the number and the square) of the two sets of lines that are least misaligned.



## Adjusting the Printhead

### 10. Close the Top Cover.

The Printhead is now straight, and adjustment is complete.



## ☰ Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images (Head Height)

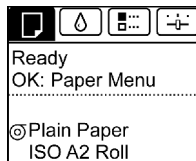
If the Printhead rubs against paper during printing, adjusting the Printhead height may improve results. If image edges are blurred, it may help to lower the Printhead.



### Note

- Raise or lower the printhead, depending on the nature of the problem.  
(→P.670)  
(→P.671)  
(→P.676)

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ()



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Height**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.



### Note

- Depending on the type of paper, some setting values may not be available.

# Adjusting the feed amount

## ☰ Adjusting the Feed Amount

If printed documents are affected by the following problems, try adjusting the feed amount.

- Banding in different colors
- Line length is not accurate in the direction paper is fed

To adjust the feed amount, do the following, in this order.

- 1.** Depending on the issue, adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit the particular type of paper.  
(→P.613)
- 2.** Execute **Adj. Quality** or **Adjust Length**, depending on the selection in **Adj. Priority**.  
(→P.614)  
(→P.616)  
(→P.619)
- 3.** After executing **Adj. Quality**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed** for further adjustment as needed.  
(→P.618)

## ☰ Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority)

Methods of adjusting the amount paper is fed are set in **Adj. Priority**.

Adjust **Adj. Priority** to suit your particular printing application.

- **Print Quality** : Adjusts the feed amount to reduce banding across the sheet in printed documents. **Adj. Quality** settings are applied. When **Adj. Fine Feed** is executed, the **Adj. Fine Feed** settings are applied in addition to the **Adj. Quality** settings.
- **Print Length** : Adjusts the feed amount for better accuracy of lines in printed documents. The settings of **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft** in **Adjust Length** are applied.
- **Automatic** : **Print Quality** or **Print Length** is selected, depending on **Print Priority** as selected in the printer driver at the time of printing.  
**Image** or **Office Document** : **Print Quality** is selected.  
**Line Drawing/Text** : **Print Length** is selected.

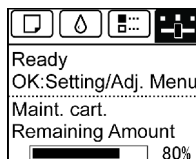


### Note

- Either **B:Standard/Draft** or **A:High** in the **Adjust Length** menu is applied, depending on printer driver settings at the time of printing.
- If you have selected **Easy Settings** in the printer driver, follow these steps to confirm the **Print Priority** setting.
  - Windows: Click **View Settings** on the **Main** tab to display the **View Settings** dialog box.
  - Mac OS X: Click **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.

Follow these steps to configure the settings.

1. Load the paper.
  - Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
  - Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
  - Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)
2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (☰).



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Automatic**, **Print Quality**, or **Print Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

## Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors across the sheet, execute **Adj. Quality** for automatic adjustment of the paper feed amount.

There are two modes of automatic adjustment to correct banding: **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**. In either mode, the printer prints and reads a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

- **Auto(GenuinePpr)**

Use this mode with paper identified in the Paper Reference Guide.

(→P.95)

- **Auto(OtherPaper)**

Use this mode with paper not in the Paper Reference Guide, or if **Auto(GenuinePpr)** does not eliminate banding.

(→P.95)



### Note

- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**.  
(→P.613)
- Adjustment is not possible with **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)** when using highly transparent media.  
In this case, use **Manual** adjustment.  
(→P.616)
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Auto(GenuinePpr)** and **Auto(OtherPaper)**, execute **Adj. Fine Feed**.  
(→P.618)
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length.  
(→P.619)
- This may take some time, depending on the type of paper.
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

### Paper to Prepare

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | An unused roll at least 10 inches wide                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Sheets | <b>Auto(GenuinePpr)</b> : One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size<br><b>Auto(OtherPaper)</b> : Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size (or one sheet when using A2 or larger) |

Perform adjustment as follows.


#### 1. Load the paper.

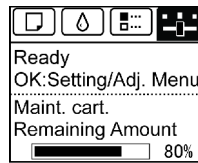
- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)



### Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (  ).



#### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

3. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)**, and then press the **OK** button.  
A test pattern is printed for adjustment.  
Adjustment is now finished if you have printed on a roll or a sheet of A2 size or larger.
8. If you are printing on sheets smaller than A2 size for **Auto(GenuinePpr)**, a confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen requesting you to continue printing.  
Press the **OK** button and follow the instructions on the Display Screen.

## Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality)

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, execute **Adj. Quality** for adjustment of the paper feed amount.

Use **Manual** adjustment with highly transparent media or other paper for which **Auto(GenuinePpr)** or **Auto(OtherPaper)** cannot be used.

(→P.614)

**Manual** adjustment requires you to enter an adjustment value after a test pattern is printed.



### Note

- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Manual** adjustment. (→P.613)
- If additional fine-tuning is necessary after **Manual** adjustment, use **Adj. Fine Feed** (→P.618)
- Use **Adjust Length** to ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length. (→P.619)
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

### Paper to Prepare

|        |                                                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | An unused roll at least 10 inches wide                |
| Sheets | Two sheets of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size |

Perform adjustment as follows.

### 1. Load the paper.

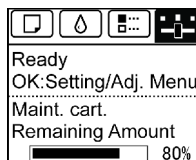
- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)



### Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

### 2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

### 3. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

### 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.

### 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.

### 6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Quality**, and then press the **OK** button.



7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Manual**, and then press the **OK** button.

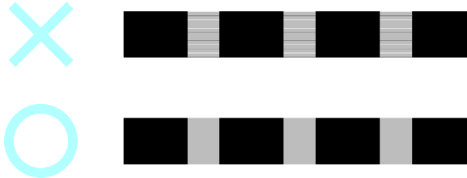
Test pattern A is printed for manual adjustment.



**Note**

- When printing on sheets, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

8. Examine test pattern A for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.



**Note**

- If banding seems least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value.  
For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.

Test pattern B is printed for adjustment.



**Note**

- If you printed test pattern A on a sheet, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and use another sheet of the same type of paper.  
Additionally, after test pattern B is printed, follow the instructions on the Display Screen and remove the sheet.

10. Examine test pattern B for adjustment. Determine the pattern in which banding is least noticeable.

11. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the pattern number you have decided, and then press the **OK** button.

The adjustment value is now registered, and adjustment is complete.

## Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed)


If the contrast is uneven or banding in different colors appears at 50 mm (2.0 in) intervals in printed documents, try executing **Adj. Fine Feed** during printing to fine-tune the feed amount.

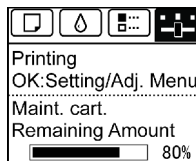


### Note

- Always execute **Adj. Quality** before **Adj. Fine Feed**.  
Once you execute **Adj. Quality**, the **Adj. Fine Feed** value will revert to 0.  
(→P.614)  
(→P.616)

Perform adjustment as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Adj. Fine Feed**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a setting value in the range -5 to +5, and then press the **OK** button.  
The setting is now applied.

## Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length)

To ensure that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, use **Adjust Length** to adjust the amount that paper is advanced.

There are two options in **Adjust Length** : **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings**.

- **AdjustmentPrint**

After a test pattern is printed, you will measure the discrepancy based on the results of printing.

- **Change Settings**

No test pattern is printed. Instead, you will measure a document already printed to determine the discrepancy.

Additionally, two modes are available in both **AdjustmentPrint** and **Change Settings** : **A:High** or **B:Standard/Draft**. Choose the mode that suits your particular printing application.

- **A:High**

This setting is applied when **Highest** or **High** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.

- **B:Standard/Draft**

This setting is applied when **Standard** or **Draft** is selected in **Print Quality** in the printer driver.



### Note

- Always check the **Adj. Priority** values before using **Adjust Length**. (→P.613)
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

### Paper to Prepare

|        |                                                                                                                                          |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rolls  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An unused roll at least 10 inches wide</li> <li>• High-precision ruler</li> </ul>               |
| Sheets | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One sheet of unused paper of at least A4/Letter size</li> <li>• High-precision ruler</li> </ul> |

Perform adjustment as follows.

### 1. Load the paper.

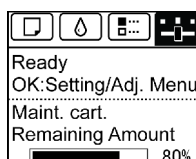
- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)



### Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the type of paper specified. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the loaded paper matches the settings.

### 2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

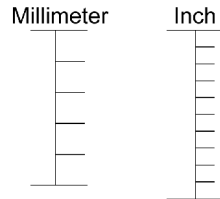
## Adjusting the feed amount

3. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **Adjust Length**, and then press the **OK** button.
7. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **AdjustmentPrint** or **Change Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.

When you select **AdjustmentPrint**, a test pattern is printed for you to measure the scale and calculate the discrepancy. The scale bar shows “Millimeter” in 50 mm units and “Inch” in 1 inch units.



### Note

- A test pattern is printed in black when you choose **A:High** or in magenta if you choose **B:Standard/Draft**.
- To cancel printing the test pattern for adjustment, hold down the **Stop** button. When **Stop printing?** is displayed, press **▲** or **▼** to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

8. Press **▲** or **▼** to enter the amount of discrepancy, and then press the **OK** button.

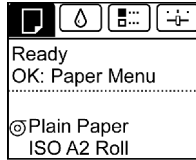
If the scale is shorter than the actual size, use a positive setting value. If it is longer, use a negative value.

The feed amount can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.

## Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth)

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if the Printhead rubs against paper, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Paper tab ().



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Paper Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Paper Details**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired setting value, and then press the **OK** button.

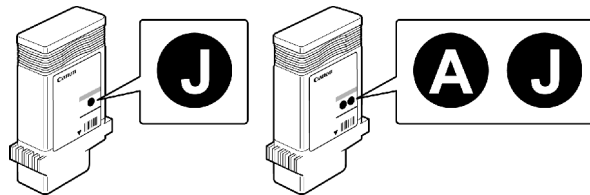
# Maintenance

## Ink Tanks

### ☐ Ink Tanks

Ink tanks that can be used in the printer are labeled with a white letter “J” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing ink tanks, make sure a “J” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank serial numbers.

- 130 ml (4.4 fl oz) per color
  - BK Ink Tank PFI-102BK
  - MBK Ink Tank PFI-102MBK
  - C Ink Tank PFI-102C
  - M Ink Tank PFI-104M
  - Y Ink Tank PFI-102Y



#### Note

- For instructions on ink tank replacement, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.623)
- You can also use ink tanks other than M Ink Tank PFI-104M that are simply labeled “A.”

## Replacing Ink Tanks

### Compatible ink tanks

Ink tanks that can be used in the printer are labeled with a white letter “J” in a black circle on the side. Request ink tanks with the same label when you purchase new ones. For details, see “Ink Tanks”. (→P.622)

### Precautions when handling ink tanks

Take the following precautions when handling ink tanks.



#### Caution

- For safety, keep ink tanks out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- There may be ink around the ink supply section of ink tanks you removed. Handle ink tanks carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

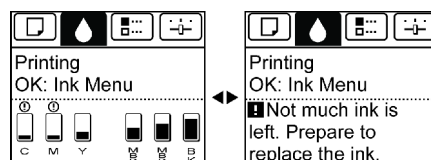


#### Important

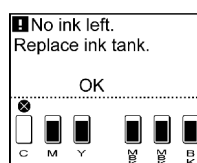
- Do not install used ink tanks in another model of printer. This will prevent correct ink level detection, which may damage the printer or cause other problems.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Printing quality may be affected if you use older ink tanks.
- Do not leave the printer without ink tanks installed for extended periods (a month or more). Residual ink may become clogged inside the printer and affect printing quality.

### Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement

You can replace ink tanks if the Display Screen advises you to check the amount of ink left or replace ink tanks.



If a message requests you to replace an Ink Tank, press the **OK** button. In this case, you can skip the step “Access the menu for ink tank replacement.” Follow the instructions in “Remove the ink tanks.”



#### Important

- Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printhead cleaning.

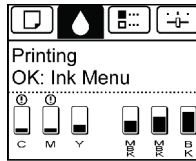


#### Note

- Ink Tank replacement is possible even during printing, when print jobs are being canceled, or when paper is being advanced.

## Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab (☒).



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.

The **Ink Menu** is displayed.

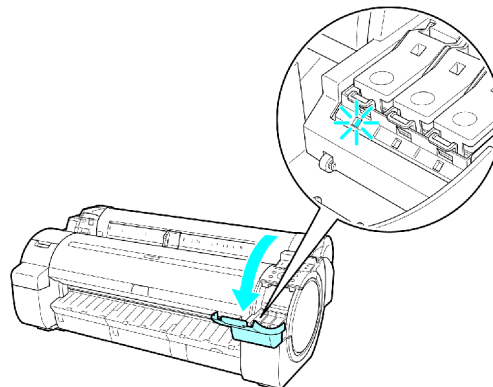
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Rep. Ink Tank**, and then press the **OK** button.

A message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover. Remove the Ink Tank at this point.

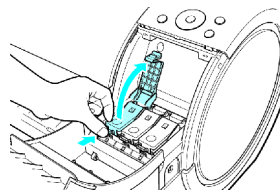
## Remove the Ink Tank

1. Open the Ink Tank Cover and check the ink lamps.

Ink lamps flash when there is little ink left.

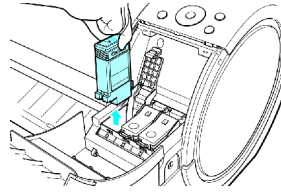


2. Press the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement horizontally and pull the Ink Tank Lock Lever up to open it.



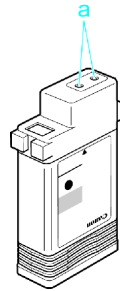


3. Hold the Ink Tank by the grips and remove it. Press the **OK** button.



#### Caution

- If there is still ink in the Ink Tank you removed, store it with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains. Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

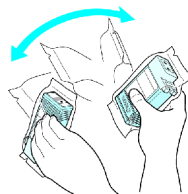


#### Note

- Dispose of used ink tanks according to local regulations.

## Install the ink tanks

1. Before opening the pouch, gently agitate the Ink Tank once or twice. Agitate the ink in the Ink Tank by slowly rotating the Ink Tank upside-down and right side up repeatedly.



#### Caution

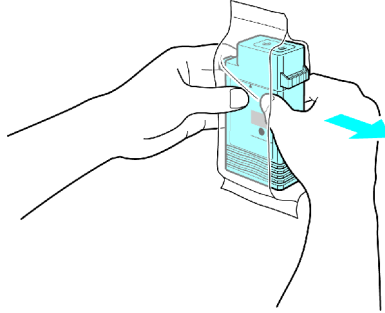
- Do not remove and agitate ink tanks that have already been installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.



#### Important

- If you do not agitate the Ink Tank, the ink may settle, which may affect printing quality.

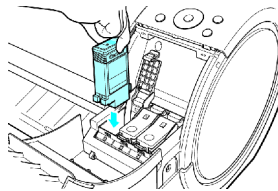
2. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



**Caution**

- Never touch the ink holes or electrical contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.

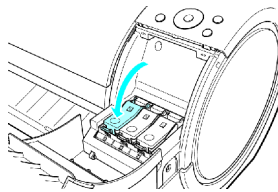
3. Press the **OK** button and insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown, with the ink holes down.



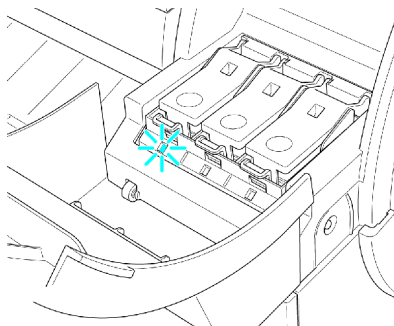
**Important**

- Ink tanks cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is incorrect. If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

4. Push the Ink Tank Lock Lever closed until it clicks into place.



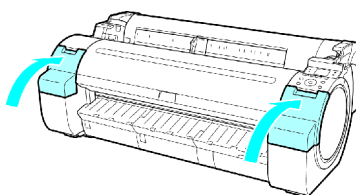
**5.** Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



**Note**

- If the Ink Lamp is not lit, reload the tank.

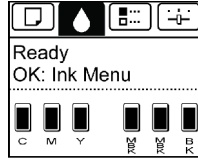
**6.** Close the Ink Tank Cover.



## ☐ Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the ink tanks.

To check remaining Ink Tank levels, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Ink tab (☐).



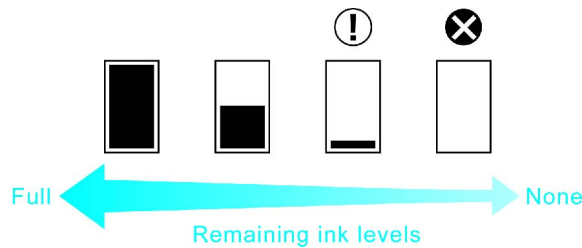
### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
- If an error has occurred and the **Tab Selection screen** cannot be displayed, display **Ink Info** as follows.
  1. Press the **OK** button to display **Printer Info**.
  2. Press the ▲ or ▼ button to select **Ink Info**.
  3. Press the **OK** button.

The remaining ink levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label on the bottom of the Display Screen.

These symbols may be displayed above the ink level: “!” if ink is low, “x” if no ink is left, and “?” if you have deactivated ink level detection.

The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



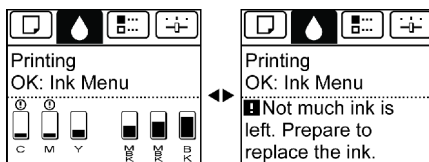
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Ink Tank, replace the Ink Tank. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining ink levels, or after tasks that consume a lot of ink such as large-format printing or head cleaning, check the remaining levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.623)

## When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace ink tanks in the following situations.

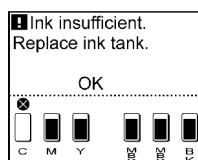
### If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

When there is little ink left, the **Message Lamp** is lit and **Not much ink is left.** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.628)



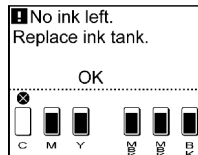
### Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance.



### If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, the **Message Lamp** flashes, a message regarding Ink Tank replacement is shown on the Display Screen, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point.

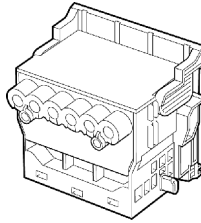


# Printheads

## Printhead

A replacement Printhead.

- Printhead PF-04



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.633)

## Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or affected by banding in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.



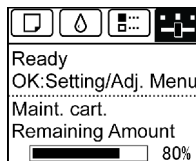
Note

- Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**. (→P.49)

### 1. Load unused paper.

- Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls (→P.103)
- Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106)
- Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136)

### 2. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ( ).



Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

### 3. Press the **OK** button.

The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.

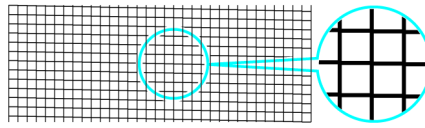
### 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Test Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

### 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the **OK** button.

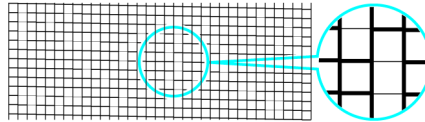
The printer now prints a test pattern for checking the nozzles.

**6.** Check the printing results.

If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.

1. Clean the Printhead. (→P.632)
2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

**Note**

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

## Cleaning the Printhead

If printing is faint, cleaning the Printhead may improve results.

Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

- **Head Cleaning A**

Use this mode if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink.

It takes about three minutes to complete.

- **Head Cleaning B**

Use this mode if no ink is ejected at all, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem.

It takes about three and a half minutes to complete.



### Caution


- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or ink tanks during either **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**.

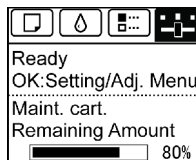


### Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning B**, try repeating **Head Cleaning B** once or twice. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**. (→P.49)

Perform cleaning as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**, and then press the **OK** button.  
Head cleaning is now executed.
6. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.630)



## Replacing the Printhead

### When to replace the Printhead

Replace the Printhead in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after one or two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
- If the Display Screen indicates **Open top cover and replace the printhead.**
- If your Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

### Compatible printheads

For information on compatible printheads, see “Printhead”. (→P.630)

### Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.



#### Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.



#### Important

- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect printing quality.

## Access the menu for Printhead replacement




### Caution

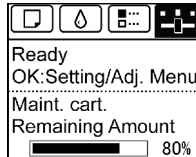
- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.



### Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.

1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.331)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.647)
3. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ()



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

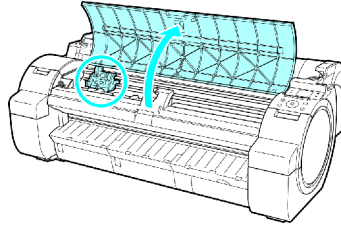
4. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Replace P.head**, and then press the **OK** button.

Ink is now filled.

After about two minutes, a message is shown on the Display Screen instructing you to open the Top Cover.

## Replace the Printhead

1. Open the Top Cover.



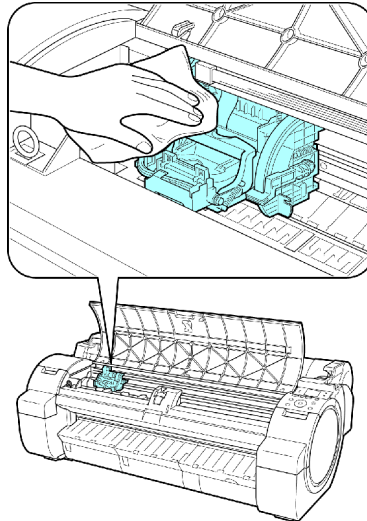
Instructions are now shown on the Display Screen regarding Printhead replacement.



### Important

- During Printhead replacement, do not move the Carriage from the position indicated. If you accidentally move the Carriage, you will hear a warning tone, and Printhead replacement is no longer possible.  
If you move the Carriage by mistake, close the Top Cover. The Carriage will be moved to the position as indicated.

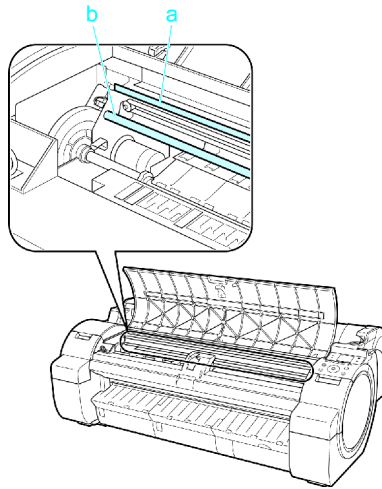
2. If the Printhead Fixer Cover or Printhead Fixer Lever is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.





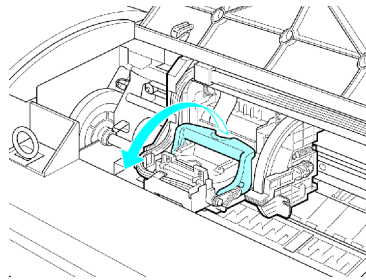
**Important**

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). Touching these parts may damage them.

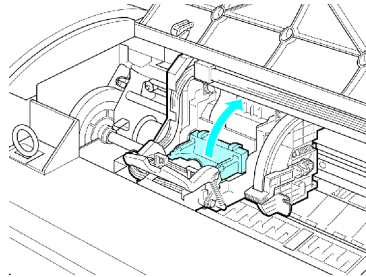


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

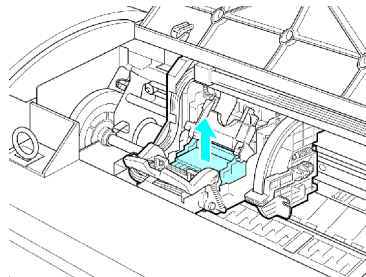
**3.** Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever forward all the way to open it completely.



**4.** Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



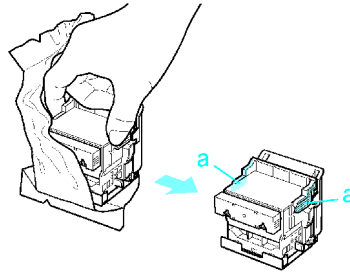
**5.** Remove the Printhead and press the **OK** button.



**Note**

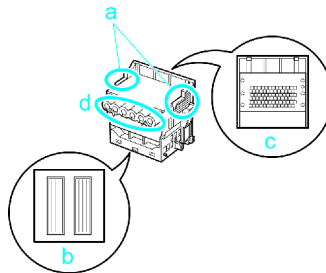
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

6. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the pouch.



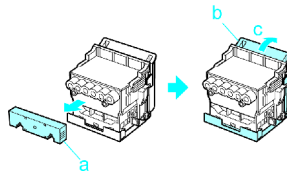
**Important**

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect printing quality.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.



- If you need to put a Printhead somewhere temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.

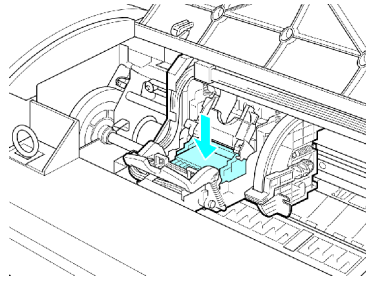
7. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Protective Part (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Protective Part (b) and pull it down to remove it.



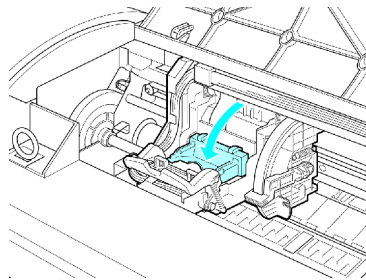
**Important**

- The inside surface of the Protective Part (a) and Protective Part (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Be careful not to touch these surfaces when removing the caps.
- The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. We recommend removing Protective Part (b) as you hold it over the Printhead package or safely out of the way to avoid spilling ink and staining your clothes or the surrounding area. If ink accidentally spills, wipe off the ink with a dry cloth.
- Do not reattach the Protective Part or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

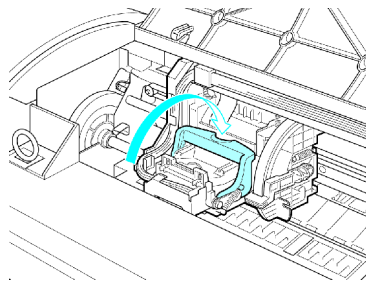
8. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles and metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



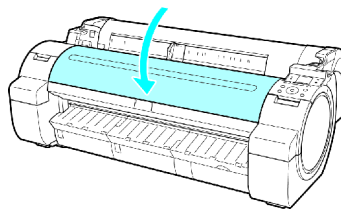
9. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



10. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



11. Close the Top Cover.



Ink now fills the system. It takes about six minutes for ink to fill the system.



**Important**

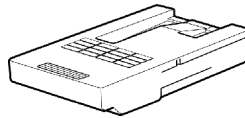
- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.
- After Printhead has been replaced and filled with ink, **Head Posi. Adj. (Auto(Advanced))** is performed if you have selected **Rep.P.head Print > On** in the Control Panel menu. (→P.49)  
In this case, follow the instructions on the Display Screen for Printhead adjustment.  
If **Rep.P.head Print** is **Off**, perform **Head Posi. Adj. (Auto(Advanced))** yourself. (→P.604)

# Maintenance Cartridge

## ■ Maintenance Cartridge

A replacement Maintenance Cartridge.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-10



### Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.639)

## ■ Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

### Compatible maintenance cartridges

For information on compatible maintenance cartridges, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.639)

### Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.



### Caution

- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.

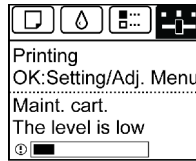


### Important

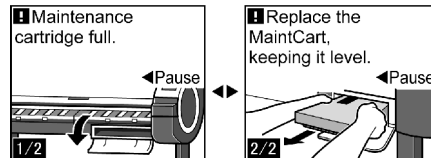
- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

## Make sure the printer is ready for Maintenance Cartridge replacement

You can replace Maintenance Cartridge if the Display Screen advises you to check the remaining capacity or replace the Maintenance Cartridge.




If a message is displayed requesting Maintenance Cartridge replacement, you can skip the step “Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement.” Follow the instructions in “Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.”

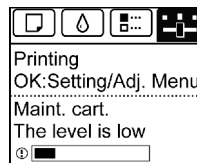


### Caution

- Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, during Printhead cleaning, or when ink is being absorbed. Ink may leak out.

## Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (  ).



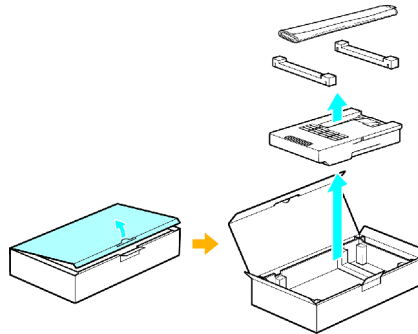
### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.
2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
  3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Repl. maint cart**, and then press the **OK** button.  
A message on the Display Screen advises you to open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



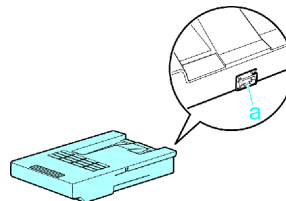
## Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

1. Open the box, remove the plastic bag and packaging material, and take out the Maintenance Cartridge.

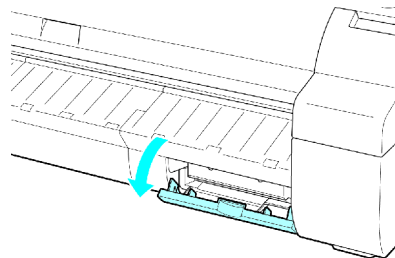


### Important

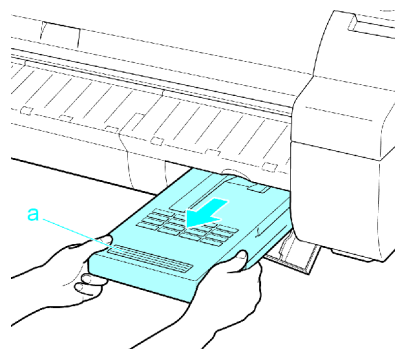
- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.



2. At this point, open the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.



3. Hold the used Maintenance Cartridge by the grip (a) with one hand and put your other hand under the Maintenance Cartridge to hold it firmly on the bottom, keeping it level as you pull it out.



### Caution

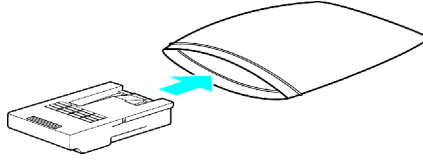
- Used maintenance cartridges are heavy. Always grasp the cartridge firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.



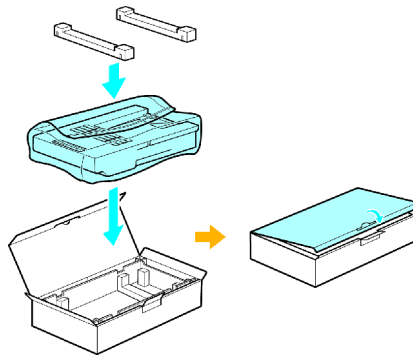
### Important

- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

4. Keep the used Maintenance Cartridge level as you put it in the plastic bag. Expel excess air from the plastic bag and seal the zipper.



5. Confirm the Maintenance Cartridge is right-side up, put it in the box with the packaging material attached, and store it so that it stays level.



### Caution

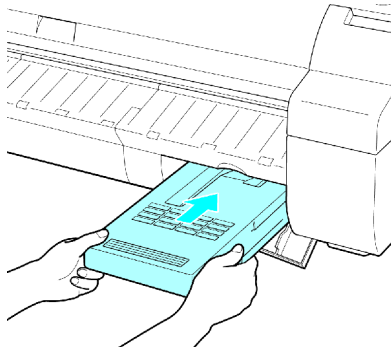
- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



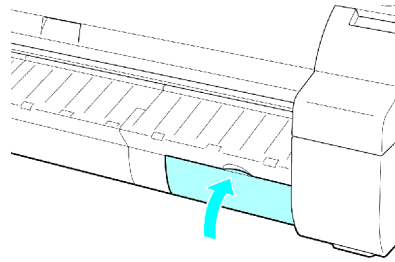
### Note

- In accordance with active and ongoing environmental programs, Canon supports recycling of used maintenance cartridges. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

6. Keeping the new Maintenance Cartridge level, insert it all the way in.



7. Close the Maintenance Cartridge Cover.




8. Press the **OK** button.

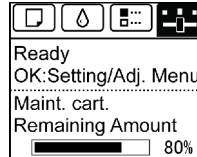


The printer now initializes the Maintenance Cartridge.

## ☐☐☐ Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and other processes. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.

To check remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity, access the **Tab Selection screen** on the Control Panel and press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

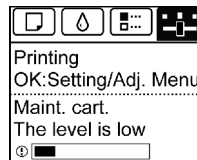
If the Display Screen indicates to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If a message is displayed indicating to check the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge, or before tasks that deplete much of the capacity such as head cleaning or preparations to move the printer, check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.639)

## When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

### If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is almost full, the **Message Lamp** is lit and **The level is low** is shown on the Display Screen. You can continue to print, but check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.644)



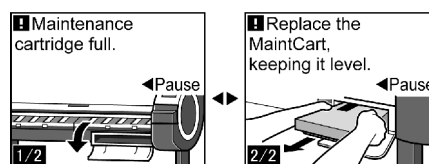
### When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) Check the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity before this maintenance and replace the Maintenance Cartridge if necessary.



### If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the **Message Lamp** flashes and a message to replace the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one.



# Cleaning the Printer

## ☐ Cleaning the Printer Exterior

Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. To ensure a comfortable working environment, clean the printer exterior about once a month.

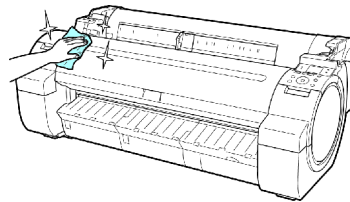
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.24)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



### Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe the exterior surfaces of the printer. Dry the surfaces with a dry cloth.



### Caution

- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.



### Important

- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.

## ☐ Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

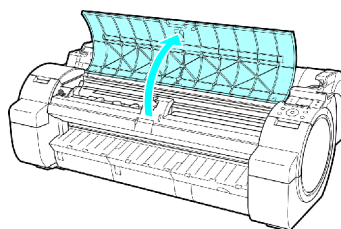
- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of paper dust
- After printing on adhesive paper



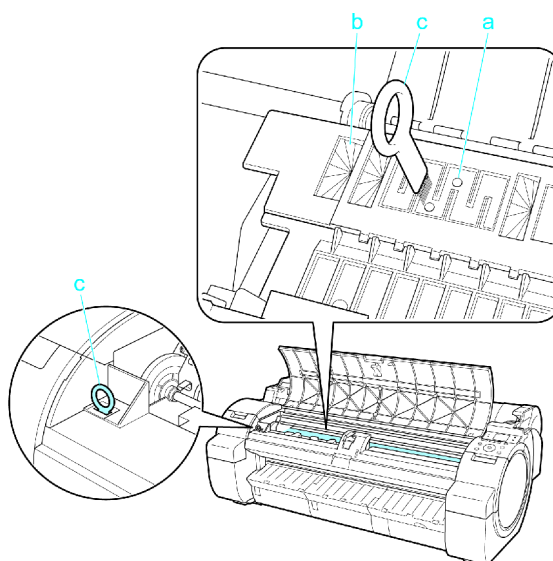
### Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.
- If the Ejection Guide is dirty, it may soil the edge of the paper when the paper is cut. We recommend cleaning the Ejection Guide even if it does not appear dirty, because it may actually be covered with paper dust.
- Printing on adhesive paper may leave adhesive on the Platen, Paper Retainer, or other parts. To prevent paper jams, we recommend cleaning inside the Top Cover after printing.

### 1. Open the Top Cover.



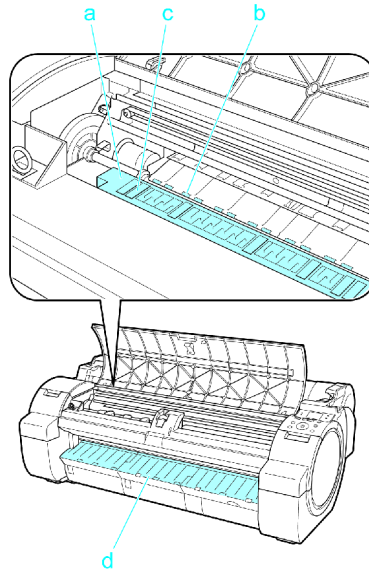
### 2. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush (c), provided with the printer, to wipe it away.



### Note

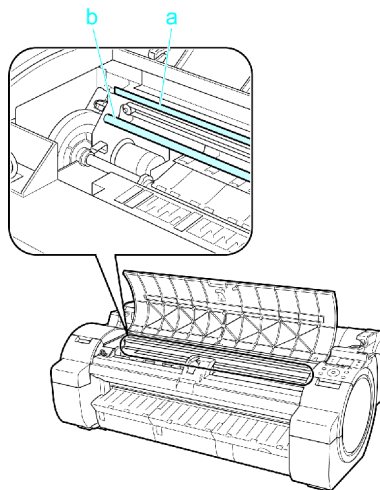
- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Platen as a whole (a), the Paper Retainer (b), Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (c), and Ejection Guide (d).



**Important**

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

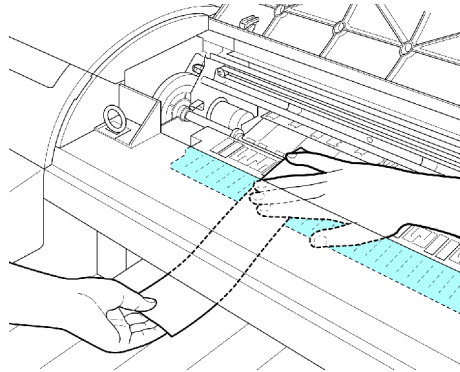




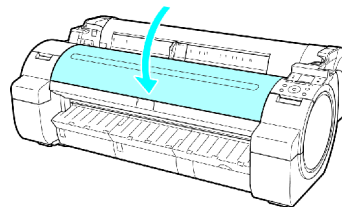


**Note**

- When cleaning between the Platen and Ejection Guide, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe over the Output Tray and along grooves.



**4. Close the Top Cover.**



## Cleaning the Printhead

If printing is faint, cleaning the Printhead may improve results.

Choose one of two Printhead cleaning modes (**Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**), depending on the problem to resolve.

- **Head Cleaning A**

Use this mode if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink.

It takes about three minutes to complete.

- **Head Cleaning B**

Use this mode if no ink is ejected at all, or if **Head Cleaning A** does not solve the problem.

It takes about three and a half minutes to complete.



### Caution

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge or ink tanks during either **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**.

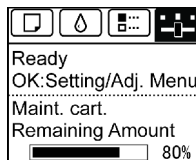


### Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning B**, try repeating **Head Cleaning B** once or twice. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.
- Nozzles are periodically checked to ensure they are clear. Configure the settings on the Control Panel menu in **Nozzle Check**. (→P.49)

Perform cleaning as follows.

1. On the **Tab Selection screen** of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection screen** is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Head Cleaning A** or **Head Cleaning B**, and then press the **OK** button.  
Head cleaning is now executed.
6. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.630)

# Other Maintenance

## Preparing to Transfer the Printer

To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow these steps before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Setup Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.



### Important

- Be sure to contact your Canon dealer before transferring the printer to a new location. Ink may leak and damage the printer if you do not prepare the printer correctly and it is tipped or stood on end in transit.




### Note

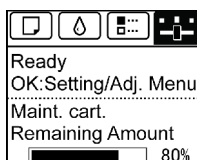
- It is not possible to prepare the printer for transfer if the Display Screen requests you to replace the Maintenance Cartridge or check the remaining capacity. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. In this case, you will need one new Maintenance Cartridge. (→P.639)
- Depending on the state of the printer, part replacement may be necessary when preparing to transfer the printer (that is, when you execute the printer menu item to prepare for transfer).

## Remove paper

1. Remove the paper.
  - Rolls (→P.116)
  - Sheets (→P.144)

## Access the Move Printer menu

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab ().



### Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Prep.MovePrinter**, and then press the **OK** button.  
Once preparations are finished, a message on the Display Screen requests you to open the Ink Tank Cover.

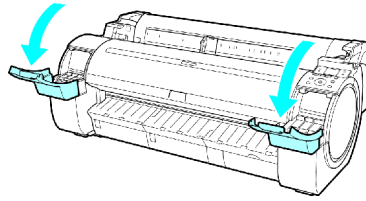


### Important

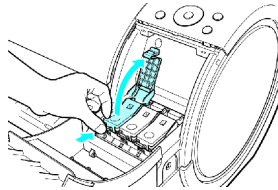
- If consumables must be replaced, the message **Consumables must be replaced. Call for service.** is shown on the Display Screen and preparation is not possible. If this message is displayed, press the **OK** button and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

## Remove the Ink Tank

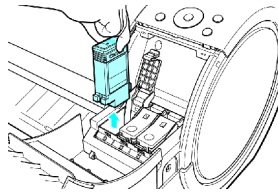
1. Open the Ink Tank Cover.



2. Pressing the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever horizontally, lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to release the lock.

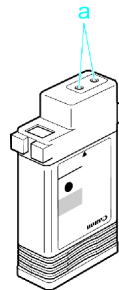


3. Holding the ink tanks by the grips, remove them.

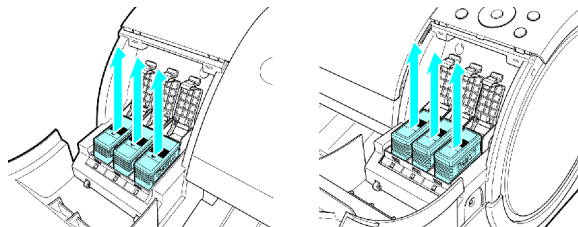


### Note

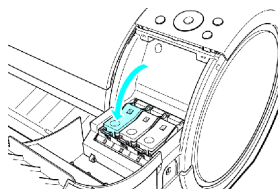
- Store the ink tanks you removed with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



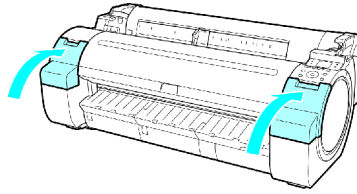
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to remove all ink tanks.



5. Push all ink tank lock levers closed until they click into place.



## 6. Close the Ink Tank Cover.



At this point, ink is drawn out from inside the tubes.



### Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during this process.

When the process is finished, **Completed! Turn Power Off!!** is displayed.

## Pack the printer

### 1. Press the **Power** button and turn off the printer.



### Important


- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the ink tanks, and follow this procedure again.

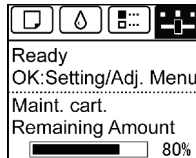
2. Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.
3. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.
4. Remove the Stand by reversing the installation procedure, when it was attached to the printer.
5. Disassemble and repackage the Stand by following the installation procedure in reverse.
6. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

## Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

### Confirming the firmware version

1. On the **Tab Selection** screen of the Control Panel, press ◀ or ▶ to select the Settings/Adj. tab (.



#### Note

- If the **Tab Selection** screen is not displayed, press the **Menu** button.

2. Press the **OK** button.  
The **Set./Adj. Menu** is displayed.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Printer Info**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **System Info**, and then press the **OK** button.  
The firmware version is displayed.

### Updating the Firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

# Troubleshooting

## Frequently Asked Questions

### ☐☐☐ Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

| Question                                              | Answer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| How do I print on a roll?                             | When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver.<br>⇒"Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.78) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| How do I print on a sheet?                            | When printing on sheets, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver before loading the paper.<br>⇒"Loading and Printing on Sheets (→P.81) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| How do I switch between printing on rolls and sheets? | When you complete operations on the Control Panel to load or replace paper, the paper source is automatically switched to the selected paper.<br>⇒"Loading Rolls in the Printer (→P.106) "<br>⇒"Loading Sheets in the Printer (→P.136) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| How do I change the paper type or size?               | Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Specifying it in the printer driver<br/>⇒"Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.197) "</li> <li>• Specifying it on the Control Panel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting the paper type<br/>⇒"Changing the Type of Paper (→P.110) "</li> <li>Selecting the paper size<br/>⇒"Specifying the Paper Length (→P.112) "</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| How do I cut the roll paper after printing?           | You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position.<br>⇒"Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.129) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| How do I print without borders?                       | Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size.<br>Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.<br>⇒"Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.232) "<br>⇒"Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.239) "<br>⇒"Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.225) "                                                                        |
| How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?   | In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired.<br>⇒"Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.201) "<br>⇒"Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.207) "<br>⇒"Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.213) "                                                                                                                                         |

## Frequently Asked Questions

| Question                                                                                                            | Answer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| How do I print without wasting paper?                                                                               | To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins.<br>⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.301) "<br>⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.307) "                                                           |
| How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size? | By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper.<br>⇒"Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.301) "                                                                                                                                                              |
| How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?                                                              | You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners.<br>⇒"Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.253) "                                                                                             |
| How do I print on a custom paper size?                                                                              | You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver.<br>⇒"Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.261) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| How do I register custom paper sizes?                                                                               | You can add desired sizes (Custom Media Sizes) in the <b>Size Options</b> dialog box of the printer driver.<br>⇒"Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.261) "                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| How do I print lines thicker?                                                                                       | By specifying <b>Thicken Fine Lines</b> in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see.<br>⇒"Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.187) "                                                                                                                                              |
| How do I modify how colors are printed?                                                                             | You can adjust colors as desired in the printer driver before printing.<br>⇒"Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.177) "                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?                                                      | By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed.<br>⇒"Using Favorites (→P.327) "                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Can I use the printer in combination with a <b>Color imageRUNNER</b> ?                                              | The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a <b>Color imageRUNNER</b> .<br>⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.432) "<br>⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.555) "                                              |
| How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a <b>Color imageRUNNER</b> ?                                  | By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a <b>Color imageRUNNER</b> .<br>⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.432) "<br>⇒"Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.555) " |

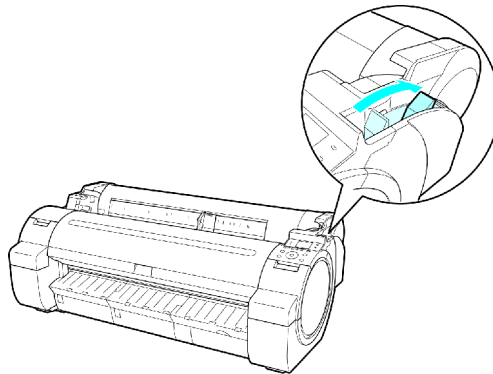


# Problems Regarding Paper

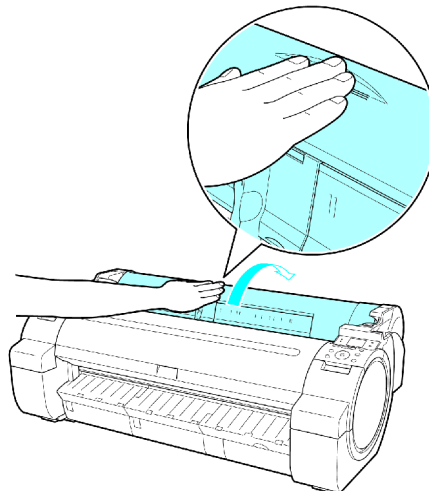
## Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

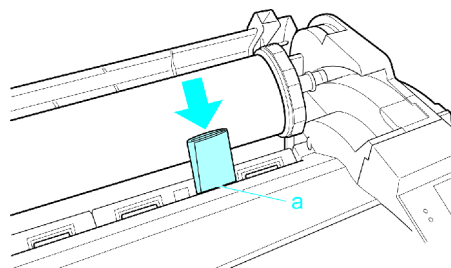
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.24)
2. Push the Release Lever back.



3. Positioning your hands as shown, open the Roll Cover.

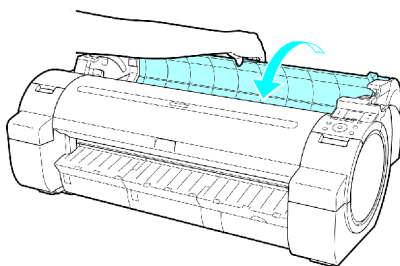


4. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Paper Feed Slot. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

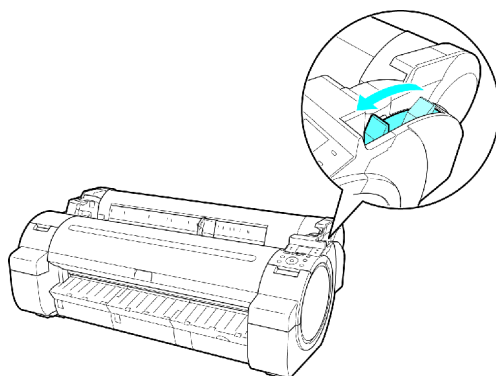


5. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
6. If any scraps remain inside the paper feed slot, repeat steps 4 and 5.

7. Holding it at the positions indicated, close the Roll Cover.



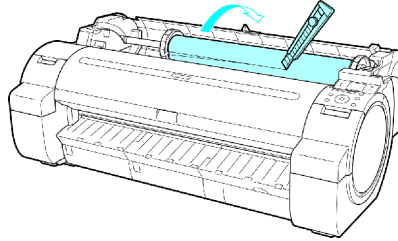
8. Pull the Release Lever forward.



## Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

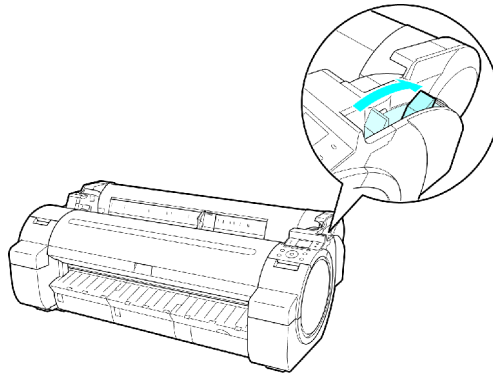
1. Open the Roll Cover. Use a commercially available cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



### Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid injury or damage to the printer.

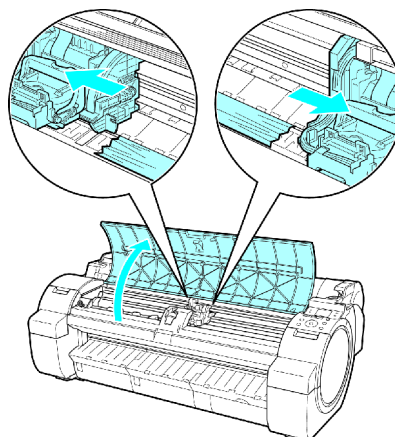
2. Push the Release Lever back.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

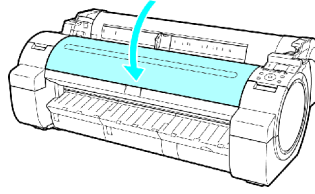
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

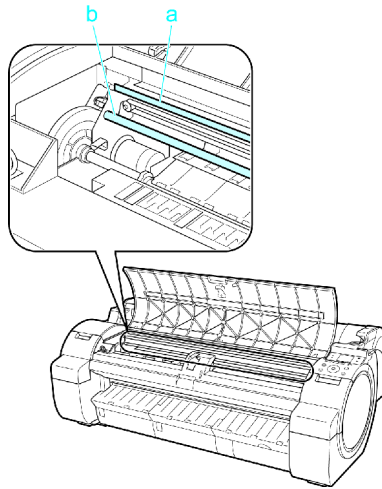
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

**3. Close the Top Cover.**

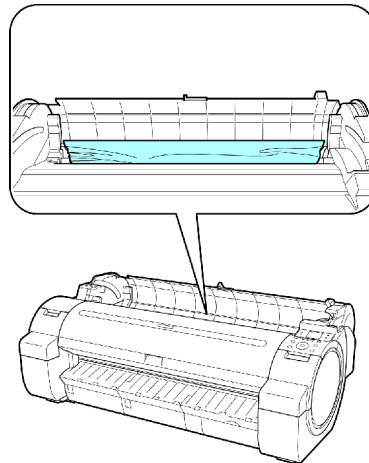


**Important**

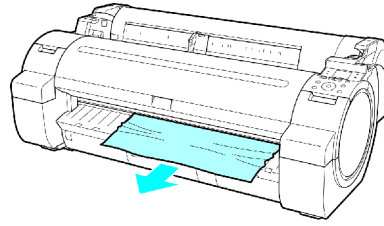
- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



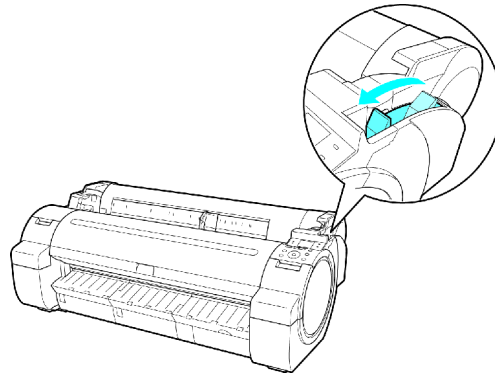
- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot
  1. Open the Roll Cover.
  2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.  
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide  
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.  
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



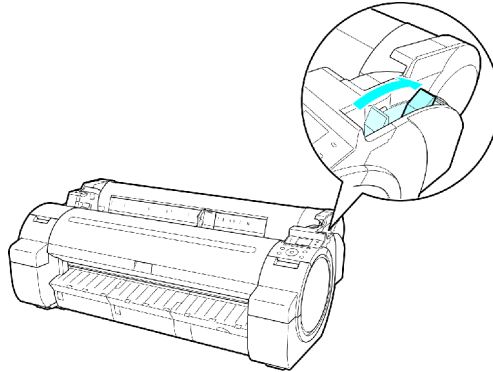
**4.** Pull the Release Lever forward.



## Clearing a Jammed Sheet

If a sheet becomes jammed, **Paper jam.** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

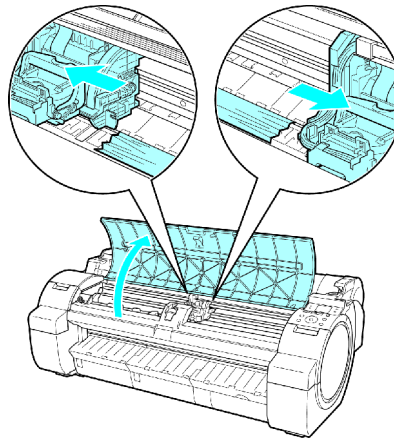
1. Push the Release Lever back.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

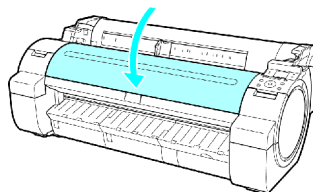
1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the left or right side manually, away from the jam.



2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.

After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

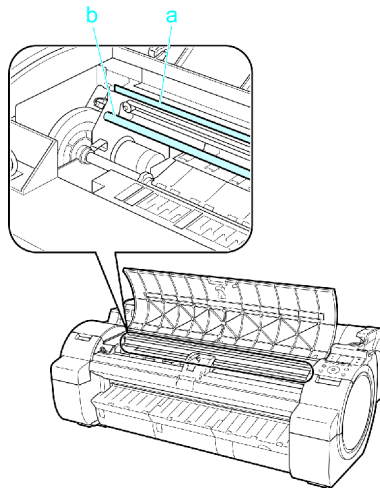
3. Close the Top Cover.



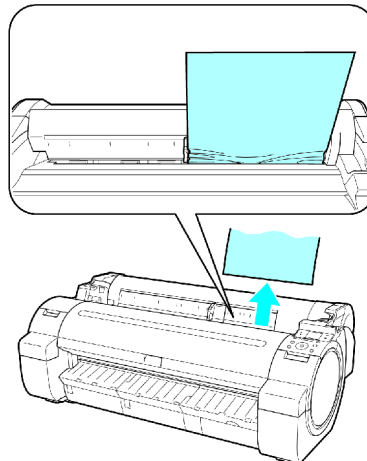


### Important

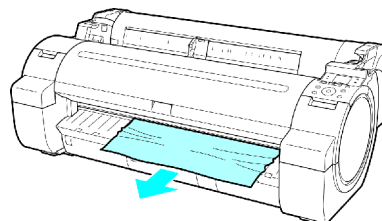
- Do not move the Carriage over jammed paper. This may damage the Printhead.
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



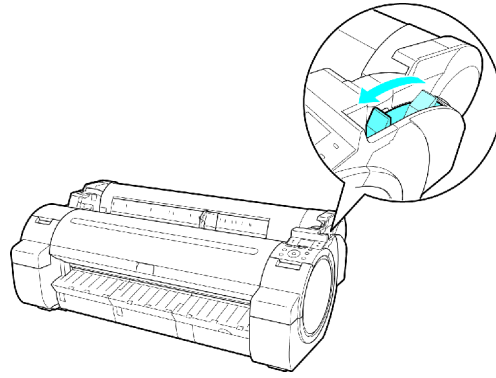
- If the paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot  
Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.  
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If the paper is jammed by the Ejection Guide  
Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.  
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



3. Pull the Release Lever forward.





## Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

| Cause                                   | Corrective Action                                |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| The roll paper is warped.               | Straighten out curls and reload the roll.        |
| Paper is jammed by the paper feed slot. | Remove the jammed paper.<br>(→P.120)<br>(→P.145) |

## Cannot load sheets

| Cause                                    | Corrective Action                                         |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| The paper source selection is incorrect. | Press the <b>Load</b> button and select the paper source. |

## Paper is not cut straight

| Cause                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.              | Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.                                                                                                 |
| Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut. | Reload the paper correctly.                                                                                                                           |
| You are using paper that cannot be cut with the Cutter Unit.  | Specify <b>Manual</b> in <b>Cutting Mode</b> in the Control Panel menu and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll after printing.<br>(→P.129) |

## Paper is not cut

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In the printer driver, <b>No</b> or <b>Print Cut Guideline</b> is specified in <b>Auto Cut</b> . | Specify <b>Yes</b> in <b>Auto Cut</b> in the printer driver.                                                                                                                     |
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Cutting Mode</b> is set to <b>Eject</b> or <b>Manual</b> .         | If the <b>Cutting Mode</b> is <b>Eject</b> , press the <b>Cut</b> button to cut the paper.<br>If the <b>Cutting Mode</b> is <b>Manual</b> , cut rolls with scissors or the like. |

## Depression on the leading edge is left

| Cause                                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge. | When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting <b>TrimEdge Reload</b> to <b>On</b> or <b>Automatic</b> so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.<br>(→P.35) |

## The size of clear film cannot be detected

| Cause                                              | Corrective Action                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Platen is soiled with ink or other substances. | Open the Top Cover and clean the entire Platen.<br>(→P.647) |

## Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Although sheets are selected as the paper source, a roll was advanced. | After roll ejection stops, follow these steps to reload the roll.<br><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Push the Release Lever back.</li><li>2. Open the Roll Cover.</li><li>3. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll. At this time, ensure that both ends of the roll are rewound evenly.</li><li>4. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li><li>5. Load the roll. At this time, be sure to press the <b>Load</b> button and select <b>Load Roll Paper</b>.<br/>(→P.106)</li></ol> |

## Printing does not start

### ☐ The Data Reception Lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

| Cause                                                                              | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer is not on.                                                             | Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the <b>Power</b> button to turn on the printer.                                                                                                                                                               |
| The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.) | In Windows, select the printer by clicking <b>Select Printer</b> or <b>Printer</b> in the printing dialog box and try printing again.                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                    | In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking <b>Printer Setup Utility</b> (or <b>Print Center</b> ) and try printing again.                                                                                                                                                        |
| The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)                           | In Windows, restart the print job as follows.<br>1. Select the printer icon in the <b>Printers and Faxes</b> (or <b>Printers</b> ) window.<br>2. Clear <b>Pause Printing</b> in the <b>File</b> menu to restart the print job.                                                    |
|                                                                                    | In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows.<br>1. Click <b>Print &amp; Fax</b> . (This is identified as <b>Printer Setup Utility</b> in some versions of Mac OS X.)<br>2. Select the printer, and then <b>Start Jobs</b> in the <b>Printers</b> menu to restart the print job. |

### ☐ The printer does not respond even if print jobs are sent

| Cause                                                        | Corrective Action                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Pause Print</b> is <b>On</b> . | Set <b>Pause Print</b> to <b>Off</b> .<br>(→P.94) |

### ☐ Ink Filling.. is displayed

| Cause                                        | Corrective Action                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer was forced off during operation. | Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about seven and a half minutes. |

### ☐ The display screen indicates Agitating

| Cause                         | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ink agitation is in progress. | Please wait until ink agitation is finished.<br>The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer has been off. (Between about 30 seconds and two minutes.) |

## The printer stops during a print job

### ■ An error message is shown on the Display Screen

| Status                                                                                                                                      | Corrective Action                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| An error message is displayed during printing.                                                                                              | Check the error message and take action as necessary.<br>(See "Error Messages.") |
| The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll. | Remove the used roll and insert a new roll.<br>(→P.116)<br>(→P.118)<br>(→P.78)   |

### ■ The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

| Status                                                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.                                                                      | The leading edge of rolls may be cut to straighten it if you have selected <b>Trim Edge First &gt; On</b> or <b>Automatic</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.133) |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                                                                | Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing.<br>(→P.630)                                                 |
| A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.                                                                     | Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.                                                                                  |
| The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when <b>Auto Rotate</b> is <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu. | In the Control Panel, set <b>Auto Rotate</b> to <b>Off</b> and print again.<br>(→P.49)                                                                               |
| The printer is damaged.                                                                                                           | Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.                                                                                                                            |

### ■ The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

| Cause                                                                                               | Corrective Action                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer is analyzing the print job.                                                             | Please wait a while until printing is finished.                                                     |
| A job was printed when <b>Input Resolution</b> in the Control Panel menu was set to <b>600dpi</b> . | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Input Resolution</b> to <b>300dpi</b> and print again.<br>(→P.49) |

# Problems with the printing quality

## ☐ Printing is faint

| Cause                                                                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.                                                                                         | Print on the printing surface.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                                                                          | Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged.<br>(→P.630)                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Because the printer was left without ink tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.                    | After the ink tanks have been installed for 24 hours, run <b>Head Cleaning B</b> from the Control Panel.<br>(→P.632)                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover.                                                                                                       | Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover.<br>1. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen.<br>2. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover.<br>(→P.120)<br>(→P.145)<br>3. Close the Top Cover.                            |
| The ink was not dry when paper was cut.                                                                                                     | Specify a longer drying period in the Control Panel menu, in <b>Paper Details &gt; Roll DryingTime</b> .<br>(→P.49)                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Printing may be faint if <b>Print Quality</b> in <b>Advanced Settings</b> in the printer driver is set to <b>Standard</b> or <b>Draft</b> . | In <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, choose <b>Highest</b> or <b>High</b> in <b>Print Quality</b> .<br>Printing in <b>Draft</b> or <b>Standard</b> mode is faster and consumes less ink than in <b>Highest</b> or <b>High</b> modes, but the printing quality is lower.<br>(→P.187) |

## Paper rubs against the Printhead

| Cause                                                                                                        | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.             | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                                                                              | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.                                                                    |
| Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.                                                    | Reload the paper.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.                                                      | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Automatic</b> .<br>(→P.611)                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.            | When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a <b>VacuumStrngth</b> setting of <b>Strong</b> or <b>Strongest</b> in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Highest</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.621)<br>(→P.611)             |
|                                                                                                              | When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a <b>VacuumStrngth</b> setting of <b>Standard</b> , <b>Strong</b> , or <b>Strongest</b> in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Highest</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.621)<br>(→P.611) |
|                                                                                                              | When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thick or less, choose a <b>VacuumStrngth</b> setting of <b>Weakest</b> in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Highest</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.621)<br>(→P.611)                                              |
| When you have loaded paper, the paper you have loaded does not match the type selected on the Control Panel. | Be sure to select the correct type of paper in the Control Panel menu when loading paper.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## ☐ The edges of the paper are dirty

| Cause                                                                                                              | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.                                  | Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen.<br>(→P.647)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| The type of paper as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.             | Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver.<br>(→P.110)                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                    | Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.                                                                                       |
| The paper is wrinkled or warped.                                                                                   | Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                     |
| A cut line is printed because <b>CutDustReduct.</b> is <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu to reduce cutting dust. | If this function is not needed, set <b>CutDustReduct.</b> to <b>Off</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.49)                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| The Printhead is set too low in the Control Panel menu.                                                            | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Automatic</b> .<br>(→P.611)                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.                  | When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a <b>VacuumStrngth</b> setting of <b>Strong</b> or <b>Strongest</b> in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Highest</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.621)<br>(→P.611)             |
|                                                                                                                    | When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or other film-based media, choose a <b>VacuumStrngth</b> setting of <b>Standard</b> , <b>Strong</b> , or <b>Strongest</b> in the Control Panel menu. If the paper still rubs, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Highest</b> in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.621)<br>(→P.611) |
| The Ejection Guide is soiled.                                                                                      | Clean the Ejection Guide.<br>(→P.646)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## ☐☐☐ The surface of the paper is dirty

| Cause                                           | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Paper Retainer is soiled.                   | Clean the Paper Retainer.<br>(→P.647)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| You are using a paper that does not dry easily. | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Roll DryingTime</b> to at least <b>1 min.</b><br>(→P.49)                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                 | When paper that does not dry easily is used for printing, it may curl during printing and touch the Output Tray.<br>In this case, in the Control Panel menu, set <b>Scan Wait Time</b> to an option other than <b>Off</b> .<br>However, note that printing will now take longer.<br>(→P.49) |

## ☐☐☐ The back side of the paper is dirty

| Cause                                                                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.                                 | Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen.<br>(→P.647)                                                                                    |
| The Platen has become soiled because you have set <b>Width Detection</b> to <b>Off</b> in the Control Panel menu. | Set <b>Width Detection</b> to <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu, and then open the Top Cover and clean the Platen.<br>(→P.647)        |
|                                                                                                                   | Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen. After this, manually advance the roll onto the Platen before printing.<br>(→P.647)<br>(→P.125) |
| The Paper Retainer is soiled.                                                                                     | Clean the Paper Retainer.<br>(→P.647)                                                                                                   |



## Printed colors are inaccurate

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Color adjustment has not been activated in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver.                                                                                                                   | In the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, access <b>Color Settings</b> in <b>Color Mode</b> to adjust colors.                                             |
| Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.                                                                                                                                                        | Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.                                                               |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                                                                                                                                               | Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged.<br>(→P.630)                                                                                     |
| In the Windows printer driver, <b>Application Color Matching Priority</b> is not selected.                                                                                                                       | Click <b>Special Settings</b> on the <b>Layout</b> sheet of the printer driver and select <b>Application Color Matching Priority</b> in the dialog box.                |
| Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.                                                                                                                          | Adjust the Printhead alignment.<br>(→P.604)<br>(→P.606)                                                                                                                |
| Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment. | Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment.<br>1. Use the same version of firmware or printer driver.<br>2. Specify the same value for all settings items. |

## ▣▣▣ Banding in different colors occurs

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.                                                      | Adjust the feed amount.<br>(→P.612)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.       | Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Adj. Priority</b> is set to <b>Print Length</b> .                  | Setting <b>Adj. Priority</b> to <b>Print Quality</b> in the Control Panel menu and adjusting the feed amount may improve results.<br>(→P.612)                                                                                                                                                               |
| The Printhead is out of alignment.                                                               | Adjust the Printhead alignment.<br>(→P.604)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                               | Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged.<br>(→P.630)                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Streaks may occur if you set the <b>Print Quality</b> too low.                                   | Choose a higher level of <b>Print Quality</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver and try printing again.<br>Printing in <b>Draft</b> or <b>Standard</b> mode is faster and consumes less ink than in <b>Highest</b> or <b>High</b> modes, but the printing quality is lower.<br>(→P.187) |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                  | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.                                                                   |

## Colors in printed images are uneven

| Cause                                                                                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Line Drawing/Text</b> is selected when printing images in many solid colors.                                                        | In <b>Print Priority</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, choose <b>Image</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| You are printing on paper that curls easily.                                                                                           | Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Select a stronger level in <b>VacuumStrength</b> in the Control Panel menu to increase suction against the paper, and specify a trailing margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more. (→P.621)     |
| Printed colors may be uneven if you set the <b>Print Quality</b> too low.                                                              | Choose a higher level of <b>Print Quality</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver. Printing in <b>Draft</b> or <b>Standard</b> mode is faster and consumes less ink than in <b>Highest</b> or <b>High</b> modes, but the printing quality is lower. (→P.187)         |
| Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.                                                                                | Select <b>Unidirectional Printing</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be slightly uneven at the edges. | Specify <b>No</b> in <b>Auto Cut</b> in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom. |
|                                                                                                                                        | Choose a higher level of <b>Print Quality</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver. (→P.187)                                                                                                                                                                          |
| The Printhead is out of alignment.                                                                                                     | Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.604)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Allowing printed documents to dry on top of each other may cause uneven colors.                                                        | To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Density may be uneven if you use Glossy Paper or Coated Paper.                                                                         | In <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, choose <b>Highest</b> or <b>High</b> in <b>Print Quality</b> .                                                                                                                                                                      |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.                                       | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                                                        | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.                                              |

## Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Platen suction is too strong.                                                                | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>VacuumStrength</b> to <b>Weakest</b> .<br>(→P.621)                                                                                                                                                      |
| The Printhead is set too high in the Control Panel menu.                                         | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Head Height</b> to <b>Lowest</b> .<br>(→P.611)                                                                                                                                                          |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                  | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again. |

## The contrast becomes uneven during printing

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.                                                      | Adjust the feed amount.<br>(→P.612)                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                  | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again. |

## ☒ The length of printed images is inaccurate in the feeding direction

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Adj. Priority</b> is set to <b>Print Quality</b> .                 | Set <b>Adj. Priority</b> to <b>Print Length</b> in the Control Panel menu, and then execute <b>Adjust Length</b> .<br>(→P.612)                                                                                                            |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. | Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.<br>(→P.106)<br>(→P.136)                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                  | Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.<br>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.<br>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again. |

## ☒ Images are printed crooked

| Cause                                                                                   | Corrective Action                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Skew Check Lv.</b> is set to <b>Loose</b> or <b>Off</b> . | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Skew Check Lv.</b> to <b>Standard</b> . |
| In the Control Panel menu, <b>Width Detection</b> is set to <b>Off</b> .                | Set <b>Width Detection</b> to <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu.        |

## ☒ Documents are printed in monochrome

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                   | Corrective Action                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, <b>Monochrome</b> , <b>Monochrome (BK ink)</b> , or <b>Monochrome Bitmap</b> is specified in <b>Color Mode</b> . | In the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver, specify <b>Color</b> in <b>Color Mode</b> and try printing again. |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                                                                                                      | Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged.<br>(→P.630)                             |

## Line thickness is not uniform

| Cause                                                                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| In the <b>Special Settings</b> dialog box of the Windows printer driver, <b>Fast Graphic Process</b> is selected. | <p>Access the printer driver <b>Properties</b> dialog box from <b>Print</b> in the <b>File</b> menu of the source application, and follow these steps to print.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clear the option <b>Open Preview When Print Job Starts</b> on the <b>Main</b> sheet.</li> <li>2. Clear the option <b>Page Layout</b> on the <b>Layout</b> sheet.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Special Settings</b> button in the <b>Layout</b> sheet to open the <b>Special Settings</b> dialog box, and remove the check from <b>Fast Graphic Process</b>.</li> </ol> |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer.                  | <p>Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.</p> <p>(→P.106)<br/>(→P.136)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                   | <p>Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.</li> <li>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## Lines are misaligned

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.                                                         | <p>Adjust the Printhead alignment.</p> <p>(→P.604)<br/>(→P.606)<br/>(→P.608)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| The type of paper specified in the printer driver does not match the type loaded in the printer. | <p>Load paper of the same type as you have specified in the printer driver.</p> <p>(→P.106)<br/>(→P.136)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                                                                  | <p>Make sure the same type of paper is specified in the printer driver as you have loaded in the printer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>Stop</b> button and stop printing.</li> <li>2. Change the type of paper in the printer driver and try printing again.</li> </ol> |

## Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.  
(→P.95)

# Cannot print over a network

## Cannot connect the printer to the network

| Cause                                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Setup Guide.</li> <li>2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit.<br/>The bottom indicator is green if the printer is connected via 1000Base-T, while the top indicator is orange if connected via 100Base-TX and the top indicator is green if connected via 10Base-T.<br/>If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the hub is on.</li> <li>• Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly.<br/>Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place.</li> <li>• Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable.<br/>If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable.</li> <li>• Check the communication mode with the hub.<br/>Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use.<br/>(→P.578)</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |

## Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.                  | Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.<br>(→P.564)<br>(→P.565)                |
| The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.    | Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly.<br>(→P.570)              |
| The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly. | Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly.<br>(→P.581)<br>(→P.600) |

## Cannot print over a NetWare network

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.           | Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected.<br>(→P.575)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly. | Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly.<br>(→P.593)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.          | Check the following points.<br><ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running.</li> <li>2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs.</li> <li>3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available.</li> <li>4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings.</li> <li>5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.</li> </ol> |

## Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.                  | Activate AppleTalk on the printer.<br>(→P.574)                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly. | Make sure the computer's AppleTalk settings are configured correctly.<br>(→P.598)<br>(→P.602)                                                                                                                                            |
| The computer and printer are not on the same network.                  | Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator. |



# Installation problems

## ☐ Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow these steps to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

### Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.



#### Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2008, you must log on with administrative rights, such as those of the “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs >Canon Printer Uninstaller >imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** after the **Warning** message is displayed.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and then click **Exit**.

### Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.  
Open the **OS X** folder and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
3. In the upper left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and then click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

### Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs >imagePROGRAF Status Monitor >Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

### Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs >imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility >Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

## HP-GL/2 problems

### With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned

| Cause                                                             | Corrective Action                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The plotter origin is incorrect.                                  | Check the printing commands.                                       |
| The <b>Margin</b> setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect. | Adjust the <b>Margin</b> setting values in the Control Panel menu. |

### Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs.

| Cause                                                                                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The memory is full.                                                                                                               | Check the size of the data in the print job.                                           |
| An HP-GL/2 command not supported by this printer was received.                                                                    | Check the print job and settings.                                                      |
| The printer has received print data that includes HP RTL commands when <b>Auto Rotate</b> is <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu. | In the Control Panel, set <b>Auto Rotate</b> to <b>Off</b> and print again.<br>(→P.49) |

### Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs

| Cause                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The <b>Width</b> setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect. | Check the <b>Width</b> setting value specified for <b>Pen no.</b> in <b>Palette A</b> or <b>Palette B</b> in the Control Panel menu. If fine lines are printed faintly, setting <b>ThickenFineLines</b> to <b>On</b> will print the lines more distinctly.<br>(→P.49) |

### HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome (or color)

| Cause                                                                 | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The <b>Color Mode</b> setting in the Control Panel menu is incorrect. | Check the <b>Color Mode</b> setting in the Control Panel menu.<br>(→P.49)<br>However, for optimal Printhead performance, the printer consumes trace amounts of color ink even when <b>Monochrome</b> is selected as <b>Color Mode</b> . |

### Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during HP-GL/2 printing

| Cause                                                           | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>AdjustFaintLines</b> is <b>On</b> in the Control Panel menu. | Setting <b>AdjustFaintLines</b> to <b>Off</b> in the Control Panel menu may help produce the expected results. However, lines in some colors may appear broken. |

## ⚡ HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified

| Cause                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect. | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>PageSizeProcess1</b> to <b>On</b> .<br>(→P.49) |

## ⚡ HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified

| Cause                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The page size of the HP-GL/2 print job, as created in the source application, is incorrect. | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>PageSizeProcess2</b> or <b>Conserve Paper</b> to <b>On</b> .<br>The layout will be changed to the optimal layout.<br>(→P.49) |

## ⚡ HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time

| Cause                                                                                               | Corrective Action                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Large print jobs with a lot of data take longer to print.                                           | Please wait a while until printing is finished.                                                     |
| A job was printed when <b>Input Resolution</b> in the Control Panel menu was set to <b>600dpi</b> . | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Input Resolution</b> to <b>300dpi</b> and print again.<br>(→P.49) |

## ⚡ Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible.

| Cause                                    | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The data was lost because of replotting. | Data for replotting is lost after the following operations. In this case, send the print job again. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The memory buffer was cleared from the Control Panel.</li> <li>• The printer was turned off.</li> <li>• The printer has received a new HP-GL/2 print job.</li> <li>• Printing has been canceled</li> </ul> |

## ⚡ The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job (the carriage stops moving)

| Cause                                                                                               | Corrective Action                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer is analyzing the print job.                                                             | Please wait a while until printing is finished.                                                     |
| A job was printed when <b>Input Resolution</b> in the Control Panel menu was set to <b>600dpi</b> . | In the Control Panel menu, set <b>Input Resolution</b> to <b>300dpi</b> and print again.<br>(→P.49) |

## Other problems

### ☐ The printer does not go on

| Cause                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer is unplugged.              | Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.                                                         |
| The specified voltage is not supplied. | Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker.<br>Use a power source that conforms to the printer specifications.<br>(→P.71) |

## ☐ If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

| Cause                                              | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The printer makes a sound during operation.</p> | <p>The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a sound of suction from the Platen<br/>To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.</li> <li>• There is a sound when a different size of paper is used and when the Carriage goes from side to side<br/>When paper of a different size is used, a valve is automatically activated to switch the area for paper suction, which may make a sound. This mechanism prevents suction from Vacuum holes where there is no paper.<br/>In addition, ink is ejected in sync with the movement of the Carriage back and forth to ensure optimal ink flow. At this time, the valve automatically switches the area for paper suction, which may make a sound.</li> <li>• Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing<br/>There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.</li> <li>• If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations<br/>At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.</li> <li>• If you suddenly hear the tone for ink agitation<br/>At regular intervals, to ensure optimal printing quality, the ink is agitated automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode. Ink agitation takes about 30 seconds.<br/>The ink is also agitated automatically under the following conditions. Note that other operations are not possible while <b>Agitating</b> is displayed on the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• After the printer is turned on. (The time for agitation varies depending on how long the printer was off-between about 30 seconds and two minutes.)</li> <li>• After data transmission. (After about a minute and a half, printing operations begin. However, printing may start later after data reception, depending on the size of print data.)</li> <li>• After ink tank replacement. (Ink agitation takes about three and a half minutes.)</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.</p> |

## Messages advising to check the maintenance cartridge are not cleared

| Cause                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge that was used to replace the old one. | Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly. |
|                                                                                                  | Restart the printer.                                                                     |

## The printer consumes a lot of ink

| Cause                                                                                      | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Many full-page color images are printed.                                                   | In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Head Cleaning B</b> in the Control Panel menu is executed frequently.                   | <b>Head Cleaning B</b> in the Control Panel menu consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing <b>Head Cleaning B</b> , to the extent possible. |
| You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system. | After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead, which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.                                                                        |
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                         | Check for nozzle clogging.<br>(→P.630)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Ink Level Detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

### Ink level detection

Ink tanks specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage. (→P.622)

This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.

Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

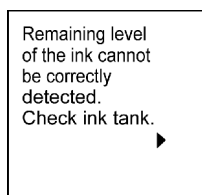


#### Caution

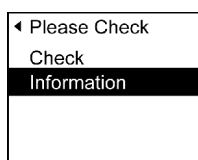
- After ink level detection has been released, this function cannot be reactivated for currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with new ones specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

### Releasing ink level detection

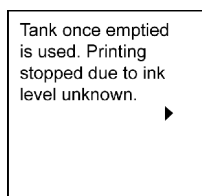
1. On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected. After checking the message, press the ► button.



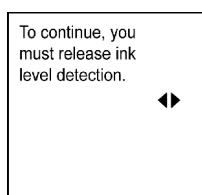
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



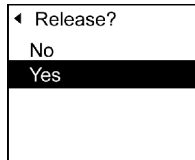
3. A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about releasing ink level detection. After checking the message, press the ► button.



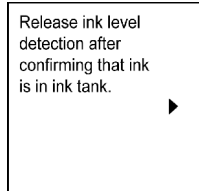
4. After checking the message, press the ► button.



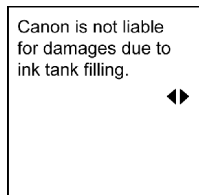
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



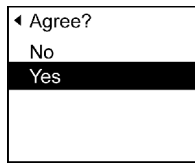
6. Check the message and press the ► button.



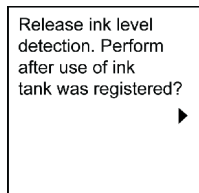
7. Check the message and press the ► button.



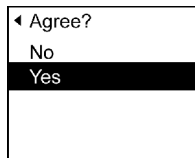
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



9. A confirmation message about updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen. After checking the message, press the ► button.



10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



Ink level detection is now released.



# Error Message

## Messages regarding paper

### MediaType Mismatch

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                    | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>When <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu is set to <b>Pause</b>, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.</p>   | <p>Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer.<br/>(→P.78)<br/>(→P.81)</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>You tried to print a test pattern for printer adjustment on several sheets, but sheets of different types of paper were used.</p>                                     | <p>When printing a test pattern for adjustment, use sheets of the same type of paper, in the required quantity. Replace the paper as follows and perform adjustment again.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Replace the paper.<br/>(→P.81)</li> <li>3. Execute adjustment again from the control panel menu.</li> </ol> <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing.<br/>However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.</p> |
| <p>When <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu is set to <b>Warning</b>, the type of paper loaded does not match the type specified in the printer driver.</p> | <p>You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## ☰ The paper is too small.

| Cause                                                                                                                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>When <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu is set to <b>Pause</b>, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.</p>   | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing.<br/>However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Adjust the paper size setting in the printer driver to match the size loaded in the printer as follows.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Change the paper size setting in the printer driver to the size loaded in the printer and try printing again.</li> </ol>                 |
|                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Replace the loaded paper with paper of a size that matches the size setting in the printer driver as follows.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to stop printing.</li> <li>2. Replace the loaded paper to match the paper width setting in the printer driver and try printing again.</li> </ol> |
| <p>When <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu is set to <b>Warning</b>, paper smaller than the size specified in the printer driver is loaded.</p> | <p>You can continue to print, but note that this error may cause problems in the printing results.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## ☐ The paper is too small.

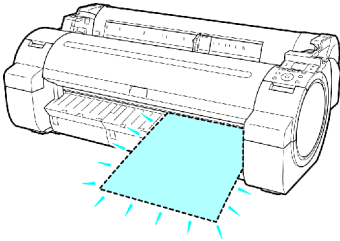
### Replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger

| Cause                          | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The loaded paper is too small. | <p>Replace the paper with paper of A4/Letter (vertical) size or larger as follows.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b>, press the <b>OK</b> button, and remove the paper.<br/>(→P.144)</li> <li>2. Switch to paper A4/Letter (vertical) or larger.<br/>(→P.81)<br/>The printer will resume printing.</li> </ol> |
|                                | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

### Replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll.

| Cause                          | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The loaded paper is too small. | <p>Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches in width or larger as follows.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>(→P.116)<br/>(→P.118)</li> <li>2. Replace the roll with a roll 10 inches wide or larger.<br/>(→P.103)<br/>(→P.106)<br/>The printer will resume printing.</li> </ol> |
|                                | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

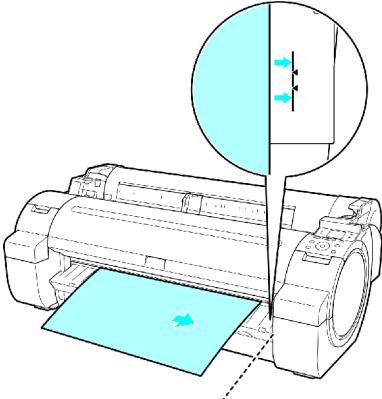
### Remove paper and check pap. size

| Cause                                                                                                                                           | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A sheet has come out of the printer during printing.</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the Release Lever back and remove the paper.</li> <li>2. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.<br/>(→P.136)</li> </ol> |

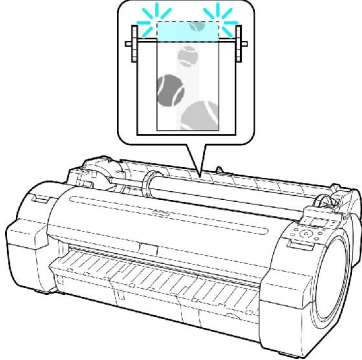
## **PaprWidth Mismatch**

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>When <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu is set to <b>Pause</b> or <b>Warning</b>, the width of the loaded roll does not match the width specified in <b>Fit Roll Paper Width</b> in the printer driver.</p> | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing.<br/>However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Follow these steps to replace the roll to match the width specified in the printer driver.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>(→P.116)<br/>(→P.118)</li> <li>2. Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing.<br/>(→P.103)<br/>(→P.106)<br/>The printer now starts printing the print job.</li> </ol> |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Make sure the roll width selected in the dialog box displayed when you select <b>Fit Roll Paper Width</b> in the printer driver matches the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then try printing again.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## ❏ Paper size not detected.

| Cause                                                                                                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded.</p>  | <p>Follow these steps to reload the roll.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back.</li> <li>2. Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the orange Paper Alignment Line.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.<br/>(→P.106)</li> </ol> <p>If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer.<br/>(→P.103)</p> <p>Follow these step to reload a sheet.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back.</li> <li>2. Load the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.<br/>(→P.136)</li> </ol> |
| <p>Because the Platen is soiled with ink or other substances, the size of the clear film cannot be detected.</p>                                       | <p>Open the Top Cover and clean the entire Platen.<br/>(→P.647)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## ☐☐☐ Insufficient paper for job

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left when <b>ManageRemainRoll</b> in the Control Panel menu is <b>On</b>.</p>  | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.</p> <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to stop printing. Either change the printer driver <b>Paper Source</b> setting or the <b>GL2 Settings &gt; Paper Source</b> setting in the printer menu or replace the roll with a roll that has enough paper for the print job, and then try printing again.</p> <p>(→P.116)<br/>(→P.106)</p> |

## ☐☐☐ This paper cannot be used.

| Cause                                                                                                                 | Corrective Action                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Paper smaller than the printer's minimum supported size has been loaded.</p>                                       | <p>Push the Release Lever back and load paper of the correct size.<br/>(→P.100)</p>                                                             |
| <p>Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.</p> | <p>Push the Release Lever back and load unused paper of A4 size or larger. More than one sheet may be required depending on the adjustment.</p> |

## ☐☐☐ Roll printing is selected.

| Cause                                                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a roll, but no roll is loaded.</p> | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Load Roll Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button. Load the roll, and then print.<br/>(→P.103)<br/>(→P.106)</p> <p>To print on sheets, follow these steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to stop printing.</li> <li>2. Load a sheet and try printing again.<br/>(→P.81)</li> </ol> |

## Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.

| Cause                                                      | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A print job for rolls was received when a sheet is loaded. | Follow these steps to load and print on a roll.<br>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Eject Cut Sheet</b> , press the <b>OK</b> button, and remove the sheet.<br>(→P.144)<br>2. Load a new roll.<br>(→P.106)<br>The printer now starts printing the print job. |
|                                                            | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                       |

## The roll is empty.

| Cause                                                                                          | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The roll is empty.                                                                             | Follow these steps to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size.<br>1. Press the Release Lever back and remove the roll.<br>(→P.116)<br>(→P.118)<br>2. Load the new roll.<br>(→P.103)<br>(→P.106)<br>3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the type of paper.<br>(→P.110)<br>4. When you have selected <b>ManageRemainRoll &gt; On</b> in the control panel menu and a barcode is not printed on the roll, also specify the paper length.<br>(→P.112)<br>5. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred. |
| There is remaining roll paper, but because it could not be advanced, it could not be detected. | Choose a higher level of <b>Print Quality</b> in the <b>Advanced Settings</b> of the printer driver.<br>(→P.187)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Sheet printing is selected.

| Cause                                                                                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>You have attempted to print a test print sheet or other printer status information on a sheet, but no sheet is loaded.</p> | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Load Cut Sheet</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button. Load the sheet, and then print. (→P.81)</p>                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                               | <p>To print on rolls, follow these steps.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to stop printing.</li> <li>2. Load a roll and try printing again.</li> </ol> <p>(→P.78)</p> |

## Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded.

| Cause                                                                     | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>A print job for printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Remove Roll Paper</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to stop printing.</li> <li>2. After removing the roll, load and print on a sheet of the type and size of paper you have specified in the printer driver.</li> </ol> <p>(→P.116)<br/>(→P.81)</p> |



## ■ Paper jam

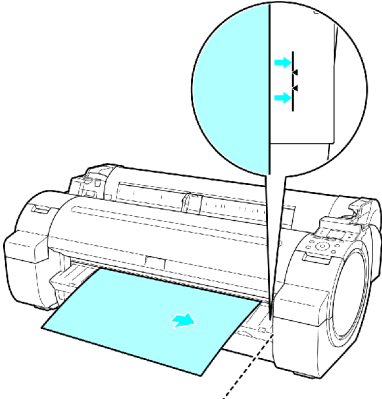
### Push the release lever back.

| Cause                                                | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back and remove the jammed paper.<br/>(→P.120)<br/>(→P.145)</li> <li>2. Load the paper.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.<br/>(→P.106)<br/>(→P.136)</li> </ol> |

### Manually rewind the roll all the way and press OK.

| Cause                                          | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A paper jam occurred when advancing the paper. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Rewind paper on the Roll Holder manually, all the way, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>2. Load the paper.</li> <li>3. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.<br/>(→P.106)</li> </ol> |

## Paper is crooked.

| Cause                                                                                                                                                   | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Paper loaded crooked was detected when the paper was advanced.</p>  | <p>Follow these steps to reload the roll.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back.</li> <li>2. Adjust the right edge of the roll to make it parallel to the orange Paper Alignment Line.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> </ol> <p>(→P.106)</p> <p>If this error recurs after you reload the roll, remove the Roll Holder from the printer, push the roll firmly in until it touches the Roll Holder flange, and reload the Roll Holder in the printer.</p> <p>(→P.103)</p> <p>Follow these step to reload a sheet.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back.</li> <li>2. Pull out the sheet.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.</li> </ol> <p>(→P.136)</p> |



### Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams and printing problems because paper may be askew when printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

## ❏ Paper not aligned with right guide.

| Cause                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| When paper was loaded, it was not aligned with the guide on the right side. | Follow these step to reload a sheet.<br>1. Push the Release Lever back.<br>2. Pull out the sheet.<br>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.<br>4. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right. |

## ❏ Cannot detect paper

| Cause                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The paper has come out of the printer. | Follow these step to reload a sheet.<br>1. Remove the paper and press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>2. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.<br>(→P.136)                                        |
|                                        | Follow these step to reload a sheet.<br>1. Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper.<br>2. Pull the Release Lever forward.<br>3. Reload the sheet, aligning it with the guide on the right.<br>(→P.136) |

## ■ ■ ■ Paper cutting failed.

| Cause                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There are sheets left on the Ejection Guide.                                                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper.</li> <li>2. Load the paper.</li> <li>3. Pull the Release Lever forward.</li> <li>4. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.</li> </ol> (→P.106) |
| There is a foreign object by the Output Tray, obstructing the Cutter Unit.                  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Lift the Top Cover and remove the foreign object.</li> <li>2. If <b>Not finished printing. Finish printing remaining jobs?</b> is shown on the Display Screen, press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Printing will resume, starting from the page on which the error occurred.</li> </ol>                                                                                  |
| You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper. | Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see Paper Reference Guide."<br>(→P.95)                                                                                                                    |
| You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.                          | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Specify <b>Manual</b> as the cutting method and use scissors or a cutting tool to cut the roll.<br/>(→P.129)<br/>For information about paper that is compatible with automatic cutting, see the Paper Reference Guide.<br/>(→P.95)</li> <li>2. Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper.</li> </ol>                                                          |
| In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.                                             | Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## ■ ■ ■ End of paper feed.

| Cause                                                                                         | Corrective Action     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll to the edge. | Release the ▲ button. |

## ⚡ Rel lever is in wrong position.

| Cause                             | Corrective Action                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Release Lever is pushed back. | Pull the Release Lever forward.<br>Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power. |

## ⚡ Borderless printing not possible.

| Cause                                                                                                      | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing. | Follow these steps to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing.<br>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>2. Make sure the correct printer driver for the printer is selected and try printing again.<br>For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.<br>(→P.95)                                                            |
|                                                                                                            | Select <b>None</b> when you have set <b>Detect Mismatch</b> on the control panel to <b>Warning</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                            | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print With Border</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| The loaded paper is a size not compatible with borderless printing.                                        | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                            | Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing as follows.<br>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Change Paper</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>(→P.116)<br>(→P.118)<br>2. Replace the paper with paper compatible for borderless printing.<br>(→P.103)<br>(→P.106)<br>The printer now starts printing the print job.<br>For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide.<br>(→P.95) |
|                                                                                                            | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print With Border</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## ⚡ Paper position not suitable for borderless printing.

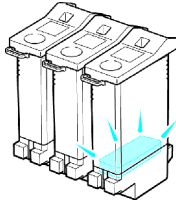
| Cause                                                                                                                                                            | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.</p> | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br/>Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide.<br/>(→P.95)</p> |
|                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Select <b>None</b> when you have set <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu to <b>Warning</b>.<br/>However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.</p>                                                                                                     |
| <p>The paper is loaded askew.</p>                                                                                                                                | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Fix Paper Position</b> and straighten the paper so that the edges are between the ink grooves for borderless printing.<br/>Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange of the Roll Holder.<br/>(→P.103)</p>                                        |
|                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Select <b>None</b> when you have set <b>Detect Mismatch</b> in the Control Panel menu to <b>Warning</b>.<br/>However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.</p>                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print With Border</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to continue printing. The document will be printed with a border.</p>                                                                                                                          |

## ⚡ Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.

| Cause                                                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>When the roll was loaded, the roll was not inserted firmly all the way on the Roll Holder.</p> | <p>Follow these steps to reload the roll.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button and remove the roll holder from the printer.</li> <li>2. Insert the roll firmly on the Roll Holder until it touches the flange.<br/>(→P.103)</li> <li>3. Load the Roll Holder in the printer.</li> </ol> |

## Messages regarding ink

### ■ Ink insufficient.

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The ink level is low, so you cannot print, clean the Printhead, or do other operations that require ink.</p>  | <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Rep. Ink Tank</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button. Replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank. (→P.623)</p> <p>Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Continue to print</b>, and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.</p> |

### ■ No ink left.

| Cause                 | Corrective Action                                                                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is no ink left. | Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.623) |

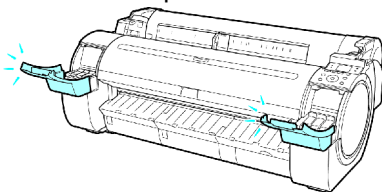
### ■ Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected.

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. | The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section "Ink level detection" and take the appropriate action. (→P.687) |

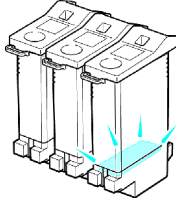
### ■ Unable to detect ink level correctly.

| Cause                                                    | Corrective Action                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The remaining ink level could not be correctly detected. | Close the Ink Tank Cover.<br>The buzzer will stop once the error is cleared. |

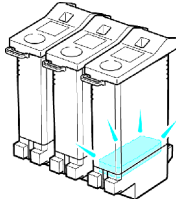
### ■ Close Ink Tank Cover

| Cause                                                                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The Ink Tank Cover is open.</p>  | <p>Close the Ink Tank Cover.<br/>The buzzer will stop once the error is cleared.</p> |

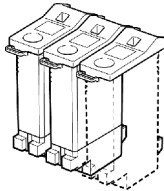
## ■ Ink tank is empty.

| Cause                                                                                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>There is no ink left in an ink tank.</p>  | <p>Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing.<br/>(→P.623)</p> |

## ■ Not much ink is left.

| Cause                                                                                                          | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Not much ink is left.</p>  | <p>Prepare a new Ink Tank.<br/>We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.</p> |

## ■ No ink tank loaded.

| Cause                                                                                                                                                  | Corrective Action                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <p>There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer.</p>  | <p>Load or reload the Ink Tank.<br/>(→P.623)</p>    |
| <p>There is a problem with the Ink Tank.</p>                                                                                                           | <p>Replace it with a new Ink Tank.<br/>(→P.623)</p> |

## ■ Wrong ink tank.

| Cause                                               | Corrective Action                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible.</p> | <p>Load an Ink Tank specified for use with the printer.<br/>(→P.623)</p> |

## ■ Do not pull out ink tank.

| Cause                                                           | Corrective Action                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>The remaining ink level could not be correctly detected.</p> | <p>Install the Ink Tank that was removed.<br/>The buzzer will stop once the error is cleared.</p> |



## Messages regarding printing or adjustment

### Cannot adjust printhead.

| Cause                                                               | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                  | Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again, as follows. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.</li> <li>2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.<br/>(→P.630)</li> <li>3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged.<br/>(→P.632)</li> <li>4. Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again.<br/>(→P.604)</li> </ol> |
| The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded. | Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.<br>We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment.<br>(→P.604)                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| The Printhead is installed crooked.                                 | Straighten the Printhead as follows, and then execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.</li> <li>2. Use <b>Head Inc. Adj.</b> to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead.<br/>(→P.608)</li> <li>3. Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again.<br/>(→P.604)</li> </ol>    |

### Cannot adjust paper feed.

| Cause                                                                                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                                          | Execute <b>Adj. Quality</b> again, as follows. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.</li> <li>2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.<br/>(→P.630)</li> <li>3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged.<br/>(→P.632)</li> <li>4. Execute <b>Adj. Quality</b> again.<br/>(→P.614)</li> </ol> |
| Highly transparent film is loaded that cannot be used for automatic feed amount adjustment. | Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error, and then adjust the feed amount manually.<br>(→P.616)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Check printed document.

| Cause                                       | Corrective Action                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged. | If printing is faint, clean the Printhead.<br>(→P.632) |

# Messages regarding printheads

## Cannot adjust printhead.

| Cause                                                               | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged.                                  | Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again, as follows.<br>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.<br>2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.<br>(→P.630)<br>3. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged.<br>(→P.632)<br>4. Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again.<br>(→P.604)     |
| The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded. | Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.<br>We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment.<br>(→P.604)                                                                                                                                   |
| The Printhead is installed crooked.                                 | Straighten the Printhead as follows, and then execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again.<br>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to clear the error.<br>2. Use <b>Head Inc. Adj.</b> to adjust the angle of inclination of the Printhead.<br>(→P.608)<br>3. Execute <b>Head Posi. Adj.</b> again.<br>(→P.604) |

## Wrong printhead.

| Cause                                         | Corrective Action                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| An incompatible Printhead has been installed. | Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one.<br>(→P.633) |

## Printhead error

| Cause                                  | Corrective Action                                                        |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a problem with the Printhead. | Open the Top Cover and replace the Printhead with a new one.<br>(→P.633) |

## ☐☐☐ No printhead

| Cause                      | Corrective Action                  |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| No Printhead is installed. | Install the Printhead.<br>(→P.633) |

## ☐☐☐ Execute printhead cleaning.

| Cause                              | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Printhead nozzles are clogged. | Follow these steps to clean the Printhead.<br>1. Stop printing by pressing ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> .<br>2. Clean the Printhead.<br>(→P.632)<br>If this message is still displayed, replace the Printhead.<br>(→P.633)                        |
|                                    | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality.                                                                                               |
|                                    | If <b>OK</b> is shown on the Display Screen, clean the Printhead.<br>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button on the Control Panel to stop printing.<br>2. Clean the Printhead.<br>(→P.632)<br>If this message is still displayed, replace the Printhead.<br>(→P.633) |

## Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

### Insert the maintenance cartridge.

| Cause                                       | Corrective Action                              |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed. | Install the Maintenance Cartridge.<br>(→P.639) |

### Wrong maintenance cartridge.

| Cause                                                                  | Corrective Action                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A Maintenance Cartridge for a different model of printer is installed. | Replace it with the Maintenance Cartridge for your particular model. |

### Maint. cart. The level is low

| Cause                                     | Corrective Action                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full. | You can continue to print, but prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge to use when the message for replacement is displayed. |

### No Maintenance Cartridge capacity.

| Cause                                                                                         | Corrective Action                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Maintenance Cartridge cannot absorb enough ink for Printhead cleaning or other operation. | After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge.<br>(→P.639) |

### Maintenance cartridge full.

| Cause                              | Corrective Action                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Maintenance Cartridge is full. | After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge.<br>(→P.639) |

### Maintenance cartridge problem.

| Cause                                                             | Corrective Action                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed. | Install an unused Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer.<br>(→P.639) |

## Messages regarding HP-GL/2

### ⌘ This type of paper is not compatible with HP-GL/2.

| Cause                                                                                                    | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer has received a HP-GL/2 print job that cannot be printed on the paper that has been advanced. | Follow these steps to replace the type of paper in the printer.<br>1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Stop Printing</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button.<br>2. Replace the paper with a type compatible with HP-GL/2. For details on paper compatible with HP-GL/2, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.95) |
|                                                                                                          | Press ▲ or ▼ to select <b>Print</b> , and then press the <b>OK</b> button to resume printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.                                                                                                                               |

### ⌘ GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full. (xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904)

| Cause                       | Corrective Action                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer memory is full. | Because the entire print job could not be received, the printer may not be able to print the entire original. Check the printing results. |

### ⌘ GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.

| Cause                                                                     | Corrective Action                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A parameter specified in a HP-GL/2 command is out of the supported range. | Check the print job.                                                                                                        |
|                                                                           | If you have specified <b>ProcessingOption &gt; Warning &gt; On</b> in the Control Panel menu, set it to <b>Off</b> instead. |

### ⌘ GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.

| Cause                                                    | Corrective Action                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer has received an unsupported HP-GL/2 command. | Check the print job.                                                                                                        |
|                                                          | If you have specified <b>ProcessingOption &gt; Warning &gt; On</b> in the Control Panel menu, set it to <b>Off</b> instead. |

## Other Messages

### ■ ■ ■ GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

| Cause                                  | Corrective Action                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a problem with the print job. | Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.                                                                        |
|                                        | It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results. |

### ■ ■ ■ ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Corrective Action                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| An error requiring service may have occurred. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">             ■ ■ ■ ERROR Exxx-xxxx<br/>             Call for service.<br/>             OK: Printer Info.           </div> | Write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance. |

### ■ ■ ■ Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

| Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job. The paper was not advanced because the trailing edge is taped to the roll.                                                                                                                                                                                                | Turn off the printer and remove the roll from the printer before restoring power.                                                                                                                                                 |
| Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Turn off the printer, open the Top Cover and remove the tape or the Belt Stopper before restoring power.                                                                                                                          |
| An error requiring service may have occurred. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;">             ■ ■ ■ Hardware error.<br/>             xxxxxxxx-xxxx<br/>             Turn off printer,<br/>             wait, then<br/>             turn on again.<br/>             OK: Printer Info.           </div> | Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.<br>If the message is displayed again, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance. |

### ■ ■ ■ Top cover is open.

| Cause                                                | Corrective Action                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The printer has detected that the Top Cover is open. | Open the Top Cover fully, remove any foreign objects, and close the Top Cover again.                           |
|                                                      | If the error occurs again, close the Top Cover, turn off the printer, and wait a while before restoring power. |

## ☐☐☐ Prepare for parts replacement.

| Cause                                                                   | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required. | You can continue to use the printer for some time until <b>Parts replacement time has passed.</b> will be displayed.<br>Contact your Canon dealer for assistance. |

## ☐☐☐ Parts replacement time has passed.

| Cause                                                                                 | Corrective Action                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required. | Contact your Canon dealer for assistance. |

## ☐☐☐ Unknown file.

| Cause                                                                                        | Corrective Action                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data sent to keep the printer up to date (such as paper information) is in the wrong format. | Check the data. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the data.                 |
| You have uploaded firmware for a different model.                                            | Check the firmware version. Turn off the printer and wait a while before restoring power, and then resend the firmware. |
|                                                                                              | If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.                                            |

## ☐☐☐ Multi-sensor error

| Cause                                                                                                   | Corrective Action                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction. | Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.                                                                 |
| The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.                                         | Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.<br>If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance. |

## ☐☐☐ Error in cutter position.

| Cause                                           | Corrective Action                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting. | 1. Push the Release Lever back and remove the paper.<br>2. Pull the Release Lever forward. |



# Index

---

## A

|                                                                                        |               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| About This User Manual .....                                                           | 1             |
| Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) .....             | 460           |
| Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) .....              | 346           |
| Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) ..... | 348           |
| Accounting .....                                                                       | 437           |
| Accounting Manager .....                                                               | 437           |
| Accounting Manager Basic Procedures .....                                              | 441           |
| Accounting Manager Main Window .....                                                   | 438           |
| Job List Area .....                                                                    | 439           |
| Listed Job Selection Area .....                                                        | 439           |
| Menu Bar .....                                                                         | 438           |
| Status Bar .....                                                                       | 440           |
| Title Bar .....                                                                        | 438           |
| Toolbars .....                                                                         | 438           |
| Totals Area .....                                                                      | 440           |
| Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) .....                                              | 474           |
| Data Send Method .....                                                                 | 474           |
| Adjusting Images .....                                                                 | 177           |
| Adjusting Line Length (Adjust Length) .....                                            | 619           |
| Adjusting Line Misalignment (Head Inc. Adj.) .....                                     | 608           |
| Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver .....                                        | 177           |
| Color Adjustment .....                                                                 | 178           |
| Color Mode .....                                                                       | 177           |
| Matching .....                                                                         | 179           |
| Adjusting the feed amount .....                                                        | 612           |
| Adjusting the Printhead .....                                                          | 603           |
| Adjusting the Vacuum Strength (VacuumStrngth) ..                                       | 621           |
| Adjustments for Better Print Quality .....                                             | 603           |
| Advanced Settings .....                                                                | 484, 512, 548 |
| Print Priority .....                                                                   | 484, 512, 548 |
| Print Quality .....                                                                    | 484, 512, 548 |
| Aligning Objects .....                                                                 | 411, 531      |
| Align Bottom .....                                                                     | 411, 531      |
| Align Left .....                                                                       | 412, 532      |
| Align Right .....                                                                      | 412, 532      |
| Align Top .....                                                                        | 411, 531      |
| Center Horizontally .....                                                              | 412, 532      |
| Center Vertically .....                                                                | 411, 531      |
| An error message is shown on the Display Screen .....                                  | 668           |

|                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Attaching the Roll Holder to Rolls .....                                    | 103 |
| Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.) ..... | 604 |
| Automatic Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality) .....                           | 614 |
| Automatically Acquiring Print Job Logs at Regular Intervals .....           | 446 |

## B

|                                                                                    |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Banding in different colors occurs .....                                           | 674      |
| Basic Printing Workflow .....                                                      | 76       |
| Binding Settings Dialog Box .....                                                  | 420      |
| Binding .....                                                                      | 420      |
| Binding Edge .....                                                                 | 420      |
| Fold Line Color .....                                                              | 420      |
| Fold Line Type .....                                                               | 420      |
| Only Print Center and Edges .....                                                  | 420      |
| Print Fold Lines .....                                                             | 420      |
| Borderless Printing .....                                                          | 232      |
| Borderless Printing at Actual Size .....                                           | 225, 246 |
| Borderless Printing .....                                                          | 225, 246 |
| Borderless Printing Method .....                                                   | 225, 246 |
| Print Image with Actual Size .....                                                 | 226, 247 |
| Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) .....                                | 229, 250 |
| Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) .....                                 | 227, 248 |
| Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width .....              | 239      |
| Borderless Printing .....                                                          | 239      |
| Borderless Printing Method .....                                                   | 239      |
| Scale to fit Roll Paper Width .....                                                | 240      |
| Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) .....   | 243      |
| Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) .....    | 241      |
| Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) ..... | 236      |
| Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) .....  | 234      |
| Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size ..                                 | 232      |
| Borderless Printing .....                                                          | 232      |
| Borderless Printing Method .....                                                   | 232      |
| Fit Paper Size .....                                                               | 233      |
| Borderless printng not possible. ....                                              | 701      |

## C

- Canceling print jobs ..... 90
- Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X ..... 92
- Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel ..... 90
- Canceling Print Jobs from Windows ..... 91
- Canceling Regular Print Job Log Acquisition ..... 446
- Cannot adjust paper feed ..... 705
- Cannot adjust printhead ..... 705, 707
- Cannot connect the printer to the network ..... 679
- Cannot detect paper ..... 699
- Cannot load sheets ..... 665
- Cannot print over a NetWare network ..... 680
- Cannot print over a network ..... 679
- Cannot print over a TCP/IP network ..... 679
- Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks .. 680
- Carriage ..... 17
- Centering originals ..... 289
- Changing the Object Overlapping Order ..... 413, 533
  - Bring Forward ..... 413, 534
  - Bring to Front ..... 413, 533
  - Send Backward ..... 414, 534
  - Send to Back ..... 413, 533
- Changing the Object Size ..... 408, 528
  - Resizing by means of mouse operation ... 408, 528
  - Resizing by specifying a scaling value .... 408, 528
- Changing the Type of Paper ..... 110, 139, 195
  - Changing the Type of Paper ..... 110, 139, 195
  - Using the Same Type of Paper Regularly ..... 111, 140, 196
- Check printed document ..... 706
- Checking for Nozzle Clogging ..... 630
- Checking Images Before Printing ..... 313
- Checking Ink Tank Levels ..... 628
- Checking Instructions During Printer Operations ..... 69
  - How to view instructions ..... 69
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing ... 313
  - Open Preview When Print Job Starts (Windows) ..... 313
  - Preview (Macintosh) ..... 314
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Mac OS X) ..... 317, 459
- Checking the Layout in a Preview Before Printing (Windows) ..... 315, 342
- Checking the Remaining Maintenance Cartridge Capacity ..... 644
- Choosing a Paper for Printing ..... 194
  - If the paper type is not listed for selection ..... 194
  - Media Type ..... 194
- Choosing Paper for Printing ..... 194
- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) ..... 192
- Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) ..... 190
- Cleaning Inside the Top Cover ..... 647
- Cleaning the Printer ..... 646
- Cleaning the Printer Exterior ..... 646
- Cleaning the Printhead ..... 632, 650
- Clearing a Jammed Sheet ..... 145, 662
- Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) ..... 123, 148, 657
- Clearing Jammed Roll Paper ..... 120, 659
- Close Ink Tank Cover ..... 703
- Color Adjustment ..... 488, 514
  - Adjusting Color ..... 488, 514
  - Adjusting Monochrome ..... 489, 515
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Color (Windows) ..... 356
  - Apply to Sample ..... 356
  - Brightness ..... 356
  - Contrast ..... 356
  - Cyan / Magenta / Yellow ..... 356
  - Defaults ..... 357
  - Gray Tone ..... 356
  - Object Adjustment ..... 357
  - Sample Type ..... 356
  - Saturation ..... 357
  - View Color Pattern ..... 356
- Color Adjustment Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) .. 361
  - Apply to Sample ..... 361
  - Brightness ..... 361
  - Contrast ..... 361
  - Cyan / Magenta / Yellow ..... 361
  - Defaults ..... 362
  - Gray Tone ..... 361
  - Object Adjustment ..... 362
  - Sample Type ..... 361
  - Saturation ..... 362
  - View Color Pattern ..... 361
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy ..... 421, 536
- Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Dialog Box ..... 424, 538
  - About Button ..... 424
  - Add Button ..... 424, 538
  - Add to Startup folder ..... 424
  - Delete Button ..... 424, 538
  - Delete files in the folder ..... 538
  - Delete the entire folders, as well as items in the list above ..... 538

- Edit Button.....424, 538
- Hot Folder.....424
- Monitor Hot Folder Constantly.....538
- Operation Guide Button.....424
- Save Printed Data .....424
- Start Button .....424
- Stop Button.....424
- Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X).....467
  - Apply to Sample .....467
  - Brightness .....467
  - Color Adjustment pane: color .....467
  - Contrast.....467
  - Cyan / Magenta / Yellow.....467
  - Gray Tone.....467
  - Matching Method.....468
  - Matching Mode.....468
  - Matching pane.....468
  - Object Adjustment .....468
  - Sample Type .....467
  - Saturation .....468
  - View Color Pattern .....467
- Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X).....469
  - Apply to Sample .....469
  - Brightness .....469
  - Color Adjustment pane: Monochrome .....469
  - Contrast.....469
  - Cyan / Magenta / Yellow.....469
  - Gray Tone.....469
  - Object Adjustment .....470
  - Sample Type .....469
  - Saturation .....470
  - View Color Pattern .....469
- Color Settings Panel.....487, 513, 551
  - Color Adjustment / Matching .....487, 513
  - Color Mode.....487, 513, 551
  - Mode .....551
  - Print Button.....487, 513
  - Restore Defaults Button .....487, 513
  - Update Printer Info. Button.....487, 513
- Colors in printed images are uneven.....675
- ColorSync.....494, 520, 554
- Configuring NetWare Network Settings.....593
- Configuring TCP/IP IPv6 Network Settings.....568
- Configuring the Communication Mode Manually.....578
- Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Networks (Macintosh).....598
  - Activating AppleTalk on the printer .....598
  - Configuring the destination (Mac OS X).....599
- Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh).....602
- Configuring the Destination in TCP/IP Networks (Macintosh).....600
  - Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) .....600
- Configuring the IP Address on the Printer .....563
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands .....567
- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility .....453, 564, 595
  - When specifying an IPv4 IP address ..453, 564, 595
  - When specifying an IPv6 IP address ..453, 564, 595
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel .....565
- Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh).....596
- Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) .....581
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings .....574, 597
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings .....575, 584
- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings .....570
  - When using an IPv4 IP address .....570
  - When using an IPv6 IP address .....572
- Configuring Unit Costs in Accounting Manager.....441
- Configuring Units and Display Settings in Accounting Manager .....445
  - 1000 Separator.....445
  - Area Display Format.....445
  - Currency Unit .....445
  - Date Display Format.....445
  - Decimal Symbol .....445
  - Ink Consumed .....445
  - Paper Length.....445
  - Paper Width.....445
- Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X).....457
  - Checking a preview of the settings.....457
  - Checking a print preview .....458
- Confirming Print Settings (Windows).....340
  - Checking a preview of the settings.....340
  - Checking a print preview .....341
- Conserving roll paper .....301
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins .....307
  - No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper).....307
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X).....310

|                                                                                            |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) ..... | 308      |
| Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees .....                               | 301      |
| Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper).....                                               | 301      |
| Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) .....                    | 304      |
| Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) .....                     | 302      |
| Control Panel.....                                                                         | 20, 22   |
| Control Panel Display .....                                                                | 26       |
| Mode transition .....                                                                      | 28       |
| Printer status and modes .....                                                             | 27       |
| Types of tabs .....                                                                        | 26       |
| Creating a New Hot Folder .....                                                            | 426, 539 |
| Cutting Roll Paper After Printing .....                                                    | 331      |
| Automatic Cutting .....                                                                    | 331      |
| Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X).....                                          | 333      |
| Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows).....                                           | 332      |
| Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically .....                                 | 133      |

## D

---

|                                                     |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Deleting a Hot Folder .....                         | 543           |
| Depression on the leading edge is left .....        | 665           |
| Detailed Settings .....                             | 394           |
| Device Settings Sheet (Windows) .....               | 377           |
| About .....                                         | 377           |
| Color Compatibility .....                           | 377           |
| Device Setup Utility .....                          | 452           |
| Dialog Area .....                                   | 382           |
| Cancel Button .....                                 | 382           |
| Center Originals Across Roll .....                  | 382           |
| Layout Selection .....                              | 382           |
| Media Type / Paper Source /Paper Size .....         | 382           |
| No Spaces at Top or Bottom .....                    | 382           |
| Print Button.....                                   | 382           |
| Printer Information.....                            | 383           |
| Status Monitor Button .....                         | 383           |
| Update Printer Information Button.....              | 383           |
| Digital Photo Front-Access .....                    | 449           |
| Display with Actual Size .....                      | 502           |
| Display with All .....                              | 501           |
| Display with Fitting to the Width of the Paper..... | 500           |
| Do not pull out ink tank .....                      | 704           |
| Documents are printed in monochrome .....           | 677           |
| Driver Matching Mode .....                          | 492, 518, 552 |

## E

---

|                                                                    |               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Easy Settings .....                                                | 482, 510, 546 |
| Print Quality .....                                                | 483, 511, 547 |
| Print Target .....                                                 | 482, 510, 546 |
| Editing a Hot Folder (Setting Print Conditions).....               | 541           |
| Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur ..... | 579           |
| End of paper feed.....                                             | 700           |
| Enhanced Printing Options.....                                     | 177           |
| Enlarge/Reduce the screen display .....                            | 389           |
| ERROR Exxx-xxxx<br>(x represents a letter or number) .....         | 711           |
| Error in cutter position. ....                                     | 712           |
| Error Message .....                                                | 689           |
| Execute printhead cleaning. ....                                   | 708           |
| Exporting Print Job Data as a CSV File .....                       | 447           |
| Listed Jobs .....                                                  | 447           |
| Selected Jobs.....                                                 | 447           |

## F

---

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Favorites Sheet (Windows) .....                         | 372 |
| Add .....                                               | 373 |
| Application Settings Priority.....                      | 372 |
| Apply Favorite .....                                    | 372 |
| Comment.....                                            | 372 |
| Delete .....                                            | 372 |
| Down .....                                              | 373 |
| Edit .....                                              | 372 |
| Export.....                                             | 373 |
| Favorites.....                                          | 372 |
| Import .....                                            | 373 |
| Settings Details .....                                  | 372 |
| Up.....                                                 | 373 |
| Feeding Roll Paper Manually .....                       | 125 |
| Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)..... | 184 |
| Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) ..... | 181 |
| Fine-Tuning the Paper Feed Amount (Adj. Fine Feed)..... | 618 |
| Finished Size Settings Dialog Box .....                 | 419 |
| Finished Size .....                                     | 419 |
| Folded Duplex Window .....                              | 416 |
| Layout Area .....                                       | 417 |
| Menu Bar.....                                           | 416 |
| Status Bar.....                                         | 417 |
| Tool Bar .....                                          | 416 |

|                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| Format Dialog Box.....          | 399, 525 |
| Enl./Red.....                   | 399      |
| Object Position.....            | 400      |
| Object Size.....                | 400, 525 |
| Position Sheet.....             | 400      |
| Rotate.....                     | 399, 525 |
| Scaling.....                    | 525      |
| Size Sheet.....                 | 399      |
| Free Layout.....                | 390, 504 |
| Free Layout Main Window.....    | 393, 506 |
| Dialog Area.....                | 507      |
| Layout Area.....                | 393, 506 |
| Menu Bar.....                   | 393, 506 |
| Status Bar.....                 | 394      |
| Tool Bar.....                   | 393, 506 |
| Frequently Asked Questions..... | 655      |
| Front.....                      | 13       |

## G

|                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number).....                                     | 711 |
| Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing..... | 187 |
| Advanced Settings.....                                                      | 187 |
| Color Settings.....                                                         | 188 |
| Enhancing printing quality.....                                             | 189 |
| Print Priority.....                                                         | 187 |
| Print Quality.....                                                          | 187 |
| GL2: W0502 The parameter is out of range.....                               | 710 |
| GL2: W0504 This command is not supported.....                               | 710 |
| GL2: Wxxxx The memory is full.<br>(xxxx is 0501, 0903, or 0904).....        | 710 |
| Go to Page Dialog Box.....                                                  | 495 |
| Page.....                                                                   | 495 |

## H

|                                                                                     |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Handling Paper.....                                                                 | 95       |
| Handling rolls.....                                                                 | 103      |
| Handling sheets.....                                                                | 136      |
| Hardware error. xxxxxxxx-xxxx<br>(x represents a letter or number).....             | 711      |
| Hot Folder.....                                                                     | 425, 539 |
| How to use this manual.....                                                         | 1        |
| How to View Instructions With Navigate.....                                         | 29       |
| HP-GL/2 jobs are printed 6 mm larger than specified.....                            | 683      |
| HP-GL/2 jobs are printed at maximum size, even if a standard size is specified..... | 683      |

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| HP-GL/2 jobs are printed in monochrome<br>(or color)..... | 682 |
| HP-GL/2 Printing.....                                     | 170 |
| HP-GL/2 printing takes a long time.....                   | 683 |
| HP-GL/2 problems.....                                     | 682 |
| HTML Version of the Manual for Printing.....              | 5   |
| Printing a group of individual topics in the manual.....  | 7   |
| Printing a group of topics in the manual.....             | 5   |
| Printing selected topics.....                             | 10  |

|                                                    |               |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| ICC Matching Mode.....                             | 493, 519, 553 |
| If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound.....          | 685           |
| Image edges are blurred or white banding occurs... | 676           |
| imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.....             | 452           |
| Images are printed crooked.....                    | 677           |
| Initializing the Network Settings.....             | 580           |
| Ink Filling.. is displayed.....                    | 667           |
| Ink insufficient.....                              | 703           |
| Ink Level Detection.....                           | 687           |
| Ink level detection.....                           | 687           |
| Releasing ink level detection.....                 | 687           |
| Ink Tank Cover (Inside).....                       | 18            |
| Ink tank is empty.....                             | 704           |
| Ink Tanks.....                                     | 622           |
| Insert the maintenance cartridge.....              | 709           |
| Installation problems.....                         | 681           |
| Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.....  | 452, 594      |
| Insufficient paper for job.....                    | 694           |
| Introduction.....                                  | 1             |

## J

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.....   | 558 |
| Canceling Print Jobs.....                             | 558 |
| Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs.....                      | 558 |
| Preempting Other Jobs.....                            | 558 |
| Printing Held Jobs.....                               | 559 |
| Job Management Using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor..... | 436 |
| Canceling Print Jobs.....                             | 436 |
| Pausing/Resuming Print Jobs.....                      | 436 |
| Preempting Other Jobs.....                            | 436 |
| Printing Held Jobs.....                               | 436 |

**K**

Keeping Track of the Amount of Roll Paper Left .... 126

**L**

Launching the Accounting Manager ..... 437

Laying out a Document Created with Multiple Application Programs on One Page ..... 404, 526

Laying out a Multiple-File Document on One Page ..... 401, 526

Laying out Objects Automatically ..... 410, 530

Layout Sheet (Windows) ..... 368

    Copies ..... 369

    Defaults ..... 369

    Edit Watermark ..... 368

    No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper) ..... 369

    Page Layout ..... 368

    Page Options ..... 369

    Print Centered ..... 368

    Reverse Order ..... 369

    Rotate 180 degrees ..... 368

    Set ..... 368

    Special Settings ..... 369

    Watermark ..... 368

    Watermarks ..... 368

Line thickness is not uniform ..... 678

Lines are misaligned ..... 678

Lines are printed too thick or thin in HP-GL/2 print jobs ..... 682

Lines or images are missing in printed HP-GL/2 jobs ..... 682

Loading and Printing on Rolls ..... 78

Loading and Printing on Sheets ..... 81

Loading Rolls in the Printer ..... 106

Loading Sheets in the Printer ..... 136

**M**

Mac OS X Software ..... 454

Main Pane (Mac OS X) ..... 461

    Color Mode ..... 463

    Common Items ..... 461

    Configuration using Advanced Settings ..... 463

    Configuration using Easy Settings ..... 462

    Economy Printing ..... 463

    Get Information ..... 461

    Media Type ..... 461

    Print Preview ..... 461

    Print Priority ..... 463

    Print Quality ..... 462, 463

    Print Target ..... 462

    Printer ..... 461

    Reduce Print Unevenness ..... 463

    Set ..... 461, 463

    Sharpen Text ..... 463

    Thicken Fine Lines ..... 463

    Unidirectional Printing ..... 463

    View set ..... 462

Main Sheet (Windows) ..... 350

    About ..... 351

    Advanced Settings ..... 350

    Color Mode ..... 352

    Color Settings ..... 352

    Common Items ..... 350

    Configuration using Advanced Settings ..... 352

    Configuration using Easy Settings ..... 351

    Defaults ..... 351

    Economy Printing ..... 352

    Get Information ..... 350

    Media Type ..... 350

    Open Preview When Print Job Starts ..... 350

    Print Priority ..... 352

    Print Quality ..... 351, 352

    Print Target ..... 351

    Sharpen Text ..... 352

    Status Monitor ..... 350

    Thicken Fine Lines ..... 352

    Unidirectional Printing ..... 352

    View Settings ..... 351

Maint. cart. The level is low ..... 709

Maintenance ..... 622

Maintenance Cartridge ..... 639

Maintenance cartridge full. .... 709

Maintenance cartridge problem. .... 709

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation ..... 321

    Mirror ..... 321

    Orientation ..... 321

    Rotate 180 degrees ..... 321

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) ..... 324

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) ..... 322

Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Colors (Head Posi. Adj.) ..... 606

Manual Banding Adjustment (Adj. Quality) ..... 616

|                                                                               |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Matching .....                                                                | 490, 516 |
| Input Profile .....                                                           | 490, 516 |
| Matching Method .....                                                         | 490, 516 |
| Matching Mode .....                                                           | 490, 516 |
| Printer Profile .....                                                         | 490, 516 |
| Soft Proof .....                                                              | 491, 517 |
| Matching Sheet (Windows) .....                                                | 359      |
| Driver Matching Mode .....                                                    | 359      |
| ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode and Host<br>ICM Mode .....                 | 360      |
| Input Profile Settings .....                                                  | 360      |
| Matching Method .....                                                         | 359      |
| Matching Mode .....                                                           | 359, 360 |
| Printer Profile Settings .....                                                | 360      |
| MediaType Mismatch .....                                                      | 689      |
| Menu Operations .....                                                         | 32       |
| Accessing menus .....                                                         | 33       |
| Executing menu commands .....                                                 | 34       |
| Specifying menu items .....                                                   | 34       |
| Specifying numerical values .....                                             | 34       |
| Menu Settings .....                                                           | 49       |
| Ink Menu .....                                                                | 51       |
| Job Menu .....                                                                | 51       |
| Paper Menu .....                                                              | 49       |
| Set./Adj. Menu .....                                                          | 52       |
| Menu Settings (During Printing) .....                                         | 60       |
| Ink Menu .....                                                                | 60       |
| Job Menu .....                                                                | 60       |
| Set./Adj. Menu .....                                                          | 61       |
| Menu Structure .....                                                          | 35       |
| Ink Menu .....                                                                | 37       |
| Job Menu .....                                                                | 38       |
| Paper Menu .....                                                              | 35       |
| Set./Adj. Menu .....                                                          | 39       |
| Messages advising to check the maintenance<br>cartridge are not cleared ..... | 686      |
| Messages regarding HP-GL/2 .....                                              | 710      |
| Messages regarding ink .....                                                  | 703      |
| Messages regarding paper .....                                                | 689      |
| Messages regarding printheads .....                                           | 707      |
| Messages regarding printing or adjustment .....                               | 705      |
| Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge .....                            | 709      |
| Moving a Page .....                                                           | 389, 503 |
| Moving an Object .....                                                        | 409, 529 |
| Multi-sensor error .....                                                      | 712      |

## N

---

|                                          |          |
|------------------------------------------|----------|
| Network Environment .....                | 560      |
| Network Environment .....                | 562      |
| System requirements .....                | 560      |
| Network Setting .....                    | 560      |
| Network Setting (Mac OS X) .....         | 596      |
| Network Setting (Windows) .....          | 581      |
| No ink left. ....                        | 703      |
| No ink tank loaded .....                 | 704      |
| No Maintenance Cartridge capacity .....  | 709      |
| No printhead .....                       | 708      |
| Not much ink is left. ....               | 704      |
| Not Print Spaces at the Top/Bottom ..... | 385, 498 |

## O

---

|                                                      |          |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Object Adjustment dialog box: Color .....            | 358      |
| Graphics .....                                       | 358      |
| Image .....                                          | 358      |
| Text .....                                           | 358      |
| Object Adjustment dialog box: Monochrome .....       | 363      |
| Graphics .....                                       | 363      |
| Image .....                                          | 363      |
| Text .....                                           | 363      |
| Operating Environment ..378, 390, 421, 476, 504, 536 |          |
| Optional accessories .....                           | 70       |
| Other Maintenance .....                              | 651      |
| Other Messages .....                                 | 711      |
| Other problems .....                                 | 684      |
| Other useful settings .....                          | 318      |
| Output Settings Panel .....                          | 485, 549 |
| Borderless Printing .....                            | 485, 549 |
| Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....                      | 485, 549 |
| No Spaces at Top or Bottom .....                     | 486, 550 |
| Output Method Button .....                           | 550      |
| Paper Size .....                                     | 486, 549 |
| Print Button .....                                   | 486      |
| Print Centered .....                                 | 486, 550 |
| Restore Defaults Button .....                        | 486      |
| Rotate Page .....                                    | 486, 550 |
| Update Printer Info. Button .....                    | 486      |
| Output Stacker .....                                 | 150      |

## P

---

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Page Options Dialog Box ..... | 397 |
| Margins .....                 | 398 |
| Order .....                   | 397 |

# Index

|                                                   |          |                                                            |               |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Roll Paper Length.....                            | 397      | Between Scans .....                                        | 465           |
| Page Options Dialog Box (Windows) .....           | 370      | Cut Speed .....                                            | 465           |
| Format Settings.....                              | 370      | Drying Time .....                                          | 465           |
| Print Date .....                                  | 370      | Media Type.....                                            | 465           |
| Print Page Number.....                            | 370      | Mirror.....                                                | 466           |
| Print User Name.....                              | 370      | Near End Margin.....                                       | 465           |
| Page Setup Dialog Box .....                       | 523      | Roll Paper Margin for Safety .....                         | 465           |
| Order .....                                       | 523      | Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) .....         | 354           |
| Paper Orientation .....                           | 523      | Between Pages .....                                        | 354           |
| Paper Size.....                                   | 524      | Between Scans .....                                        | 354           |
| Roll Paper Length.....                            | 523      | Cut Speed .....                                            | 354           |
| Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) .....                  | 471      | Drying Time .....                                          | 354           |
| Borderless Printing .....                         | 471      | Mirror.....                                                | 354           |
| Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....                   | 471      | Near End Margin .....                                      | 354           |
| Fit Paper Size.....                               | 471      | Roll Paper Margin for Safety .....                         | 354           |
| Fit Roll Paper Width .....                        | 471      | Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box<br>(Mac OS X)..... | 464           |
| Free Layout .....                                 | 472      | Paper Source .....                                         | 464           |
| No Spaces at Top or Bottom .....                  | 472      | Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box<br>(Windows) ..... | 353           |
| Page Size .....                                   | 471      | Paper Source .....                                         | 353           |
| Paper Size.....                                   | 472      | Paper is crooked.....                                      | 698           |
| Paper Source .....                                | 471      | Paper is not cut .....                                     | 665           |
| Print Centered.....                               | 472      | Paper is not cut straight.....                             | 665           |
| Roll Width.....                                   | 471      | Paper jam .....                                            | 697           |
| Rotate Page 90 degrees .....                      | 472      | Manually rewind the roll all the way and press<br>OK.....  | 697           |
| Scaling.....                                      | 471      | Push the release lever back.....                           | 697           |
| Page Setup Sheet (Windows) .....                  | 364      | Paper not aligned with right guide.....                    | 699           |
| Borderless Printing .....                         | 364      | Paper position not suitable for borderless printing ..     | 702           |
| Defaults .....                                    | 366      | Paper rubs against the Printhead .....                     | 670           |
| Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....                   | 365      | Paper Settings Panel.....                                  | 480, 508, 544 |
| Fit Paper Size.....                               | 364, 365 | Automatic Cutting .....                                    | 545           |
| Fit Roll Paper Width .....                        | 365      | Copies .....                                               | 481, 509, 545 |
| Orientation.....                                  | 365      | Easy Settings / Advanced Settings...480, 508, 544          |               |
| Output Method.....                                | 366      | Media Type.....                                            | 480, 508, 544 |
| Page Size .....                                   | 364      | Paper Source .....                                         | 480, 508, 544 |
| Paper Size.....                                   | 364, 365 | Print Button.....                                          | 481, 509      |
| Paper Source .....                                | 365      | Restore Defaults Button .....                              | 481, 509      |
| Print Image with Actual Size.....                 | 364      | Roll Paper Width .....                                     | 480, 508, 545 |
| Roll Paper Options .....                          | 365      | Update Printer Info. Button.....                           | 481, 509      |
| Roll Paper Width .....                            | 365      | Paper size not detected.....                               | 693           |
| Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper).....      | 365      | Paper Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) .....              | 367           |
| Scale to fit Roll Paper Width.....                | 364      | Add .....                                                  | 367           |
| Scaling.....                                      | 365      | Custom Paper Size Name.....                                | 367           |
| Size Options .....                                | 366      | Delete .....                                               | 367           |
| Paper.....                                        | 95       | Paper Size.....                                            | 367           |
| Paper cutting failed.....                         | 700      | Paper Size List .....                                      | 367           |
| Paper Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) ... | 465      | Units .....                                                | 367           |
| Automatic Cutting .....                           | 465      |                                                            |               |
| Between Pages .....                               | 465      |                                                            |               |



|                                                                        |               |                                                                                        |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Paper Sizes .....                                                      | 100           | Printhead .....                                                                        | 630      |
| Rolls .....                                                            | 100           | Printhead error .....                                                                  | 707      |
| Sheets .....                                                           | 101           | Printheads .....                                                                       | 630      |
| PaperWidth Mismatch .....                                              | 692           | Printing at full size .....                                                            | 219      |
| Parts replacement time has passed .....                                | 712           | Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X).....                                                  | 222      |
| Pasting a Copied or Cut Object.....                                    | 415, 535      | Printing at Full Size (Windows) .....                                                  | 220      |
| Pausing Printing .....                                                 | 94            | Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes .....                                  | 253      |
| Preferences Dialog Box.....                                            | 395, 495, 521 | Printing CAD Drawings.....                                                             | 159      |
| Auto Arrange Spacing .....                                             | 395, 522      | Printing does not start .....                                                          | 667      |
| Divisions .....                                                        | 395, 521      | Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a<br>Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)..... | 555      |
| Grid Color .....                                                       | 395, 521      | Completing the scanning settings on the Color<br>imageRUNNER .....                     | 556      |
| Gridlines .....                                                        | 395, 521      | Registering a hot folder on your computer .....                                        | 555      |
| Object Frame Style.....                                                | 396, 521      | Scanning the original and print an<br>enlargement .....                                | 556      |
| Print Object Frames .....                                              | 521           | Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a<br>Color imageRUNNER (Windows).....  | 432      |
| Units .....                                                            | 395, 495, 521 | Completing the scanning settings on the Color<br>imageRUNNER .....                     | 433      |
| Prepare for parts replacement.....                                     | 712           | Registering a hot folder on your computer .....                                        | 432      |
| Preparing to Transfer the Printer .....                                | 651           | Scanning the original and print an<br>enlargement .....                                | 433      |
| Access the Move Printer menu .....                                     | 651           | Printing enlargements or reductions.....                                               | 201      |
| Pack the printer .....                                                 | 653           | Printing From a Desired Starting Point.....                                            | 113, 141 |
| Remove paper.....                                                      | 651           | Load paper in the desired position to start<br>printing from .....                     | 113, 142 |
| Remove the Ink Tank.....                                               | 652           | Set Width Detection to Off.....                                                        | 113, 141 |
| Preview.....                                                           | 378, 476      | Printing in Mac OS X.....                                                              | 84       |
| Preview Main Window .....                                              | 380, 478      | Printing from the source application .....                                             | 84       |
| Dialog Area.....                                                       | 381, 479      | Registering the printer.....                                                           | 84       |
| Drawer Area .....                                                      | 479           | Printing in Windows.....                                                               | 83       |
| Menu Bar.....                                                          | 380, 478      | Printing Interface Setting Reports .....                                               | 65       |
| Preview Area .....                                                     | 381, 478      | Confirming Interface Print information.....                                            | 65       |
| Status Area.....                                                       | 479           | Printing Interface Print reports.....                                                  | 65       |
| Status Bar.....                                                        | 381           | Printing is faint.....                                                                 | 669      |
| Tool Bar .....                                                         | 380, 478      | Printing Large Posters (Windows).....                                                  | 287      |
| Print Area.....                                                        | 75            | Printing Line Drawings and Text.....                                                   | 160      |
| Rolls .....                                                            | 75            | Easy Settings .....                                                                    | 160      |
| Sheets .....                                                           | 75            | Print Quality.....                                                                     | 161      |
| Print on the Center .....                                              | 384, 497      | Print Target.....                                                                      | 160      |
| Print Page Rotated 90 Degrees .....                                    | 499           | Print targets for line drawings and text.....                                          | 160      |
| Print with No Borders .....                                            | 496           | Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X).....                                        | 164      |
| Printed colors are inaccurate.....                                     | 673           | Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows).....                                         | 162      |
| Printed colors of lines are inaccurate during<br>HP-GL/2 printing..... | 682           | Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other .....                                   | 269      |
| Printer Driver .....                                                   | 336, 454      | Free Layout (Windows) .....                                                            | 269      |
| Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) .....                               | 454           | imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh).....                                              | 270      |
| Printer Driver Settings (Windows) .....                                | 336           | Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other<br>(Mac OS X).....                      | 273      |
| Printer Menu Operations .....                                          | 30            |                                                                                        |          |
| Menu operations during printing.....                                   | 31            |                                                                                        |          |
| Menu operations when no print job is in<br>progress .....              | 30            |                                                                                        |          |
| Printer Parts .....                                                    | 13            |                                                                                        |          |
| Printer Specifications.....                                            | 71            |                                                                                        |          |

# Index

|                                                                 |     |                                                                                 |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) .....  | 271 | Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) .....                                     | 156 |
| Printing Multiple Pages Continuously .....                      | 275 | Printing Photos and Images (Windows) .....                                      | 154 |
| Roll paper (banner) .....                                       | 275 | Printing Posters in Sections .....                                              | 286 |
| Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) .....           | 278 | Page Layout .....                                                               | 286 |
| Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) .....            | 276 | Printing procedure .....                                                        | 76  |
| Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet .....                         | 280 | Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) .....           | 253 |
| Page Layout .....                                               | 280 | Fit Roll Paper Width .....                                                      | 253 |
| Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) .....              | 283 | Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) ..... | 258 |
| Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) .....               | 281 | Print the banner .....                                                          | 259 |
| Printing Office Documents .....                                 | 171 | Register a Custom Page Sizes .....                                              | 258 |
| Easy Settings .....                                             | 171 | Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) .....  | 254 |
| Print Quality .....                                             | 171 | Creating the banner in the application .....                                    | 255 |
| Print Target .....                                              | 171 | Printing the banner .....                                                       | 255 |
| Print targets for office documents .....                        | 171 | Registering a Custom Paper Size .....                                           | 254 |
| Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) .....                      | 174 | Printing with Selecting the Layout .....                                        | 387 |
| Printing Office Documents (Windows) .....                       | 172 | Printing With Watermarks .....                                                  | 318 |
| Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes .....                      | 261 | Watermark .....                                                                 | 318 |
| Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver ..... | 261 | Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) .....             | 319 |
| Specifying custom paper sizes for temporary use .....           | 261 | Printmonitor .....                                                              | 557 |
| Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) .....           | 266 | Prints using Folded Duplex .....                                                | 418 |
| Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) .....            | 262 | Folded Duplex .....                                                             | 418 |
| Printing by using Custom Paper Size .....                       | 264 | Priority setting for rotating 90 degrees .....                                  | 386 |
| Printing by using Custom Size .....                             | 262 | Problems Regarding Paper .....                                                  | 657 |
| Printing on Oversized Paper .....                               | 219 | Problems with the printing quality .....                                        | 669 |
| Oversize .....                                                  | 219 | Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper .....            | 678 |
| Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets .....                   | 76  |                                                                                 |     |
| Roll printing .....                                             | 76  |                                                                                 |     |
| Sheet printing .....                                            | 77  |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Rolls .....                      | 289 |                                                                                 |     |
| Centering originals relative to roll paper width .....          | 289 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) .....           | 292 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) .....            | 290 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Sheets .....                     | 295 |                                                                                 |     |
| Centering originals on sheets .....                             | 295 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) .....          | 298 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) .....           | 296 |                                                                                 |     |
| Printing Photos and Images .....                                | 152 |                                                                                 |     |
| Easy Settings .....                                             | 152 |                                                                                 |     |
| Print Quality .....                                             | 153 |                                                                                 |     |
| Print Target .....                                              | 152 |                                                                                 |     |
| Print targets for photos and images .....                       | 152 |                                                                                 |     |

## R

|                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls .....                                   | 134 |
| Regular printing is selected, but a roll is loaded .....                 | 696 |
| Rel lever is in wrong position .....                                     | 701 |
| Remaining level of the ink cannot be correctly detected .....            | 703 |
| Removing Installed Printer Drivers .....                                 | 681 |
| Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) .....               | 681 |
| Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) .....                     | 681 |
| Removing printer drivers (Windows) .....                                 | 681 |
| Removing printer drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) ..... | 681 |
| Removing Sheets .....                                                    | 144 |
| Removing the Roll from the Printer .....                                 | 116 |
| Removing the Roll Holder from Rolls .....                                | 118 |
| Replacing Ink Tanks .....                                                | 623 |

- Access the menu for Ink Tank replacement .....624
  - Compatible ink tanks .....623
  - Install the ink tanks.....625
  - Make sure the printer is ready for Ink Tank replacement.....623
  - Precautions when handling ink tanks .....623
  - Remove the Ink Tank.....624
  - Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge .....639
    - Access the menu for Maintenance Cartridge replacement.....640
    - Compatible maintenance cartridges.....639
    - Make sure the printer is ready for Maintenance Cartridge replacement.....640
    - Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.....639
    - Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.....641
  - Replacing the Printhead.....633
    - Access the menu for Printhead replacement ...634
    - Compatible printheads .....633
    - Precautions when handling the Printhead.....633
    - Replace the Printhead.....635
    - When to replace the Printhead.....633
  - Replotting with HP-GL/2 jobs is not possible. ....683
  - Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value.....213
    - Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....213
    - Scaling.....213
  - Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X).....216
  - Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) .....214
  - Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width .....207
    - Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....207
    - Fit Roll Paper Width .....207
  - Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X).....210
  - Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) .....208
  - Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size .....201
    - Enlarged/Reduced Printing .....201
    - Fit Paper Size.....201
  - Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X).....204
  - Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) .....202
  - Roll Cover (Inside).....17
  - Roll Holder Set .....70, 135
  - Roll Paper Cannot be Inserted into the Paper Feed Slot .....665
  - Roll Paper is Continuously Ejected .....666
  - Roll paper is not securely in contact with roll holder.....702
  - Roll printing is selected, but sheets are loaded.....695
  - Roll printing is selected. ....694
  - Rotating an Object.....409, 529
- S**
- 
- Searching Topics .....3
  - Selecting a Feed Amount Adjustment Method (Feed Priority).....613
  - Selecting an Object .....407, 527
  - Setting the Print Parameters .....431, 544
    - Apply Sharpness .....431
  - Setting the Unit Cost for Ink .....442
    - To set different unit costs for each ink color ....442
    - To set the same unit cost for all the inks .....442
  - Setting the Unit Cost for Items Other Than Ink and Paper.....444
  - Setting the Unit Cost for Paper.....443
  - Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows).....376
    - Copy .....376
  - Sharing the Printer in Windows .....582
  - Sheet printing is selected. ....696
  - Showing Job Properties .....448
  - Showing the Total Amount of Ink and Paper Consumed .....448
  - Showing, Saving and Loading Selected Unit Cost Data .....448
    - Load Unit Cost Data .....448
    - Save Unit Cost Data .....448
    - Show Unit Cost Data .....448
  - Side .....15
  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) .....371
    - Adjust faint lines .....371
    - Application Color Matching Priority .....371
    - Enable Preview Switching.....371
    - Fast Graphic Process.....371
    - FineZoom Settings .....371
    - Reduce Print Unevenness.....371
  - Specifications .....71
    - Ink.....72
    - Interface .....72
    - Options .....74
    - Output stacker capacity, in sheets.....74
    - Paper.....73
    - Printer.....71
    - Printing performance .....71
  - Specifying an Existing Shared Folder as a Hot Folder .....429

## Index

|                                                                                   |              |                                                                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings.....                                  | 167          | Support Sheet (Windows) .....                                                     | 375      |
| Color Compatibility .....                                                         | 167          | Settings Summaries .....                                                          | 375      |
| Specifying Colors and Printing CAD Drawings<br>(Windows) .....                    | 168          | Support Information.....                                                          | 375      |
| Specifying NetWare Print Services.....                                            | 588          | User Manual .....                                                                 | 375      |
| Choosing the type of print services .....                                         | 588          | Switching Between Displaying Jobs on Printer and<br>Regularly Acquired Jobs.....  | 447      |
| Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the<br>print server .....                     | 589          | Jobs on Printer .....                                                             | 447      |
| Specifying NetWare Protocols .....                                                | 591          | Regularly Acquired Jobs.....                                                      | 447      |
| Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver .....                                      | 197          | <b>T</b>                                                                          |          |
| Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver<br>(Mac OS X).....                         | 88, 199, 455 | The back side of the paper is dirty .....                                         | 672      |
| Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver<br>(Windows) .....                         | 86, 197, 338 | The contrast becomes uneven during printing .....                                 | 676      |
| Specifying Printer-Related Information.....                                       | 577          | The Data Reception Lamp on the Control Panel<br>does not light up .....           | 667      |
| Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls .....                                     | 129          | The display screen indicates Agitating .....                                      | 667      |
| Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing).....                                | 130          | The edges of the paper are dirty .....                                            | 671      |
| Manual (when using media that cannot be cut<br>with the Cutter Unit ).....        | 131          | The Features of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement<br>Copy .....                       | 421, 536 |
| Paper cutting (to have the roll cut at your<br>specified position).....           | 132          | The Features of Free Layout.....                                                  | 390, 504 |
| Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls.....                                     | 127          | The Features of imagePROGRAF Printmonitor ....                                    | 557      |
| Mac OS X.....                                                                     | 128          | The Features of imagePROGRAF Status Monitor...                                    | 434      |
| Windows.....                                                                      | 127          | The Features of Preview .....                                                     | 378, 476 |
| Specifying the Paper Length .....                                                 | 112          | The length of printed images is inaccurate in the<br>feeding direction .....      | 677      |
| Specifying the Printer's Frame Type.....                                          | 586          | The paper is too small. ....                                                      | 690, 691 |
| Specifying the frame type using imagePROGRAF<br>Device Setup Utility .....        | 586          | Remove paper and check pap. size .....                                            | 691      |
| Specifying the frame type using the printer<br>Control Panel.....                 | 587          | Replace paper with A4/LTR (vertical) or larger ..                                 | 691      |
| Stand .....                                                                       | 19           | Replace roll with 10 in. wide or larger roll.....                                 | 691      |
| Starting Color imageRUNNER Enlargement<br>Copy .....                              | 422, 537     | The printer consumes a lot of ink .....                                           | 686      |
| To start by selecting imageRUNNER<br>Enlargement Copy from the start button ..... | 423          | The printer does not go on .....                                                  | 684      |
| To start by selecting Printers and Faxes from<br>the start button .....           | 422          | The printer does not respond even if print jobs are<br>sent.....                  | 667      |
| Starting Free Layout.....                                                         | 391, 505     | The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper .....                                   | 668      |
| Starting Preview .....                                                            | 379, 477     | The printer stops during a print job.....                                         | 668      |
| Status Monitor .....                                                              | 434          | The printer stops when printing a HP-GL/2 job<br>(the carriage stops moving)..... | 668, 683 |
| Status Print.....                                                                 | 62           | The roll is empty. ....                                                           | 695      |
| Checking the information in Status Print<br>reports .....                         | 62           | The size of clear film cannot be detected .....                                   | 665      |
| Printing Status Print reports .....                                               | 62           | The surface of the paper is dirty.....                                            | 672      |
| Support Pane (Mac OS X).....                                                      | 475          | This paper cannot be used.....                                                    | 694      |
| About.....                                                                        | 475          | This type of paper is not compatible with<br>HP-GL/2. ....                        | 710      |
| Settings .....                                                                    | 475          | Tiling and multiple pages per sheet.....                                          | 269      |
| Support Information.....                                                          | 475          | Top Cover (Inside) .....                                                          | 16       |
| User Manual .....                                                                 | 475          | Top cover is open. ....                                                           | 711      |
|                                                                                   |              | Troubleshooting.....                                                              | 655      |
|                                                                                   |              | Troubleshooting Paper Abrasion and Blurry Images<br>(Head Height) .....           | 611      |

|                                                                                    |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Turning the Printer On and Off .....                                               | 24 |
| Turning the printer off .....                                                      | 25 |
| Turning the printer on .....                                                       | 24 |
| Types of Paper .....                                                               | 95 |
| Accessing the Paper Reference Guide from<br>imagePROGRAF Support Information ..... | 95 |
| Updating paper information .....                                                   | 98 |

## U

---

|                                               |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Unable to detect ink level correctly .....    | 703      |
| Unknown file .....                            | 712      |
| Updating the Firmware .....                   | 654      |
| Confirming the firmware version .....         | 654      |
| Updating the Firmware .....                   | 654      |
| Using Favorites .....                         | 327      |
| Favorites .....                               | 327      |
| Using Favorites (Mac OS X) .....              | 330, 460 |
| Using Favorites (Windows) .....               | 328, 344 |
| Printing using the favorite .....             | 329, 345 |
| Registering a favorite .....                  | 328, 344 |
| Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals ..... | 450      |
| Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals ..... | 450      |
| Using RemoteUI .....                          | 569      |
| Using the Output Stacker .....                | 150      |
| Note regarding the Extended position .....    | 151      |
| Using the ruler .....                         | 389      |
| Utility Pane (Mac OS X) .....                 | 473      |
| Set .....                                     | 473      |
| View .....                                    | 473      |
| Utility Sheet (Windows) .....                 | 374      |
| Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy .....      | 374      |
| Maintenance .....                             | 374      |

## V

---

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| View settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application<br>(Mac OS X) ..... | 466 |
| Details .....                                                             | 466 |
| Name .....                                                                | 466 |
| Print Target .....                                                        | 466 |
| View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application<br>(Windows) .....  | 355 |
| Details .....                                                             | 355 |
| Name .....                                                                | 355 |
| Print Target .....                                                        | 355 |

## W

---

|                                                                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| When to Replace Ink Tanks .....                                                             | 629 |
| Before print jobs and maintenance that consume<br>a lot of ink .....                        | 629 |
| If a message for checking the ink is shown on<br>the Display Screen .....                   | 629 |
| If a message for ink replacement is shown on<br>the Display Screen .....                    | 629 |
| When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge .....                                             | 645 |
| If a message for checking the Maintenance<br>Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen ..... | 645 |
| If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge<br>replacement is shown on the Display Screen .. | 645 |
| When much of the Maintenance Cartridge<br>capacity is depleted .....                        | 645 |
| Windows Software .....                                                                      | 336 |
| With HP-GL/2, printing is misaligned .....                                                  | 682 |
| Working With Various Print Jobs .....                                                       | 152 |
| Wrong ink tank .....                                                                        | 704 |
| Wrong maintenance cartridge .....                                                           | 709 |
| Wrong printhead .....                                                                       | 707 |

## Z

---

|                       |               |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| Zoom Dialog Box ..... | 398, 495, 524 |
| Scaling .....         | 398, 495, 524 |

